

A ONE-STOP REFERENCE BOOK

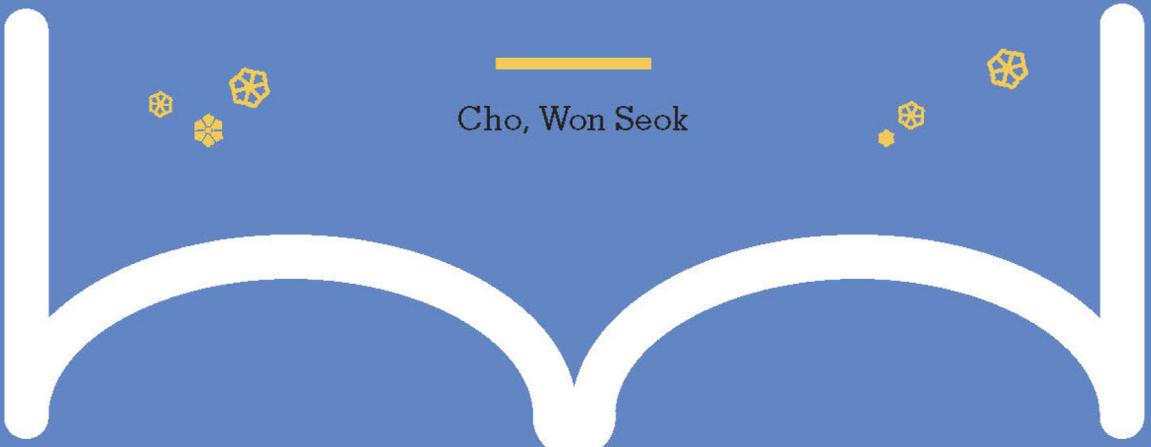


# KOREAN GRAMMAR

Volume I  
The Overall Grammatical System

---

Cho, Won Seok



Pagijong Press, Inc.

## KOREAN GRAMMAR

한 번에 끝내는 문법 기본서  
한국어 문법

KOREAN GRAMMAR : A ONE-STOP REFERENCE BOOK  
Volume I  
The Overall Grammatical System

종이책 발행 2020년 3월 6일  
전자책 발행 2020년 5월 19일

지 은 이 조원석  
펴 낸 이 박찬익  
펴 낸 곳 (주)박이정  
주 소 경기도 하남시 조정대로 45 미사센텀비즈 749호  
전 화 (02)922-1192~3  
팩 스 (02)928-4683  
홈페이지 www.pjbook.com  
이 메 일 pijbook@naver.com  
등 록 2014년 8월 22일 제 305-2014-000028호

전자책 ISBN 979-11-5848-585-6 (95710)

- \* 이 전자책은 저작권법에 의하여 보호를 받는 저작물이므로 무단 전재와 무단 복제를 금합니다.
- \* All rights are reserved. Produced in Korea. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without permission in writing from the publisher.
- \* 본 콘텐츠는 PDF형식으로 서비스합니다.
- \* 이 전자책은 한국출판문화산업진흥원 2020년 텍스트형 전자책 제작 지원 선정작입니다.



## Preface (머리말/서문)

I will never forget what happened in my first class teaching Korean grammar to non-native speakers in a formal classroom setting. It was on November 11, 1998. At that time, I was teaching Korean to US service men and women who were in the second week of learning the language. The topic of the grammar lesson was how to identify and indicate the subject of a Korean sentence. At the beginning of the class, I introduced the Korean subject case markers “~이/가” to the students and explained how they are used in a given sentence. Soon after that, the students were supposed to do a ten-minute speaking practice using the script of the basic conversational exchanges from the textbook. Of course, all the sentences on the script were written for pedagogical purposes and each of the individual sentences was grammatically flawless as shown below.

Speaker A: 고향이 어디십니까? (=Where are you from?)

Speaker B: 제 고향이 \_\_\_\_\_ 입니다. (=I am from \_\_\_\_\_.)

Speaker A: 가족이 어떻게 되십니까? (=How many are there in your family?)

Speaker B: 제 가족이 모두 \_\_\_\_\_ 명입니다. (=Altogether there are \_\_\_\_\_ in my family.)

Speaker A: 나이가 어떻게 되십니까? (=How old are you?)

Speaker B: 제 나이가 \_\_\_\_\_ 살입니다. (=I am \_\_\_\_\_ old.)

Speaker A: 직업이 어떻게 되십니까? (=What do you do for a living?)

Speaker B: 제 직업이 \_\_\_\_\_ 입니다. (=I am \_\_\_\_\_.)

Once the students became familiarized with these expressions enough to utter them in their own words, I asked the students to stand up and continue to practice these expressions with their partners. I was walking around the classroom during the speaking practice to provide them some extra help whenever they needed me. Everything went smoothly for a while as planned. Meanwhile, one student approached me and tried to engage in a conversation with me using the scripted questions. So, I kindly interacted with him by taking the role of Speaker B. All of a sudden the student seemed to look puzzled and showed signs of frustration. Right at that moment, I sensed that something

went wrong. I immediately realized that I was the culprit of the unpleasant situation which ruined his first and bold attempt to have a conversation with a native speaker. It was all because I inadvertently provided him the following natural answers to his questions instead of using the purported sentence frames above.

Speaker A: 고향이 어디십니까? (=Where are you from?)

Speaker B: 제 고향은 서울입니다. (=I am from Seoul.)

Speaker A: 가족이 어떻게 되십니까? (=How many are there in your family?)

Speaker B: 제 가족은 모두 세 명입니다. (=Altogether there are three in my family.)

Speaker A: 나이가 어떻게 되십니까? (=How old are you?)

Speaker B: 제 나이는 서른 다섯 살입니다. (=I am thirty-five years old.)

Speaker A: 직업이 어떻게 되십니까? (=What do you do for a living?)

Speaker B: 제 직업은 선생님입니다. (=I am a teacher.)

When the student returned to his seat, he asked me a question regarding whether it is possible to create a statement without a subject, which is not possible in English. Since I already knew why he asked me such a question, I admitted that it was my fault not to use the appropriate subject case markers in my answers. Then, just to clarify, I continued to say that a subject in Korean can often serve as the topic of a sentence and in that case, it can be alternatively marked by the topic markers “~은/는,” which can be rendered as “As for” in English. After having made that comment, I wanted to get back to the main theme of the lesson to cover the rest of the material assigned for the class. Unfortunately, another inquisitive student raised his hand and asked me a very challenging question. He said his Korean wife often uses “~은/는” for the noun that cannot be interpreted as “As for.” I cannot recall the exact sentence, but it was something like “나는 커피는 좋아해.” To quench his academic thirst and curiosity, I briefly explained that the first occurrence of “~는” is the topic marker and the second one is the contrastive focus marker. Therefore, the sentence could be rendered as “As for me, I like coffee, but not others such as tea, juice, milk, and so on.” Again, the student was not completely satisfied with my explanation and made a series of legitimate questions. As far as I can recall, the questions were like “Why does the same case marker behave differently in the given sentence?,” “Why was it used more than once in the same sentence?,” and “In what way can I distinguish between the two different functions?” Since I realized

that I had already sidestepped way too much and could not come up with any satisfactory answers to the questions, I abruptly ended the discussion and promised to the class that I would get back to it later.

After that class, I conducted very extensive research on the Korean topic/contrastive focus markers “~은/는.” I made an all-out effort to search for the answers using all available resources ranging from a large number of published Korean grammar books and professional journals to personal communications with many Korean grammar experts. Unfortunately, I was not able to find any systematic or at least persuasive explanation on their proper usage. The mystery of this extremely important grammar feature has survived a series of my unending academic pursuits and the numerous attempts even made by other renowned Korean grammarians. Thereafter, whenever I was supposed to talk about this seemingly unconquerable grammar feature, I had no choice but to beat around the bush and intentionally not go into any detailed discussion.

This book now attempts to keep the nearly two-decade-old promise that I had made to the students in my first Korean grammar class. With my sincere apology to them for this belated response to their insightful questions, I hope this humble work can at least partially alleviate their pending emotion that might have been left behind in their course of learning the Korean language. The same apology also applies to the countless number of my former and current students who have been under my supervision for the last twenty-one years.

Another driving force that has propelled me to write this book is to fulfill my responsibilities as a Korean language educator who has received so many benefits from this academic field since I embarked on my predestined journey. As a small token of appreciation to all the passionate Korean language learners around the world who have relentlessly dedicated their time and efforts to the mastery of Korean grammar, I decided to give top priority to this somewhat arduous work among the items on my bucket list. Now after three years of strenuous journey, I am about to cross the finish line with the hope that this book can be used as a one-stop reference guide for all serious learners of Korean at all proficiency levels.

The following is a list of the unwavering tenets deeply engraved in this book.

(1) The readers of this book can have access to clear and systematic explanations on a wide range of Korean grammatical phenomena that they may encounter in the course of learning the language. They can be empowered with all necessary grammatical knowledge while reading this book without seeking any extra help from outside resources.

(2) This book must provide explanations for all essential Korean grammar features that are being used for both written and spoken language. Especially, the grammar patterns commonly used in spoken expressions deserve to receive more special attention. They are indeed the real things that most Korean language learners are going to be exposed to while interacting with native speakers in real-life situations.

(3) The readers should be given at least an opportunity to gain native-level intuition to discern the alternative grammar patterns that are being used in similar, but somewhat different situations. To facilitate this process, closely related grammar features are grouped together with the explanations of their similarities and different restrictions on their usage.

(4) Instead of simply making a sales pitch of a jargon-free book, if some grammatical terms are indispensable to explain and understand core grammar features, they should be welcomed to be used to appreciate the deeper understanding of grammatical phenomena. At the same time, unless otherwise deemed necessary, most grammatical terms are going to be simplified or rephrased in layman's terms.

(5) The syntactic, semantic, and pragmatic treatment of grammatical phenomena should be integrated in describing and explaining important grammatical features whenever applicable.

(6) To accommodate a more diverse group of Korean language learners, English is chosen as a medium of communication with the readers of this book. In addition, if Korean grammar features have their English equivalents, they are being compared side by side to expedite the explanation process.

I am greatly indebted to my colleagues who have participated in my weekly Korean grammar forum during the last two years. I would like to thank Taek Jun Chung, Soyong Jeong, Kyong Hee Lee, Yusun Jung, Raeshik Myung, Pyong Gag Ahn, Mi-Ra

Karrer, Gloria Lee, Josephine Petkovski, Eun Young Suh, SeongOak Paek, Seunghyun Yoo, So Young Kim, Anne Lim, Imsuk Berger, Seung B Baek, Seung Jae Oh, Estel Kahuila, Eunjin Joo, Young Ae Shin, Jungok Becker, David Yoon, Bo Y Park, and Inhae Kim. Their impeccable grammatical intuition and expertise, fruitful suggestions, and constructive criticisms are all reflected on this final product in one way or another. I would also like to thank Samuel Lee, Jewel Lee, Youngju Koo, Gilyun An, Sung Joong Kim, Iksoo Jeong, Kyoung-Kook Kim, Jang-Il Kim, Chong S Kim, Meesun Cho, Byung-Joon Lim, and Dukhyun Cho. Their constant support and warm encouragement helped me reorient myself whenever I was going through a tumultuous period.

This book would not have been possible to see the light of the world without the unending support of the publishing company Pagijong Press. I would like to express my special thanks to the executive editor, Yi Jun Kwon, who gave me the golden opportunity to communicate with the readers of this book. I am also profoundly grateful to my long-time colleague, S. C. Silverman, for her diligent proofreading of all the English sentences in this book.

Special thanks are due to my great mentors at the Department of Linguistics at the University of Chicago who shaped and honed my linguistic intuition and grammatical knowledge during my graduate studies: James D. McCawley, Amy Dahlstrom, John Goldsmith, Jerry Sadock, and Salikoko S. Mufwene.

Lastly, I have always felt bad for not having carried out my familial duty during the time of writing this book. The very first copy of this book with my deepest love will be delivered to my wife, Woo Kyung Park.

Won Seok Cho  
Monterey, California

# Table of Contents

Preface (머리말/서문)\_ 5

## chapter 01 Phonology(음운론)\_ 29

I . Vowels (모음) .....	29
1. Ten Simple Vowels (단모음): 아, 어, 오, 우, 으, 이, 애, 예, 외, 위 .....	29
2. Eleven Diphthongs (이중모음): 야, 여, 요, 유, 얘, 예, 와, 왜, 워, 웨, 의 .....	30
3. Pronunciation Guide for Korean Vowels .....	31
II . Consonants (자음) .....	32
1. Stops (파열음): ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ / ㅋ, ㅌ, ㅍ / ㆁ, ㄷ, ㅃ .....	33
2. Fricatives (마찰음): ㅅ, ㅆ, ㅎ .....	34
3. Affricates (파찰음): ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅉ .....	34
4. Nasal Stops (비음): ㄴ, ㄹ, ㅇ .....	34
5. Lateral (유음): ㄹ .....	35
III . Phonological Rules (음운법칙) .....	35
1. Voicing (유성음화) .....	36
2. Syllable Final Consonant Rule (종성 자음 법칙) .....	36
3. Linking Rule (연음법칙) .....	37
4. Aspiration (거센소리화) .....	38
5. Palatalization (구개음화) .....	39
6. Consonant Assimilation (자음동화) .....	39
7. Tensification (경음화) .....	41
8. Consonant Insertion (자음 삽입) .....	42
9. Syllable Final Consonant Clusters (종성 복자음) .....	42
10. Vowel Harmony (모음조화) .....	44
IV . Syllable Structure (음절 구조) .....	45
V . Dictionary Entry (사전 찾기) .....	46

**chapter 02 Morphology(단어 형태론)**\_ 47

I . Word Structure (단어 구조) .....	47
II . Building up Words (단어 형성) .....	47
III . Parts of Speech (품사) .....	48
IV . Functional Categories (기능 범주) .....	50

**chapter 03 Syntax (문장 형태론)**\_ 52

I . Sentence Patterns (문장 유형) .....	52
II . Sentence Types (문장 종류) .....	55
III . Word Order in Sentences (문장 어순) .....	56
IV . Ellipsis in Conversation (생략) .....	57
V . No Subject-Verb Agreement (주어 동사 일치) .....	59

**chapter 04 Nouns and Case Markers(명사와 격조사)**\_ 62

1. Subject Case Marker (주격 조사): ~이, ~가, Object Case Marker (목적격 조사): ~을, ~를 .....	63
2. Possessive Case Marker (관형격/소유격 조사): ~의 .....	65
3. Location/Direction Case Marker (처소격/방향격 조사): ~에, ~에서 .....	66
4. Time/Distance Case Marker (시간/거리격 조사): ~에, ~까지, ~에서 ~까지, ~부터 ~까지 .....	71
5. Dative Case Marker (여격 조사): ~에게, ~한테, ~보고, ~더러, ~께 .....	72
6. Source Case Marker (원천격 조사): ~에게(서), ~한테(서) .....	73
7. Direction/Instrumental Case Marker (방향격/도구격 조사): ~으로, ~로 .....	74
8. Instrumental Case Marker (도구격 조사): ~으로(써), ~로(써) .....	77
9. Qualification Case Marker (자격격 조사): ~으로(서), ~로(서) .....	78
10. Vocative Case Marker (호격 조사): ~아, ~야, ~여, ~이여 .....	79

**chapter 05 Particles(보조사)**\_ 82

1. ~은/는 (Topic Marker: 주제 보조사, Contrastive Focus Marker: 대조 보조사) .....	82
---	----

2. ~만 (Only) .....	90
3. ~도 (Also) .....	91
4. ~조차(도) (Even) .....	92
5. ~까지(도) (Even) .....	93
6. ~마저(도) (Even) .....	94
7. ~밖에 (Other than) .....	95
8. ~마다 (Each and every) .....	96
9. ~씩 (At a time) .....	97
10. ~끼리 (In a group) .....	98
11. ~뿐 (Only) .....	99
12. ~만큼 (As _ as _) .....	100
13. ~짜리 (Individual value) vs. ~어치 (Total value) .....	100
14. ~같이, ~처럼 (Like) .....	101
15. ~(이)라도, ~(이)나마 (At least) .....	102
16. ~(이)야말로 (Indeed) .....	103
17. ~(이)ㄴ들 (Regardless of) .....	105
18. ~(은/는)커녕 (Let alone) .....	106
19. ~께나 (Quite) .....	107
20. ~치고(는) (Considering that) .....	108
21. ~(이)나 (Either _ or _) .....	108
22. ~(이)든지/~(이)든가 (Or the like), ~(이)라든지/~(이)라든가 (Such as _ or _) .....	109
23. ~만큼은 (At least; The bottom line is) .....	111
24. ~만큼도 (Not at all) .....	112
25. ~까지야, ~까지는 (Not necessary to do something) .....	113
26. ~까지밖에 (Only up to) .....	114
27. 무렵(에) (Around the time) .....	114
28. 내내 (Throughout the period of time) .....	115
29. ~감 (To deserve the position of) .....	116

**chapter 06 Numbers and Counters (수와 조수사)\_ 119**

I . Cardinal Numbers (기수) .....	119
1. Native Korean Numbers .....	119
2. Sino-Korean Numbers .....	120

3. How to say large numbers .....	121
<b>II . Ordinal Numbers (서수) .....</b>	<b>122</b>
1. Native Korean Ordinal Numbers .....	122
2. Sino-Korean Ordinal Numbers .....	123
<b>III . Counters (조수사) .....</b>	<b>124</b>
1. Counters with Native Korean Numbers .....	124
2. Counters with Sino-Korean Numbers .....	126
<b>IV . How to Read Telephone Numbers .....</b>	<b>127</b>

**chapter 07 Time and Dates(시간과 날짜)\_ 128**

<b>I . Time (시간) .....</b>	<b>128</b>
1. Reading 12-Hour Clock .....	128
2. Reading 24-Hour Clock .....	131
<b>II . Dates (날짜) .....</b>	<b>132</b>
1. Months of the Year (월) .....	132
2. Date of the Month (일) .....	132
3. Days of the Week (요일) .....	133
4. Four Seasons (사계절) .....	133
5. Year (년) .....	134
6. Writing Time and Dates .....	134
7. The Solar Calendar (양력) and the Lunar Calendar (음력) .....	134
<b>III . Counting the Duration of Time (시간과 날짜 계산) .....</b>	<b>135</b>
1. Counting the Number of Hours (시간), Minutes (분), and Seconds (초) ..	135
2. Counting the Number of Days .....	135
3. Counting the Number of Months .....	137
4. Counting the Number of Years .....	137
5. Counting the Number of Centuries .....	138
<b>IV . More Time-Related Expressions .....</b>	<b>138</b>
1. Time and Meals of the Day (시간과 식사) .....	138

2. Before and After a Specific Time (전 후 시간 표시) .....	139
3. Frequency of Time (빈도) .....	140
4. Other Time Related Adverbs (시간 관계 부사) .....	140
5. Some Time-Related Grammar Features (시간과 관련된 문법 표현) .....	142

**chapter 08 Noun Making Suffixes(명사화 접미사)\_ 143**

I . Nominalization: Verb Stem + ㅁ/음 .....	143
II . Gerund: Verb Stem + 기 .....	146
III . Complementizers: 것, 지, 줄, 바 .....	148
1. ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 것, ~다는/냐는/라는/자는 것 .....	148
2. ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ/았는/였는 지, ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 줄 .....	150
3. ~는/ (으)ㄴ/ (으)ㄹ 바 .....	152

**chapter 09 Pronouns(대명사) and Demonstratives(지시사)\_ 154**

I . Personal Pronouns (인칭대명사) .....	154
1. First Person Pronouns (1인칭 대명사) .....	156
2. Second Person Pronouns (2인칭 대명사) .....	158
3. Third Person Pronouns (3인칭 대명사) .....	164
4. Reflexive Pronouns (재귀대명사) .....	167
II . Demonstratives (지시사) and Their Corresponding Diminutive Forms (지소사) .....	169
1. Demonstratives (지시사) .....	169
2. Diminutives (지소사) .....	172

**chapter 10 Noun Conjunctions I (명사 접속사 I)\_ 174**

1. Expressing "And": ~(이)랑, ~하고, ~과/~와, 및 .....	174
2. Enumerating the options: ~(이)나 .....	176
3. Expressing "Unlike": ~(이)랑 달리, ~하고 달리, ~과/와 달리 .....	177
4. Expressing the purpose of taking action: ~을/를 위해(서), ~을/를 위하여, ~을/를 위한 .....	177

5. Expressing "About/Regarding": ~에 대해(서), ~에 대한, ~에 관해(서), ~에 관한 .....	178
6. Expressing "Including/If we include": ~을/를 포함해(서), ~을/를 비롯해(서), ~을/를 포함하면 .....	179
7. Expressing an alternative option: 대신(에) .....	180
8. Expressing the direct cause: 때문에 .....	181
9. Expressing "Due to": ~(으)로, ~(으)로 인해(서), ~(으)로 인하여, ~(으)로 말미암아 .....	181
10. Expressing "Due to": 관계로, 관계상 .....	182
11. Expressing gratitude: 덕(분)에, 덕택에 .....	183
12. Expressing comparison/consideration: ~에 비해(서) .....	183
13. Expressing "Depending on/In accordance with": ~에 따라(서) .....	184
14. Indicating the agent of an action/the source for decision making: ~에 의해(서), ~에 의한 .....	185
15. Indicating the source of information: ~에 따르면, ~에 의하면 .....	186
16. Expressing "Via": ~을/를 통해(서) .....	187
17. Expressing "As well as": ~뿐만 아니라, ~은/는 물론(이고), ~은/는 물론이려니와 .....	187
18. Expressing "In addition to/On top of": ~에다가, ~에다, ~에 .....	188
19. Expressing "Other than": 외에 .....	189
20. Expressing "Other than": 말고, 빼고 .....	190
21. Expressing "Except": 말고는, 빼(놓)고는, 외에는 .....	190
22. Expressing "At the Risk of/In honor of/Betting on the preceding noun": ~을/를 걸고 .....	191
23. Expressing "Before/After": 전에, 후에, 후에야 .....	192
24. Expressing "In the middle of/In the aftermath of": (도)중에, 중간에, 통에 .....	193
25. Expressing "At the end of": 끝에 .....	194
26. Expressing the starting point of an action: ~을/를 기해 .....	195
27. Expressing "After the elapse of a certain time period": 만에 .....	195
28. Expressing "Since": 이래(로) .....	196
29. Holding multiple titles at the same time: ~이자 .....	196
30. Expressing a surprise: Number expression+(이)나 .....	197

chapter 11 Noun Conjunctions II (명사 접속사 II) 198

1. Issuing a warning/Providing advice: ~일랑 ~지(도) 말다 .....	198
2. Expressing "Following the preceding noun/In one's own way": ~대로 .....	199
3. Expressing "Sorting items or people of the same kind": ~은/는 ~대로, ~은/는 ~ 별로 .....	200
4. Expressing "On top of the preceding noun": ~도 ~(이)려니와 .....	201
5. Expressing "Not all Ns are the same": ~도 ~ 나름이다 .....	201
6. Expressing "In the same size as _, Not as good as _": ~만하다, ~만 못하다 .....	202
7. Expressing "Considering the aspect of the preceding noun": ~(으)로 보나 .....	203
8. Expressing "Between/Among": 사이에, 간에 .....	204
9. Expressing "Despite": ~에도 불구하고, ~(口/음)에도 불구하고 .....	204
10. Expressing "Regardless of": ~(이)며 (간에/할 것 없이), ~(이)거나 (간에/할 것 없이) .....	205
11. Expressing "Not to mention": ~은/는 고사하고, ~은/는 말할 것도 없고 .....	206
12. Expressing "Regardless of": ~을/를 막론하고, ~을/를 불문하고, ~(이)고 뭐고 (간에) .....	207
13. Expressing "Just because of one's holding the title": ~(이)라고 해서 .....	209
14. Taking advantage of one's position: ~(이)랍시고, ~입네 하면서 .....	210
15. Having the exclusive privilege of taking action: ~(이)라야 .....	211
16. Expressing "No other options acceptable except the preceding noun": ~(이)면 몰라도 .....	211
17. Expressing "Not meeting one's expectations": ~(이)래야, ~(이)래 봐야, ~(이)라고 해 (봐)야 .....	212
18. Expressing "A probable cause": ~(이)라서 그런지, ~이어서/여서 그런지 .....	213
19. Expressing "An acknowledgment that contradicts the situation": ~(이)로되 .....	214
20. Rephrasing what the preceding noun is: ~인즉(슨) .....	215
21. Refraining from taking further action: 같아서, 같(았)으면 .....	215
22. Limiting the scope of discussion: ~만 해도/하더라도 .....	216
23. Indicating an intermediary agent of an action: ~(으)로 하여금 .....	217
24. Expressing "Through, Heading toward/Targeting": ~을/를 거쳐(서), ~을/를 향해(서) .....	218
25. Expressing "According to one's own standard": ~에는, 나름대로는 .....	219

26. Blaming a person for the given situation: ~(의) 탓이다 .....	220
27. Expressing a gratitude to a person: ~(의) 덕(분)이다 .....	221
28. Expressing “Depending on”: ~에/에게/한테 달려 있다 .....	221
29. Expressing “There is no room left”: ~의 여지가 없다 .....	222
30. Drawing the listener’s attention to one’s topic: 말이다, 말이야, 말이지, 말입니다, 말이에요 .....	223
31. Reconfirming the topic of a discussion: 말이야?, 말이지?, 말입니까?, 말이에요? .....	224
32. Making a complaint: ~이/가 (도대체) 뭐예요?/뭐길래/뭐기에/뭐라고 .....	224

## chapter 12 Verbs(동사)\_ 226

I . Stative Verbs or Adjectives? .....	226
II . Differences between Stative Verbs and Action Verbs .....	228
III . Special Verbs .....	230
1. The copula “~이다” .....	230
2. The Existential/Possessive Verb “있다” .....	231
3. Compound Verbs (복합동사) with “가다” and “오다” .....	233
4. Irregular Verbs (불규칙 동사) .....	233

## chapter 13 Honorific and Blunt Systems(존댓말과 반말)\_ 236

I . Formal Honorific System for Statements and Questions .....	237
1. Showing respect just to the listener .....	237
2. Showing respect just to the subject .....	237
3. Showing respect both to the subject and to the listener .....	238
4. Showing no respect to the subject and to the listener .....	238
II . Formal Honorific System for Imperative and Proposition .....	239
1. Showing respect to the listener-subject .....	240
2. Showing no respect to the listener-subject .....	241
III . Informal Honorific System for Statements and Questions .....	242
1. Showing both respect and closeness just to the listener .....	242
2. Showing both respect and closeness just to the subject .....	244

3. Showing both respect and closeness to the subject and the listener. ....	244
4. Showing both respect and closeness to neither the subject nor the listener .....	245
<b>IV. Informal Honorific System for Imperative and Proposition</b> .....	245
1. Showing respect to the listener-subject .....	246
2. Showing no respect to the listener-subject .....	246
<b>V. Other Honorific Devices (객체 존대)</b> .....	247
1. Honorific Noun Suffix “~님” .....	247
2. Honorific Noun Suffix “~씨” .....	248
3. Honorific Subject Case Marker “~께서” and Honorific Dative Case Marker “~께” .....	248
4. Honorific Counter “분” .....	249
5. Irregular Honorific Verbs .....	249
6. Irregular Honorific Nouns .....	250
<b>VI. Summary</b> .....	251

**chapter 14 Tense and Aspect(시제와 상)**\_ 253

<b>I . Tense (시제)</b> .....	253
1. Present Tense (현재 시제): $\phi$ .....	253
2. Past Tense (과거 시제): ~았/었 .....	256
3. Future Tense (미래 시제): ~겠, ~을/르거다 .....	258
<b>II . Aspect (상)</b> .....	264
1. Progressive (진행형): ~고 있다, ~는 중이다 .....	264
2. Perfect (완료시제) .....	265

**chapter 15 Quotation(화법)**\_ 268

<b>I . Direct Quotation (직접화법)</b> .....	268
<b>II . Indirect Quotation (간접화법)</b> .....	269

**chapter 16 Noun-Modifying Suffixes(명사 수식 접미사)\_ 271**

I . Noun-Modifying Suffixes for Stative Verbs .....	271
II . Noun-Modifying Suffixes for Action Verbs .....	273
III . Noun-Modifying Suffixes Expressing Temporary State or Habitual Action in the Past .....	274
IV . Summary of Noun-Modifying Suffixes .....	276

**chapter 17 Negation(부정문)\_ 277**

I . Short Form of Negation: “안” and “못” .....	277
II . Long form of Negation: “~지 않다” and “~지 못하다” .....	280
III . Negating Imperative and Propositional Sentences Using “~지 말다” .....	281
IV . Special Negative Verbs: 이다 → 아니다, 있다 → 없다, 알다 → 모르다 .....	282
1. “~이다” and Its Negative Verb “아니다” .....	282
2. “있다” and Its Negative Verb “없다” .....	284
3. “알다” and Its Negative Verb “모르다” .....	284
V . Complete Negation vs. Partial Negation vs. Complete Assertion .....	285
1. Complete Negation: 아무+Noun+도 in a negative sentence .....	285
2. Partial Negation: 아무+Noun+(이)나 in a negative sentence .....	286
3. Complete Assertion: 아무+Noun+(이)나 in a positive sentence .....	287
VI . Some Useful Negative Expressions .....	287
1. A이지 B이/가 아니다 (Making strong confirmation/denial) .....	287
2. A이/가 아니라 B (Fixing incorrect information) .....	288
3. ~이/가 아닌가요? (Seeking confirmation) .....	288
4. ~이/가 아니고서는 (If it's not an A, it's impossible) .....	289

**chapter 18 Comparison(비교구문)\_ 290**

I . Expressing the different degree of comparison .....	290
II . Additional forms of comparison .....	291

**chapter 19 Passive Voice(수동태)**\_ 293

I . Active Voice (능동태) vs. Passive Voice (수동태) .....	293
II . Korean Passive Suffixes (수동접미사): ~이/~히/~리/~기 .....	294
III . Periphrastic Passives .....	296
1. Periphrastic Passive Suffix “~아/어지다” with Stative Verbs .....	296
2. Periphrastic Passive Suffix “~아/어지다” with Action Verbs .....	297
3. Double Passive with the Periphrastic Passive Suffix “~아/어지다” .....	298
4. Periphrastic Passive Suffix “~게 되다” .....	299
5. Periphrastic Passive Verbs .....	300

**chapter 20 Causative Verbs(사역동사)**\_ 302

I . Korean Causative Suffixes (사동접미사): ~이/~히/~리/~기/~우/~구/~추 ..	303
II . Periphrastic Causative Suffix: “~게 하다” .....	305

**chapter 21 Double Subjects and Objects(이중주어/목적어)**\_ 309

I . Different Sources of Double Subject Construction .....	310
1. Negation with the Verb “아니다” .....	310
2. Possession with Verbs of Existence .....	311
3. Inchoative Verb “되다(to become)” .....	312
4. Possessive Marker “~의”: Inalienable Possession .....	312
5. Noun + Number + Counter, Noun + Number .....	315
6. Summary .....	316
II . Different Sources of Double-Object Construction .....	317
1. “Noun + 하다” Verbs .....	317
2. Possessive Marker “~의”: Inalienable Possession .....	318
3. Noun + Number + Counter, Noun + Number .....	319
4. Causative Verbs .....	319
5. Summary .....	320

chapter 22 Modal Auxiliaries I(보조동사 I)\_ 321

1. Expressing one's intention or the possibility of an event in the near future: ~(으)려고 하다 .....	321
2. Expressing one's making a strong effort to carry out his/her planned action: ~고자 하다 .....	323
3. Expressing the speaker's weak intention or the weak possibility: ~(으)ㄴ 거다, ~(으)ㄴ 것이다 .....	325
4. Expressing one's decision to take action: ~기로 하다 .....	327
5. Expressing "To try to make sure": ~도록 하다 .....	328
6. Thinking about/planning to/determined to take action: ~(으)ㄴ 생각/계획/예정/작정이다 .....	329
7. Expressing a weak commitment to take action: ~(으)ㄴ까 하다, ~(으)ㄴ까 보다, ~(으)ㄴ까 싶다 .....	331
8. Expressing "Be about to": ~(으)려던 참이다, ~(으)려던 중이다 .....	332
9. Expressing responsibility/obligation/necessity: ~아/어야 하다, ~아/어야 되다, ~아/어야 겠다 .....	333
10. Granting permission or Expressing concession: ~아/어도 좋다/되다/괜찮다 .....	335
11. Denying permission or Warning against an illegitimate behavior: ~(으)면 안 되다 .....	337
12. Expressing "No other options available": ~(으)ㄴ 수 밖에 없다 .....	338
13. Expressing the speaker's speculation: ~는/ (으)ㄴ/(으)ㄴ 것 같다 .....	340
14. Expressing the speaker's speculation: ~나 보다, ~는/(으)ㄴ가 보다 .....	343
15. Expressing the speaker's conjecture: ~는지도 모르다, ~(으)ㄴ지도 모르다 .....	345
16. Acknowledging the fact or knowing how to do things: ~는/ (으)ㄴ/(으)ㄴ 줄/지 알다 .....	347
17. Expressing the speaker's false assumption: ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄴ 줄(로) 알았다 .....	350
18. Expressing one's lack of prior knowledge: ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄴ 줄(을) 몰랐다 .....	352
19. Expressing capability/inability or possibility/impossibility: ~(으)ㄴ 수 있다/없다 .....	353
20. Denying the possibility of a situation:~(으)ㄴ 리(가) 있다/없다 .....	355

21. Expressing “Offering a favor or asking a favor”: ~아/어 주다, ~아/어 드리다 .....	357
22. Expressing one's desire to do something: ~고 싶다, ~고 싶어하다 .....	359
23. Expressing the speaker's wish for a certain condition: ~(으)면 좋겠다, ~(는/ㄴ)다면 좋겠다 .....	362
24. Expressing one's hope for a future event: ~기(를) 바라다 .....	364
25. Softening the tone of description: ~는/(으)ㄴ 편이다 .....	365
26. Exaggerating the speaker's emotion: ~아/어(서) 죽겠다 .....	366
27. Expressing a close call: ~(으)ㄴ 뻔하다 .....	367
28. Expressing “Be worth doing something” or “Be within one's ability”: ~(으)ㄴ 만하다 .....	368
29. Safeguarding an item or information: ~아/어 두다, ~아/어 놓다 .....	369
30. Expressing the unavailability after the completion of an action: ~아/어 버리다, ~아/어 먹다 .....	370
31. Expressing the inability to take further action: ~(으)ㄴ 뻔이다 .....	372
32. Describing a continuing state: ~아/어 있다 .....	373
33. Expressing indirect description: ~아/어 보이다, ~게 보이다 .....	374
34. Pretending to do something: ~는/(으)ㄴ 체하다/척하다 .....	375
35. Expressing “To be on one's way to”: ~는 길이다 .....	377
36. Expressing the elapse of time: ~(으)ㄴ 지 ~ 되다 .....	377
37. Attempting to do something/Asking someone to do something: ~아/어 보다 .....	378
38. Expressing one's past experience: ~아/어 봤다 .....	380
39. Expressing one's past experience indirectly: ~(으)ㄴ 적이 있다, ~(으)ㄴ 적이 없다 .....	381
40. Specifying a list of one's habitual actions: ~거나/든지/든가 ~거나/든지/든가 하다 .....	382

**chapter 23 Modal Auxiliaries II(보조동사 II)** 384

1. Expressing the speaker's wish for a currently unavailable situation: ~았/었으면 싶다 .....	384
2. Expressing “Having no regrets”: ~아/어도 여한이 없다 .....	385
3. Expressing extremity: ~기 그지없다/짜이 없다/한이 없다/이를 데 없다 .....	386
4. Making a speculation from the speaker's observation: ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄴ 모양이다 .....	387

5. Expressing the speaker's conjecture on a likely situation: ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 듯하다/듯싶다 .....	389
6. Expressing the speaker's thought on the likeliness of an event: ~(으)리라(고) 생각하다 .....	390
7. Emphasizing the possibility of a likely situation: ~는 수가/도 있다, ~(으)ㄴ 수가/도 있다 .....	391
8. Emphasizing the impossibility or Expressing extremity: ~(으)ㄴ 수가 없다 .....	393
9. Asserting no possibility of the given situation in the future: ~(으)ㄴ 수는 없다 .....	395
10. Expressing the speaker's frustration with the given situation: ~(으)ㄴ 수가 있어야죠 .....	396
11. Making a natural assumption about a possible situation: ~겠거니 하다, ~(으)려니 하다 .....	397
12. Expressing one's habitual action in the past: ~곤 하다 .....	398
13. Ordering someone to carry out an alternative action: ~지 말고 ~(으)세요 .....	398
14. Expressing the speaker's presumption: ~는가/(으)ㄴ가 하다, ~나 하다 .....	399
15. Expressing only one course of action/the speaker's rebuttal to others' opinions: ~기만 하다 .....	401
16. Expressing the speaker's acknowledgment of the fact with some reservation: ~기는 하다 .....	402
17. Expressing "Taking action occasionally" or "On top of": ~기도 하다 .....	403
18. Expressing the speaker's praise for one's having certain characteristics: ~기도 해라 .....	404
19. Expressing one's determination to achieve a goal or a negative outcome: ~고(야) 말다 .....	405
20. Getting things done successfully: ~아/어 내다 .....	407
21. Expressing "No other options available": ~(으)ㄴ 따름이다 .....	408
22. Expressing the speaker's readiness to take retaliatory action: ~기만 해 봐라 .....	410
23. Expressing "That's the way it is": ~는/(으)ㄴ 법이다, ~기/게 마련이다 .....	411
24. Expressing the natural/reasonable outcome of a given situation: ~(으)ㄴ 법(도)/만(도) 하다 .....	412

25. Expressing “Never happens regardless of the given situation”: ~는 법이 없다 .....	413
26. Expressing the speaker’s challenge of another’s authority: ~는 법이 있다 .....	414
27. Expressing the main cause for an unpleasant situation: ~는/(으)ㄴ 탓이다 .....	415
28. Underestimating one's capability/merit/effort: ~는/(으)ㄴ 게 고작이다 .....	416
29. Expressing the speaker's dissatisfaction with the given situation: ~느니만 못하다 .....	417
30. Exaggerating the speaker's negative feelings: ~(으)ㄴ 정도다/지경이다 .....	418
31. Exaggerating the magnitude of things with a negative connotation: ~아/어 빠지다/터지다 .....	419
32. Expressing “Needless to say”: ~ㄴ 나위가 없다 .....	420
33. Expressing the speaker's complaint about one's repetitive action: ~아/어 대다 .....	421
34. Expressing the completion of an action: ~아/어 치우다 .....	422
35. Expressing “It depends”: ~기 나름이다 .....	423
36. Expressing a calculated result or plan: ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄴ 셈이다 .....	424
37. Taking something for granted: ~는/(으)ㄴ 셈치다 .....	425
38. Expressing the likeliness of an unpleasant situation: ~기(가) 일쑤이다, ~기(가) 십상이다 .....	426
39. Expressing the speaker's feeling: ~는/(으)ㄴ 감이 있다/없지 않아 있다 .....	428
40. Expressing possibility/no possibility: ~(으)ㄴ 여지가 있다, ~(으)ㄴ 여지가 없다 .....	429
41. Expressing “Practically like”: ~다시피 하다 .....	430
42. Making No Difference: ~(으)나 마나(이)다 .....	431
43. Expressing “Depending on”: ~느냐에 달려 있다, ~기에 달려 있다 .....	432
44. Wavering between options: ~(으)ㄴ까 말까 하다 .....	434
45. Expressing “Almost, but not quite yet”: ~(으)ㄴ락 말락하다 .....	435
46. Trying to do something aggressively: ~(으)ㄴ(고) 들다 .....	436
47. Relaying one's message to others: ~(는/ㄴ)다고/냐고/(으)라고/자고 그래요 .....	437
48. Rephrasing the speaker's previous statement: ~(는/ㄴ)다는/냐는/라는/자는 말이다 .....	440

49. Expressing unavailability in a given situation: ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 것이/거(가)/게 없다 .....	442
50. Being unable to sustain a given situation: ~(으)르래야/(으)려고 해도 ~(으)ㄴ 수(가) 없다 .....	444

**chapter 24 Sentence Endings I(문장 종결어미 I)\_ 446**

1. Expressing the speaker's surprise about an unexpected situation: ~(는)군(요), ~(는)구나, ~네(요) .....	447
2. Expressing the speaker's strong intention to take action: ~지(요), ~(으)르래(요) .....	449
3. Asking about the listener's intention: ~(으)르래(요)? .....	451
4. Soliciting information: ~지(요)? .....	451
5. Seeking agreement/disagreement from the listener (Tag Question): ~지(요)? .....	453
6. Expressing the speaker's determination to take action/to achieve a goal: ~(으)르테야, ~고 말테야 .....	456
7. Expressing the speaker's weak intention: ~(으)르게(요) .....	457
8. Expressing the weak possibility of a situation: ~(으)르걸(요) .....	458
9. Asking for information politely: ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 건가요? .....	459
10. Making an indirect question to seek information: ~는/(으)ㄴ가요?, ~나요? .....	461
11. Seeking the listener's response to the speaker's suggestion or speculation: ~(으)르까(요)? .....	464
12. Expressing the speaker's speculation: ~(으)르 텐데(요) .....	466
13. Making a strong confirmation of a given situation: ~잖아(요) .....	468
14. Making a suggestion/a soft complaint to the listener: ~지 그래(요)?, ~지 그랬어(요)? .....	470
15. Making a request to the listener: ~(으)르무나, ~(으)렴 .....	471
16. Providing the reason for a given situation or denying/ rejecting what the listener said or suggested: ~거든(요) .....	472
17. Waiting for the listener's response: ~는/(으)ㄴ 데(요) .....	473
18. Trying to correct the listener's false information: ~는/(으)ㄴ 데(요), ~는/(으)ㄴ 걸(요) .....	474
19. Questioning the likeliness of a situation: ~(는/ㄴ)다/라/자니(요)? .....	477

20. Making sure that the speaker's understanding the situation is correct: ~(는/ㄴ)다/라/자고(요)? .....	478
21. Expressing the speaker's complete agreement: ~고말고(요) .....	481

**chapter 25 Sentence Endings II(문장 종결어미 II)\_ 482**

1. Making an indirect question about one's past experience: ~던가(요)? .....	482
2. Showing regret for not having carried out an action: ~(으)르걸 (그랬다), ~았/었어야 했는데 .....	484
3. Reaffirming one's claim: ~(는/ㄴ)다/냐/(으)라/자고(요) .....	486
4. Reporting the speaker's observation of a past event: ~던데(요), ~더군(요), ~더라고(요) .....	488
5. Expressing "Knock it off": ~(는/ㄴ)다지 않아(요), ~(는/ㄴ)대지 않아(요) ...	491
6. Expressing the speaker's conviction: ~(으)르 테지(요) .....	494
7. Expressing the speaker's disagreement or humbling his/her own merit: ~기능(요) (뭘) .....	495
8. Trying to relieve the listener's uneasy feeling: ~는/(으)ㄴ데(요) 뭘 .....	496
9. Expressing the speaker's worry about a possible adverse situation: ~(으)르라 .....	498
10. Expressing the speaker's unwavering determination: ~(으)리라 .....	499
11. Seeking the listener's opinion: ~(으)랴? .....	500
12. Expressing the speaker's complaint in self-talk: ~는/ㄴ담 .....	501
13. Expressing the speaker's strong desire: ~계(요) .....	502

**chapter 26 Pragmatic Strategies\_ 504**

I . Topic Setting .....	505
II . Focus Setting .....	507
1. Prosodic Focus Setting .....	507
2. Pragmatic Focus Setting .....	508
III . Contrastive Focus Setting .....	513
IV . Suppression of Nonessential Information .....	515

<b>APPENDIX A Verbal Suffix Ordering (동사 접미사 순서)</b>	517
<b>APPENDIX B Adverbial Suffixes (부사화 접미사)</b>	519
<b>APPENDIX C Mathematical Operations and Geometry (수학 연산과 기하)</b>	520
<b>I . Reading Numbers and Signs in Mathematical Operations</b>	
(수와 연산 기호 읽기) .....	521
1. Reading Numbers (수 읽기) .....	521
2. Reading Arithmetic Operations (연산 기호 읽기) .....	522
3. Reading Mathematical Signs and Operations (수학 기호와 연산 읽기) .....	523
<b>II . Identifying and Describing Geometric Shapes (도형)</b> .....	525
1. Basic Geometric Notions .....	525
2. Basic Geometric Shapes .....	526
3. Describing Two-Dimensional Geometric Shapes .....	528
4. Describing Three-Dimensional Geometric Shapes .....	531
<b>REFERENCES (참고문헌)</b> .....	533
<b>INDEX (색인)</b> .....	534





# 01 Phonology (음운론)

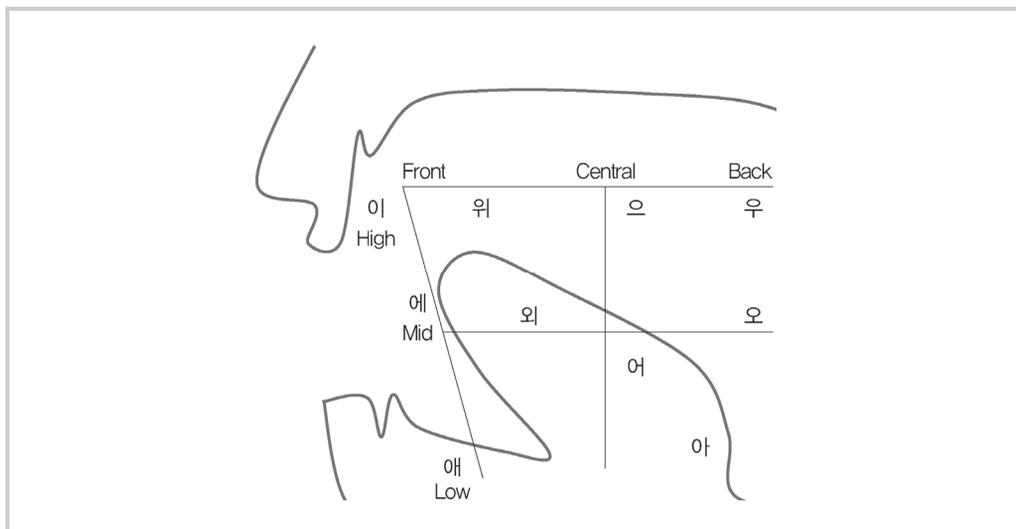
## I . Vowels (모음)

Altogether there are twenty-one vowels that are currently used in Korean: ten simple vowels (단모음) and eleven diphthongs (이중모음), or sometimes called semivowels. The simple vowels can be further categorized in terms of tongue height, tongue position, and the shape of lips when they are pronounced.

### 1. Ten Simple Vowels (단모음): 아, 어, 오, 우, 으, 이, 애, 예, 외, 위

The following vowel chart illustrates where each simple vowel is pronounced in the oral cavity.

Simple Vowel Chart (단모음도표)



(1) Tongue Height (혀의 높이): The vertical position of tongue when a vowel is pronounced.

High vowels (고모음): 이, 위, 으, 우

Mid vowels (중모음): 예, 외, 어, 오

Low vowels (저모음): 애, 아

(2) Tongue Position (혀의 위치): The horizontal position of tongue when a vowel is pronounced.

Front vowels (전설모음): 이, 예, 애, 위, 외

Central vowels (중설모음): 으, 어

Back vowels (후설모음): 우, 오, 아

(3) Shape of Lips (입술의 모양): The shape of lips when a vowel is pronounced.

Round Vowels (원순모음): 오, 우, 외, 위

Unrounded Vowels (평순모음): 아, 어, 으, 이, 애, 예

**Note:** By convention, the consonant “ㅇ” before each vowel is used here as a place holder which does not have a sound value at the beginning of a syllable.

## 2. Eleven Diphthongs (이중모음): 야, 여, 요, 유, 애, 예, 와, 왜, 워, 웨, 의

Diphthongs (이중모음)	
“이” Diphthong	야(이+아), 여(이+어), 요(이+오), 유(이+우), 애(이+애), 예(이+예)
“오/우” Diphthong	와(오+아), 왜(오+애), 워(우+어), 웨(우+예)
“으” Diphthong	의(으+이)

Diphthongs are created by the combination of two simple vowels in sequence. When the two consecutive vowels are pronounced together as a single pronunciation unit, the first vowel tends to be shortened and sounds like the semivowel “y” or “w” in English. Depending on the nature of the first vowel of each diphthong, we can subcategorize the Korean diphthongs into three different categories for grammatical purposes: “이” diphthong, “오/우” diphthong, and “으” diphthong.

### 3. Pronunciation Guide for Korean Vowels

The following are the general guidelines for pronouncing Korean vowels using the closest possible counterparts in common English words.

#### (1) Pronunciation of Simple Vowels (단모음 발음)

“아” (the low back unrounded vowel) sounds like “a” as in “father.”

“어” (the mid unrounded vowel) sounds like “u” as in “summer.”

“오” (the mid back round vowel) sounds like “o” as in “morning.”

“우” (the high back round vowel) sounds like “oo” as in “moon.”

“으” (the high mid unrounded vowel) does not have an English equivalent sound.

The approximate sound can be generated by pronouncing “u” as in “pull” while making your lips flat.

“이” (the high front vowel) sounds like “ee” as in “see.”

“애” (the low front unrounded vowel) sounds like “a” as in “apple.”

“에” (the mid front unrounded vowel) sounds like “e” as in “get.”

“외” (the mid front round vowel) sounds like “we” as in “welcome.”

“위” (the high front round vowel) sounds like “we” as in “we.”

#### (2) Pronunciation for Eleven Diphthongs (이중모음 발음)

“야,” which is a combination of “이+아,” sounds like “ya” as in “yarn.”

“여,” which is a combination of “이+어,” sounds like “yo” as in “yonder.”

“요,” which is a combination of “이+오,” sounds like “yo” as in “yogurt.”

“유,” which is a combination of “이+우,” sounds like “you” as in “you.”

“얘,” which is a combination of “이+애,” sounds like “ya” as in “yank.”

“예,” which is a combination of “이+에,” sounds like “yea” as in “yeah.”

“와,” which is a combination of “오+아,” sounds like “wa” as in “watch.”

“왜,” which is a combination of “오+애,” sounds like “wa” as in “wax.”

“위,” which is a combination of “우+어,” sounds like “wo” as in “wonder.”

“웨,” which is a combination of “우+에,” sounds like “we” as in “wedding.”

“의,” which is a combination of “으+이,” does not have an English equivalent sound.

## II. Consonants (자음)

There are nineteen consonants that are currently used in Korean. These consonants can be classified into non-resonant sounds (안 울림소리) and resonant sounds (울림소리). Non-resonant sounds are produced by the obstruction of the air stream in some manner at a certain place in the vocal tract. The consonant sounds, other than nasals and laterals, fall into this category. In contrast, resonants are the sounds that can be generated through relatively free passage of the air stream in the vocal tract. All vowels, nasal sounds, and laterals belong to this category. The resonant and non-resonant consonants can be further categorized in terms of their place of articulation and their manner of articulation.

Consonant Chart (자음도표)

Manner of Articulation (소리 내는 방법)		Place of Articulation (소리 내는 위치)	Bilabial (입술)	Alveolar (윗잇몸)	Palatal (Hard Palate: 센입천장)	Velar (Soft Palate: 여린입천장)	Glottal (목청)
Non-resonants (안 울림소리)	Stops (파열음)	Normal (예사소리)	ㅂ	ㄷ		ㄱ	
		Aspirated (거센소리)	ㅍ	ㅌ		ㅋ	
		Tensed (된소리)	ㅃ	ㄸ		ㄲ	
	Fricatives (마찰음)	Normal (예사소리)		ㅅ			ㅎ
		Tensed (된소리)		ㅆ			
	Affricates (파찰음)	Normal (예사소리)			ㅈ		
		Aspirated (거센소리)			ㅊ		
		Tensed (된소리)			ㅉ		
	Resonants (울림소리)	Nasal stops (비음)	ㅁ	ㄴ		ㅇ	
Laterals (유음)			ㄹ				

## 1. Stops (파열음): ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ / ㅋ, ㅌ, ㅍ / ㆁ, ㄷ, ㅃ

When producing these sounds, the air stream in the oral cavity is blocked at one point of articulation and then released all at once. Depending on the place of blockage in the oral cavity, these sounds can be further categorized into bilabial stops (the air stream is blocked by closed lips), alveolar stops (the air stream is blocked by the tip of the tongue at the hard gum ridge behind the upper teeth), and velar stops (the air stream is blocked by the tip of the tongue near the upper soft palate).

### (1) Normal (unaspirated) Stops

“ㅂ” (the bilabial stop) sounds like “b” as in “boy” when it occurs between vowels.

Otherwise, it sounds like “p” as in “pop” without a heavy puff of air.

“ㄷ” (the alveolar stop) sounds like “d” as in “dog” when it occurs between vowels.

Otherwise, it sounds like “t” as in “tot” without a heavy puff of air.

“ㄱ” (the velar stop) sounds like “g” as in “go” when it occurs between vowels.

Otherwise, it sounds like “k” as in “kick” without a heavy puff of air.

### (2) Aspirated Stops

“ㅍ” (the aspirated bilabial stop) sounds like “ph” as in “pop” with a heavy puff of air.

“ㅌ” (the aspirated alveolar stop) sounds like “th” as in “tot” with a heavy puff of air.

“ㅋ” (the aspirated velar stop) sounds like “kh” as in “kick” with a heavy puff of air.

### (3) Tensed Stops

“ㅃ” (the tensed bilabial stop) sounds like “p” as in “spot.”

“ㄸ” (the aspirated alveolar stop) sounds like “t” as in “star.”

“ㆁ” (the aspirated velar stop) sounds like “k” as in “sky.”

## 2. Fricatives (마찰음): 스, 쑈, 허

When producing these sounds, the air stream in the oral cavity continues to flow, but generates an air friction due to the narrow channel for air passage. Depending on where the air friction occurs in the oral cavity, these sounds can be further categorized into alveolar fricatives (the air friction occurs at the hard gum ridge behind the upper teeth because the tip of the tongue is getting closer to the area) and glottal fricative (the air friction occurs at the upper soft palate in the back of the oral cavity because the tip of the tongue is getting closer to the area).

“스” (the alveolar fricative) sounds like “s” as in “smile or style.” But it sounds like “sh” as in “she” when it appears before the vowel “이” or the diphthongs generated by the vowel “이” such as “아, 여, 요, 유, 애, 예.”

“쑈” (the tensed alveolar fricative) sounds like “s” as in “seal or soul” with heavy air friction.

“허” (the glottal fricative) sounds like “h” as in “have.”

## 3. Affricates (파찰음): 스, 에스, 쑈

When producing these sounds, the air stream in the oral cavity is blocked first at the upper hard palate and then slightly released to generate air friction.

“스” (the palatal affricate) sounds like “j” as in “jungle” when it occurs between vowels.

Otherwise, it sounds like “ch” as in “child” without a heavy puff of air.

“에스” (the aspirated palatal affricate) sounds like “ch” as in “church” with a heavy puff of air.

“쑈” (the tensed palatal affricate) does not have an English equivalent sound.

## 4. Nasal Stops (비음): ㄴ, ㅁ, ㅇ

When producing these sounds, the air stream is blocked in the oral cavity but continues

to flow through the nasal cavity. Depending on the place of blockage in the oral cavity, these sounds can be further categorized into bilabial nasal stops (the air stream is blocked by closed lips), alveolar nasal stops (the air stream is blocked by the tip of the tongue at the hard gum ridge behind the upper teeth), and velar nasal stops (the air stream is blocked by the tip of the tongue near the upper soft palate).

“ㅁ” (the bilabial nasal stop) sounds like “m” as in “mom.”

“ㄴ” (the alveolar nasal stop) sounds like “n” as in “no.”

“ㅇ” (the velar nasal stop) sounds like “ng” as in “song.”

**Note:** The consonant “ㅇ” is pronounced as “ng” when it occurs at the syllable final position as in “강 (river).” However, if it occurs at the syllable initial position as in “안 (not),” it is simply a place holder that does not have a sound value.

## 5. Lateral (유음): ㄹ

When producing this sound, the air stream is partially blocked by the tongue near the hard gum ridge behind the upper teeth or near the hard palate but continues to flow through the sides of the tongue. “ㄹ” (the alveolar lateral) sounds like “r” as in “grass” at the beginning of a syllable and like “l” as in “gllass” at the end of a syllable. But it sounds like “l” as in “walter” when it occurs between vowels.

However, unlike the English “l” or “r” as in “gllass” or “grass,” there is no change in the meaning of the word no matter how you pronounce it.

## III. Phonological Rules (음운법칙)

The original sound value of each consonant can be subsequently changed depending on the environment where it occurs. The following are the core rules that apply in various phonological environments.

## 1. Voicing (유성음화)

When the consonants “ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅈ” occur between vowels, they become voiced sounds.

Between Vowels (모음 사이에)	English Equivalent Sound (동일한 영어 소리)
ㄱ	“ㄱ” sounds like “g” as in “go” between vowels. It does not sound like “k” as in “kick.”
ㄷ	“ㄷ” sounds like “d” as in “dog” between vowels. It does not sound like “t” as in “tot.”
ㅂ	“ㅂ” sounds like “b” as in “boy” between vowels. It does not sound like “p” as in “pop.”
ㅈ	“ㅈ” sounds like “j” as in “jungle” between vowels. It does not sound like “ch” as in “child.”

## 2. Syllable Final Consonant Rule (종성 자음 법칙)

With the exception of the three tensed consonants “ㄷ, ㅃ, ㅉ,” all the Korean consonants introduced here can occur in the syllable initial position and also in the syllable final position. When they appear in the syllable final position, however, the following phonological rules apply and change their original sound values.

Syllable Final Position (종성)	Pronounced As (발음)	English Equivalent Sound (동일한 영어 소리)
ㄱ, ㅋ, ㆁ	ㄱ	“k” as in “book” or “cook” without releasing the air stream in the soft palate at the end of the syllable.
ㄷ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅊ, ㅌ, ㅍ	ㄷ	“t” as in “pot” or “to” without releasing the air stream in the hard gum ridge at the end of the syllable.
ㅂ, ㅍ	ㅂ	“p” as in “pop” or “mop” without releasing the air stream by closing your lips at the end of the syllable.

- (1) The syllable final consonants “ㄱ, ㅋ, ㆁ” as in “박, 억, 밖” are all pronounced the same as “ㄱ” as in “가.”
- (2) The syllable final consonants “ㄷ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅊ, ㅌ, ㅍ” as in “밭, 빗, 찻, 잇, 알” are all pronounced the same as “ㄷ” as in “다.”

(3) The syllable final consonants “ㄷ, ㅍ” as in “압, 잎” are all pronounced the same as “ㄷ” as in “바.”

### 3. Linking Rule (연음법칙)

If a syllable ends with a consonant followed by a vowel in the next syllable, then the syllable final consonant will be carried over and combined with the vowel in the following syllable. This rule always applies within a word boundary, but not across different words.

Syllable Ending with a consonant (자음으로 끝나는 음절)	Syllable Beginning with a Vowel (모음으로 시작하는 음절)	Actual Pronunciation (실제 발음)
책	이	책 + 이 → [채기]
밥	을	밥 + 을 → [바블]
벽	에	벽 + 에 → [벼게]
사람	이	사람 + 이 → [사라미]
죽	어	죽 + 어 → [주거]
밖	에	밖 + 에 → [바께]
있	어	있 + 어 → [이써]
남	이	남 + 이 → [나미]
종	을	종 + 을 → [종을] *1
줄	을	줄 + 을 → [조을] *2

**Note:**

1. Although the syllable final consonant “ㅇ” is followed by a vowel in the next syllable, its nasal sound will be retained. The reason for this exception is quite logical because once the syllable final consonant “ㅇ” with the sound value of “ng” as in “song” is moved to the beginning of the next syllable, it will lose its sound value and cannot be pronounced. Therefore, it stays in the syllable final position even in the case that it is followed by a vowel.  
종 + 이 → [종이], 병 + 을 → [병을], 강 + 에 → [강에]
2. When the syllable final consonant “ㅎ” is followed by a vowel, it will be simply dropped.

It is also necessary to pay special attention to the interaction between this linking rule and the syllable final consonant rule. As we already mentioned, most of the syllable final consonants undergo some phonological changes such as “ㄱ, ㅋ, ㆁ” → “ㄱ,” “ㄷ, ㅌ, ㄴ” → “ㄷ,” “ㅌ, ㅍ” → “ㄷ.”

But the linking rule here always overrides the application of the syllable final consonant rule. Once the linking rule applies to the syllable final consonant and thereby moves it to the beginning of the next syllable, the syllable final consonant rule can no longer apply to the newly created phonological environment, which produces correct pronunciations.

- 밖+에 → [바께] (O)
- 빋+이 → [비시] (O)
- 잎+이 → [이피] (O)

On the other hand, if we apply the syllable final consonant rule first and then the linking rule after that, it will generate incorrect pronunciations.

- 밖+에 → 밖+에 → [바께] (X)
- 빋+이 → 빋+이 → [비디] (X)
- 잎+이 → 입+이 → [이비] (X)

#### 4. Aspiration (거센소리화)

When the consonants “ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅈ” appear before or after “ㅎ” consecutively, they will be combined together and become their corresponding aspirated consonants “ㅋ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅊ.”

Consonant Combination (자음 조합)	Example (예제)	Actual Pronunciation (실제 발음)
ㄱ + ㅎ	박 + 하	[바카]
ㅎ + ㄱ	쌀 + 고	[싸코]
ㄷ + ㅎ	달 + 히다	[다티다] → [다치다] <sup>1</sup> (Palatalization Rule)
ㅎ + ㄷ	널 + 다	[너타]
ㅂ + ㅎ	입 + 학	[이팍]
ㅎ + ㅂ	No such combination can be found in Korean <sup>2</sup>	
ㅈ + ㅎ	젓 + 히다	[저치다]
ㅎ + ㅈ	줄 + 지	[조치]

**Note:**

1. In the case of the combination “ㄷ + ㅎ,” all the possible Korean expressions undergo the application of the palatalization rule which changes “ㄷ or ㅌ” into “ㅈ or ㅊ,” respectively, before the vowel “이.”
2. The combination “ㅎ + ㅌ” does not actually exist in Korean expressions.

## 5. Palatalization (구개음화)

When the consonants “ㄷ” or “ㅌ” occur at the end of a syllable and are followed by the vowel “이,” “ㄷ” or “ㅌ” are changed into “ㅈ” or “ㅊ,” respectively.

“ㄷ” or “ㅌ”	Actual Pronunciation (실제 발음)
굳 + 이	[구지]
해돋 + 이	[해도지]
갈 + 이	[가치]
불 + 이다	[부치다]
물 + 히다 <sup>1</sup>	[무티다] Aspiration → [무치다] Palatalization
달 + 히다 <sup>1</sup>	[다티다] Aspiration → [다치다] Palatalization

**Note:**

1. The syllable final consonant “ㄷ” in “물 + 히다, 달 + 히다” is first combined with “ㅎ” according to the rule of aspiration which results in “[무티다], [다티다].” Then, the palatalization rule applies and subsequently changes “ㅌ” into “ㅊ” as in “[무치다], [다치다].” In the case of “물혀 [무쳐], 받혀 [바쳐],” the vowel that initiates the palatalization rule is still “이,” not the diphthong “여,” which is a combination of “이” + “어.” The vowel “어” here might be a part of the following modal auxiliary verb or other connectors, as in “물히 + 어 있다, 물히 + 어(서).” In the word “마디 [마디],” however, “ㄷ” occurs before the vowel “이,” but the palatalization rule doesn’t apply because the consonant “ㄷ” has never been in the syllable final position.

## 6. Consonant Assimilation (자음동화)

Consonant assimilation is a phonological process in which a consonant may affect the sound value of another adjacent consonant.

**Note:** Depending on the direction of the influence, it can be classified into three different categories: progressive assimilation (순행동화), regressive assimilation (역행동화), and reciprocal assimilation (상호동화).

### (1) Progressive Nasalization (순행 비음화)

When the lateral consonant “ㄹ” is preceded by the nasal consonants “ㄱ, ㅇ,” it becomes the nasal sound “ㄴ,” which is produced in the same place of articulation.

Consonant Combination (자음 조합)	Nasalization (비음화)	Example (예제)
ㄱ + ㄹ	ㄱ + ㄴ	담 + 력 → [담 <sup>ㄴ</sup> 력]
ㅇ + ㄹ	ㅇ + ㄴ	종 + 로 → [종 <sup>ㄴ</sup> 로]

### (2) Regressive Nasalization (역행 비음화)

When the stop consonants “ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ” are followed by the nasal consonants “ㄴ, ㄹ,” they become their corresponding nasal consonants “ㅇ, ㄴ, ㄹ,” which are produced in the same place of articulation.

Consonant Combination (자음 조합)	Nasalization (비음화)	Example (예제)
ㄱ + ㄴ	ㅇ + ㄴ	작 + 년 → [장 <sup>ㅇ</sup> 년]
ㄱ + ㄹ	ㅇ + ㄹ	국 + 민 → [궁 <sup>ㅇ</sup> 민]
ㄷ + ㄴ	ㄴ + ㄴ	믿 + 는다 → [민 <sup>ㄴ</sup> 는다]
ㄷ + ㄹ	ㄴ + ㄹ	만 + 며느리 → [만 <sup>ㄴ</sup> 며느리]
ㅂ + ㄴ	ㅂ + ㄴ	굽 + 는 → [굽 <sup>ㅂ</sup> 는]
ㅂ + ㄹ	ㅂ + ㄹ	밥 + 물 → [밤 <sup>ㅂ</sup> 물]

This nasalization rule also applies to the output of the application of the syllable final consonant rule.

Syllable Final Position (종성)	Pronounced As (발음)	Consonant Combination (자음 조합)	Nasalization (비음화)	Example (예제)
ㄱ, ㅋ, ㆁ	ㄱ	ㄱ + ㄴ	ㅇ + ㄴ	부엌 + 문 → 부엌 + 문 → [부 <sup>ㅇ</sup> 엌문]
		ㄱ + ㄹ	ㅇ + ㄹ	밖 + 만 → 밖 + 만 → [방 <sup>ㅇ</sup> 만]
ㄷ, ㅌ, ㅊ, ㅌ, ㅈ, ㅉ, ㅊ	ㄷ	ㄷ + ㄴ	ㄴ + ㄴ	샷 + 는지 → 샷 + 는지 → [산 <sup>ㄴ</sup> 는지]
		ㄷ + ㄹ	ㄴ + ㄹ	꽃 + 만 → 꽃 + 만 → [꼇 <sup>ㄴ</sup> 만]
ㅂ, ㅍ	ㅂ	ㅂ + ㄴ	ㅂ + ㄴ	얏 + 문 → 얏 + 문 → [암 <sup>ㅂ</sup> 문]
		ㅂ + ㄹ	ㅂ + ㄹ	갓 + 는 → 갓 + 는 → [갓 <sup>ㅂ</sup> 는]

### (3) Reciprocal Nasalization (상호 비음화)

When the stop consonants “ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ” are followed by the lateral consonant “ㄹ,” they become their corresponding nasal consonants “ㅇ, ㄴ, ㅁ.” Then, these newly created nasal consonants influence the following lateral consonant “ㄹ” and change it into the corresponding nasal consonant “ㄴ.”

Stop Consonant (파열음)	Consonant Combination (자음 조합)	Nasalization I (비음화 I)	Nasalization II (비음화 II)	Example (예제)
ㄱ	ㄱ + ㄹ	ㅇ + ㄹ	ㅇ + ㄴ	국+력 → <b>궁</b> +력 → 궁+ <b>녁</b> → [궁녁] 막+론 → <b>망</b> +론 → 망+ <b>논</b> → [망논]
ㄷ	ㄷ + ㄹ	ㄴ + ㄹ	ㄴ + ㄴ	몇+리 → <b>면</b> +리 → <b>면</b> +리 → 면+ <b>니</b> → [면니]
ㅂ	ㅂ + ㄹ	ㅁ + ㄹ	ㅁ + ㄴ	압+력 → <b>암</b> +력 → 암+ <b>녁</b> → [암녁] 범+룰 → <b>범</b> +룰 → 범+ <b>놀</b> → [범놀]

### (4) Progressive & Regressive lateralization (유음화)

When the nasal consonant “ㄴ” is preceded or followed by the lateral consonant “ㄹ,” it becomes the lateral sound “ㄹ,” which is produced in the same place of articulation.

Consonant Combination (자음 조합)	Nasalization (비음화)	Example (예제)
Before ㄹ	ㄴ + ㄹ	신+라 → [실라] 난+로 → [날로]
After ㄹ	ㄹ + ㄴ	칼+날 → [칼랄] 줄+넘기 → [줄럽기]
Before & After ㄹ	ㄹ + ㄴ ㄴ + ㄹ	물+난+리 → 물+ <b>란</b> +리 → 물+ <b>랄</b> +리 → [물랄리]

## 7. Tensification (경음화)

When the consonants “ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅆ” are preceded by another stop sound, nasal sound, or lateral sound, they tend to become tensified and changed into their corresponding tensed sounds “ㄲ, ㄸ, ㅃ, ㅆ, ㅉ.”

Consonant Combination (자음 조합)	Tensification (경음화)	Example (예제)
ㄱ + ㄱ ㄴ + ㄱ ㄹ + ㄱ ㅁ + ㄱ ㅂ + ㄱ ㅅ + ㄱ ㅈ + ㄱ	ㄱ	먹+거리 → [먹 <b>꺼</b> 리] 문+고리 → [문 <b>꼬</b> 리] 할+것이 → [할 <b>꺼</b> 시] 넘+고 → [넘 <b>꼬</b> ] 밥+그릇 → [밥 <b>꼬</b> 릇] 젓+가락 → <b>젓</b> +가락 → [젓 <b>까</b> 락] 꽃+고 → <b>꼐</b> +고 → [꼐 <b>꼬</b> ]
ㄹ + ㄷ ㅇ + ㄷ	ㄷ	할+도리를 → [할 <b>또</b> 리를] 장+단지 → [장 <b>뎌</b> 지]
ㄱ + ㅂ	ㅂ	국+밥 → [국 <b>뽽</b> ] 국+빈 → [국 <b>뽤</b> ]
ㄹ + ㅅ	ㅅ	이럴+수가 → [이 <b>러</b> 쑤개] 쓸+수룩 → [쓸 <b>쑤</b> 룩]
ㅅ + ㅈ ㅇ + ㅈ	ㅈ	웃+자고 → <b>울</b> +자고 → [울 <b>짜</b> 고] 단+점 → [단 <b>뺨</b> ]

**Note:** There are some exceptions to this rule as in the following: 눈구경 → [눈구경], 단도리 → [단도리], 장단 → [장뎌], etc.

## 8. Consonant Insertion (자음 삽입)

The nasal consonant “ㄴ” or the lateral consonant “ㄹ” are sometimes inserted between a syllable ending with a consonant and a syllable beginning with the “이” diphthongs. But this insertion rule is not very productive, and therefore it is highly recommended to memorize them as they are.

Consonant Insertion (자음 삽입)	Example (예제)
ㄴ	한+여름 → [한 <b>녀</b> 름] 십+육 → 십+ <b>늑</b> → 십+ <b>늑</b> → [십 <b>늑</b> ]
ㄹ	서울+역 → [서울 <b>려</b> ]

## 9. Syllable Final Consonant Clusters (종성 복자음)

A consonant cluster is a phonological unit which is produced by combining two different

consonants. There are eleven consonant clusters that are currently being used in Korean. Although they cannot appear in the syllable initial position, they frequently occur in the syllable final position. Since each consonant in a consonant cluster has its own sound value, it may be difficult to pronounce two different consonants in the same syllable position at the same time. It is, therefore, a common strategy that native speakers tend to pronounce only one of them.

Syllable Final Consonant Clusters (중성 복자음)	Pronounced Consonant (발음되는 자음)	Phonological Change (음운 변화)	Example (예제)
ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄷ, ㄹ, ㄺ, ㄻ, ㄼ, ㄽ, ㄾ	Only the First Consonant	묵 → [목] 앉 → [안] 앉 → [안] 굶 → [골] 핥 → [할] 잃 → [일] 없 → [업]	(자기) 묵만 → [목만] (자리에) 앉는다 → [안는다] (먹지) 앉는다 → [안는다] 외굶 → [외골] (그릇을) 핥는다 → [할는다] (돈을) 잃는다 → [일는다] 없는 (뜻이) → [업는]
ㄷ, ㄸ, ㄹ, ㄺ	Only the Second Consonant	흙 → [혹] 삶 → [삼] 밭 → [밭] 읊 → [읍] → [읍]	흙더미 → [혹더미] (물에) 삶는다 → [삼는다] (땅을) 밭는다 → [밭는다] (시를) 읊는다 → [읍는다] → [읍는다]

However, in most cases, each consonant in these consonant clusters can either fully retain its sound value or will bring another phonological change to a neighboring consonant according to the rules that we have discussed so far. For example, if a consonant cluster is followed by a vowel in the following syllable, the second consonant is carried over to the next syllable according to “Linking rule.” The consonant clusters “ㄷ, ㄸ” that end with “ㄷ” are the only exception to this rule. In this case, it is simply being deleted, and the preceding consonants “ㄴ, ㄹ” are carried over to the next syllable instead. Secondly, if the second consonant is “ㅎ” in a consonant cluster such as “ㄷ, ㄸ” and is followed by “ㄱ, ㄴ, ㅁ, ㅂ,” it will be combined together with the following consonant and produce their corresponding aspirated consonants “ㅋ, ㆁ, ㅍ, ㆁ” according to “the rule of Aspiration.” Lastly, if the consonant clusters “ㄷ, ㄸ” are followed by the consonants “ㄱ, ㄴ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ,” the second consonant of these consonant clusters initiates the rule of tensification and subsequently changes the following consonant into a tensed counterpart before it gets deleted.

Syllable Final Consonant Clusters (종성 복자음)	Phonological Rule (음운 법칙)	Example (예제)
ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄴ, ㄴ, ㄹ, ㄹ, ㅁ, ㄹ, ㄹ, ㄹ, ㄹ	Linking Rule	못 + 이 → [목시] 앉 + 아 → [안자] (먹지) 않 + 아서 → 안 + 아서 → [아나서] <sup>1</sup> 할 + 아 → [할타] 일 + 어 → 일 + 어 → [이러] <sup>1</sup> 없 + 으니 → [업스니] 흥 + 이 → [흥기] 삼 + 으면서 → [살므면서] 밭 + 으니 → [밭브니] 읊 + 으며 → [을프며]
ㄴ, ㄹ	Aspiration	(할 일을) 않 + 고서 → [안코서] (돈을) 잃 + 다니 → [일타니] ㄴ, ㄹ + ㅂ *Not possible combination (돈을) 잃 + 자 → [일차]
ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄹ, ㄹ, ㅁ, ㄹ, ㄹ, ㄹ	Tensification	못 + 과 → [목과] 앉 + 고 → [안고] 외궂 + 으로 → [외궂쓰로] <sup>2</sup> 할 + 고 → [할꼬] 없 + 고 → [업꼬] 밭 + 게 → [밭께] 넓 + 고 → [널꼬] 읊 + 고 → [을꼬]

**Note:**

1. When the syllable final consonant “ㅎ” is followed by a vowel, it will be simply dropped, and the preceding consonants “ㄴ, ㄹ” are carried over to the next syllable according to “Linking Rule.”
2. When the word “궂,” which means “only one direction,” is followed by a vowel, the second syllable- final consonant “ㅅ” will be carried over to the beginning of the next syllable, and it will be automatically tensified. This rule applies only to this specific word, which is rarely used in actual speech.  
궂 + 이 → [골씨], 한 궂으로 → [한 골쓰로]

## 10. Vowel Harmony (모음조화)

Vowel harmony is a very common rule in Korean. It applies especially when we attach a variety of suffixes or connectors to a given verb. The rule itself is quite simple and can be stated as “If the preceding syllable contains the vowel “오” or “아,” the vowel “아” is to be attached to the verb stem, otherwise the vowel “어” is attached instead. The main reason is that the vowels “오” or “아” stand out among all vowels and are designated

as “light vowels,” and the rest of the vowels are named as “dark vowels.” The Vowel Harmony rule explains the tendency that a light vowel tends to occur together with another light vowel in its vicinity while avoiding other dark vowels. Therefore, whenever there is an option available, a light vowel tries to mingle with another light vowel.

Suffixation (접미사화)	Suffixes (접미사)	Example (예제)
Past Tense Suffixes	았 었	잡다 → 잡+ <b>았</b> 먹다 → 먹+ <b>었</b>
Informal Honorific Suffixes	아요 어요	잡다 → 잡+ <b>아요</b> 먹다 → 먹+ <b>어요</b>
Modal Auxiliaries	아 보다 어 보다	잡다 → 잡+ <b>아</b> 보다 먹다 → 먹+ <b>어</b> 보다
Connectors	아서 어서	잡다 → 잡+ <b>아서</b> 먹다 → 먹+ <b>어서</b>

#### IV. Syllable Structure (음절 구조)

A syllable that consists of consonants and a vowel is a minimal phonological unit that can be naturally pronounced by native speakers. Although individual sounds have their own sound values, the majority of them, especially consonant sounds, are no more than simple noises when they are pronounced in isolation. The following are the six possible syllable structures in Korean:

Syllable Structure (음절 구조)	Example (예제)
V	<b>아</b> as in <b>아</b> 버지
V+C	<b>웃</b> as in <b>잠</b> 웃
V+C+C	<b>알</b> as in <b>알</b> 다
C+V	<b>노</b> as in <b>노</b> 래, <b>까</b> as in <b>까</b> 마귀
C+V+C	<b>책</b> as in <b>공</b> 책
C+V+C+C	<b>밖</b> as in <b>밖</b> 다

However, there are some restrictions on which consonant may appear in the given syllable position.

Syllable Position (음절에서의 위치)	Consonants & Vowels that can appear in each syllable position (각 음절 위치에 사용되는 자음과 모음)
Syllable Initial Consonant Position (초성)	ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄷ, ㄹ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅇ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㅍ, ㅎ ㄱ, ㆁ, ㅃ, ㅅ, ㅆ (All 19 single consonants including the tensed consonants)
Vowel Position (중성)	ㅏ, ㅑ, ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅗ, ㅛ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ, ㅐ, ㅔ, ㅖ, ㅘ, ㅙ, ㅚ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ ㅏ, ㅑ, ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅗ, ㅛ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ, ㅐ, ㅔ, ㅖ, ㅘ, ㅙ, ㅚ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ (All 21 vowels)
Syllable Final Position (종성)	ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄷ, ㄹ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅇ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㅍ, ㅎ (All 14 single consonants) ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄷ, ㄹ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㅍ, ㅎ (All 11 consonant clusters) ㄱ, ㅃ (Two tensed consonants)

**Note:**

1. All tensed consonants “ㄱ, ㆁ, ㅃ, ㅅ, ㅆ” are considered as single consonants, whereas consonant clusters such as “ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄷ, etc.” are treated as the combination of two different consonants.
2. None of the consonant clusters can appear in the syllable initial position.
3. All 21 vowels can appear in the vowel position.
4. In the syllable final position, all 14 non-tensed single consonants and 11 consonant clusters can appear, but the tensed consonants “ㄱ, ㆁ, ㅃ, ㅅ, ㅆ” cannot appear in this position.

## V. Dictionary Entry (사전 찾기)

When you look up a word in a dictionary, you must understand how words are organized (unless you are using online dictionaries). By convention, all dictionary words are listed following the order of consonants. Once you find the consonant in the dictionary, follow the order of vowels. Then, continue to follow the order of consonants if there is a syllable final consonant. If you find the perfect match for the first syllable, continue to follow the same procedure for the rest of the syllables until you find the word that you are looking for.

Dictionary Order of Consonants and Vowels (사전에서의 자음과 모음 순서)	
Consonants (자음)	ㄱ, ㆁ, ㄴ, ㄷ, ㆁ, ㄹ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅃ, ㅅ, ㅆ, ㅇ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㅍ, ㅎ
Vowels (모음)	ㅏ, ㅑ, ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅗ, ㅛ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ, ㅐ, ㅔ, ㅖ, ㅘ, ㅙ, ㅚ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ, ㅐ, ㅔ, ㅖ, ㅘ, ㅙ, ㅚ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ



## 02 Morphology (단어 형태론)

### I . Word Structure (단어 구조)

A word is a minimal semantic unit that carries a meaning. It may consist of one or more syllables. The maximum number of syllables that a word can take is theoretically unlimited, but due to our limited cognitive processing ability and for the sake of efficiency in transmitting its meaning, it normally does not exceed more than six syllables unless it refers to a proper noun or a conjugated verb.

Number of Syllables (음절 수)	Examples (예제)
One syllable	해 (sun), 달 (moon)
Two syllables	학교 (school), 먹다 (to eat)
Three syllables	선생님 (teacher), 만나다 (to meet)
Four syllables	대한민국 (The Republic of Korea), 심심하다 (to get bored)
Five syllables	지구온난화 (global warming), 감사합니다 (Thank you.)
Six syllables	기우뚱거리다 (to stagger)
Seven syllables	오스트레일리아 (Australia)

### II . Building up Words (단어 형성)

We can easily build up words by attaching prefixes or suffixes, or even combining two different words together.

Word building (단어 형성)	Parts of speech (품사)	Examples (예제)
Prefix (접두사)	Noun	신 + 세대 (new generation), <b>만</b> + 아들 (oldest son), <b>헛</b> + 수고 (fruitless effort) <b>잔</b> + 소리 (nagging), <b>날</b> + 강도 (highway robbery), <b>생</b> + 고생 (hardships) <b>알</b> + 거지 (penniless beggar), <b>외</b> + 아들 (only son) <b>잔</b> + 심부름 (petty errand), <b>첫</b> + 사랑 (first love) <b>총</b> + 책임자 (highest ranking person in charge) <b>최</b> + 상급 (best quality), <b>풋</b> + 고추 (newly harvested hot pepper) <b>햇</b> + 사과 (newly harvested apple), <b>한</b> + 여름 (sizzling summer)
	Verb	<b>갓</b> + 졸업하다 (to just graduate), <b>덧</b> + 붙이다 (to add), <b>빚</b> + 나가다 (to miss) <b>새</b> + 파랗다 (dark blue), <b>짓</b> + 밟다 (to stomp)
Suffix (접미사)	Noun	신부 + <b>감</b> (bride), 마음 + <b>껏</b> (to be indulgent), 노름 + <b>꾼</b> (gambler), 말썽 + <b>꾸러기</b> (trouble maker), 개구 + <b>쟁이</b> (mischief), 걸레 + <b>질</b> (mopping)
	Verb	깜빡 + <b>거리다</b> (to blink one's eyes), 가느 + <b>다랗다</b> (to be thin) 남자 + <b>답다</b> (to be manly), 깨 + <b>뜨리다</b> (break into pieces) 자유 + <b>롭다</b> (to feel free), 사랑 + <b>스럽다</b> (to be lovely) 미심 + <b>쩍다</b> (to be suspicious)
Compound Noun (복합명사)		눈 (snow) + 사람 (person) → <b>눈사람</b> (snowman) 피자 (pizza) + 가게 (store) → <b>피자가게</b> (pizza restaurant) 논 (rice paddy) + 밭 (vegetable field) → <b>논밭</b> (farming field) 고속 (high speed) + 버스 (bus) → <b>고속버스</b> (express bus) 골프 (golf) + 공 (ball) → <b>골프공</b> (golf ball) 김치 (kimchi) + 냉장고 → <b>김치냉장고</b> (kimchi refrigerator) 나무 (wood) + 젓가락 (chopsticks) → <b>나무젓가락</b> (wooden chopsticks) 눈 (snow) + 사태 (disaster) → <b>눈사태</b> (avalanche)
Compound Verb (복합동사)		가지다 (to have) + 오다 (to come) → <b>가져오다</b> (to bring) 날다 (to fly) + 가다 (to go) → <b>날아가다</b> (to fly away) 알다 (to know) + 듣다 (to listen) → <b>알아듣다</b> (to understand) 집다 (to pick up) + 넣다 (to put in) → <b>집어넣다</b> (to stick in)

### Ⅲ . Parts of Speech (품사)

Words can be classified into different grammatical categories in terms of their shared properties, which are so-called “parts of speech.” Unfortunately, there have been some discrepancies among Korean grammarians regarding how many parts of speech they classify and what types of categories they define. After several decades of discussing these issues, they have reached the general consensus that there are nine parts of speech in Korean, each of which plays a significant role in explaining the grammatical phenomena in Korean.

Parts of speech (품사)	Examples (예제)
Nouns (명사) <sup>1</sup>	A noun refers to a person, animal, place, thing, or idea. (ex) 학생(student), 호랑이(tiger), 책상(desk), 민주주의(democracy)
Pronouns (대명사) <sup>2</sup>	A pronoun can substitute for a noun. (ex) 나(I), 너(you), 그(s/he), 이것(this thing), 그것(that thing), 저것(the thing over there)
Numerals (수사) <sup>3</sup>	A numeral refers to a number. (ex) 하나(one), 둘(two), 셋(three), 넷(four), 다섯(five) 일(one), 이(two), 삼(three), 사(four) 첫째(the first), 둘째(the second), 셋째(the third), 넷째(the fourth)
Stative Verbs (상태동사)/ Adjectives (형용사) <sup>4</sup>	A stative verb or an adjective describes one's state of being. (ex) 크다(big), 작다(small), 예쁘다(pretty), 귀엽다(cute), 아름답다(beautiful)
Action Verbs (동작동사)	An action verb expresses a physical or mental activity. (ex) 가다(to go), 오다(to come), 먹다(to eat), 자다(to sleep), 일하다(to work)
Adnominals (관형사)	An adnominal modifies a noun. (ex) 옛 이야기(old story), 헌 옷(old clothes), 새 신발(new shoes), 이 사람(this person), 그 책(that book), 저 학교(the school over there), 한 명(one person), 두 명(two people), 세 명(three people), 온갖 생각(all kinds of thoughts), 모든 사람(all people)
Adverbs (부사)	An adverb modifies a stative verb, an action verb, or other adverbs. (ex) 빨리(quickly), 천천히(slowly), 늦게(belatedly), 많이( a lot), 아주(very)
Exclamatives (감탄사)	An exclamative expresses one's emotion. (ex) 아(Oh!), 참(By the way), 아이구(Oh no!), 어머니(Oh my goodness!), 글썸(Well)
Particles (조사)	A particle refers to a case marker (격조사) or a meaning-carrying functional marker (보조사). (ex) Case markers: 이/가(subject case marker), 을/를(object case marker), etc. Meaning-carrying functional markers: 만(only), 도(also), 만큼(as much as), etc.

**Note:**

1. Nouns can be subcategorized into proper nouns (고유명사) and common nouns (보통명사). A proper noun refers to a unique entity, such as “한국(Korea), 서울(Seoul), 존(John), etc., whereas a common noun represents a class of non-specific people and objects, such as “학생(student), 의자(chair), 나라(country).”
2. Pronouns can be subcategorized into personal pronouns (인칭대명사) and demonstratives (지시대명사). The examples of personal pronouns are 나(I), 너(you), 그분(s/he), 우리(we), 너희들(you), 그들(they), etc. The examples of demonstratives are 여기(here), 저기(there), 거기(over there), 이리(this way), 그리(that way), 저리(that way over there), etc.
3. Numerals can be classified into cardinal numbers(기수) and ordinal numbers(서수). Cardinal numbers can be further subcategorized into Sino-Korean numbers such as 일(one), 이(two), 삼(three), 사(four), etc. and pure Korean numbers such as 하나(one), 둘(two), 셋(three), 넷(four), etc. The former was originally borrowed from the Chinese calculating system. The examples of ordinal numbers are 첫째(the first), 둘째(the second), 셋째(the third), 넷째(the fourth), etc.
4. Stative verbs are sometimes called adjectives in other literature because each of these verbs is semantically related to its English adjective counterpart. Nevertheless, they should be grammatically

treated as verbs rather than adjectives in that they can take most of the inflectional suffixes like verbs. For example, (a) they can take a tense suffix as in 작았습니다(작 + **았** + 습니다: to be short); (b) they can take honorific suffixes as in 큼니다(크 + **니다**: to be tall) and 아름다우십니다 (아름다우 + **시** + ㅂ니다: to be beautiful); (c) they can take a sentence ending as in 예쁘니까?(예쁘 + **니까?**: to be pretty); (d) they can take a modal auxiliary as in 힘들어 죽겠습니다(힘들 + **어 죽겠습니다**: to have a hard time). All these are typically the inherent properties of verbs, not adjectives. Therefore, it is reasonable to classify them on a par with verbs for the purpose of this book.

## IV. Functional Categories (기능 범주)

Functional Categories (기능 범주)		Examples (예문)	
Subject (주어)		존이 학교에 갑니다. (=John is going to school.) 메리가 집에 옵니다. (=Mary is coming home.)	
Object (목적어)		존이 저녁을 먹습니다. (=John is eating dinner.) 메리가 한국말을 공부합니다. (=Mary is studying Korean.)	
Predicate (서술어) <sup>1</sup>		존이 편지를 씁니다. (=John is writing a letter.) 메리가 예쁩니다. (=Mary is pretty.)	
Modifier (수식어)	Numerals (수사어)	존이 사과 하나를 삽니다. (=John is buying an apple.)	
	Adnominals (관형어)	메리가 새 블라우스를 입습니다. (=Mary is wearing a new blouse.)	
	Adverbials (부사어)	마이클이 빨리 걷습니다. (=Michael is walking fast.)	
Exclamatives (독립어)		아, 메리가 정말 예쁩니다. (=Oh! Mary is really pretty.)	
F u n c t i o n a l M a r k e r s  (기 능 어)	Case Markers (격조사)	Subject Case Markers (주격 조사)	선생님이 오십니다. (=The teacher is coming.) 어머니가 아름다우십니다. (=Your mother is beautiful.)
		Object Case Markers (목적격 조사)	존이 선물을 샀습니다. (=John bought a gift.) 메리가 서울에 소포를 보냈습니다. (=Mary sent a package to Seoul.)
		Possessive Case Markers (관형격/소유격 조사)	존이 메리의 집에 갔습니다. (=John went to Mary's house.)
		Adverbial Case Markers (부사격 조사) <sup>2</sup>	존은 집에 있습니다. (=John is at home.) 메리는 부엌에서 요리를 합니다. (=Mary is cooking in the kitchen.) 메리가 존에게 편지를 씁니다. (=Mary is writing a letter to Mary.) 메리는 한국으로 갑니다. (=Mary is going to Korea.) 존은 버스로 학교에 갑니다. (=John goes to school by bus.)
	Meaning-Carrying Functional Unit (보조사)		존은 매일 책을 읽습니다. (=As for John, he reads books every day.) 메리는 학교에 다닙니다. (=As for Mary, she goes to school.) 존은 메리만 좋아합니다. (=John only likes Mary.) 메리도 존을 좋아합니다. (=Mary also likes John.)

**Note:**

1. A predicate is a grammatical term that covers all the elements of a sentence other than the subject.
2. An adverbial is the umbrella term that includes adverbs and the phrases that modify a verb or a verb phrase.

Words that are categorized into their corresponding parts of speech carry the specific grammatical functions when they actually appear in a sentence. Nouns and pronouns can serve as the subject or the object of a sentence. Verbs, stative and action verbs, can serve as the predicate or can be part of a predicate. Numerals, adnominals, and adverbs can serve as modifiers by the way in which they limit the scope of their related elements. For example, numerals designate the specific number of their preceding nouns. Adnominals modify the following nouns, whereas adverbs modify verbs or other adverbs. Exclamatives independently express one's emotion typically at the beginning of a sentence. Lastly, the grammatical functional units can be subcategorized into case markers and particles. The former is the functional category that indicates the grammatical function of the preceding element, and the latter is the meaning-carrying functional unit that limits the scope of the preceding element.



## 03 Syntax (문장 형태론)

### I . Sentence Patterns (문장 유형)

A sentence is composed of two essential parts: the subject (주어) and the predicate (서술어). Depending on the nature of the verb that it contains, a predicate shows a different pattern according to the elements that it requires. For example, if a predicate contains an intransitive verb, it exclusively consists of a verb set aside from other optional adverbials.

존이 [잔다]. (=John is sleeping.)

메리가 [예쁘다]. (=Mary is pretty.)

In the case that a predicate contains one of the special intransitive verbs such as “이다 (to be),” “아니다 (not to be),” and “되다 (to become),” it requires a subject complement marked in red below.

존이 [학생이다].

Subject Subject Complement

(=John is a student. =John is a member of the group called “student.”)

존이 [학생이 아니다].

Subject Subject Complement

(=John is not a student. =John is not a member of the group called “student.”)

존이 [의사가 되었다].

Subject Subject Complement

(=John became a doctor. =John became a member of the group called “doctor.”)

On the other hand, if a predicate contains a transitive verb, it consists of a verb and the object.

존이 [아침을] 먹는다.

(=John is eating breakfast.)

메리가 [숙제를] 한다.

(=Mary is doing her homework.)

In the case that a predicate contains a dative transitive verb such as “주다 (to give),” “보내다 (to send),” “맡기다 (entrust),” etc., it requires the object with the dative phrase “Noun+에게/한테” marked in red below.

존이 [메리에게] 선물을 주었다.

(=John gave a present to Mary.)

메리가 [존한테] 소포를 보냈다.

(=Mary sent a package to John.)

존이 [메리에게] 돈을 맡겼다.

(=John entrusted his money to Mary.)

In addition, if a predicate contains verbs like “만들다 (to make),” “생각하다/여기다 (to consider),” “착각하다 (to mistake A for B),” etc., it requires the object and the object complement “Noun+(으)로” marked in red below.

존이 [나를] 바보로 만들었다.

(=John made a monkey out of me.)

메리가 [존을] 친구로 생각했다.

(=Mary considered John her friend.)

메리가 [그 사람을] 존으로 착각했다.

(=Mary mistook the person for John.)

Core Sentence Patterns	
Pattern 1 (제1 형식)	Subject + Verb
Pattern 2 (제2 형식)	Subject + Subject Complement + Verb
Pattern 3 (제3 형식)	Subject + Object + Verb
Pattern 4 (제4 형식)	Subject + Dative Phrase + Object + Verb
Pattern 5 (제5 형식)	Subject + Object + Object Complement + Verb

We have so far discussed the five different core sentence patterns in Korean. These are the backbones from which we can create richer sentences. For convenience, they are named as Patterns 1-5 here.

The following table summarizes the core sentence patterns with the optional adverbials marked in red that can occur in Korean. They are arranged in terms of the default word order, and therefore different word orders are also possible, which is not concerned here.

Core Sentence Patterns (Default Word Order)	Example Sentences (예문)
S <sup>1</sup> + (Adv) + V	<p>존이 바쁘다. (=John is busy.)</p> <p>존이 잡니다. (=John is sleeping.)</p> <p>존이 <b>아주</b> 바쁘다. (=John is very busy.)</p> <p>존이 <b>많이</b> 잔다. (=John sleeps a lot.)</p> <p>존이 <b>내일</b> 한국에 갑니다. (=John is going to Korea tomorrow.)</p> <p>존이 <b>학교에</b> 있다. (=John is at school.)</p> <p>존이 <b>가게에서</b> 일한다. (=John works at a store.)</p> <p>존이 <b>열시에</b> 일어납니다. (=John gets up at ten o'clock.)</p> <p>존이 <b>열시부터 여섯시까지</b> 잡니다. (=John sleeps from 10:00 to 6:00.)</p> <p>존이 <b>한국으로</b> 갑니다. (=John is going to Korea.)</p> <p>존이 <b>버스로 학교에</b> 갑니다. (=John goes to school by bus.)</p> <p>존이 <b>교환학생으로 한국에</b> 갑니다. (=John is going to Korea as an exchange student.)</p>
S + S Comp + V	<p>존이 학생이다. (=John is a student.)</p> <p>존이 학생이 아니다. (=John is not a student.)</p> <p>존이 의사가 되었다. (=John became a doctor.)</p>
S + (Adv) + Obj + (Adv) + V	<p>존이 아침을 먹는다. (=John is eating breakfast.)</p> <p>존이 아침을 <b>일찍</b> 먹는다. (=John eats breakfast early.)</p> <p>존이 <b>식당에서</b> 점심을 먹었다. (=John ate lunch at a restaurant.)</p> <p>존이 <b>신용카드로</b> 돈을 냈다. (=John paid the money with a credit card.)</p> <p>존이 <b>연필로 공책에</b> 이름을 쓴다. (=John is writing his name with a pencil on a notebook.)</p> <p>존이 <b>학교에서</b> 점심을 <b>일찍</b> 먹는다. (=John eats lunch early at school.)</p>
Subj + (Adv) + Dat + Obj + (Adv) + V	<p>존이 메리에게 선물을 주었다. (=John gave a present to Mary.)</p> <p>존이 메리에게 선물을 <b>몰래</b> 주었다. (=John secretly gave a present to Mary.)</p> <p>존이 <b>학교에서</b> 메리한테 선물을 주었다. (=John gave a present to Mary at school.)</p>
Subj + (Adv) + Obj + (Adv) + O Comp + V	<p>존이 메리를 천재로 만들었다. (=John made Mary a genius.)</p> <p>존이 <b>친구들 앞에서</b> 나를 바보로 만들었다. (=John made a monkey out of me in front of my friends.)</p> <p>한국전쟁이 나라 전체를 <b>완전히</b> 폐허로 만들었다. (=The Korean War made the entire country devastated.)</p>

**Note:**

1. Legend: S(ubject), O(bject), V(erb), S(ubject) Comp(lement), Dat(ive Phrase), O(bject) Comp(lement) Adv(erbials)

## II . Sentence Types (문장 종류)

As with other languages, Korean sentences can be classified into four different categories in terms of their types: statement/declarative sentences(평서문), question/interrogative sentences(의문문), command/imperative sentences(명령문), and proposition/propositive sentences(청유문). Each of these sentence types is grammatically marked on the verb with its corresponding sentence ending. The sentence endings below are the formal honorific endings that indicate the different sentence types. We will discuss other sentence endings that carry the same function later in more detail. (See Chapter 13 Honorific and Blunt Systems)

Sentence Types (문장 종류)	Sentence Ending (종결어미)	Examples (예문)
Statement or Declarative sentences (평서문)	ㅂ니다 습니다	존이 학교에서 공부 <b>합니다</b> . (=John is studying at school.) 메리가 아침을 먹 <b>습니다</b> . (=Mary is eating breakfast.)
Question or Interrogative sentences (의문문)	ㅂ니까? 습니까?	존이 어디에 <b>삽니까?</b> (=Where does John live?) 메리가 음악을 듣 <b>습니까?</b> (=Does Mary listen to music?)
Command or Imperative sentences (명령문)	십시오 으십시오	여기 오 <b>십시오</b> . (=Please come here.) 의자에 앉 <b>으십시오</b> . (=Please sit on the chair.)
Proposition or Propositive sentences (청유문)	ㅂ시다 읍시다	내일 다시 만 <b>납시다</b> . (=Let's meet again tomorrow.) 같이 점심을 먹 <b>읍시다</b> . (Let's eat lunch together.)

**Note:** The first sentence ending in each pair in the second column is attached to a verb if the preceding verb ends with a vowel. If it ends with a consonant, the second ending is attached instead.

### III . Word Order in Sentences (문장 어순)

Word order in Korean has been typically characterized as S(subject) O(bject) V(erb). But that does not mean that it is the only possible way to arrange the elements within a given sentence. It is just the preferred or default word order. Unlike this common characterization, the actual word order in Korean is relatively free compared to other languages. Aside from the following three restrictions: (1) a verb must be in the sentence final position, (2) a modifier must appear right before the modified, and (3) the movement must be within a clause boundary, any elements within a sentence can be moved around without changing the meaning of the sentence. This is why Korean is sometimes called “a free word-order language.”

존이 메리를 좋아합니다. (=John likes Mary.)

  
메리를 존이 좋아합니다. (=John likes Mary.)

As we can see above, the meaning of the second sentence stays the same as the first one even after we switched the subject with the object. Since we move the case markers along with the subject and the object, we may not find any problem to identify what kind of grammatical functions they carry in the sentence. However, it is not possible to move the verb to another position since the verb is always fixed in the sentence final position.

존이 좋아합니다 메리를. (X) 좋아합니다 존이 메리를. (X)

Another restriction that blocks the free movement is that a modifier-modified relationship must not be interrupted, which means that a modifier should be placed right before the modified.

존이 새 차를 샀습니다. (=John bought a new car.)

a new car

The object of this sentence consists of the modifier “새(new)” and the modified noun “차(car).” If we move the modifier away from the modified noun as in the following sentences, it will generate ungrammatical sentences,

새 존이 차를 샀습니다. (X) or 존이 차를 새 샀습니다. (X)

Lastly, the movement cannot cross over a clause boundary as in the following sentence.

존이 [메리가 차를 샀다고] 선생님에게 말했습니다.  
 (=John told the teacher that Mary bought a car.)

존이 [메리가 샀다고] 차를 선생님에게 말했습니다. (X)

존이 [차를 샀다고] 메리가 선생님에게 말했습니다.  
 (=Mary told the teacher that John bought a car.)

The red brackets in the sentences above indicate a clause boundary which separates the subordinate clause from the main clause. If we move one of the elements out of the subordinate clause, the resulting sentence may become ungrammatical as in the second example or will be a completely different sentence as in the third example.

#### IV. Ellipsis in Conversation (생략)

Another unique grammatical feature in Korean is that anything that can be recoverable from the context doesn't need to be repeated in a given sentence. This convention frequently applies to sentences used in casual conversation, but generally not to written text.

##### Conversation 1

- A: 존이 어디에 있어요? (=Where is John?)  
 B: (존은 집에) 갔어요. (Left. =John went back home.)

## Conversation 2

A: 존, 저녁 먹었어? (=John, did you eat dinner?)

B: (나는 저녁을) 먹었어. (Ate. =I ate dinner.)

## Conversation 3

A: (메리가 서울에) 갔어? (Went? =Did Mary go to Seoul?)

B: (메리가 서울에) 갔어. (Went. =Mary left for Seoul.)

## Conversation 4

A: (나랑 같이 콘서트에) 가자. (Let's go. =Let's go to the concert together.)

B: (그래, 같이 콘서트에) 가. (Go. =Ok, let's go to the concert together.)

Each of these short conversational exchanges may sound awkward or even mysterious to non-native speakers. It may be partly because so much information, all the information in parentheses, is missing. But they seem to be very natural casual conversations among Korean speakers if it is possible to recover the missing information from the context. When misunderstandings occur due to an insufficient amount of information provided, we can always negotiate the meaning of a sentence by making follow-up questions. For example, in Conversation 3, Speaker B can pose more questions, such as “Who?” or “Where?” to clarify Speaker A’s original question.

## Conversation 5

A: (메리가 서울에) 갔어? (Went? =Did Mary go to Seoul?)

B: 누구? (=Who? =Who are you talking about?)

A: 메리. (=Mary. =I am talking about Mary.)

B: 어디에? (=Where? Which place are you talking about?)

A: 서울에. (=To Seoul. =I am talking about Seoul.)

B: 그래, 갔어. (Yes, went. =Yes, she left for Seoul.)

However, unlike normal conversational situations, the negotiation of missing information between the writer and the readers is very difficult, if not impossible. For this reason, the majority of written text provides as much detailed information as possible and tends to avoid using elliptical expressions. In line with this, the general guidelines for writing a news report are to include specific information about “who/when/where/what/how/why” which is called “the Six WH principle (6하 원칙).”

## V. No Subject-Verb Agreement (주어 동사 일치)

In English, the subject and the verb must agree with each other in terms of person(인칭) and number(수). It is clearly observed in the case that the subject is a pronoun, and the verb is the copula “to be” as in the following examples.

Subject			Verb	Example Sentences (예문)
Singular (단수)	1 <sup>st</sup> Person	I	Be	I <u>am</u> a student.
	2 <sup>nd</sup> Person	You		You <u>are</u> a student.
	3 <sup>rd</sup> Person	He/She/It		He/she <u>is</u> a student. It <u>is</u> a desk.
Plural (복수)	1 <sup>st</sup> Person	We		We <u>are</u> students.
	2 <sup>nd</sup> Person	You		You (guys) <u>are</u> students.
	3 <sup>rd</sup> Person	They		They <u>are</u> students.

Unlike English, however, there exists no subject-verb grammatical agreement rule in Korean. One plausible exception might be the usage of the subject honorific suffixes “~(으)시” which can be attached to a verb stem when we need to show respect to the subject of a sentence. But it is not a grammatical agreement rule per se; rather it is a social convention that Koreans prefer to follow. Therefore, even though a sentence is created without following the convention, it can still be perfectly grammatical, but merely inappropriate to be used in actual communication.

존의 아버지가 좋으시다. (Grammatical and Appropriate)  
 (=John’s father is good.)

존의 아버지가 좋다. (Grammatical, but Inappropriate)  
 (=John's father is good.)

Both of the sentences above are grammatical because they do not violate any grammatical rules in Korean. But the first sentence is more appropriate in that we need to show respect to somebody else's father when we refer to him. We will discuss this in more detail in Chapter 13 Honorific and Blunt Systems.

Another plausible exception might be the number agreement between the subject and the verb, as in the following examples.

Singular Subject	Plural Subject
존이 벌써 떠나갔구나. (=Oh, John already left.)	다들 벌써 떠나들 갔구나. (=Oh, all of them already left.)
존, 나가놀아라. (=Hey John, go out and play.)	다들, 나가들 놀아라. (=Hey all of you, go out and play.)
존 빨리 들어와라. (=Hey John, come inside quickly.)	다들 빨리 들어들 와라. (=Hey all of you, come inside quickly.)

Apparently, in all of the sentences above, the plural subject “다들 (all)” seems likely to agree with its corresponding verb in the sense that the plural suffix “~들” is attached to each verb. But it is simply a misconception because of the nature of the plural suffix “~들.”

The plural suffix “~들” does not play a significant grammatical role in Korean. Although it can be attached to a countable noun to indicate the plurality of the noun, it is generally optional, as in the following examples.

여기에 학생들이 많이 있다.  
 =여기에 학생이 많이 있다.  
 (=There are many students here.)

존이 책들을 많이 읽었다.  
 =존이 책을 많이 읽었다.  
 (=John read many books.)

우리 반 학생들이 책들을 많이 읽었다.

=우리 반 학생들이 책을 많이 읽었다.

=우리 반 학생이 책들을 많이 읽었다.

=우리 반 학생이 책을 많이 읽었다.

(=The students in my class read a lot of books.)

Since the plural suffix “~들” is optional in nature, the plurality of a noun can actually be determined more reliably from the given context.

Another mysterious nature of the plural suffix “~들” is that it can be optionally attached to any element of a given sentence if the speaker or the writer wants to emphasize that more than one member of a noun is involved in the given situation.

애들아, 많이들 먹어라. =애들아, 많이 먹어라.

(=Hey kids, help yourself.)

애들아, 빨리들 해라. =애들아, 빨리 해라.

(=Hey kids, do it quickly.)

아이들이 예쁘게들 생겼네요. =아이들이 예쁘게 생겼네요.

(=Your kids are cute.)

모두 여기들 계시네요. =모두 여기 계시네요.

(=All of you are here.)

안녕들하세요? =안녕하세요?

(=Hello.)

안녕히들 가세요. =안녕히 가세요.

(=Goodbye.)

In short, we can safely say that there is no subject-verb agreement in Korean.



## 04 Nouns and Case Markers (명사와 격조사)

English has a fixed word order that allows us to distinguish the subject and the object in terms of their relative positions to a verb. It belongs to the SVO language. The subject always occurs before a verb, whereas the object appears after a verb.

- (1) John            loves            Mary.  
          Subject        verb                Object
- (2) Did            John            see            Mary?  
          Auxiliary    Subject        verb            Object

Once we transpose the proper nouns in the sentences above, the subject and object will subsequently be changed, which results in completely different sentences.

- (3) Mary            loves            John.  
          Subject        verb                Object
- (4) Did            Mary            see            John?  
          Auxiliary    Subject        verb            Object

In Korean, however, it is not only possible to transpose the subject and the object but also to move around any elements of a given sentence except a verb in the sentence final position without changing the meaning of a sentence.

- 존이 메리를 학교에서 만났습니다. (=John met Mary at school.)  
존이 학교에서 메리를 만났습니다. (=John met Mary at school.)  
메리를 존이 학교에서 만났습니다. (=John met Mary at school.)  
메리를 학교에서 존이 만났습니다. (=John met Mary at school.)  
학교에서 존이 메리를 만났습니다. (=John met Mary at school.)  
학교에서 메리를 존이 만났습니다. (=John met Mary at school.)

All the sentences above basically carry the same meaning regardless of the flexible positions of the three elements marked in red. The flexibility of this relatively free word order is empowered by the case markers attached to the preceding nouns. Even after a certain movement, we can still easily identify all the individual functions of the moved elements without any confusion by simply looking at the case markers that they carry.

A case marker in Korean is a grammatical unit that is attached to a noun and designates the specific function of a noun in a given sentence. In this chapter, we will examine a variety of Korean case markers and their specific functions in more detail.

### 1. Subject Case Marker (주격 조사): ~이, ~가,

#### Object Case Marker (목적격 조사): ~을, ~를

Function	Subject Case Marker (주격 조사)	
Form	~이 (After a consonant)	~가 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Indicating the subject	
Examples	존이	메리가

Function	Object Case Marker (목적격 조사)	
Form	~을 (After a consonant)	~를 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Indicating the object	
Examples	존을	메리를

Unlike English, which uses word order to distinguish between the subject and the object in a given sentence, Korean uses case markers to indicate the subject and the object of a sentence.

존이 메리를 사랑합니다.  
(=John loves Mary.)

메리가 존을 사랑합니다.  
(=Mary loves John.)

Since the subject and the object are clearly marked by the corresponding case markers, it makes it possible to move them around in a given sentence without changing the meaning of the sentence.

메리를 존이 사랑합니다. (=존이 메리를 사랑합니다.)

(=John loves Mary.)

존을 메리가 가 사랑합니다. (=메리가 존을 사랑합니다.)

(=Mary loves John.)

If the subject is a person to whom we need to show respect, the honorific subject case marker “~께서” can be used in place of the default subject case markers “~이/가.”

부모님께서 다음달에 유럽여행을 가신다.

(=My parents are taking a trip to Europe next month.)

## CAUTION

In the case that the subject is a person's first name instead of his/her full name, “~가” is attached to the first name if it ends with a vowel. Otherwise, the vocative suffix “~이” is attached first, and then the subject case marker “~가” will be added after that. This rule applies only to native Korean first names.

영재가 학교에 갑니다.

(=Young Jae is going to school.)

원석이가 학교에 갑니다.

(=Won Seok is going to school.)

In the first sentence above, the native Korean first name “영재” serves as the subject of the sentence. Because it ends with a vowel, the subject case marker “가” is attached to it. In the second sentence, however, the native Korean first name “원석” ends with a consonant, and therefore the vocative suffix “~이” is attached to the name before we add the appropriate subject case marker “가.” But this rule does not apply to any foreign first names, as in the following.

메리가 학교에 갑니다.  
(=Mary is going to school.)

존이 학교에 갑니다.  
(=John is going to school.)

존이가 학교에 갑니다. (NOT OK)  
(=John is going to school.)

This vocative suffix insertion rule applies across the board whenever a person's first name is used with any case markers or the particles that are going to be discussed below.

존이 영재를 좋아합니다.  
(=John likes Young Jae.)

메리가 원석을 좋아합니다.  
(=Mary likes Won Seok.)

존이 영재에게 선물을 주었습니다.  
(=John gave a present to Young Jae.)

메리가 원석에게 선물을 주었습니다.  
(=Mary gave a present to Won Seok.)

영재는 사과를 좋아합니다.  
(=Young Jae likes apples.)

원석이는 사과를 좋아합니다.  
(=Won Seok likes apples.)

## 2. Possessive Case Marker (관형격/소유격 조사): ~의

The possessive case marker “~의” can be used to indicate that the preceding noun is the possessor, and the following noun is the possessed, which can be rendered as “-’s.”

존의 사과가 맛있습니다.  
(=John's apples are delicious.)

메리의 방이 큼니다.  
(=Mary's room is big.)

Function	Possessive Case Marker (관형격/소유격 조사)
Form	~의 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	's
Examples	존의 아버지 (John's father) 메리의 어머니 (Mary's mother)

존이 메리의 책을 읽습니다.

(=John is reading Mary's book.)

메리가 존의 학교에 갑니다.

(=Mary is going to John's school.)

### 3. Location/Direction Case Marker (처소격/방향격 조사): ~에, ~에서

Function	Location/Direction Case Marker (처소격/방향격 조사)	
Form	~에 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~에서 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Location: In/At/On (with verbs of existence)	Location: In/At/On (with action verbs)
Examples	존이 방에 있습니다. (=John is in his room.) 메리가 학교에 있습니다. (=Mary is at school.) 책이 책상 위에 있습니다. (=A book is on the desk.)	존이 거실에서 TV를 봅니다. (=John is watching TV in the living room.) 메리가 학교에서 공부합니다. (=Mary is studying at school.) 메리가 소파에서 잡니다. (=Mary is sleeping on the sofa.)
Meaning	Direction: To/Toward (with verbs of locomotion)	Direction: From (with verbs of locomotion)
Examples	존이 학교에 갑니다. (=John is going to school.) 메리가 학교에 옵니다. (=Mary is coming to school.)	존이 학교에서 돌아옵니다. (=John is coming from school.) 메리가 서울에서 출발합니다. (=Mary is leaving from Seoul.)

“~에” carries two different functions depending on what kind of verbs it is used with. If “~에” is used with a place noun and one of the verbs of existence, it functions as a location case marker, which can be rendered as “in, at, on” depending on the context.

존이 방에 있습니다.

(=John is in his room.)

메리가 학교에 있습니다.

(=Mary is at school.)

책이 책상 위에 있습니다.

(=A book is on the desk.)

**Verbs of Existence:** 있다(there is)/없다(there is no), 많다(a lot)/적다(a few), 나타나다/출현하다/출몰하다(to appear), 존재하다(to exist), 숨다/숨어 있다(to hide oneself), 감추다/감추어 두다/숨겨두다(to hide), 두다/넣다/놓다(to put something in/on a place), etc.

When “~에” is used with a place noun and one of the verbs of locomotion, it functions as a direction case marker, which can be rendered as “to/toward.”

존이 학교에 갑니다.

(=John is going to school.)

메리가 학교에 옵니다.

(=Mary is coming to school.)

존이 집에 돌아갑니다.

(=John is returning to his house.)

메리가 도서관에 뛰어갑니다.

(=Mary is running to the library.)

**Verbs of Locomotion:** 가다(to go)/오다(to come), 돌아오다(to come back)/돌아가다(to return), 나가다(to go out)/나오다(to come out), 들어가다(to go into)/들어오다(to come in), 뛰어가다(to run away from the speaker)/뛰어오다(to run towards the speaker), 출발하다(to depart)/도착하다(to arrive), 이민 가다(to emigrate)/이민 오다(to immigrate), 들르다(to stop by), etc.

But “~에” cannot be used with other action verbs, and therefore the following sentences are ungrammatical.

존이 식당에 아침을 먹습니다. (NOT OK)

메리가 학교에 공부합니다. (NOT OK)

On the other hand, if “~에서” is used with a place noun and an action verb, it functions as a location case marker and can be rendered as “in, at, on.”

존이 거실에서 TV를 봅니다.

(=John is watching TV in the living room.)

메리가 학교에서 공부합니다.

(=Mary is studying at school.)

존이 식당에서 아침을 먹습니다.

(=John is eating breakfast at a restaurant.)

메리가 소파에서 잡니다.

(=Mary is sleeping on the sofa.)

When “~에서” is used with a place noun and one of the verb of locomotion, it functions as a direction case marker, which can be rendered as “from.”

존이 학교에서 돌아옵니다.

(=John is coming from school.)

메리가 서울에서 출발합니다.

(=Mary is leaving from Seoul.)

But “~에서” cannot be used with verbs of existence, and therefore the following sentences are ungrammatical.

존이 방에서 있습니다. (NOT OK)

메리가 학교에서 있습니다. (NOT OK)

Another special group of words often called verbs of posture can also be used with “~에” or “~에서.”

**Verbs of Posture:** 일어나다(to get up), 일어서다(to stand up), 앉다(to sit), 서다(to stand), 눕다(to lie on your back), 엎드리다(to be on the ground), 구부리다(to hunker), 웅크리다(to crouch), 펴다(to spread), etc.

Verbs like “일어나다(to get up), 일어서다(to stand up)” can be used with “~에서.” In this case, “~에서” functions as a direction case marker, which can be rendered as “from.”

존이 자리에서 일어났습니다.

(=John got up **from** his seat.)

메리가 갑자기 자리에서 일어섰습니다.

(=Mary suddenly stood up **from** her seat.)

All other verbs of posture can be used with “~에,” which functions as a location case marker.

존이 의자에 앉습니다.

(=John is sitting **on** his chair.)

존이 강단에 섰습니다.

(=John stood **on** the podium.)

메리가 바닥에 엎드렸습니다.

(=Mary lay down **on** the ground.)

## CAUTION

1. The verb “살다” can be used with both “place noun+에” and “place noun+에서.” When it is used with “place noun+에,” it simply indicates one’s residential area. But if it is used with “place noun+에서,” it focuses on one’s continuous act of living in a place, and it is compatible with the adverb that refers to one’s way of living.

존이 서울에 삽니다.

(=John lives in Seoul.)

존이 서울에서 삽니다.

(=John is living in Seoul.)

존이 서울에 행복하게 삽니다. (NOT OK)

(=John lives happily in Seoul.)

존이 서울에서 행복하게 삽니다. (OK)

(=John is living happily in Seoul.)

2. If “~에” and “~에서” are used together with verbs of locomotion, “~에서” typically appears before “~에,” but not the other way around.

존이 지금 집에서 학교에 갑니다.

(=John is going to school from his house.)

존이 지금 학교에 집에서 갑니다. (NOT OK)

메리가 지금 미국에서 한국에 옵니다.

(=Mary is coming to Korea from America.)

메리가 지금 한국에 미국에서 옵니다. (NOT OK)

3. “~에다(가)” can sometimes be used in everyday conversation in place of the location/direction case marker “~에” to emphasize the preceding noun. But it can only be used with a transitive verb. Therefore, it cannot be used with some verbs of existence (있다/없다, 많다/적다, etc.), verbs of locomotion, and verbs of posture.

**저**를 좀 집에/집에다/집에다가 데려다 주세요.

(=Please give me a ride home.)

존이 얼굴에/얼굴에다/얼굴에다가 **스킨로션**을 발랐습니다.

(=John put some skin lotion on his face.)

메리가 컴퓨터에/컴퓨터에다/컴퓨터에다가 **새 프로그램**을 깔았습니다.

(=Mary installed a new program on her computer.)

돈을 지갑에/지갑에다/지갑에다가 넣었습니다.

(=I put the money into my wallet.)

메리가 학교에 있습니다.

(=Mary is at school.)

메리가 학교에다/학교에다가 있습니다. (NOT OK)

존이 집에 갑니다.

(=John is going home.)

존이 집에다/집에다가 갑니다. (NOT OK)

메리가 의자에 앉습니다.

(=Mary is sitting on her chair.)

메리가 의자에다/의자에다가 앉습니다. (NOT OK)

#### 4. Time/Distance Case Marker (시간/거리격 조사):

~에, ~까지, ~에서 ~까지, ~부터 ~까지

Function	Time/Distance Case Marker (시간/거리격 조사)		
Form	~에 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~까지 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~에서 ~까지, ~부터 ~까지 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	At/In	Until	From _ to _
Examples	다섯 시 <u>에</u> (at five) 저녁 <u>에</u> (in the evening) 학교 <u>에</u> (at school)	세 시 <u>까지</u> (until three) 학교 <u>까지</u> (to school)	일곱 시 <u>에서</u> 열두 시 <u>까지</u> (from 7:00 to 12:00) 아침 <u>부터</u> 저녁 <u>까지</u> (from morning till night) 학교 <u>에서</u> 병원 <u>까지</u> (from school to the hospital) 학교 <u>부터</u> 병원 <u>까지</u> (from school to the hospital)

The time case marker “~에” can be attached to a time expression to specify a specific location in a time span which happens to be the same as the location case maker “~에.” It can be rendered as “at” or “in” depending on the context.

- 존은 7시에 학교에 갑니다.  
(=John goes to school at seven.)
- 메리가 저녁에 일찍 갑니다.  
(=Mary goes to bed early in the evening.)

The distance case marker “~까지” can be used with a place noun to indicate a destination. When it is used with a time expression, it refers to the end point of a time span, which can be rendered as “till/until.”

- 존은 학교까지 걸어서 갑니다.  
(=John goes to school on foot.)
- 메리는 다섯 시까지 학교에서 공부합니다.  
(=Mary studies at school until five.)

On the other hand, the distance case markers “~에서 ~까지” and “~부터 ~까지” can be used to express the distance between the origin and the destination, which can be ren-

dered as “from \_ to \_.”

서울에서 부산까지 비행기로 40분 쯤 걸립니다.

(=It takes about 40 minutes from Seoul to Busan by plane.)

우리 집부터 학교까지 500미터 쯤 됩니다.

(=It is approximately 500 meters from my house to school.)

They can also be used to express the interval of time between the starting point and the end point.

존은 7시에서 9시까지 도서관에서 공부합니다.

(=John studies in the library from seven to nine.)

수업시간은 오전 8시부터 오후 5시까지 입니다.

(=Class hours are from 8:00 AM to 5:00 PM.)

## 5. Dative Case Marker (여격 조사): ~에게, ~한테, ~보고, ~더러, ~께

Function	Dative Case Marker (여격 조사)	
Form	~에게 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~한테, ~보고, ~더러 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	To	
	Formal	Informal
Examples	메리 <u>에게</u> (to Mary) 고양이 <u>에게</u> (to the cat)	메리 <u>한테/보고/더러</u> (to Mary) 고양이 <u>한테</u> (to the cat)

The dative case markers “~에게, ~한테” can be used to express that an action is directed toward a person or an animate being, which can be rendered as “to.” “~에게” can be freely used in both written text and conversation, whereas “~한테” is more likely to be used in casual conversation.

존이 메리에게 편지를 씁니다.

(=John is writing a letter to Mary.)

메리가 동생한테 선물을 줍니다.  
 (=Mary is giving a gift to her younger sibling.)

존이 원숭이에게 바나나를 줍니다.  
 (=John is giving a banana to the monkey.)

메리가 고양이한테 밥을 줍니다.  
 (=Mary is giving some food to her cat.)

In a more casual conversation, “~보고, ~더러, ~한테다(가)” can also be used in place of “~한테” to strongly emphasize that an action is directed toward a specific person.

메리가 너보고/너더러/너한테다(가) 뭐라 그러니?  
 (=What did Mary say to you?)

나보고/나더러/나한테다(가) 그러는 거니?  
 (=Are you talking to me?)

누구보고/누구더러/누구한테다(가) 반말이야.  
 (=How dare you use blunt expressions to me!)

The honorific dative case marker “~께” can be used when we need to show respect to the person to whom an action is directed.

메리가 선생님께 선물을 드립니다.  
 (=Mary is giving a present to the teacher.)

## 6. Source Case Marker (원천격 조사): ~에게(서), ~한테(서)

Function	Source Case Marker (원천격 조사)	
Form	~에게(서) (After a consonant or a vowel)	~한테(서) (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	From	
	Formal	Informal
Examples	부모님 <u>에게서</u> (from parents)	친구 <u>한테서</u> (from a friend)

The source case markers “~에게(서)” and “~한테(서)” can be used with an animate noun to indicate the source of an item or information, which can be rendered as “from.” “~에게(서)” can be freely used in both written text and conversation, whereas “~한테(서)” is more likely to be used in casual conversation.

- 존이 부모님에게(서) 용돈을 받습니다.  
 (=John receives an allowance from his parents.)
- 메리가 친구한테(서) 책을 받습니다.  
 (=Mary is getting a book from her friend.)

On the other hand, the last syllable “~서” in “~에게(서)” and “~한테(서)” can be optionally deleted in casual speech, which results in the same surface forms as the corresponding dative case markers “~에게” and “~한테.” Therefore, their correct grammatical functions can only be determined from the context.

- 존이 어머님에게 편지를 씁니다.  
 (=John is writing a letter **to** his mother.)
- 존이 어머님에게 용돈을 받습니다.  
 (=John receives an allowance **from** his mother.)
- 메리가 존한테 책을 빌려줍니다.  
 (=Mary is lending her book **to** John.)
- 메리가 존한테 책을 빌려 옵니다.  
 (=Mary is borrowing a book **from** John.)

## 7. Direction/Instrumental Case Marker (방향격/도구격 조사): ~으로, ~로

The direction case markers “~으로, ~로” can be used with a place noun to indicate that an action is directed towards the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “to/toward.”

- 존이 공항으로 갑니다.  
 (=John is heading toward the airport.)
- 메리가 한국으로 여행 갑니다.  
 (=Mary is traveling to Korea.)

Function	Direction/Instrumental Case Marker (방향격/도구격조사)	
Form	~으로 (After a consonant)	~로 (After a vowel or “ㄹ”)
Meaning	To/Toward/Into	
Examples	미국 <u>으로</u> (to America) 회색 <u>으로</u> (into gray color)	서울 <u>로</u> (to Seoul) 잿더미 <u>로</u> (into a pile of ashes)
Meaning	By (means of)/With/In	
Examples	트럭 <u>으로</u> (by truck) 볼펜 <u>으로</u> (with a ballpoint pen) 설탕 <u>으로</u> (with sugar) 타이타늄 <u>으로</u> (with titanium) 3 <u>으로</u> (by 3)	지하철 <u>로</u> (by subway) 연필 <u>로</u> (with a pencil) 밀가루 <u>로</u> (with flour) 나무 <u>로</u> (with wood) 한국말 <u>로</u> (in Korean) 2 <u>로</u> (by 2)

존이 학교로 갑니다.

(=John is going to school.)

메리가 서울로 이사 갑니다.

(=Mary is moving to Seoul.)

다음 출구로 나가세요.

(=Take the next exit.)

In addition, they can be used to express the direction of the change from one thing to another, which can be rendered as “into.”

검은색이 회색으로 변했다.

(=The black color turned into gray.)

백 달러를 원화로 바꾸었다.

(=I exchanged one hundred dollars into the Korean currency.)

건물이 잿더미로 변했다.

(=The building turned into a pile of ashes.)

성적이 B<sup>+</sup>에서 A로 정정되었다.

(=My grade was corrected from B<sup>+</sup> into A.)

On the other hand, if “~으로, ~로” are used with a noun that refers to a means of transportation, a tool or device, material or ingredient, language, or a number in a mathematical operation, they function as instrumental case markers and indicate that an action is carried out using the preceding noun as an instrument, which can be rendered as “by (means of)/with/in.”

존이 택시로 약속장소에 갔습니다.

(=John went to the meeting place by taxi.)

시카고에서 서울까지 비행기로 약 14시간쯤 걸립니다.

(=It takes about fourteen hours from Chicago to Seoul by airplane.)

존이 빨간 볼펜으로 이름을 썼습니다.

(=John wrote his name with a red ballpoint pen.)

메리가 휴대폰으로 인터넷을 봅니다.

(=Mary is surfing the Internet with her cell phone.)

존이 집을 나무로 지었습니다.

(=John built his house with wood.)

메리가 한국말로 이야기합니다.

(=Mary is talking in Korean.)

그 숫자를 3으로 나누세요.

(=Divide that number by 3.)

그 숫자를 2로 곱하세요.

(=Multiple the number by 2.)

## 8. Instrumental Case Marker (도구격 조사): ~으로(써), ~로(써)

Function	Instrumental Case Marker (도구격 조사)	
Form	~으로(써) (After a consonant)	~로(써) (After a vowel or “ㄹ”)
Meaning	By (doing something)	
Examples	신앙 <u>으로(써)</u> (by faith) 예방 조치를 취함 <u>으로(써)</u> (by taking the preventive measures)	외모 <u>로(써)</u> (by one's physical appearance)

The instrumental case markers “~으로(써), ~로(써)” can be used to indicate that the preceding noun is used as a main source to carry out the action in a given situation, which can be rendered as “by.” The last syllable “~써” is generally optional.

신앙으로(써) 모든 것을 극복했다.

(=I overcame everything by faith.)

사람을 외모로(써) 판단하지 마세요.

(=Please do not judge people by their physical appearances.)

말만 하지 말고 행동으로(써) 보여줘라.

(=Don't just say it, but show it to me by taking action.)

“~으로(써), ~로(써)” can also be used with the nominalization suffixes “~ㅁ/음” (see Chapter 8 Noun Making Suffixes) to express that the action in the preceding expression is essential to reach the goal in a given situation, which can be rendered as “by doing something.” The last syllable “~써” is not optional for this usage.

우리는 그 경기를 이김으로(써) 결승전에 진출했다.

(=We advanced to the final by having won that game.)

존은 최선을 다함으로(써) 팀에 크게 기여했다.

(=John made a great contribution to his team by having done his best.)

우리는 함께 일함으로(써) 그 위기를 슬기롭게 극복했다.

(=We have overcome the crisis wisely by having worked together.)

일찍 예방 조치를 취함으로써 최악의 상황을 피할 수 있었다.

(=We could avoid the worst-case scenario by having taken the early preventive measures.)

경찰이 범인을 체포함으로써 드디어 그 사건을 해결했다.

(=The police finally solved the case by having arrested the perpetrator.)

## 9. Qualification Case Marker (자격격 조사): ~으로(서), ~로(서)

Function	Qualification Case Marker (자격격 조사)	
Form	~으로(서) (After a consonant)	~로(서) (After a vowel or "ㄹ")
Meaning	As a _ /For _	
Examples	국민 <b>으로서</b> (as a citizen) 결혼식장 <b>으로</b> (for a wedding hall)	담당자 <b>로서</b> (as a person in charge) 사무실 <b>로</b> (for an office)

The qualification case markers “~으로(서), ~로(서)” can be used to express that the preceding noun indicates the qualification to carry out a task or to serve for a certain purpose. It can be rendered as “as a \_ /for \_.”

이건 사람**으로서** 할 일이 아니다.

(=This is not the thing that I can do as a human being.)

저는 대한민국 국민의 한 사람**으로서** 국방의 의무를 다하고 싶습니다.

(=I would like to fulfill my military duty as a citizen of the Republic of Korea.)

존은 이 일의 담당자**로서** 모든 책임을 져야 한다.

(=John must take full responsibility as a person in charge of this matter.)

친구**로서** 한 마디 해야겠다.

(=I need to say one thing to you as a friend.)

Sometimes the last syllable “~서” can be deleted.

존이 공무원**으로** 시청에서 근무합니다.

(=John is working as a government employee at the City Hall.)

메리가 병원에서 간호사로 일합니다.

(=Mary is working as a nurse at the hospital.)

여기가 결혼식장으로 좋을 것 같다.

(=This place might be good for wedding.)

여기가 사무실로 괜찮을 것 같다.

(=This place might be good for an office.)

상대방의 동의 없이 녹음한 음성파일은 법적 증거로 사용할 수가 없다.

(=We cannot use an audio file recorded without the other party's consent as a legal evidence.)

## 10. Vocative Case Marker (호격 조사): ~아, ~야, ~여, ~이여

Function	Vocative Case Marker (호격 조사)			
Form	~아 (After a consonant)	~야 (After a vowel)	~이여 (After a consonant)	~여 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Hey			
	In Speech		In Written Text	
Examples	영철아 (Hey Youngchul)	수지야 (Hey Susie)	하늘이여 (My Lord in the heaven)	동포여 (My fellow citizens)

The vocative case markers “~아/~야” can be used to call a close friend or someone who is younger than the speaker to draw the addressee’s attention. They are usually attached to a first name only, but not to a full name.

영철아, 우리 내일 극장에 가자.

(=Hey Youngchul, let's go to the movies tomorrow.)

수지야, 너 지금 뭐 하니?

(=Hey Susie, what are you doing now?)

Because of this nature, they cannot be used to call a stranger or someone who is older or superior to the speaker. In that case, a full name plus the honorific suffix “~님,” which is neutral to gender or marital status, is often used to call a person waiting in the line

at public places, such as hospitals, district offices, stores, etc.

김영철님, 티켓 카운터로 오세요.

(=Mr. Kim Youngchul, please come to the ticket counter.)

민수지님, 들어오세요.

(=Miss/Mrs. Min Susie, please come in.)

In the case that you know a person's title, it would be better to use it instead of using one's name.

선생님, 어디 가세요?

(=Teacher, where are you going?)

팀장님, 내일까지 서류를 제출하겠습니다.

(=Team leader, I will submit the document by tomorrow.)

On the other hand, in literary text, “~(이)여” sometimes appears to invoke a deeper feeling from the readers.

동포여, 우리 모두 조국의 경제발전을 위해 다 함께 전진합시다.

(=My fellow Koreans, let's march forward all together for our country's economic development.)

신이시여, 어찌 우리를 버리시나이까?

(=My Lord, why are you giving up on us?)

Summary of Korean case markers

Case Markers (격조사)		Examples (예문)
Subject (주격 조사)	~이	존이 학교에서 공부합니다. (=John is studying at school.)
	~가	메리가 아침을 먹습니다. (=Mary is eating breakfast.)
	~께서	선생님께서 수업을 하십니다. (=The teacher is teaching the class.)
Object (목적격 조사)	~을	메리가 점심을 먹습니다. (=John is eating lunch.)
	~를	존이 메리를 좋아합니다. (=John likes Mary.)
Possessive (관형격/ 소유격 조사)	~의	존의 여동생이 예쁘다. (=John's younger sister is pretty.)
		메리의 선생님이 아주 친절하다. (=John's teacher is very kind.)
		존이 메리의 책을 읽습니다. (=John is reading Mary's book.)
Adverbial (부사격 조사)	Location/ Direction	존이 도서관에 있습니다. (=John is at the library.)
		메리가 방에서 공부합니다. (=Mary is studying in her room.)
	~에 ~에서	존이 학교에 갑니다. (=John is going to school.)
		메리가 학교에서 옵니다. (=Mary is coming from the school.)
	Time/Distance	존이 10 시에 메리를 만납니다. (=John is meeting Mary at 10 o'clock.)
		10시부터 11시까지 미팅을 합니다. (=I have a meeting from 10 to 11.)
	~부터 ~까지 ~에서 ~까지	미국에서 한국까지 12 시간 걸립니다. (=It takes 12 hours from America to Korea.)
		Dative
	메리가 친구한테 선물을 줍니다. (=Mary is giving a gift to her friend.)	
	메리가 너보고 뭐라 그러니? (=What did Mary say to you?)	
	나더러 하라는 거니? (=Are you asking me to do it?)	
	존이 선생님께 선물을 드립니다. (=John is giving a present to the teacher.)	
	Source	존이 메리에게서 선물을 받습니다. (=John is getting a gift from Mary.)
		메리가 아버지한테서 용돈을 받습니다. (=Mary gets an allowance from her father.)
		현금인출기에서 돈이 나옵니다. (=Money is coming out of the cash machine.)
	Direction/ Instrument	존이 한국으로 갑니다. (=John is going to Korea.)
		메리가 서울로 갑니다. (=Mary is going to Seoul.)
	~으로 ~로	메리가 택시비를 현금으로 지불합니다. (=Mary is paying the taxi fare with cash.)
		존이 버스로 학교에 갑니다. (=John goes to school by bus.)
Instrument	말만 하지 말고 행동으로(써) 보여줘라. (=Don't just say it, but show it to me by taking action.)	
	사람을 외모로(써) 판단하지 마세요. (=Please do not judge people by their physical appearances.)	
Qualification	친구로서 한 마디 해야겠다. (=I need to say one thing to you as a friend.)	
	메리가 병원에서 간호사로 근무합니다. (=Mary works as a nurse at the hospital.)	
Vocative (호격 조사)	~아/~야 ~여/~이여	민정아, 시간 있니? (Hey Minjung, do you have time?)
		수지야, 뭐 하니? (=Hey Susie, what are you doing?)
		주여, 저를 용서하십시오. (=Oh Jesus, please forgive me.)
		하늘이여, 저들을 벌하여 주소서. (=My Lord in Heaven, please punish them.)



## 05 Particles (보조사)

The grammatical term “particles” in Korean is often used as an umbrella term that refers to case markers (격조사) and other special meaning-carrying functional markers (보조사). The various types of case markers that we have discussed in the previous chapter are always attached to nouns and thereby indicate the grammatical functions of the preceding nouns. On the other hand, the special meaning-carrying functional markers that we are going to discuss below not only can be attached to nouns but also can be attached to other parts of speech while limiting the scope of verbal action or state to the preceding expression. For our discussion below, the term “particles” is used here to refer to only the special meaning-carrying functional markers, which are sometimes called “delimiters” in other literature.

### 1. ~은/는 (Topic Marker: 주제 보조사, Contrastive Focus Marker: 대조 보조사)

Function	Particle (보조사)			
	Topic Marker (주제 보조사)		Contrastive Focus Marker (대조 보조사)	
Form	~은 (After a consonant), ~는 (After a vowel)			
Meaning	As for _		It is _, but not others, that	
	(Sentence/Clause Initial Position)		(Non-Sentence/Non-Clause Initial Position)	
Examples	존은 (As for John)	메리는 (As for Mary)	존은 (It is John, but not others, that)	메리는 (It is Mary, but not others, that)

#### (1) Topic Marker (주제 보조사): ~은/는

Each element in a given sentence is assigned a grammatical function as to whether it serves as the subject, the object, the verb, etc. These individual elements are combined

together and comprise a sentence, which is a basic information unit that conveys the communicator's message to the interlocutor. In a typical conversational situation, the speaker imposes another information structure on a given sentence in order to transmit the message more strategically: the so-called topic-comment structure. The topic of a sentence is basically what the speaker is going to talk about, whereas the comment is what the speaker is going to say about the topic. In terms of the familiarity of information, the topic is characterized as the old or given information which the speaker assumes was previously introduced or is clear from the context. The comment, on the other hand, refers to the new information about the topic which the speaker wants to transmit to the listener.

Like many other languages in the world including English, the topic of a sentence in Korean always appears at the beginning of a sentence. It is marked by the topic markers “~은/는,” which can be rendered as “As for \_.”

존이 메리를 좋아합니다.

(=John likes Mary.)

존은 메리를 좋아합니다.

(=As for John, he likes Mary.)

메리는 존이 좋아합니다.

(=As for Mary, John likes her.)

In the second sentence above, the speaker is talking about the subject “John” and provides new information (“he likes Mary”) about the subject. Therefore, the subject “John” is the topic of the sentence and is marked here by the topic marker “~은” which replaces the original subject case marker “~이.” The rest of the information is the comment about the topic. By the same reasoning, in the third sentence, the speaker is talking about the object “Mary” and presents new information about her (“John likes her”) to the listener. Since the object “Mary” is the topic, it is marked by the topic marker “~는” which replaces the original object case marker “~를,” and subsequently it is placed in the sentence initial position.

The following table summarizes the core features of the topic and the comment in

Korean.

Information Structure	Core features of Topic and Comment in Korean
Topic	1. What the speaker (or the writer) is going to talk about 2. The old or given information to the listener assumed by the speaker 3. It occurs in the sentence initial position. 4. It is marked by the topic markers “~은/는.”
Comment	1. What the speaker (or the writer) is going to say about the topic 2. The new information to the listener assumed by the speaker 3. It occurs in the non-sentence initial position. 4. It follows the regular case-marking rules.

The understanding of the topic-comment structure provides a clear explanation for one of the most common errors made by non-native speakers who are learning Korean. When they are exchanging personal information with native speakers, they often misuse the subject case markers in place of the appropriate topic markers. The problem arises from their misconception that the sentential initial position is always reserved for the subject of a sentence according to the default word order in Korean, and the subject that appears in this position must be marked by the subject case markers “~이/가.”

However, unlike their common misconception, the sentence initial position is also reserved for the topic of a sentence. Anything that appears in the sentence initial position can serve as the topic of a sentence and takes the topic markers “~은/는” by overriding the regular case-marking rules.

A: 고향이 어디십니까? (=Where is your hometown?)

B: 제 고향은 서울입니다. (=My hometown is Seoul.)

제 고향이 서울입니다. (=Acceptable, but not natural)

A: 가족이 어떻게 되십니까? (=How many are there in your family?)

B: 제 가족은 모두 다섯 명입니다. (=Altogether there are five in my family.)

제 가족이 모두 다섯 명입니다. (=Acceptable, but not natural)

A: 직업이 어떻게 되십니까? (=What do you do for a living?)

B: 제 직업은 경찰입니다. (=I am a police officer.)

제 직업이 경찰입니다. (=Acceptable, but not natural)

In these short conversational exchanges, Speaker A asks Speaker B about some personal information, such as his/her hometown, family, occupation, etc. Since the expressions “고향,” “가족,” and “직업” were already mentioned in Speaker A’s questions, Speaker B must set these expressions as the topics of the sentences in his/her responses and put them into the sentence initial position with the topic markers “~은/는” instead of the subject case markers “~이/가.” Although the subject case markers here are somewhat acceptable, the topic markers are a lot more natural and are always used by native speakers.

Now the question arises as to what the topic of a sentence can be. The simple answer to this question is that anything can be the topic of a sentence. The topic markers “~은/는,” therefore, can be attached to virtually any parts of speech in a given sentence. But when the topic is the subject or the object of a given sentence, the topic markers “~은/는” always replace the subject or object case markers. Otherwise, they are used together with the existing case markers.

존은 학교에 갑니다.

(=As for John, he is going to school.)

존이~~는~~ 학교에 갑니다. (NOT OK)

그 선물은 존이 메리에게 주었습니다.

(=As for the gift, John gave it to Mary.)

그 선물을~~은~~ 존이 메리에게 주었습니다. (NOT OK)

그 문제를 해결하는 것은 아주 힘들다.

(=As for solving the problem, it is very hard.)

그 문제를 해결하는 것이~~는~~ 아주 힘들다. (NOT OK)

메리에게~~는~~ 내가 연락하겠다.

(=As for Mary, I will contact her.)

여름에~~는~~ 날씨가 아주 덥다.

(=As for summer, the weather is very hot.)

어제부터~~는~~ 비가 오지 않았다.

(=Starting from yesterday, it hasn't rained.)

## (2) Contrastive Focus Marker (대조 보조사): ~은/는

Other than serving as the topic markers, “~은/는” can also serve as contrastive focus markers whenever they appear in non-sentence initial position. They are equivalent to the English focus construction “It is \_ that/who \_” with the implication that only the preceding expression, but not others, is relevant to the given sentence.

존이 메리는 좋아합니다.

(=It is Mary whom John likes. Implication: John likes Mary, but he doesn't like others.)

메리를 존은 좋아합니다.

(=It is John who likes Mary. Implication: John likes Mary, but other people don't like her.)

존이 사과를 먹습니다.

(=It is apples that John eats. Implication: John eats apples, but not other fruits.)

In the case that we want put contrastive focus on the subject, we must first move the subject out of the sentence initial position because “~은/는” only functions as the topic markers in that position.

존은 치즈를 좋아합니다.

(=As for John, he likes cheese.)

치즈를 존은 좋아합니다.

(=It is John who likes cheese. Implication: John likes cheese, but others dislike it.)

메리는 투표를 하지 않았습니다.

(=As for Mary, she didn't vote.)

투표를 메리는 하지 않았습니다.

(=It is Mary who didn't vote. Implication: Mary didn't vote, but others did vote.)

“~은/는” sometimes appear more than once in a given sentence. In that case, the one in the sentence initial position is always treated as the topic marker, whereas all the others should be treated as the contrastive focus markers.

존은 메리는 좋아한다.

(=As for John, it is Mary whom he likes. =As for John, he likes Mary, but he doesn't like others.)

존은 메리에게는 아주 잘 해준다.

(=As for John, it is Mary whom he treats very nicely. =As for John, he treats Mary very nicely, but he doesn't treat others nicely.)

존은 숙제를 빨리는 한다.

(=As for John, it is just quickly how he does his homework. =As for John, he does his homework quickly, but the quality is not so good.)

존은 돈을 많이 벌기는 한다.

(=As for John, it is just making lots of money that he does. = As for John, he makes lots of money, but he does not manage his money wisely.)

As you can see in the sentences above, “~은/는” can be attached to virtually any parts of speech in a given sentence. When “~은/는” is used with the subject or the object, it replaces the case markers. Otherwise, it is used with other existing case markers.

존이 메리는 좋아합니다.

(=It is Mary whom John likes. Implication: John likes Mary, but he doesn't like others.)

존이 메리를는 좋아합니다. (NOT OK)

존은 학교에서는 열심히 공부한다.

(=As for John, it is at school where he studies hard. =As for John, he studies hard at school, but not at any other places, such as home.)

존은 학교는 열심히 공부한다. (NOT OK)

## CAUTION

One of the participants in my Korean grammar workshop pointed out that “~은/는” may serve as the contrastive focus markers even in the sentence initial position, which violates the grammatical rule of contrastive focus that I formulated here. She illustrated a possible conversational situation in which a group of people are taking turns and responding to the question about their previous experiences of using a specific item.

Question: 그 거 사용해 보니까 어떠세요? (=After having used it, what do you think about it?)

Speaker A: 별로예요. (=It's not particularly good.)

Speaker B: 그저 그래요. (=So-so.)

Speaker C: 나는 좋은데. (=I like it.)

Taking Speaker C's response into consideration, she claimed that “~는” here appears in the sentence initial position, but carries the contrastive focus function.

It is a valid argument that Speaker C's response is indeed contrasted with Speaker A and B's responses in that Speaker C presented his/her response which is simply different from other speakers' responses. But even in this case, the situational contrast has nothing to do with the grammatical contrastive focus function of “~은/는.” For example, in Speaker C's response, “~는” still functions as the topic marker because it is attached to the first person pronoun “나” which occurs at the beginning of the sentence. The whole sentence can be more naturally interpreted as “As for me, I like it.”, but not as “It is I, but not others, who like it.”

Speaker C: 나는 좋은데. (=As for me, I like it.)

Therefore, Speaker C's response is not actually a counterexample, but rather it is another strong supporting example for the grammatical rule addressed here.

Another apparent counterexample raised by one of my Korean grammar workshop participants is as follows.

존은 사과를 좋아하는데 메리는 (사과를) 싫어한다.

(=John likes apples, but Mary hates them.)

In the sentence above, the situation that John likes apples is in direct contrast with the situation that Mary dislikes them. However, the source of the grammatical contrast here comes from the inherent function of the clausal conjunction “~는/(으)는데” which can be used to contrast the situation in the following clause with the given situation in the preceding clause. Again, it has nothing to do with the contrastive focus function of “~은/는,” and the sentence must still be interpreted as follows.

존은 사과를 좋아하는데 메리는 (사과를) 싫어한다.

(=As for John, he likes apples, but as for Mary, she hates them.)

However, the example sentence above necessitates some change in the rule formulation of “~은/는,” the way in which “~은/는” function as topic markers when they appear at the beginning of a sentence or a clause, otherwise they serve as contrastive focus markers.

The last apparent counterexample to the topic/contrastive focus rule addressed here appears when “~은/는” are attached to the subject of a complex sentence which consists of a main clause and a subordinate clause.

존이 메리를 좋아하는 것은 분명하다.  
(=It is obvious that John likes Mary.)

In the sentence above, “~은” is attached to “것,” and it appears in the middle of the sentence. According to the revised topic/contrastive focus rule, it must function as a contrastive focus marker. But the more appropriate interpretation of “~은” in this sentence is on a par with its topic function, rather than its contrastive focus function as the following literal translation indicates.

존이 메리를 좋아하는 것은 분명하다.  
(=As for the fact that John likes Mary, it is obvious.)

The reason is that “~은” in this sentence is actually attached to the whole subordinate clause which serves as the sentential subject and appears indeed at the beginning of the sentence.

[존이 메리를 좋아하는 것]+은 분명하다.  
Subordinate clause/Subject

Therefore, our topic/contrastive focus rule applies clearly even to this sentence.

To provide more natural English translations for the Korean sentences below, however, the grammatical elements that carry the topic/contrastive focus markers “~은/는” will be simply translated focusing on their grammatical functions such as the subject or the object rather than their pragmatic functions such as the topic or the contrastive focus. Therefore, the first English translation of the Korean sentences below will be adopted

hereafter instead of the second one which is more appropriate reflecting their corresponding topic or contrastive focus functions.

존은 한국말을 공부한다.

(=John studies Korean.)

(=As for John, he studies Korean.)

메리가 축구는 좋아한다.

(=Mary likes soccer.)

(=Mary likes soccer, but not other sports.)

## 2. ~만 (Only)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~만 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Only
Examples	<p>존만 (Only John)</p> <p>사과만 (Only apples)</p> <p>학교에서만 (Only at school)</p>

“~만” can be used to express that the preceding noun is the only thing to which the given situation applies, which can be rendered as “only.” It can also be attached to other elements in a given sentence. When it is attached to the subject or the object of a sentence, it replaces the subject and object case markers, but it is compatible with all other case markers.

존이 사과만 먹습니다.

(=John only eats apples.)

메리만 학교에서 공부를 합니다.

(=Only Mary studies at school.)

존이 학교에서만 공부를 합니다

(=John studies only at school.)

메리가 존에게만 선물을 줍니다.

(=Mary gives a gift only to John.)

존이 일을 빨리만 합니다.

(=John only works fast.)

일요일에만 가게 문을 닫습니다.

(=Our store is closed only on Sundays.)

메리가 방에서 자기만 합니다.

(=Mary is only sleeping in her room.)

### 3. ~도 (Also)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~도 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Also/Too
Examples	선물 <u>도</u> (Also a gift) 선생님에게 <u>도</u> (Also to the teacher) 학원에서 <u>도</u> (Also at a private institute)

“~도” can be used to express that the given situation also applies to the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “also, too.” It can also be attached to other elements in a given sentence. When it is attached to the subject or the object, it replaces the case markers, but it is compatible with all other case markers.

존이 야채도 먹습니다.

(=John also eats vegetables.)

메리도 학원에서 공부를 합니다.

(=Mary also studies at a private institute.)

존이 집에서도 공부를 합니다

(=John also studies at home.)

메리가 친구한테도 선물을 줍니다.

(=Mary also gives a gift to her friend.)

제주도는 배로도 갈 수 있습니다.

(=As for Jeju Island, you can also go there by ship.)

일요일에도 가게 문을 엽니다.

(=Our store opens on Sundays, too.)

메리는 얼굴이 예쁘기도 합니다.

(=As for Mary, she is also pretty.)

#### 4. ~조차(도) (Even)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~조차, ~조차도 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Even
Examples	포도 껍질 <u>조차(도)</u> (Even grape skins) 친구한테 <u>조차(도)</u> (Even to friends) 너 <u>조차(도)</u> (Even you)

“~조차(도)” can be used to express that the given situation applies even to the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “even.” It can also be attached to other elements in a given sentence. When it is attached to the subject or the object, it replaces the the subject and the object case markers, but it is compatible with all other case markers.

존은 포도 껍질조차(도) 먹습니다.

(=As for John, he even eats grape skins.)

메리조차(도) 존을 싫어합니다.

(=Even Mary dislikes John.)

존은 메리한테조차(도) 돈을 빌립니다.

(=John borrows money even from Mary.)

존은 교수님에게조차(도) 욕을 합니다.

(=John uses cuss words even to his professor.)

메리는 밥을 먹을 때조차(도) 공부합니다.

(=As for Mary, she studies even when she is eating.)

On the other hand, it can also be used to express one's losing the last hope because the given situation applies even to the preceding noun, which can also be rendered as "even."

친한 친구조차(도) 나를 배신했다.

(=Even my close friends betrayed me.)

집조차(도) 경매로 넘어갔다.

(=Even the house was sold in the auction.)

## 5. ~까지(도) (Even)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~까지, ~까지도 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Even
Examples	포도 껍질 <u>까지(도)</u> (Even grape skins) 친구한테 <u>까지(도)</u> (Even to friends) 밥 먹을 때 <u>까지(도)</u> (Even when eating) 이번 시험 <u>까지(도)</u> (Even this competition)

“~까지(도)” happens to be in the same form as the adverbial case marker “~까지,” which can be used with time or place expressions to refer to the end point of the period of time or a destination. But it can also be used as a particle to express that the given situation applies even to the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “even.” Like its equivalent particle “~조차(도),” it can also be attached to other elements in a given sentence. When it is attached to the subject or the object, it replaces the subject and

the object case markers, but it is compatible with all other case markers.

존은 바나나 껍질까지(도) 먹습니다.  
 (=As for John, he even eats banana peels.)

메리까지(도) 존을 싫어합니다.  
 (=Even Mary dislikes John.)

존은 메리한테까지(도) 돈을 빌립니다.  
 (=John borrows money even from Mary.)

존은 교수님에게까지(도) 욕을 합니다.  
 (=John uses cuss words even to his professor.)

On the other hand, like “~조차(도),” it can also be used to express one’s losing the last hope because the given situation applies even to the preceding noun. Again, it can be rendered as “even.”

너까지(도) 그러면 어떻게 해?  
 (=What am I supposed to do if even you behave like that?)

너까지(도) 나를 못 믿으면 할 말이 없다.  
 (=I have nothing to say if even you cannot trust me.)

너까지(도) 시험에 지면 우린 끝이야.  
 (=It is going to be the end of the world if even you lose the competition.)

## 6. ~마저(도) (Even)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~마저, ~마저도 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Even
Examples	친구 <u>마저(도)</u> (Even friends) 나한테 <u>마저(도)</u> (Even to me) 이번 경기에서 <u>마저(도)</u> (Even this competition)

“~마저(도)” can be used to express that the given situation applies even to the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “even.” It can also be attached to other elements in a given sentence. When it is attached to the subject or the object, it replaces the subject and the object case markers, but it is compatible with all other case markers.

존은 포도 껍질마저(도) 먹습니다.

(=As for John, he even eats grape skins.)

메리마저(도) 존을 싫어합니다.

(=Even Mary dislikes John.)

존은 메리한테마저(도) 돈을 빌립니다.

(=As for John, he borrows money even from Mary.)

메리는 밥을 먹을 때마저(도) 공부합니다.

(=As for Mary, she studies even when she is eating.)

On the other hand, it can also be used to express one’s losing the last hope because the given situation applies even to the preceding noun. Again, it can be rendered as “even.” It is fully interchangeable with “~까지(도)” or “~조차(도)”.

너마저(도) 그러면 어떻게 해?

(=What am I supposed to do if even you behave like that?)

너마저(도) 나를 못 믿으면 할 말이 없다.

(=I have nothing to say if even you cannot trust me.)

너마저(도) 시합에 지면 우린 끝이야.

(=It is going to be the end of the world if even you lose the competition.)

## 7. ~밖에 (Other than)

“~밖에” can be used to express that the preceding noun is the only exception to the negative statement, which can be rendered as “other than.” It can also be attached to other elements in a given sentence. “~밖에” can be freely used in both written text and conversation.

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~밖에 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Other than
Examples	메리 <u>밖에</u> (Other than Mary) 그 <u>밖에</u> (Other than that)

존은 메리밖에 친구가 없습니다.

(=John has no friends other than Mary.)

메리밖에 아무도 그 일을 못합니다.

(=No one can do it other than Mary.)

그밖에 다른 것은 모릅니다.

(=I don't know anything other than that.)

존은 메리한테밖에 그 이야기를 안 했습니다.

(=John did not tell the story to anyone other than Mary.)

메리는 학교에서밖에 공부를 안 합니다.

(=Mary does not study in any other places other than at school.)

“~밖에” can be used only in a negative sentence.

존은 메리밖에 친구가 있습니다. (NOT OK)

메리밖에 아무도 그 일을 합니다. (NOT OK)

그밖에 다른 것은 알니다. (NOT OK)

## 8. ~마다 (Each and every)

“~마다” can be used to express that the given situation applies to each and every member of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “each and every.”

사람마다 패션스타일이 다릅니다.

(=Each and every person has a different fashion style.)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~마다 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Each and every
Examples	사람 <b>마다</b> (Each and every person) 나라 <b>마다</b> (Each and every country)

학생**마다** 숙제가 다릅니다.

(=Each and every student has different homework.)

서울은 골목**마다** 치킨집이 있습니다.

(=Each and every block in Seoul has a chicken restaurant.)

## 9. ~씩 (At a time)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~씩 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	At a time
Examples	한사람 <b>씩</b> (One person at a time) 한달에 한 번 <b>씩</b> (Once a month)

“~씩” can be used to express that the situation applies at the rate of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “at a time.”

한 사람**씩** 들어오세요.

(=Please come in one person at a time.)

한 번에 두 알**씩** 드세요.

(=Please take two pills at a time.)

It can also be used to express the frequency of an action in the given period of time.

존은 하루에 두 시간씩 컴퓨터 게임을 합니다.

(=John plays computer games two hours a day.)

메리는 일주일에 두 번씩 운동을 합니다.

(=Mary does exercise twice a week.)

## 10. ~끼리 (In a group)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~끼리 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	In a group
Examples	선생님들끼리 (Teachers in a group) 팀원들끼리 (Team members in a group)

“~끼리” can be used to express that the members of the preceding noun are carrying out the action as a group, which can be rendered as “in a group.”

선생님들끼리 식사를 하십니다.

(=The teachers are eating in a group.)

매일 아침 같은 반 학생끼리 모입니다.

(=Every morning students in the same class gather together in a group.)

우리 팀은 한달에 한 번 팀원들끼리 회식합니다.

(=Our team dines together in a group once a month.)

## 11. ~뿐 (Only)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~ <b>뿐</b> (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Only
Examples	<b>존</b> 뿐 (Only John) <b>당신</b> 뿐 (Only you)

“~**뿐**” can be used to express that the preceding noun is the only available option for the given situation, which can be rendered as “only.” It can only be used with the copula “~이다.”

그 일을 할 수 있는 사람은 **존**뿐입니다.  
(=John is the only one who can do the job.)

믿을 수 있는 사람은 **존**뿐입니다.  
(=John is the only one that we can trust.)

존이 사랑하는 사람은 **메리**뿐입니다.  
(=Mary is the only one that John loves.)

나는 그저 **당신**뿐이야.  
(=Honey, you are my everything.)

Sometimes it can be used to disparage a person by saying that the preceding noun is the only good thing about him/her.

존은 가진 건 **돈**뿐이야.  
(=Money is the only thing that John has.)

메리가 잘하는 건 **그것**뿐이다.  
(=That's is the only thing that Mary is good at.)

In addition, it can also be used in casual conversation to brag about one's fortune as a joke.

나는 가진 건 돈뿐이야.

(=All I have is money. =I am so rich.)

## 12. ~만큼 (As \_ as \_)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~만큼 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	As _ as _
Examples	존은 농구선수 <u>만큼</u> 키가 큼니다. (=John is as tall as a basketball player.) 워렌 버핏은 빌 게이츠 <u>만큼</u> 돈이 많습니다. (=Warren Buffet is as rich as Bill Gates.)

“~만큼” can be used to express that two different entities have more or less the same characteristics in terms of quantity or quality, which can be rendered as “as \_ as \_.”

존은 농구선수만큼 키가 큼니다.

(=John is as tall as a basketball player.)

메리는 영화배우만큼 예쁩니다.

(=Mary is as pretty as an actress.)

존은 메리만큼 똑똑하다.

(=John is as smart as Mary.)

워렌 버핏은 빌 게이츠만큼 돈이 많습니다.

(=Warren Buffet is as rich as Bill Gates.)

제주도는 하와이만큼 아름답습니다.

(=Jeju Island is as beautiful as Hawaii.)

## 13. ~짜리 (Individual value) vs. ~어치 (Total value)

“money value + 짜리” can be used to express the individual value of an item, whereas

“money value + 어치” can be used to express the total value of the list of items.

Function	Particle (보조사)	
Form	~짜리 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~어치 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	The value is	In total
	Individual value	Total value
Examples	이 컴퓨터는 백만 원 <b>짜리</b> 입니다. (=The value of this computer is one million Won.)	사과 10,000원 <b>어치</b> 주세요. (=Please give me ten thousand Won worth of apples.)

이 컴퓨터는 백만 원 **짜리**입니다.

(=The value of this computer is one million Won.)

사과 10,000원 **어치** 주세요.

(=Please give me ten thousand Won worth of apples.)

사과, 바나나, 포도, 모두 10,000원 **어치**입니다.

(=It comes to ten thousand Won altogether for apples, bananas, and grapes.)

#### 14. ~같이, ~처럼 (Like)

Function	Particle (보조사)	
Form	~같이 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~처럼 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Like	
Examples	영화배우 <b>같이</b> (Like a movie star) 천사 <b>처럼</b> (Like an angel)	

“~같이, ~처럼” can be used to describe the noun in the given situation by using the preceding noun as a reference point, which can be rendered as “like.” It can also be attached to other elements in a given sentence.

존이 영화배우**같이/처럼** 생겼습니다.

(=John looks like a movie star.)

메리는 천사**같이/처럼** 착합니다.

(=Mary is kindhearted like an angel.)

메리는 아이같이/처럼 순진합니다.

(=Mary is naive like a child.)

존이 학교에서같이/처럼 집에서도 말을 잘 들으면 좋겠다.

(=It would be good if John also behaves well at home like he does at school.)

## 15. ~(이)라도, ~(이)나마 (At least)

Function	Particle (보조사)	
Form	~이라도 (After a consonant)  ~라도 (After a vowel)	~이나마 (After a consonant)  ~나마 (After a vowel)
Meaning	At least	
Examples	<u>물이라도</u> (At least water)  <u>과자라도</u> (At least cookies)	<u>빵이나마</u> (At least bread)  <u>사과나마</u> (At least apples)

“~(이)라도” and “~(이)나마” can be used to express that the least preferred option would be taken as a last resort in the situation that all other preferred options are unavailable, which can be rendered as “at least.”

음료수가 없으면 물이라도 좀 주세요.

(=Please give me some water at least if you don't have any drinks.)

밥이 없으면 빵이라도 좀 주세요.

(=Please give me some bread at least if you don't have cooked rice.)

적은 돈이나마 보탬이 되었으면 좋겠네요.

(=I hope this must be of some help at least, even though it is such a small amount of money.)

They can be frequently used with the various parts of speech.

시간이 없으니 빨리라도 해 주세요.

(=Since I don't have time, at least wrap it up quickly.)

제가 만든 건데 한번 써 보시기라도 하세요.

(=This is what I made, and at least try to use it once.)

늦게나마 존이 도착했다.

(=John arrived here at least, although he was late.)

On the other hand, “~(으)라도” can be used in any type of sentence, whereas “~(으)나마” can only be used in a statement.

빵이라도 있으니 다행이다. (Statement)

(=We are lucky because at least we have some bread.)

빵이라도 있습니까? (Question)

(=Do you happen to have at least some bread?)

빵이라도 주세요. (Imperative)

(=At least give me some bread.)

빵이라도 먹자. (Proposition)

(=Let's eat at least some bread.)

빵이나마 있으니 다행이다. (Statement)

(=We are lucky because at least we have some bread.)

빵이나마 있습니까? (Question: Not Natural)

(=Do you happen to have at least some bread?)

빵이나마 주세요. (Imperative: Not Natural)

(=At least give me some bread.)

빵이나마 먹자. (Proposition: Not Natural)

(=Let's eat at least some bread.)

## 16. ~(이)야말로 (Indeed)

“~(이)야말로” can be used to emphasize the importance of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “indeed.”

Function	Particle (보조사)	
Form	~이야말로 (After a consonant)	~야말로 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Indeed	
Examples	존 <u>이야말로</u> (John indeed)	메리 <u>야말로</u> (Mary indeed)

존이야말로 세상에서 가장 나쁜 사람이다.

(=John is indeed the worst person in the world.)

메리야말로 우리에게 꼭 필요한 사람입니다.

(=Mary is indeed the person that we need.)

존이야말로 그 사건의 최대 피해자입니다.

(=John is indeed the biggest victim of this incident.)

메리야말로 이번 일에 적임자입니다.

(=Mary is indeed the right person for this job.)

저출산 문제야말로 정부가 해결해야 하는 시급한 과제입니다.

(=The low birth rate issue is indeed the most urgent task for our government to solve.)

한국이야말로 꼭 가 봐야 할 나라입니다.

(=Korea is indeed the country that you must visit without fail.)

미국 국방외국어대학이야말로 세계 최대의 언어교육 기관입니다.

(=The Defense Language Institute in America is indeed the world's largest language institute.)

It can also be used to express that the preceding noun is essential to turning around a critical situation.

아인슈타인의 상대성이론이야말로 인류 역사를 뒤바꿔 놓은 커다란 전환점이 되었습니다.

(=Einstein's theory of relativity was indeed the great turning point that changed the history of mankind.)

이번 시험이야말로 우리가 꼭 이겨야 합니다.

(=This is indeed the competition that we must win.)

## 17. ~(이)ㄴ들 (Regardless of)

Function	Particle (보조사)	
Form	~인들 (After a consonant)	~ㄴ들 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Regardless of	
Examples	무엇 <u>인들</u> (Regardless of what it is)	어 <u>딘들</u> (Regardless of where it is)

“~(이)ㄴ들” can be used in a negative question with a question word to express that one would take action regardless of what the preceding noun is, which can be rendered as “regardless of.”

배가 고프면 무엇인들 못 먹겠습니까?

(=If someone is hungry, there is nothing he/she cannot eat regardless of what it is.)

무엇인들 못 하겠습니까?

(=I will do anything regardless of what it is.)

시험이 이렇게 쉬우면 누구들 합격하지 못 하겠습니까?

(=If the test is easy like this, there is no one who cannot pass it.)

어딘들 못 가겠어요?

(=I will go to any place regardless of where it is.)

화가 나면 무슨 말인들 못 하겠어요?

(=If one gets upset, there is nothing he/she cannot say regardless of what it is.)

Each of the sentences above is actually a rhetorical question, and can be rephrased in a positive statement with the combination of the question word and the particle “~(이)든지 (or the like),” which can be rendered as “Question word+ever.”

배가 고프면 무엇이든지 먹습니다.

(=If someone is hungry, he/she can eat whatever it is.)

무엇이든지 하겠습니다.

(=I will do whatever it is.)

시험이 이렇게 쉬우면 누구든지 합격합니다.

(=If the test is easy like this, every one can pass it whoever he/she is.)

어디든지 가겠어요.

(=I will go wherever it is.)

화가 나면 무슨 말이든지 합니다.

(=If one gets upset, he/she can say whatever it is.)

“~(이)ㄴ들” can also be used to express that the preceding noun has no control over the given situation.

존이 저렇게 막무가내인데 내 말인들 듣겠니?

(=Given that John behaves like a maverick like that, he would not listen to me regardless of what I say to him.)

메리가 누구 말도 듣지 않으니 난들 어떻게 하겠니?

(=Because Mary doesn't listen to anyone, I don't know what to do regardless of who I am.)

## 18. ~(은/는)커녕 (Let alone)

Function	Particle (보조사)		
Form	~은 커녕 (After a consonant)	~는 커녕 (After a vowel)	~커녕 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Let alone		
Examples	저녁 <u>은</u> 커녕 (Let alone dinner)	공부 <u>는</u> 커녕 (Let alone study)	저녁 <u>커녕</u> (Let alone dinner) 공부 <u>커녕</u> (Let alone study)

“~(은/는)커녕” can be used in a negative sentence to express that even a less preferred option than the preceding noun is not available for the given situation, which can be rendered as “let alone.” It can also be attached to other elements in a given sentence.

10불(은)커녕 단돈 1불도 없습니다.

(=I don't even have a dollar let alone ten dollars.)

저녁(은)커녕 점심도 못 먹었습니다.

(=I didn't eat lunch let alone dinner.)

시험 준비(는)커녕 숙제도 아직 못 했습니다.

(=I didn't do my homework let alone test preparation.)

존은 집에서(는)커녕 학교에서도 전혀 공부를 안 한다.

(=John does not study at all even at school let alone at home.)

## 19. ~께나 (Quite)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~께나 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Quite
Examples	힘 <u>께나</u> (Quite strong) 돈 <u>께나</u> (Quite rich)

“~께나” can be used to express that one has the characteristics of the preceding noun to a considerable degree, which can be rendered as “quite.”

그 사람은 힘께나 쓰게 생겼네요.

(=He/she looks quite strong.)

돈께나 있다고 자랑하네요.

(=He/she is bragging about his/her considerable amount of money.)

그 사람 하는 행동을 보니 성질께나 있겠네요.

(=He must be quite bad-tempered by looking at his behavior.)

그 분은 생긴 걸 보니 거드름께나 피게 생겼네요.

(=He looks quite sluggish by looking at his face.)

## 20. ~치고(는) (Considering that)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~치고, ~치고는 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Considering that _
Examples	중고차 <u>치고(는)</u> (Considering that it is a used car) 초보자 <u>치고(는)</u> (Considering that one is a beginner)

“~치고(는)” can be used to compare an item or a person to other items or people in the same category, which can be rendered as “considering that \_.”

중고차치고(는) 꽤 괜찮네요.

(=It is kind of good considering that it is a used car.)

초보자치고(는) 운전을 잘 하시네요.

(=You are kind of a good driver considering that you are a beginner.)

다섯 살치고(는) 키가 꽤 큰데요.

(=He/she is kind of tall considering that he/she is five years old.)

존은 운동선수치고(는) 몸이 말랐습니다.

(=John is kind of skinny considering that he is an athlete.)

결승전치고(는) 별로 재미없네요.

(=It is not particularly interesting considering that this is a final.)

## 21. ~(이)나 (Either \_ or \_)

Function	Particle (보조사)	
Form	~이나 (After a consonant)	~나 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Either _ or _	
Examples	라면 <u>이나</u> 국수 <u>나</u> (Either ramen or noodles)	

“~(이)나” can be attached to each and every element that belongs to the exhaustive list of the options that one can choose from. It has the implication that the choice of an option would be acceptable as long as it is one of the specified options, which can be rendered as “either \_ or \_.”

라면이나 국수나 상관 없습니다.

(=I don't care whether it's either ramen or noodles.)

삼성 갤럭시나 아이폰이나 아무거나 괜찮아요.

(=Anything will be fine whether it's either a Samsung Galaxy or an iPhone.)

아스피린이나 타이레놀이나 뭐든지 갖다주세요.

(=Please bring me anything whether it's either an aspirin or a Tylenol.)

“~(이)나” can also be used to express that the given situation applies to each and every element listed in a sentence.

존은 학교에서나 집에서나 항상 열심히 공부한다.

(=John always studies hard either at school or at home.)

메리는 아는 사람한테나 모르는 사람한테나 항상 친절하다.

(=Mary is always kind either to her acquaintances or to strangers.)

## 22. ~(이)든지/~(이)든가 (Or the like), ~(이)라든지/~(이)라든가 (Such as \_ or \_)

Function	Particle (보조사)			
Form	~이든지 (After a consonant)	~이든가 (After a consonant)	~이라든지 (After a consonant)	~이라든가 (After a consonant)
	~든지 (After a vowel)	~든가 (After a vowel)	~라든지 (After a vowel)	~라든가 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Or the like		Such as _ or _	
Examples	콜라 <u>든지</u> 사이다 <u>든지</u> (A Coke, a Sprite, or the like) 콜라 <u>든가</u> 사이다 <u>든가</u> (A Coke, a Sprite, or the like)		콜라 <u>라든지</u> 사이다 <u>라든지</u> (Such as a Coke or a Sprite) 콜라 <u>라든가</u> 사이다 <u>라든가</u> (Such as a Coke or a Sprite)	

“~(이)든지, ~(이)든가” can be attached to the nouns that are the partial list of the options

that one can choose from. It has the implication that the choice of an option would be acceptable as long as it belongs to the category that includes the specified options. It can be rendered as “or the like.” “~(이)든지” can be freely used in both written text and conversation, whereas “~(이)든가” is more likely to be used in casual speech.

콜라든지 사이다든지 마실 것을 좀 주세요.

콜라든가 사이다든가 마실 것을 좀 주세요.

(=Please give me some drink, a Coke, a Sprite, or the like.)

테니스든지 골프든지 운동을 좀 하세요.

테니스든가 골프든가 운동을 좀 하세요.

(=Please do some exercise, tennis, golf, or the like.)

“~(이)라든지, ~(이)라든가” can be used instead if the choice of option is less restricted, which can be rendered as “such as \_ or \_.”

콜라라든지 사이다라든지 마실 것을 좀 주세요.

콜라라든가 사이다라든가 마실 것을 좀 주세요.

(=Please give me some drink, such as a Coke or a Sprite.)

테니스라든지 골프라든지 운동을 좀 하세요.

테니스라든가 골프라든가 운동을 좀 하세요.

(=Please do some exercise, such as tennis or golf.)

On the other hand, “~(이)든지, ~(이)든가” can also be used to express that the given situation applies to the category that includes the listed elements in a sentence.

존은 학교에서든지 집에서든지 열심히 공부한다.

존은 학교에서든가 집에서든가 열심히 공부한다.

(=John studies hard at school, at home, or at some other place.)

존한테든지 메리한테든지 빨리 도와 달라고 해라.

존한테든가 메리한테든가 빨리 도와 달라고 해라.

(=Ask John, Mary, or some other person for help.)

“~(이)든지, ~(이)든가” can also be used with a question word to express that one would take action regardless of what the preceding noun is, which can be rendered as

“Question word+ever.”

무엇이든지/무엇이든가 하겠습니다.

(=I will do whatever it is.)

시험이 이렇게 쉬우면 누구든지/누구든가 합격합니다.

(=If the test is easy like this, anyone can pass it whoever he/she is.)

어디든지/어디든가 가겠어요.

(=I will go wherever it is.)

화가 나면 무슨 말이든지/말이든가 못하겠습니까?

(=If one gets upset, there is nothing that he/she cannot say.)

### 23. ~만큼은 (At least; The bottom line is)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~만큼은 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	At least/The bottom line is
Examples	존 <b>만큼은</b> (At least John) 자존심 <b>만큼은</b> (At least my self-esteem)

“~만큼은” can be used to express that the preceding noun is the bottom line that the speaker cannot let go in the given situation, which can be rendered as “at least/the bottom line is.” It can also be attached to other elements in a given sentence.

내 자존심**만큼은** 꼭 지키고 싶다.

(=At least I want to keep my self-esteem.)

(=The bottom line is that I want to keep my self-esteem.)

이번 시험**만큼은** 꼭 이겨야 한다.

(At least we must win this completion.)

(=The bottom line is that we must win this completion.)

당신만큼은 나를 믿어야지.

(=At least you must trust me.)

(=The bottom line is that you must trust me.)

이것만큼은 절대 양보할 수 없다.

(=At least I absolutely cannot give up this thing.)

(=The bottom line is that I absolutely cannot give up this thing.)

존이 메리한테만큼은 거짓말을 안 한다.

(=At least John doesn't tell a lie to Mary.)

(=The bottom line is that John doesn't tell a lie to Mary.)

## 24. ~만큼도 (Not at all)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~만큼도 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Not at all
Examples	코딱지 <u>만큼도</u> (Near zero possibility like less than the size of booger)

“~만큼도” can be used to express that there is no possibility of the given situation, which can be rendered as “not at all.” It is typically used to exaggerate the situation in a negative sentence.

저는 털끝만큼도 부끄러운 것이 없습니다.

(=There is nothing at all that I am ashamed of.)

(=It is even less than the size of the tip of a hair that I am ashamed of.)

존은 손톱만큼도 그 돈에 손대지 않았습니다.

(=John did not touch the money at all.)

(=John did not even touch the size of a fingernail of the money.)

존은 양심이라고는 코딱지만큼도 없다.

(=John has no conscience at all.)

(=John does not even have a conscience which is less than the size of a booger.)

## 25. ~까지야, ~까지는 (Not necessary to do something)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~까지야, ~까지는 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	It is not necessary to do something
Examples	사과 <u>까지야</u> (Not necessary to make an apology) 돈 <u>까지는</u> (Not necessary to give money)

“~까지야” and “~까지는” can be used to express that it is too excessive to do something in the given situation, which can be rendered as “It is not necessary to do something.” “~까지야” is more likely to be used in conversation, whereas “~까지는” can be freely used in both written text and conversation. They are typically used in a negative sentence.

그 사람한테 사과할 것까지야/까지는 없습니다.

(=It is not necessary to make an apology to the person.)

뭐, 존한테 미안해 할 것까지야/까지는 없죠.

(=It is not necessary to feel sorry for John.)

그렇게 하실 필요까지야/까지는 없죠.

(=It is not necessary to do that.)

메리한테 돈까지야/까지는 주실 필요는 없습니다.

(=It is not necessary to give some money to Mary.)

친구한테까지야/까지는 존대말을 할 필요가 없습니다.

(=It is not necessary to use honorific expressions to friends.)

## 26. ~까지밖에 (Only up to)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	~까지밖에 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Only up to
Examples	이번주 <u>까지밖에</u> (Only up to this week)

“~까지밖에” can be used to express that the situation only allows up to the point of the preceding expression, which can be rendered as “only up to.” It is typically used in a negative sentence.

제가 빌려 드릴 수 있는 건 총 천만 원까지밖에 안 됩니다.

(=The total amount of money that I can lend to you is only up to ten million Won.)

숙제를 여기까지밖에 못했어요.

(=I did my homework only up to here.)

다음주 월요일까지밖에 시간이 없어요.

(=I have time only up to next Monday.)

기름이 거의 다 떨어져서 여기서 10킬로미터까지밖에 못 갈 거예요.

(=Because I almost ran out of gas, I can drive only up to 10km from here.)

## 27. 무렵(에) (Around the time)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	무렵(에) (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Around
Examples	저녁 <u>무렵(에)</u> (Around the evening time)

“무렵(에)” can be used with a time expression to express that the situation occurs around the time of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “around.” Its usage with a

noun is now very limited, and only a handful of time expressions can be used with it.

저녁 무렵에 돌아와서 친구한테 전화를 했다.

(=I came back around evening time and then called my friend.)

Unlike “Noun + 무렵(에), “Verb stem + (으)ㄴ 무렵(에)” can be used instead in most cases.

존은 해 질 무렵(에) 집에 돌아왔다.

(=John came back home around sunset.)

메리는 졸업할 무렵(에) 직장을 구했다.

(=Mary got a job around the time of her graduation.)

결혼식이 끝나 갈 무렵(에) 메리가 갑자기 울기 시작했다.

(=Mary suddenly started crying around the time when the wedding ceremony was about to end.)

## 28. **내내** (Throughout the period of time)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	내내 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Throughout the period of time
Examples	일주일 <b>내내</b> (All week long)

“내내” can be used to express that the situation continues throughout the time period of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “throughout the period of time.”

존은 일주일 내내 공부를 했다.

(=John had studied throughout the week.)

메리는 한달 내내 집에만 있었다.

(=Mary had stayed at home throughout the entire month.)

캘리포니아는 일년 내내 날씨가 아주 좋다.

(=The weather in California is so good throughout the year.)

## 29. ~값 (To deserve the position of)

Function	Particle (보조사)
Form	값 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	To deserve the position of
Examples	대통령 <u>값</u> (To deserve to become a president)

“~값” can be used to express that one deserves to hold the title of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “to deserve.” It is typically used as a compliment for talking about a little kid’s future.

존은 생각하는 게 미래의 대통령값이다.

(=John deserves to become the future president of our country considering his way of thinking.)

존은 아주 좋은 신랑값이다.

(=John deserves to make a good bridegroom.)

Summary of Korean Particles

Particles (보조사)	Meaning (의미)	Examples (예문)
~은 ~는	1. As for _ 2. It is _, but not others, that _	존은 학생입니다. (=As for John, he is a student.) 메리는 집에서 공부합니다. (=As for Mary, she is studying at home.) 존이 메리는 좋아합니다. (=It is Mary, but not others, that John likes.) 메리가 사과는 먹습니다. (=It is apples, but not other fruit, that Mary eats.)
~만	Only	존이 사과만 먹습니다. (=John only eats apples.) 메리만 학교에서 공부합니다. (=Only Mary studies at school.)
~도	Also, Too	존이 야채도 먹습니다. (=John also eats vegetables.) 메리도 학원에서 공부를 합니다. (=Mary also studies at a private institute.)
~조차(도)	Even	존이 숙제조차 안 합니다. (=John does not even do his homework.) 메리조차 존을 싫어합니다. (=Even Mary dislikes John.) 존조차(도) 메리를 배신했다. (=Even John betrayed Mary.)
~까지(도)	Even	존은 바나나 껍질까지 먹습니다. (=As for John, he even eats banana peels.) 존은 메리한테까지 돈을 빌립니다. (=John borrows money even from Mary.) 너까지(도) 시험에 지면 우린 끝이야. (=It may be the end of the world if even you lose the competition.)
~마저(도)	Even	너마저 그러면 어떻게 해? (=What am I supposed to do if even you behave like that?) 너마저(도) 나를 못 믿으면 할 말이 없다. (=I have nothing to say if even you cannot trust me.)
~밖에	Other than	메리밖에 그 일을 못합니다. (=No one can do it other than Mary.) 존은 메리밖에 친구가 없습니다. (=As for John, he has no friends other than Mary.)
~마다	Each and every	미국은 주마다 수도가 있습니다. (=Each and every state in America has its capital.) 사람마다 패션스타일이 다릅니다. (=Each and every person has a different fashion style.)
~씩	At a time	한 사람씩 들어오세요. (=Please come in one person at a time.) 한 번에 두 알씩 드세요. (=Please take two pills at a time.)
~끼리	In a group	선생님들끼리 식사를 하십니다. (=The teachers are eating in a group.) 우리 팀은 한달에 한 번 팀원들끼리 회식합니다. (=Our team dines together in a group once a month.)
~뿐	Only	믿을 수 있는 사람은 존뿐입니다. (=John is the only one that we can trust.) 존이 사랑하는 사람은 메리뿐입니다. (=Mary is the only one that John loves.)
~만큼	As _ as _	제주도는 하와이만큼 아름답습니다. (=Jeju Island is as beautiful as Hawaii.) 메리는 K팝 스타만큼 노래를 잘합니다. (=Mary sings as well as a K-pop star.)
~짜리 ~어치	Individual value/ Total value	이 컴퓨터는 백만 원짜리입니다. (=The value of this computer is one million Won.) 사과 10,000원어치 주세요. (=Please give me ten thousand Won worth of apples.)

~같이 ~처럼	Like	존이 영화배우 <b>같이</b> 생겼습니다. (=John looks like a movie star.) 메리가 천사 <b>처럼</b> 생겼습니다. (=Mary looks like an angel.)
~(이)라도 ~(이)나마	At least	음료수가 없으면 물 <b>이라도</b> 좀 주세요. (=At least give me some water if you don't have any drinks.) 빵 <b>이나마</b> 있으니 다행이다. (=We are lucky because at least we have some bread.)
~(이)야말로	Indeed	존 <b>이야말로</b> 세상에서 가장 나쁜 사람이다. (=It is indeed John who is the worst person in the world.) 메리 <b>야말로</b> 우리에게 꼭 필요한 사람입니다. (=It is indeed Mary who is the person that we need.)
~(이)ㄴ들	Regardless of	무엇 <b>인들</b> 못 하겠습니까? (=I will do whatever it is.) 어 <b>딘들</b> 못 가겠어요? (=I will go wherever I should go.)
~(은/는)커녕	Let alone	10불 <b>커녕</b> 1불도 없습니다. (=I don't even have a dollar let alone ten dollars.) 저녁 <b>커녕</b> 점심도 못 먹었습니다. (=I didn't even eat lunch let alone dinner.)
~께나	Quite	그 사람은 힘 <b>께나</b> 쓰게 생겼네요. (The person looks quite strong.) 존은 돈 <b>께나</b> 있다고 자랑하네요. (=John is bragging about his fortune.)
~치고(는)	Considering that	중고차 <b>치고</b> 꽤 괜찮네요. (=It's kind of good considering that it is a used car.) 초보자 <b>치고</b> 운전을 잘 하시네요. (=You are kind of a good driver considering that you are a beginner.)
~(이)나	Either/or	라면 <b>이나</b> 국수 <b>나</b> 상관 없습니다. (=I don't care whether it's either ramen or noodles.) 삼성 갤럭시 <b>나</b> 아이폰 <b>이나</b> 아무거나 괜찮아요. (=Anything will be fine whether it's either a Samsung Galaxy or an iPhone.)
~(이)든지 ~(이)든가	Or the like	존 <b>이든지/이든가</b> 메리 <b>든지/든가</b> 빨리 보내 주세요. (=Please send me a person quickly, John, Mary, or some other person.) 콜라 <b>든지/든가</b> 사이다 <b>든지/든가</b> (마실 것을) 좀 주세요. (=Please give me some drink, a Coke, a Sprite, or the like.)
~(이)라든지	Or whatever	콜라 <b>라든지</b> 사이다 <b>라든지</b> (마실 것을) 좀 주세요. (=Please give me some drink such as a Coke, a Sprite, or whatever.) 테니스 <b>라든지</b> 골프 <b>라든지</b> 운동을 좀 하세요. (=Please do some exercise such as playing tennis, golf, or whatever.)



## CHAPTER 06 Numbers and Counters (수와 조수사)

### I. Cardinal Numbers (기수)

There are two different counting systems for cardinal numbers in Korean: the Sino-Korean counting system and the native Korean counting system. The former was originally borrowed from Chinese and is quite useful especially when we count large numbers. On the other hand, the native Korean counting system is still widely used for numbers up to one hundred.

#### 1. Native Korean Numbers

Native Korean Numbers									
	하나	둘	셋 [쎬] <sup>1</sup>	넷 [넷]	다섯 [다섯]	여섯 [여섯]	일곱	여덟 [여덟] <sup>1</sup>	아홉
열	열하나	열둘	열셋	열넷	열다섯	열여섯	열일곱	열여덟	열아홉
스물	스물하나	스물둘	스물셋	스물넷	스물다섯	스물여섯	스물일곱	스물여덟	스물아홉
서른	서른하나	서른둘	서른셋	서른넷	서른다섯	서른여섯	서른일곱	서른여덟	서른아홉
마흔	마흔하나	마흔둘	마흔셋	마흔넷	마흔다섯	마흔여섯	마흔일곱	마흔여덟	마흔아홉
쉰/ 쉰 <sup>2</sup>	쉰하나 쉰하나	쉰둘 쉰둘	쉰셋 쉰셋	쉰넷 쉰넷	쉰다섯 쉰다섯	쉰여섯 쉰여섯	쉰일곱 쉰일곱	쉰여덟 쉰여덟	쉰아홉 쉰아홉
예순	예순하나	예순둘	예순셋	예순넷	예순다섯	예순여섯	예순일곱	예순여덟	예순아홉
일흔	일흔하나	일흔둘	일흔셋	일흔넷	일흔다섯	일흔여섯	일흔일곱	일흔여덟	일흔아홉
여든	여든하나	여든둘	여든셋	여든넷	여든다섯	여든여섯	여든일곱	여든여덟	여든아홉
아흔	아흔하나	아흔둘	아흔셋	아흔넷	아흔다섯	아흔여섯	아흔일곱	아흔여덟	아흔아홉

**Note:**

1. The expressions in the red brackets reflect the applications of phonological rules such as the syllable final consonant rule (Chapter 1 III-2) and the syllable final consonant cluster rule (Chapter 1 III-9). These rules apply across the board to other numbers marked in red.
2. 쉰 vs. 쉰  
“쉰” is a standard expression, but “쉰” is more likely to be used in actual pronunciation.

## 2. Sino-Korean Numbers

Sino-Korean Numbers									
영/공 (零)	일 (一)	이 (二)	삼 (三)	사 (四)	오 (五)	육 (六)	칠 (七)	팔 (八)	구 (九)
십(十)	십일 [시빌]	십이 [시비]	십삼	십사	십오 [시보]	*십육 [심녹]	십칠	십팔	십구
이십(二十)	이십일 [이시빌]	이십이 [이시비]	이십삼	이십사	이십오 [이시보]	*이십육 [이심녹]	이십칠	이십팔	이십구
삼십(三十)	삼십일 [삼시빌]	삼십이 [삼시비]	삼십삼	삼십사	삼십오 [삼시보]	*삼십육 [삼심녹]	삼십칠	삼십팔	삼십구
사십(四十)	사십일 [사시빌]	사십이 [사시비]	사십삼	사십사	사십오 [사시보]	*사십육 [사심녹]	사십칠	사십팔	사십구
오십(五十)	오십일 [오시빌]	오십이 [오시비]	오십삼	오십사	오십오 [오시보]	*오십육 [오심녹]	오십칠	오십팔	오십구
육십(六十)	육십일 [육시빌]	육십이 [육시비]	육십삼	육십사	육십오 [육시보]	*육십육 [육심녹]	육십칠	육십팔	육십구
칠십(七十)	칠십일 [칠시빌]	칠십이 [칠시비]	칠십삼	칠십사	칠십오 [칠시보]	*칠십육 [칠심녹]	칠십칠	칠십팔	칠십구
팔십(八十)	팔십일 [팔시빌]	팔십이 [팔시비]	팔십삼	팔십사	팔십오 [팔시보]	*팔십육 [팔심녹]	팔십칠	팔십팔	팔십구
구십(九十)	구십일 [구시빌]	구십이 [구시비]	구십삼	구십사	구십오 [구시보]	*구십육 [구심녹]	구십칠	구십팔	구십구
백(百) 100	백일 [배길] (100)		백십일 [백시빌] (111)		이백 (200)	삼백 (300)	구백 (900)	구백구십구 (999)	
천(千) 1,000	천일 [처닐] (1,001)		천백십일 [천백시빌] (1,011)		이천 (2,000)	삼천 (3,000)	구천 (9,000)	구천구백구십구 (9,999)	
만(萬) 10,000	십만 [심만] (100,000)		백만 [뱅만] (1,000,000)		천만 (10,000,000)		일억(億) [이력] 100,000,000		

**Note:** The expressions in the red brackets are the actual pronunciations of the numbers reflecting the applications of various phonological rules such as the linking rule (Chapter 1 III-3), the nasalization rule (Chapter 1 III-6), and the “ㄴ” insertion rule (Chapter III-8).

### 3. How to say large numbers

When we say large numbers, we use the Sino-Korean counting system and divide the numbers into every four digit from right to left. “만” is inserted between the fourth digit and the fifth digit while “억” is inserted between the eighth digit and the ninth digit. Thereafter, “조(兆)” and “경(京)” are inserted in the same manner.

How to say large numbers	
98,765 ↓ 만	구만팔천칠백육십오
987,654 ↓ 만	구십팔만칠천육백오십사
9,876,543 ↓ 만	구백팔십칠만육천오백사십삼
98,765,432 ↓ 만	구천팔백칠십육만오천사백삼십이
987,654,321 ↓   ↓ 억   만	구억팔천칠백육십오만사천삼백이십일
1,987,654,321 ↓   ↓ 억   만	십구억팔천칠백육십오만사천삼백이십일
12,987,654,321 ↓   ↓ 억   만	백이십구억팔천칠백육십오만사천삼백이십일
123,987,654,321 ↓   ↓ 억   만	천이백삼십구억팔천칠백육십오만사천삼백이십일
1,234,987,654,321 ↓   ↓   ↓ 조   억   만	일조이천삼백사십구억팔천칠백육십오만사천삼백이십일

## II . Ordinal Numbers (서수)

Unlike cardinal numbers introduced above, ordinal numbers impose order in counting numbers. There are two different counting systems for ordinal numbers in Korean: the Sino-Korean counting system and the native Korean counting system.

### 1. Native Korean Ordinal Numbers

Native Korean ordinal numbers are typically used when we refer to a specific person among family members, such as 첫째 아들(the oldest son), 둘째 딸(the second-oldest daughter), 셋째 누나(the third-oldest sister), 넷째 동생(the fourth-youngest sibling), etc.

둘째 아들이 내일 결혼합니다.

(=My second-oldest son is getting married tomorrow.)

오늘 셋째 딸이 대학교를 졸업합니다.

(=Today my third-oldest daughter is graduating from college.)

나는 넷째 동생을 제일 좋아합니다.

(=I like my fourth-youngest sibling most.)

They are also commonly used when we give step-by-step instructions for which a specific order is required, such as a recipe, a Standard Operating Procedure (SOP), etc.

라면을 끓이려면 (=When you cook ramen),

첫째, 냄비에 적당히 물을 붓고 끓인다.

(=First, pour the adequate amount of water and boil it.)

둘째, 끓는 물에 라면과 스프를 넣고 라면이 익을 때까지 약 3분 정도 더 끓인다.

(=Second, put the ramen and the soup base in the boiling water, and cook for three more minutes until the ramen is thoroughly cooked.)

셋째, 필요에 따라 계란, 파를 넣어서 끓인 후 먹으면 된다.

(=Third, put an egg or green onions in it if you want them, and start eating.)

Native Korean Numbers									
첫째 (first)	둘째 (second)	셋째 Third	넷째 (fourth)	다섯째 (fifth)	여섯째 (sixth)	일곱째 (seventh)	여덟째 (eighth)	아홉째 (ninth)	
<b>첫번째</b>	<b>두번째</b>	<b>세번째</b>	<b>네번째</b>	다섯번째	여섯번째	일곱번째	여덟번째	아홉번째	열번째
열 <b>한</b> 번째	열 <b>두</b> 번째	열 <b>세</b> 번째	열 <b>네</b> 번째	열 다섯번째	열 여섯번째	열 일곱번째	열 여덟번째	열 아홉번째	<b>스무</b> 번째
스물 <b>한</b> 번째	스물 <b>두</b> 번째	스물 <b>세</b> 번째	스물 <b>네</b> 번째	스물 다섯번째	스물 여섯번째	스물 일곱번째	스물 여덟번째	스물 아홉번째	서른번째
서른 <b>한</b> 번째	서른 <b>두</b> 번째	서른 <b>세</b> 번째	서른 <b>네</b> 번째	서른 다섯번째	서른 여섯번째	서른 일곱번째	서른 여덟번째	서른 아홉번째	마흔번째
마흔 <b>한</b> 번째	마흔 <b>두</b> 번째	마흔 <b>세</b> 번째	마흔 <b>네</b> 번째	마흔 다섯번째	마흔 여섯번째	마흔 일곱번째	마흔 여덟번째	마흔 아홉번째	쉰번째
쉰 <b>한</b> 번째	쉰 <b>두</b> 번째	쉰 <b>세</b> 번째	쉰 <b>네</b> 번째	쉰 다섯번째	쉰 여섯번째	쉰 일곱번째	쉰 여덟번째	쉰 아홉번째	예순번째
예순 <b>한</b> 번째	예순 <b>두</b> 번째	예순 <b>세</b> 번째	예순 <b>네</b> 번째	예순 다섯번째	예순 여섯번째	예순 일곱번째	예순 여덟번째	예순 아홉번째	일흔번째
일흔 <b>한</b> 번째	일흔 <b>두</b> 번째	일흔 <b>세</b> 번째	일흔 <b>네</b> 번째	일흔 다섯번째	일흔 여섯번째	일흔 일곱번째	일흔 여덟번째	일흔 아홉번째	여든번째
여든 <b>한</b> 번째	여든 <b>두</b> 번째	여든 <b>세</b> 번째	여든 <b>네</b> 번째	여든 다섯번째	여든 여섯번째	여든 일곱번째	여든 여덟번째	여든 아홉번째	아흔번째
아흔 <b>한</b> 번째	아흔 <b>두</b> 번째	아흔 <b>세</b> 번째	아흔 <b>네</b> 번째	아흔 다섯번째	아흔 여섯번째	아흔 일곱번째	아흔 여덟번째	아흔 아홉번째	백번째

**Note:**

1. There are two different ways to say native Korean ordinal numbers. One is to use the standard ordinal numbers like the ones in the first row in the table above. These numbers are typically used for counting up to nine. Another is to use the ordinal numbers with the counter “번” as in the second row and below. These ordinal numbers are more commonly used to specify the ranks or turns among a large number of items.
2. All the irregular forms are marked in red, which will be discussed shortly in more detail.

## 2. Sino-Korean Ordinal Numbers

When we refer to repeated political, sporting, or historical events, we use Sino-Korean ordinal numbers with appropriate counters to correctly identify an individual event.

제 2 차 (第二次) 남북정상회담이 오늘 판문점에서 열린다.

(=The second South-North Korean summit talk will be held at Panmunjom.)

제 2 차 (第二次) 세계대전은 연합국의 승리로 끝났습니다.

(=The Second World War ended with the Allied victory.)

제 23 회 (第二十三會) 동계올림픽 대회가 한국에서 개최되었습니다.

(=The twenty-third Winter Olympics was held in Korea.)

한국의 제 5 대 (第五代) 대통령은 박정희입니다.

(=The fifth president of Korea was Park Chung Hee.)

**Note:**

The Sino-Korean counter “차(次)” is used for a political, social, or historical event.

The Sino-Korean counter “회(會)” is used for a competition.

The Sino-Korean counter “대(代)” is used for an official position.

### Ⅲ. Counters (조수사)

When we count countable nouns, such as a number of items, animals, people, etc., we use the so-called “counters.” The counters are used following the pattern of Noun + Number + Counter. Some counters work with native Korean numbers while others are used with Sino-Korean numbers.

#### 1. Counters with Native Korean Numbers

Counters with Native Korean Numbers	Used for Counting	Examples (예제)
명	People	군인 한 명 (One soldier) <sup>1</sup>
분	People (honorific)	선생님 두 분 (Two teachers) <sup>1</sup>
사람	People	피해자 세 사람 (Three victims) <sup>1</sup>
마리	Animals	강아지 네 마리 (Four puppies) <sup>1</sup>
쌍	A couple	부부 두 쌍 (Two couples) 새 한 쌍 (A couple of birds)
살	Age	스무 살 (Twenty years old)
달	Months	한 달 (One month)
주/주일 <sup>2</sup>	Weeks	한 주 (One week), 두 주일 (Two weeks)
시	Hour hand	열 시 (Ten o'clock)

시간	Hours	네 시간 (Four hours)
개	Hard object	사과 세 개 (Three apples)
대	Electronics, Transportation	TV 한 대 (One TV), 버스 두 대 (Two buses)
척	Ships, boats	항공모함 한 척 (One aircraft carrier)
채	Houses	집 열 채 (Ten houses)
벌	Clothes	양복 한 벌 (A men's suit)
켈레	Shoes, socks	신발 한 켤레 (A pair of shoes)
권	Books, notebooks	책 두 권 (Two books)
장	Paper	종이 열 장 (Ten sheets of paper)
잔	Glass	위스키 두 잔 (Two shots of whiskey)
컵	Cup	물 한 컵 (A cup of water)
병	Bottles	소주 두 병 (Two bottles of soju)
캔	Beer	맥주 한 캔 (A can of beer)
봉지	Bag	사탕 세 봉지 (Three bags of candies)
상자/박스	Box	과일 한 상자/박스 (A box of fruit)
자루	Pencils, tools with handles	연필 다섯 자루 (Five pencils), 삽 한 자루 (a shovel)
공기	Bowl	밥 한 공기 (A bowl of cooked rice)
그릇	Bowl	국 한 그릇 (A bowl of soup)
접시	Plate	과일 한 접시 (A plate of fruit)
조각/쪽	Piece, slice	피자 한 조각/쪽 (A slice of pizza)
판	Eggs	계란 한 판 (A carton of eggs)
알	Pills	소화제 두 알 (Two digestive pills)
그루	Trees	나무 세 그루 (Three trees)
포기	Cabbage	배추 세 포기 (Three heads of cabbage)
단	Bunches (vegetables)	시금치 두 단 (Two bunches of spinach)
송이	Clusters	포도 한 송이 (One cluster of grapes)
다발	Flowers	장미 한 다발 (A bundle of roses)
통	Watermelon	수박 세 통 (Three watermelons)
줄	Rolls, rows	김밥 한 줄 (A roll of gimhap)
점	Paintings	그림 한 점 (One painting)
가지/종류	Kinds	과자 세 가지/종류 (Three kinds of cookies)
번	Times	실수 한 번 (One mistake)
곡	Songs	노래 두 곡 (Two songs)
편	movies	영화 세 편 (Three movies)

**Note:****1.** Abbreviated Native Korean Numbers with counters

When the native Korean numbers “하나,” “둘,” “셋,” and “넷” are used with counters, they are shortened into “한,” “두,” “세,” and “네,” respectively, by dropping the last sound. This rule applies across the board whenever they appear as part of a number, i.e., “열**한** 개,” “스물**두** 개,” “서른**세** 개,” etc.

**2.** “주/주일” can also be used with Sino-Korean numbers as in “이 주 동안 (for two weeks)” and “삼 주일 동안 (for three weeks).”

## 2. Counters with Sino-Korean Numbers

Counters with Sino-Korean Numbers	Used for Counting	Examples (예제)
세	Age	이십칠 <b>세</b> (Twenty-seven years old)
년	Years	십 <b>년</b> (Ten years), 백 <b>년</b> (One hundred years)
개월	Months	이 <b>개월</b> (Two months)
주/주일	Weeks	사 <b>주</b> (Four weeks), 사 <b>주일</b> (Four weeks)
일	Days	오 <b>일</b> (Five days)
분	Minutes	삼십 <b>분</b> (Thirty minutes)
초	Seconds	십오 <b>초</b> (Fifteen seconds)
동	Building number	은마 아파트 이 <b>동</b> (Eunma Apartment Building #2)
층	Floor/Story	칠 <b>층</b> (Seventh floor) 이십 <b>층</b> 건물 (A twenty-story building)
호	Suite number/ Room number	이백삼십칠 <b>호</b> (Suite number 237/Room number 237)
과	Lessons	삼 <b>과</b> (Lesson 3)
학년	School grade	초등학교 삼 <b>학년</b> (The third grade)
킬로(그램)/그램	Weight	불고기 백 <b>그램</b> (One hundred grams of bulgogi)
킬로(미터)/미터	Distance	십 <b>킬로(미터)</b> (Ten kilometers)
센티(미터)	Height/Width	백칠십 <b>센티(미터)</b> (One hundred centimeters)
밀리(미터)	Height/Width	십 <b>밀리(미터)</b> (ten millimeters)
제곱 미터	Size of a house and land	백 <b>제곱 미터</b> (One hundred square meters)
킬로리터/리터	Volume (liquid)	우유 일 <b>리터</b> (One liter of milk)
원	Korean currency	오천 <b>원</b> (Five thousand Won)
달러	US Dollar	이십 <b>달러</b> (Twenty dollars)

## IV. How to Read Telephone Numbers

There are basically two different ways to read telephone numbers. One is to read numbers digit by digit. Another is to read each four-digit number in the same way as we read large numbers. It is also possible to read telephone numbers using the mixture of these two different reading systems as shown in the following table. In addition, after reading the first four-digit number, we insert “의” or “에” with the optional “국” before we continue to read the second four-digit number.

Telephone Numbers	Reading Telephone Numbers
3024-9837 <sup>1</sup>	삼공이사의/에 구팔삼칠 <sup>2</sup> or 삼천이십사의/에 구천팔백삼십칠 or 삼천이십사의/에 구팔삼칠 or 삼공이사의/에 구천팔백삼십칠 or 삼공이사국의/국에 구팔삼칠 or 삼천이십사국의/국에 구천팔백삼십칠 or 삼천이십사국의/국에 구팔삼칠 or 삼공이사국의/국에 구천팔백삼십칠
02-5748-0048 <sup>3</sup>	공이의/에 오칠사팔의/에 공공사팔, or 공이의/에 오천칠백사십팔의/에 사십팔 or 공이의/에 오천칠백사십팔의/에 공공사팔, or 공이의/에 오칠사팔의/에 사십팔 or 공이의/에 오칠사팔국의/국에 공공사팔, or 공이의/에 오천칠백사십팔국의/국에 사십팔 or 공이의/에 오천칠백사십팔국의/국에 공공사팔, or 공이의/에 오칠사팔국의/국에 사십팔

**Note:**

1. The number “0” is always read as “공” in telephone numbers.
2. Although the hyphen “-” is pronounced as “~의”, which is a standard suffix, most people pronounce it as “~에” in actual speech.
3. The area code “02” is pronounced in the same way without the suffix “국.” The following table shows the area codes of the major cities and provinces in Korea.

Area Code of Major Cities and Provinces			
서울특별시	02	울산광역시	052
경기도	031	대구광역시	053
인천광역시	032	경상북도	054
강원도	033	경상남도	055
충청남도	041	전라남도	061
대전광역시	042	광주광역시	062
충청북도	043	전라북도	063
세종특별시	044	제주특별자치도	064
부산광역시	051		



## 07 Time and Dates (시간과 날짜)

Time-related expressions are one of the most important topics that you need to know at the early stage of foreign language learning. These are the building blocks for understanding various kinds of scheduled activities that you may encounter when you study a foreign language or when you actually travel to the country where the language is spoken. Imagine that you just arrived at the Incheon International Airport (인천 국제공항) in Korea. Probably, the first information you need to know is the local time. Next, when you check in to a hotel, you must tell the front desk how long you intend to stay at the hotel by specifying the dates. You may also ask the front desk to give you a wake-up call early in the morning. If you decide to make a reservation for a downtown tour, you need to call the travel agency and tell them the specific time and dates you would prefer. All of these possible real life situations, to name a few, require your prior knowledge of time-related expressions. It is, therefore, necessary to study them thoroughly in order to successfully interact with native speakers.

### I . Time (시간)

There are two different ways to read time in Korean: the 12-hour clock system and the 24-hour clock system. The former is widely used for everyday life, whereas the latter is only used for military time expressions.

#### 1. Reading 12-Hour Clock

This time reading system divides 24 hours into two 12 hour units. A.M. (오전) refers

to the first 12 hours and P.M. (오후) designates the next 12 hours. When reading hours in A.M., Koreans prefer to use “새벽 (dawn)” instead of “오전” if the time falls between 1:00 A.M. and 5:59 A.M. They normally use “아침 (morning)” for the time period between 6:00 A.M. and 11:59 A.M. Of course, the line of division given here is somewhat arbitrary, and it depends on each person’s preference. The word “정오 (noon)” refers to 12:00 P.M. (noon).

On the other hand, “오후 (P.M.)” refers to the time period between 1:00 P.M. and 6:00 P.M. Sometimes, “낮 (afternoon)” is used to refer to the time period between 12:00 P.M. and 2:00 P.M. The word “저녁 (evening)” is more frequently used than “오후” if the time falls between 6:00 P.M. and 8:59 P.M. The word “밤 (night)” is often used for the time period between 9:00 P.M. and 11:59 P.M. The word “자정” refers to 12:00 A.M. (midnight).

A.M. / P.M.	More Frequently Used Time Expressions	12 Hour Clock
오전 (A.M)	자정 (Midnight)	12:00 A.M.
	새벽 (Dawn)	1:00 A.M.
		2:00 A.M.
		3:00 A.M.
		4:00 A.M.
		5:00 A.M.
	아침 (Morning) is preferred to be used than 오전 (A.M.)	6:00 A.M.
		7:00 A.M.
		8:00 A.M.
		9:00 A.M.
		10:00 A.M.
오후 (P.M)	정오 (Noon)	12:00 P.M.
	오후 (P.M.) 낮 (Afternoon) is sometimes used to refer to the time period between 12:00 P.M. and 2:00 P.M.	1:00 P.M.
		2:00 P.M.
		3:00 P.M.
		4:00 P.M.
		5:00 P.M.
	저녁 (Evening)	6:00 P.M.
		7:00 P.M.
		8:00 P.M.
	밤 (Night)	9:00 P.M.
		10:00 P.M.
11:00 P.M.		

Unlike English, when you read time on the 12-hour clock system, you must specify A.M. (오전) and P.M. (오후) first before you read the actual time. When reading hours (시) in Korean, use native Korean numbers, but for minutes (분) and seconds (초), use Sino-Korean numbers instead.

Counters for Time (시간 조수사)	Examples (예제)	
Hour (시)	5:00 A.M.	새벽 다섯 시
	9:00 A.M.	오전 아홉 시 or 아침 아홉 시
	11:00 A.M.	오전 열한 시
	1:00 P.M.	오후 한 시
	7:00 P.M.	오후 일곱 시 or 저녁 일곱 시
	10:00 P.M.	밤 열 시
	12:00 P.M.	밤 열두 시 or 밤 열두 시 정각 <sup>1</sup>
Minute (분)	1:10 A.M.	새벽 한 시 십 분
	4:45 A.M.	새벽 네 시 사십오 분
	8:30 A.M.	아침 여덟 시 삼십 분 or 아침 여덟 시 반 <sup>2</sup>
	11:50 A.M.	오전 열한 시 오십 분
	3:50 P.M.	오후 세 시 오십 분 or 오후 네 시 십 분 전 <sup>3</sup>
	7:55 P.M.	저녁 일곱 시 오십오 분 or 저녁 여덟 시 오 분 전
	11:30 P.M.	밤 열한 시 삼십 분 or 밤 열한 시 반
Second (초)	8:05:15 A.M.	여덟 시 오 분 십오 초
	9:14:23 P.M.	아홉 시 십사 분 이십삼 초
	11:39:47 P.M.	열 한 시 삼십구 분 사십칠 초
	12:48:59 A.M.	열 두 시 사십팔 분 오십구 초

**Note:**

**1. 정각 (O'clock)**

The Korean word “정각” is equivalent to the English word o'clock. It can be used optionally to emphasize precise time. For example, 10:00 A.M. can be read either as “오전 열 시,” “오전 열 시 정각,” or as “정각 열 시.”

**2. 30분 vs. 반**

“30분” can be optionally replaced by “반(half an hour).” For example, 10:30 A.M. can be read either as “오전 열 시 삼십 분” or as “오전 열 시 반.”

**3. 5시 45분 vs. 6시15분 전**

If the minute hand passes 45 minutes or so, then you can optionally read the time by specifying the remaining minutes to the next hour. For example, 5:45 A.M. can be read either as “다섯 시 사십오 분” or as “여섯 시 십오 분 전.” “전” means “before.”

## 2. Reading 24-Hour Clock

The 24-hour clock system, also known as the military time system, is widely used in the military community and important news briefings about emergency, disaster, combat or war situations. It divides a day into 24 hours without mentioning A.M. or P.M. When you read hours on this clock system, you can use either native Korean numbers or Sino-Korean numbers with the proviso that you must add “공,” which means “zero,” to each hour up to the first nine hours. For minutes and seconds, you can apply the same rules as we mentioned above for the 12-hour clock reading system.

Time (시간)	Read as (읽는 방법)	Time (시간)	Read as (읽는 방법)
01:00	공 일 시 / 공 한 시	13:00	십삼 시 / 열 세 시
02:00	공 이 시 / 공 두 시	14:00	십사 시 / 열 네 시
03:00	공 삼 시 / 공 세 시	15:00	십오 시 / 열 다섯 시
04:00	공 사 시 / 공 네 시	16:00	십육 시 / 열 여섯 시
05:00	공 오 시 / 공 다섯 시	17:00	십칠 시 / 열 일곱 시
06:00	공 육 시 / 공 여섯 시	18:00	십팔 시 / 열 여덟 시
07:00	공 칠 시 / 공 일곱 시	19:00	십구 시 / 열 아홉 시
08:00	공 팔 시 / 공 여덟 시	20:00	이십 시 / 스무 시
09:00	공 구 시 / 공 아홉 시	21:00	이십일 시 / 스물 한 시
10:00	십 시 / 열 시	22:00	이십이 시 / 스물 두 시
11:00	십일 시 / 열 한 시	23:00	이십삼 시 / 스물 세 시
12:00	십이 시 / 열 두 시	24:00	이십사 시 / 스물 네 시

**Note:** Preferred Readings on the 24-Hour Clock System

Although pure Korean numbers and Sino-Korean numbers are fully compatible with the 24-hour clock system, there are some preferred readings for the following examples:

공 한 시 / 공 일 시, 공 두 시 / 공 이 시, 열 시 / 십 시, and 스무 시 / 이십 시

The underlined reading in each pair is more frequently used than the other.

## II . Dates (날짜)

### 1. Months of the Year (월)

Month of the Year (월)	Read as (읽는 방법)	Month of the Year (월)	Read as (읽는 방법)
1월 (January)	일월	7월 (July)	칠월
2월 (February)	이월	8월 (August)	팔월
3월 (March)	삼월	9월 (September)	구월
4월 (April)	사월	10월 (October)	시월
5월 (May)	오월	11월 (November)	십일월
6월 (June)	유월	12월 (December)	십이월

Sino-Korean numbers are used with the counter “월” when we read “month of the year.” But you need to pay special attention to the months of “June” and “October.” The months of “6월” and “10월” are read as “[유월]” and “[시월],” respectively, by dropping the last consonant instead of the expected readings of “[육월],” “[십월].”

### 2. Date of the Month (일)

Date of the Month (월)						
1 일 일 [이릴]	2 이 일 [이일]	3 삼 일 [사밀]	4 사 일 [사일]	5 오 일 [오일]	6 육 일 [유길]	7 칠 일 [치릴]
8 팔 일 [파릴]	9 구 일 [구일]	10 십 일 [시빌]	11 십일 일 [시비릴] <sup>2</sup>	12 십이 일 [시비일]	13 십삼 일 [십사밀]	14 십사 일 [십사일]
15 십오 일 [시보일]	16 십육 일 [십뉴길] <sup>1</sup>	17 십칠 일 [십치릴]	18 십팔 일 [십파릴]	19 십구 일 [십구일]	20 이십 일 [이시빌]	21 이십일 일 [이시비릴] <sup>2</sup>
22 이십이 일 [이시비일]	23 이십삼 일 [이십사밀]	24 이십사 일 [이십사일]	25 이십오 일 [이시보일]	26 이십육 일 [이십뉴길] <sup>1</sup>	27 이십칠 일 [이십치릴]	28 이십팔 일 [이십파릴]
29 이십구 일 [이십구일]	30 삼십 일 [삼시빌]	31 삼십일 일 [삼시비릴]				

Sino-Korean numbers are used with the counter ‘일’ when we read “date of the month.” But you need to pay special attention to how to read the dates because a number of phonological rules are applied here. The bracketed expressions are the actual pronunciations of the dates, and they are listed here for your convenience.

**Note:**

1. The Syllable Final Consonant Rule (Chapter 1 III-2), the Linking Rule (Chapter 1 III-3), and the “ㄴ” Insertion Rule (Chapter III-8) are all applied here, which makes it difficult to pronounce these dates correctly. You need to pay special attention to these radical phonological changes.
2. Most non-native speakers have difficulty distinguishing the sounds of the following pairs: “11<sup>th</sup>” vs. “12<sup>th</sup>,” “21<sup>st</sup>” vs. “22<sup>nd</sup>.”

### 3. Days of the Week (요일)

Suffix (접미사)	Days of the Week (요일)						
요일 (曜日)	일 (日) Sun	월 (月) Moon	화 (火) Fire	수 (水) Water	목 (木) Tree	금 (金) Gold	토 (土) Earth
	일요일 Sunday	월요일 Monday	화요일 Tuesday	수요일 Wednesday	목요일 Thursday	금요일 Friday	토요일 Saturday

The expressions for “days of the week” were originally borrowed from Chinese; each stands for the materials that constitute the Earth and other celestial bodies.

### 4. Four Seasons (사계절)

Suffix (접미사)	Four Seasons (사계절)			
철 (Season)	봄 Spring	여름 Summer	가을 Fall	겨울 Winter
	봄철 The spring season	여름철 The summer season	가을철 The fall season	겨울철 The winter season

## 5. Year (년)

Sino-Korean numbers are used with the counter “년” when we read “year” in Korean.

2017년 (이천십칠 년)  
1950년 (천구백오십 년)  
1988년 (천구백팔십팔 년)  
2002년 (이천이 년)

On the other hand, you may frequently encounter expressions like B.C. (기원전) and A.D. (기원후) in many history books. Unlike English, however, these expressions appear before “year” in Korean, and A.D. (기원후) is usually omitted unless it is specifically required.

기원전 553 년 (553 B.C.)  
2017 년 or 기원후 2017 년 (2017 A.D.)

## 6. Writing Time and Dates

When we write time and dates in Korean, we normally use Arabic numerals for both native Korean and Sino-Korean numbers. Unlike English, however, we specify larger units first followed by smaller units such that “year” comes before “month,” “month” before “day,” and “day” before “time,” in that order. If we also need to specify “days of the week,” we must write “dates” first and then “days of the week.”

2017년 12월 25일 월요일 오전 10시 15분  
1945년 8월 15일 수요일 오후 2시 30분  
1950년 6월 25일 일요일 새벽 5시

## 7. The Solar Calendar (양력) and the Lunar Calendar (음력)

Koreans use two different calendar systems: the solar calendar and the lunar calendar. The former is an official calendar system adopted by the Korean government and is more

widely used than the latter. However, the lunar calendar is still in use for celebrating someone's birthday and traditional holidays such as New Year's Day (설날) and Harvest Day (추석). The dates on these calendars do not match each other. Therefore, when Koreans talk about their birthday, they usually specify whether their birthday follows the solar calendar (양력) or the lunar calendar (음력). In addition, Koreans celebrate New Year's Day twice every year: one on the solar calendar (신정/양력설) and the other on the lunar calendar (설날/음력설). The latter is more widely celebrated in Korean society.

양력 1월 1일 (신정/양력설: New Year's Day on the solar calendar)  
음력 1월 1일 (설날/음력설: New Year's Day on the lunar calendar)  
음력 8월 15일 (추석: Harvest Day)

### Ⅲ. Counting the Duration of Time (시간과 날짜 계산)

#### 1. Counting the Number of Hours (시간), Minutes (분), and Seconds (초)

When we count the duration of time in terms of hours, minutes, and seconds, we use native Korean numbers for hours and Sino-Korean numbers for minutes and seconds. In addition, the expression “동안,” which means “during” in English, is typically used to express the duration of time.

1시간 동안(for one hour): **[한]**시간 동안  
20분 동안 (for twenty minutes): **[이십]**분 동안  
30초 동안 (for thirty seconds): **[삼십]**초 동안  
2시간 30분 9초 동안 (for two and a half hours and nine seconds): **[두]**시간 **[삼십]**분 **[구]**초 동안

#### 2. Counting the Number of Days

There are two different ways to count the number of days in Korean. One is to use

specific number nouns without using a counter, and the other is to use Sino-Korean numbers with the counter “일.” The number nouns are typically used when the number of days is relatively small. They are, however, on the verge of becoming obsolete (except some frequently-used ones) in favor of the simpler Sino-Korean numbers with the counter “일.”

### (1) Using Number Nouns

The number nouns below marked in red are still commonly used in Korean. Like other time period expressions, they are used with “동안 (during)” to express the duration of time.

Number Nouns (숫자 명사)				
하루 one day	이틀 two days	사흘 three days	나흘 four days	닷새 five days
엿새 six days	이레 seven days	여드레 eight days	아흐레 nine days	열흘 ten days

### (2) Using Sino-Korean Numbers with the Counter “일”

Instead of using the number nouns, we can also use Sino-Korean numbers with the counter “일” when we count the number of days. Since we use the same pattern for referring to “date of the month,” we need to use the context to distinguish between the two.

존은 십 일에 시애틀에 있었다.

(=John was in Seattle on the tenth day of the month.)

존은 십 일을 시애틀에 있었다.

(=John was in Seattle for ten days.)

존은 십 일 동안 시애틀에 있었다.

(=John was in Seattle for ten days.)

“십일” in the first sentence above refers to the tenth day of the month, and it occurs with the adverbial case marker “에.” In contrast, “십일” in the second sentence designates the duration of time, and it is used with the object case marker.

On the other hand, we express the length of a short trip by specifying a number of nights using the Sino-Korean counter “박” and a number of days using the Sino-Korean counter “일.”

존은 2박 3일 동안 한국에 머물렀습니다.

(=John stayed in Korea for two nights and three days.)

메리는 다음 달에 4박 5일 동안 여행을 갑니다.

(=Mary will go on a trip for four nights and five days next month.)

### 3. Counting the Number of Months

There are two different ways to count the number of months in Korean. One is to use native Korean numbers with the native Korean counter “달,” and the other is to use Sino-Korean numbers with the Sino-Korean counter “개월.” Both of these systems are equally used, but if the number is large, the Sino-Korean counting system is more likely to be used.

Counters (조사)	Counting the Number of Months (달 수 계산)									
	1 month	2 months	3 months	4 months	5 months	6 months	7 months	8 months	9 months	10 months
달 Native Korean	한 달	두 달	세 달	네 달	다섯 달	여섯 달	일곱 달	여덟 달	아홉 달	열 달
개월 Sino-Korean	일 개월	이 개월	삼 개월	사 개월	오 개월	육 개월	칠 개월	팔 개월	구 개월	십 개월

존은 여섯 달 동안 한국말을 공부했습니다.

(=John studied Korean for six months)

메리는 육 개월 동안 한국말을 공부했습니다.

(=Mary studied Korean for six months)

### 4. Counting the Number of Years

Sino-Korean numbers are used with the Sino-Korean counter “년” when we count the number of years.

Counters (조수사)	Counting the Number of Years (년 수 계산)									
	일년 1 year	이년 2 years	삼년 3 years	사년 4 years	오년 5 years	육년 6 years	칠년 7 years	팔년 8 years	구년 9 years	십년 10 years
년 Sino- Korean	백년 One hundred years		천년 One thousand years		만년 Ten thousand years			십만년 One hundred thousand years		
	백만년 One million years		천만년 Ten million years		일억년 One hundred million years			십억년 One billion years		

## 5. Counting the Number of Centuries

Sino-Korean numbers are used with the Sino-Korean counter “세기” when we count the number of centuries. But “세기” is not frequently used in counting time periods, except as in “반 세기 동안 (for half a century).” Instead, the equivalent time expression “백년” is more widely used for that purpose.

1세기 동안 → 백년 동안 (for one hundred years)

2세기 동안 → 이백년 동안 (for two hundred years)

On the other hand, “세기” is also used to designate the specific century such as “21세기 (the twenty-first century).” Its usage is generally limited to this function.

20세기 (the twentieth century)

21세기 (the twenty-first century)

19세기 (the nineteenth century)

## IV. More Time-Related Expressions

### 1. Time and Meals of the Day (시간과 식사)

Time and Meals of the Day (시간과 식사)				
Time of the day	아침 (시간) in the morning	점심 (시간) during lunch hour	저녁 (시간) in the evening	밤 (시간) at night
Meals of the day	아침(밥) <sup>1</sup> breakfast	점심(밥) lunch	저녁(밥) dinner	야식/야참 night snack

**Note:**

1. The time expressions “아침,” “점심,” and “저녁” can also be used for meals of the day. If the optional counter “시간” is not used, the meanings of these expressions must be determined from the context. The expression “간식” is also used to refer to snacks between meals.

존은 아침에 일찍 일어납니다.

(=John gets up early in the morning.)

메리는 7시에 아침을 먹습니다.

(=Mary eats breakfast at 7:00 A.M.)

## 2. Before and After a Specific Time (전 후 시간 표시)

Before and After a Specific Time (전 후 시간 표시)				
그저께 day before yesterday	어제 yesterday	오늘 today	내일 tomorrow	모레 day after tomorrow
지지난 주 week before last	지난주 last week	이번 주 this week	다음 주 next week	다다음 주 week after next
지지난달 month before last	지난달 last month	이번 달 this month	다음달 next month	다다음달 month after next
재작년 year before last	작년/지난해 last year	금년 / 올해 this year	내년/다음해 next year	내후년 year after next
지지난번 before last	지난번 last time	이번 this time	다음 번 next time	다다음 번 after next
아까 a while ago	방금/금방/조금 전 <sup>1</sup> a moment ago	지금 <sup>2</sup> now	금방 in a moment	이따가/나중에 <sup>3</sup> later

**Note:**

1. “방금,” “금방,” and “조금 전” are interchangeable to express “a moment ago,” but only “금방” can also be used to refer to a future time, which can be rendered as “shortly.”  
존이 방금/금방/조금 전에 왔습니다. (=John came in a moment ago. =John just came in.)  
존이 금방 올 겁니다. (=John will come in a moment. =John will come shortly.)
2. “이제/인제” can also be used to express “now/at this moment.” “인제” is more likely to be used as a colloquial expression.  
이제/인제 숙제를 다 끝냈습니다. (=I finished the homework now/at this moment.)  
이제/인제 좀 괜찮네요. (=I feel better now/at this moment.)
3. “이따가” refers to the future time which is typically no later than the time on the same day and can be rendered as “in a little while from now.” “나중에” is fully interchangeable with “이따가,” but it can also refer to the more extended time in the future.  
이따가 저녁에 영화를 봅시다. (=Let’s watch the movie a little later in the evening.)

존은 나중에 유학을 갈 겁니다. (=John is planning to study abroad later.)

존은 이따가 유학을 갈 겁니다. (NOT OK)

메리는 나중에 결혼을 할 겁니다. (=Mary will get married later.)

메리는 이따가 결혼을 할 겁니다. (NOT OK)

An event like “getting married” or “studying abroad” cannot be normally decided in a matter of days, and therefore it is not compatible with “이따가.”

### 3. Frequency of Time (빈도)

Adverbs for Frequency of Time (빈도 부사)				
매시간 every hour	매일 every day	매주 every week	매달 / 매월 every month	매년 every year

When we express the frequency of an event, we use the native Korean counter “번” with native Korean numbers in the following pattern “**Time Expression + 에 + Number + 번.**”

존은 하루에 한 번 스타벅스에서 커피를 마십니다.

(=John drinks coffee at Starbucks once a day.)

메리는 일주일에 두 번 운동을 합니다.

(=John does exercise twice a week.)

존은 한 달에 세 번 병원에 갑니다.

(=Mary goes to the hospital three times a month.)

메리는 일 년에 네 번 출장을 갑니다.

(=Mary goes on a business trip four times a year.)

### 4. Other Time Related Adverbs (시간 관계 부사)

Time Adverbs	Meaning (의미)	Examples (예제)
빨리	fast	존은 점심을 <u>빨리</u> 먹습니다. (=John eats lunch fast.)
천천히	slowly	메리는 <u>천천히</u> 걷습니다. (=Mary walks slowly.)
일찍	early	존은 아침 <u>일찍</u> 일어납니다. (=John gets up early in the morning.)
늦게	late	메리는 <u>늦게</u> 집에 옵니다. (=Mary comes home late.)
곧	soon	존은 <u>곧</u> 승진할 겁니다. (=John will get promoted soon.)

즉시	immediately	제가 <b>즉시</b> 하겠습니다. (=I will do it immediately.)
막	just at the moment	메리가 <b>막</b> 도착했습니다. (Mary arrived just at the moment.)
가끔	sometimes	존은 <b>가끔</b> 지각을 합니다. (=John sometimes comes late for class.)
자주 / 종종	often, frequently	메리는 <b>자주</b> 쇼핑을 합니다. (=Mary goes shopping often.) 존은 <b>종종</b> 우리 집에 들립니다. (=John often stops by my house.)
항상 / 언제나/늘/줄곧	always	메리는 <b>항상/언제나/늘</b> 웃습니다. (=Mary always smiles.) 존은 <b>줄곧</b> 게임만 합니다. (=John plays games all the time.)
당분간	for a while	메리는 <b>당분간</b> 서울에 머무를 겁니다. (=Mary will stay in Seoul for a while.)
영원히	forever	존은 한국에서 <b>영원히</b> 살고 싶어합니다. (=John wants to live in Korea forever.)
갑자기	suddenly	존이 <b>갑자기</b> 한국으로 떠났습니다. (=John suddenly left for Korea.)
하루 종일	all day long	메리는 <b>하루 종일</b> 공부를 합니다. (=Mary studies all day long.)
밤새도록	all night long	존은 <b>밤새도록</b> 술을 마셨습니다. (=John drank all night long.)
밤낮(으로)	day and night	<b>밤낮으로</b> 비바람이 몰아쳤습니다. (A rainstorm stormed day and night.)
먼저	ahead	메리는 바빠서 <b>먼저</b> 갔습니다. (=Mary went ahead because she was busy.)
잠깐/깜빡	for a brief moment	존은 수업시간에 <b>잠깐/깜빡</b> 졸았습니다. (=John dozed off for a brief moment during the class hour.)
요즘/요즈음	these days	메리는 <b>요즘</b> 일을 열심히 합니다. (=Mary works hard these days.)
최근(에)	recently	존은 <b>최근(에)</b> 게임을 많이 합니다. (=John plays games a lot recently.)
이미 / 벌써 <sup>1</sup>	already	메리는 <b>이미</b> 떠났습니다. (=Mary already left.) 존은 <b>벌써</b> 저녁을 먹었습니다. (=John already ate dinner.)
아직 <sup>2</sup>	not yet, still	존은 <b>아직</b> 결혼 안 했습니다. (=John has not been married yet.) 메리는 도서관에서 <b>아직</b> 공부하고 있습니다. (=Mary is still studying at the library.)
이제	from now on	그 이야기는 <b>이제</b> 그만 합시다. (=Let's stop talking about it.)
드디어/마침내	finally, at last	존이 <b>드디어/마침내</b> 시험에 합격했습니다. (=John finally passed the exam.)

**Note:**

1. “이미” vs. “벌써”

“이미” can be used to express that the action or state has been already completed and cannot be undone. But it cannot be used in a question.

**이미** 끝났습니다. (=It's already over. Therefore, there's nothing much you can do about it.)

**이미** 늦었습니다. (=It's already late. Therefore, there's nothing much you can do about it.)

**이미** 저녁을 먹었습니다. (=I already ate dinner.)

**이미** 저녁을 먹었습니까? (NOT OK)

On the other hand, “벌써” can be used to express surprise over the fact that the action has been completed already or that it is time to start carrying out an action. It can be freely used in a question.

메리는 **벌써** 결혼했습니다. (=Mary already got married, which may surprise you.)

**벌써** 일을 시작합니까? (=Wow, is it already time to start working?)

**벌써** 프로젝트를 끝냈습니까? (=Wow, did you already finish the project?)

2. When “아직” is used in a negative sentence, it can be rendered as “not yet.” But if it is used in a positive sentence, it can be rendered as “still.”

## 5. Some Time-Related Grammar Features (시간과 관련된 문법 표현)

Time-Related Grammar Features (시간과 관련된 문법 표현)	
~쯤, ~정도 (about, approximately)	존은 매일 8시간 <b>쯤</b> 잤다. (= John sleeps about eight hours every day.) 메리는 하루에 3시간 <b>정도</b> 숙제를 합니다. (=Mary does homework for approximately three hours a day.)
~부터/에서 ~까지 (from _ to _)	존은 12시 <b>부터</b> 1시 <b>까지</b> 점심시간입니다. (=John's lunch hour is from 12:00 to 1:00 PM.) 메리는 저녁 7시 <b>에서</b> 8시 <b>까지</b> TV를 봅니다. (=Mary watches TV from 7:00 to 8:00 in the evening.)
~이내에, ~내에 (within)	존은 한 시간 <b>이내에</b> 돌아올 겁니다. (=John will be back in an hour.) 메리는 한 달 <b>내에</b> 그 프로젝트를 끝낼 겁니다. (=Mary will finish the project within a month.)
Noun + 전에 Verb Stem + 기 전에 (Before)	존을 일주일 <b>전에</b> 한국으로 떠났습니다. (=John left for Korea a week ago.) 메리는 밥을 먹기 <b>전에</b> 손을 씻습니다. (=Mary washes her hands before eating.)
Noun + 후에 Verb Stem + ㄴ/은 후에 (After)	존은 지금부터 한 달 <b>후에</b> 한국에 여행갈 겁니다. (=John is going to take a trip to Korea a month from now.) 메리는 신문을 읽은 <b>후에</b> 공부를 합니다. (=Mary studies after she reads a newspaper.)



## 08 Noun Making Suffixes (명사화 접미사)

Like many other languages, in Korean only nouns and noun phrases can serve as the subject or the object of a sentence. To express a wide range of ideas, however, it is sometimes necessary to make a verb, a verb phrase, or even a sentence assume such grammatical functions. There are basically three different ways to achieve this goal. First, we can change a verb into its corresponding noun form by attaching the nominalization suffix “~ㅁ/음” to a verb stem. Then, the newly-created noun form together with the rest of the elements in the original verb phrase or sentence can serve as the subject or the object of a given sentence like other nouns or noun phrases. Another way to change a verb into its corresponding noun form is to attach the gerundival suffix “~기” to a verb stem. The suffix “~기,” which is equivalent to the English gerundival suffix “-ing,” can be attached to almost all Korean verbs. Lastly, we can also generate a noun form by attaching one of the noun-modifying suffixes “~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ” to a verb stem with the combination of one of the complementizers “것, 지, 줄, 바.” We will now discuss each of these noun form generating rules in more detail.

### I . Nominalization: Verb Stem + ㅁ/음

The nominalization suffix “~ㅁ/음” which is equivalent to the English noun making suffixes “-ity,” “-tion,” or “-ness” can be attached to a verb stem. Then it changes the verb into its corresponding noun form so that it can serve as the subject or object of a sentence. Some of these derived nouns have been used frequently for their own sake, and therefore their grammatical linkage to the original verbs has been loosened up. For this reason, they are often treated as separate nouns apart from their corresponding verbs.

Grammatical Rules	Verbs and Their Derived Nouns	Derived Nouns from Verbs
Verb Stem + □  if the verb stem ends in a vowel	기쁘다 (to be delightful) 기쁨 (delightfulness)	승리의 <b>기쁨</b> 은 오래 가지 않는다. (=The delightfulness of victory won't last long.)
	슬프다 (to be sad) 슬픔 (sorrow)	자식을 잃은 <b>슬픔</b> 은 극복하기 어렵다. (=It is hard to overcome the sorrow of losing one's own child.)
	느끼다 (to feel) 느낌 (feeling)	나는 지금 <b>느낌</b> 이 안 좋다. (=I have a bad feeling.)
	아프다 (to be painful) 아픔 (pain)	이별의 <b>아픔</b> 은 영원히 남는다. (=The pain of separation will last forever.)
	자다 (to sleep) 잠 (sleep)	존은 <b>잠</b> 을 너무 많이 잔다. (=John sleeps too much.)
	싸우다 (to fight) 싸움 (fight)	가능하면 불필요한 <b>싸움</b> 을 피해라. (=Try to avoid any unnecessary fight whenever it's possible.)
	모이다 (to gather) 모임 (gathering)	다음주 월요일에 동창회 <b>모임</b> 에 간다. (=I am going to the alumni association meeting next Monday.)
	추다 (to dance) 춤 (dance)	신랑 신부가 피로연에서 <b>춤</b> 을 춘다. (=Bride and bridegroom are dancing at the reception party.)
	꾸다 (to dream) 꿈 (dream)	어제 아주 이상한 <b>꿈</b> 을 꿔다. (=I dreamed a very strange dream yesterday.)
	알리다 (to inform) 알림 (notice)	주민들에게 <b>알림</b> (=Notice to the residents)
살다 (to live) 삶 (life) <sup>1</sup>	요즘 <b>삶</b> 이 괴롭다. (=These days my life is miserable.)	
Verb Stem + 음  if the verb stem ends in a vowel	웃다 (to laugh) 웃음 (laughter)	너무 웃겨서 <b>웃음</b> 을 참을 수가 없다. (=I cannot help laughing because it's so funny.)
	믿다 (to believe) 믿음 (belief)	메리가 말하는 것은 전적으로 <b>믿음</b> 이 간다. (=I have full trust in what Mary says.)
	졸다 (to doze off) 졸음 (drowsiness)	피곤해서 <b>졸음</b> 이 온다. (=I feel sleepy because I am tired.)
	죽다 (to die) 죽음 (death)	존의 얼굴에 <b>죽음</b> 의 그림자가 드리워져 있다. (=The shadow of death fell on John's face.)
	걷다 (to walk) 걸음 (walk)	존은 <b>걸음</b> 이 빨라서 따라갈 수가 없다. (=I cannot follow John because he walks so fast.)
	얼다 (to be frozen) 얼음 (ice)	강에 <b>얼음</b> 이 얼었다. (=The river is frozen.)
젊다 (to be young) 젊음 (youth)	<b>젊음</b> 을 낭비하지 말아라. (=Don't waste your youth.)	

For ㅁ Irregular Verbs, ㅁ at the end of a verb stem changes into “우” and add “ㅁ” to the verb stem	괴롭다 (to be distressed)	육체적인 <b>괴로움</b> 을 말로 다 표현할 수가 없다.
	괴로움 (distress)	(=I cannot express my physical sufferings in words.)
	즐겁다 (to be joyful)	그녀의 삶은 <b>즐거움</b> 으로 가득 찼다.
	즐거움 (joy)	(=Her life was full of joy.)
	그립다 (to miss)	그녀에 대한 <b>그리움</b> 이 점점 쌓여 간다.
	그리움 (longing for)	(=My feeling of missing her is growing.)
아쉽다 (What a shame!)	더 잘 할 수 있었는데 <b>아쉬움</b> 이 많이 남는다.	
아쉬움 (That's a shame.)	(=It's a shame because I could have done it better.)	
돕다 (to help)	<b>도움</b> 이 필요하면 언제든지 말씀하세요.	
도움 (help)	(=If you need help, please tell me any time.)	

**Note: 1.** The derived noun of the verb “살다” is “삶,” not “살음.”

Aside from these fossilized nouns, the nominalization suffix “~ㅁ/음” can also be attached to other stative or action verbs and change them into their corresponding noun forms. When it is attached to a stative verb, its semantic function is basically to indicate the culmination of the state that the verb describes.

존의 **무례함**이 극치에 달했다. (stative verb)

(=John's rudeness went to extremes.)

모두가 존의 **무모함**을 걱정했다. (stative verb)

(=Everyone was worried about John's recklessness.)

메리의 **담대함**에 모두가 놀랐다. (stative verb)

(=Everyone was surprised at Mary's boldness.)

With an action verb in the past tense, it denotes the completion of the action taken in the past.

존이 **실수했음**이 분명하다. (action verb)

(=It is obvious that John made a mistake.)

메리는 자기가 **잘못했음**을 시인했다. (action verb)

(=Mary admitted that it was her fault.)

모든 계획이 수포로 **돌아갔음**이 확인되었다. (action verb)

(=It was confirmed that all the plans completely failed.)

Other than serving as the subject or the object, these derived noun forms are also frequently used at the end of a sentence when we deliver a short message to other parties in the Social Network Services (SNS). In addition, they are also used to transmit a message through military and police radio channels. Nevertheless, they are not appropriate to be used to a person who is older than you, whose social status is higher than yours, or who is a stranger to you.

지금 집에 가고 있음. (있다 → 있+음)

(=I am on my way home.)

저녁은 먹었음. (먹다 → 먹었+음)

(=I already ate dinner.)

내일 출발할 예정임. (이다 → 이+ㅁ)

(=I am planning to leave tomorrow.)

확인하기 바람. (바라다 → 바라+ㅁ)

(=Please double check.)

아래 번호로 연락하기 바람. (바라다 → 바라+ㅁ)

(=Please contact me at the number below.)

A: 적 1개 중대가 지금 강을 도하하고 있음.

(=One company-size enemy force is now crossing the river.)

B: 알았다. 계속 감시하기 바람.

(=Roger. Keep surveillance on them.)

## II . Gerund: Verb Stem + 기

The gerundival suffix “~기” which is equivalent to the English suffix “-ing” can be attached to any action verb stem. It changes the verb into its corresponding gerund form. The newly-created gerund form can serve as the subject or the object of a sentence. The subject and the object case markers are generally optional with this gerund form.

한국말은 배우기(가) 쉽네요.

(=It is easy to learn Korean.)

밤에 혼자 다니기(가) 무서워요.

(=I am afraid of walking around at night.)

메리는 농담하기(를) 싫어해요.

(=Mary doesn't like making a joke.)

존은 혼자 낚시하기(를) 좋아해요.

(=John likes fishing alone.)

Since the noun-making process using the gerundival suffix “~기” is quite simple and straightforward, only a handful of derived nouns such as “말하기(speaking), 듣기(listening), 읽기(reading), 쓰기(writing), 달리기(jogging), and 줄넘기(jump roping)” are treated as separate nouns apart from their corresponding verbs.

한국말은 듣기와 읽기는 쉬운데 말하기와 쓰기가 어려워요.

(=As for Korean, listening and reading are easy, but speaking and writing are difficult.)

건강을 위해 매일 달리기와 줄넘기 같은 운동을 하세요.

(=Please do exercise, such as jogging and jump roping, every day.)

As we briefly mentioned above, unlike the nominalization suffix “~ㅁ/음,” the gerundival suffix “~기” must be attached only to an action verb, and therefore it is not compatible with a stative verb.

많은 아이들이 배고픔으로 고생하고 있습니다.

(=Many children are suffering from hunger.)

많은 아이들이 배고프기로 고생하고 있습니다. (NOT OK)

존은 피곤함을 견딜 수 없었다.

(=John could not endure tiredness.)

존은 피곤하기를 견딜 수 없었다. (NOT OK)

In addition, since the gerund form focuses on the action itself irrespective of the timeline when the action is carried out, it cannot be used with tense suffixes.

존은 운동하기를 좋아했다.

(=John liked exercise.)

존은 운동했기를 좋아했다. (NOT OK)

존은 운동하기를 좋아한다

(=John likes exercise.)

존은 운동하겠기를 좋아한다. (NOT OK)

존은 거짓말하기를 밥 먹 듯했어요.

(=John was a habitual liar.)

존은 거짓말했기를 밥 먹 듯했어요. (NOT OK)

존은 거짓말하기를 밥 먹 듯할 거예요.

(=John will become a habitual liar.)

존은 거짓말하겠기를 밥 먹 듯할 거예요. (NOT OK)

Other than serving as the subject or the object, the gerund forms derived by attaching the suffix “~기” can be commonly used when we write a simple to-do list as a personal reminder.

오늘 해야 할 일 (Things to do today)

1. 한국말 공부하기 (Studying Korean)

2. 숙제하기 (Doing homework)

3. 운동하기 (Doing exercise)

### Ⅲ . Complementizers: 것, 지, 줄, 바

#### 1. ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 것, ~다는/냐는/라는/자는 것

A complementizer is a grammatical category that indicates the functional boundary between the main clause and the subordinate clause as shown in the following English sentences.

[John told Mary]      that      [she is a genius].  
 Main clause          Comp      Subordinate clause

Likewise, in Korean, the complementizer “것” can be used to effectively distinguish between the main clause and the subordinate clause. Because it is grammatically categorized as a noun, it can be modified by the preceding verb with its appropriate modifying suffix. Then, it functions as a grammatical unit together with the subordinate clause, and the whole unit is treated as a noun phrase. In turn, it can serve as the subject or the object of a given sentence like other nouns or noun phrases. The complementizer “것” itself does not carry any specific meaning other than the generic meaning such as “the thing that, the fact that, the story that,” and so forth.

Verb Types	Tense	Complementizer with its modifying suffix	Examples (예문)
Action Verbs	Present	~는 것 after a consonant or a vowel	[북한과 협상하는 것이 더 이상 불가능하다. (=It is no longer possible to negotiate with North Korea.) 나는 [공원에서 걷는 것]을 좋아한다. (=I like taking a walk in the park.)
	Past	~은 것 after a consonant ~ㄴ 것 after a vowel	[경찰이 범인을 아직 못 잡은 것]은 이해할 수가 없다. (=I cannot understand why the police could not capture the suspect yet.) [북한이 미사일을 발사한 것이] 전쟁의 원인이었다. (=The fact that North Korea launched a missile was the cause of the war.)
	Future	~을 것 after a consonant ~ㄹ 것 after a vowel	정부는 [세금을 더 걷을 것]이라고 발표했다. (=The government announced that it will collect more tax.) [북한이 조만간 핵실험을 할 것이] 분명하다. (=It is obvious that North Korea will soon carry out a nuclear test.)
Stative Verbs	All Tenses	~은 것 after a consonant ~ㄴ 것 after a vowel	[키가 작은 것이] 오디션에 떨어진 이유였다. (=The reason why I failed the audition was that I am short.) 존은 [집이 가난한 것]을 불평했다. (=John complained that his family is poor.)

In addition, the complementizer “것” can be combined with the various types of citation suffixes which indicate that the preceding subordinate clause is actually cited from what others said. Depending on the sentence type of what is being cited, the following forms are used: “~다는 것” for statement, “~냐는 것” for question, “~라는 것” for imperative,

and “~자는 것” for proposition.

Sentence Types	Complementizer with its modifying suffix	Examples (예문)
Statement	~다는 것	[외국인이 한국말을 이렇게 잘한다는 것이] 놀라웠다. (=It surprised me that a foreigner could speak Korean well like this.)
Question	~나는 것	나는 [존이 왜 말도 없이 떠났 <del>냐</del> 는 것을] 물어볼 수 없었다. (=I could not ask why John left without saying a word.)
Imperative	~라는 것	[나한테 그 일을 하 <del>라</del> 는 것] 때문에 기분이 아주 나빴다. (=I felt so bad because he/she ordered me to do the work.)
Proposition	~자는 것	[존이 같이 밥을 먹 <del>자</del> 는 것을] 거절했다. (=I turned down John's offer to eat together with him.)

## 2. ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ/았는/였는 지, ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 줄

The English complementizer “whether” also carries the function of indicating the functional boundary between the main clause and the subordinate clause. But it can be used only with a specific group of verbs such as “to know, to question, to suspect, etc.”

[John did not know]	<u>whether</u>	[it was his fault].
Main clause	Comp	Subordinate Clause

The Korean complementizer “지,” which is equivalent to the English complementizer “whether,” carries a similar function. Like the complementizer “것,” it can be grammatically categorized as a noun and therefore can be modified by the preceding verb with its appropriate modifying suffix. Then it functions as a grammatical unit together with the subordinate clause, and the whole unit is treated as a noun phrase. In turn, it can serve as the subject or the object of a given sentence like other nouns or noun phrases. The case markers attached to this complementizer are generally optional. However, unlike the complementizer “것,” it can be used only with a handful of verbs such as “알다(to know), 모르다(don't know), 의심스럽다(to suspect), 걱정하다(to be worried about),” and so forth.

The complementizer “지” by itself does not carry any specific meaning other than the generic meaning such as “the thing that, the fact that, the story that,” and so forth.

Verb Types	Tense	Complementizer with its modifying suffix	Examples (예문)
Action Verbs	Present	~는 지 <sup>1</sup> after a consonant or a vowel	[존이 그 사실을 알고 있는 지](가) 궁금하다. (=I wonder whether John knows the fact.) 나는 [메리가 어떤 사람하고 결혼하는 지](를) 알고 싶다. (=I want to know what kind of man Mary is getting married to.)
	Past	~았는 지 if the preceding syllable contains the vowel “오” or “아” Otherwise, ~었는 지	[존이 시험을 잘 봤는 지](가) 걱정이 된다. (=I am worried about whether John did well on the test.) 나는 [메리가 그렇게 고생했는 지](를) 몰랐다. (=I didn't know that Mary suffered that much.)
	Future	~을 지 after a consonant ~르 지 after a vowel	[앞으로 어떻게 할 지](가) 걱정이다. (=I am worried about what I am supposed to do from now on.) [그 살인범을 언제 잡을 수 있을 지](를) 모르겠다. (=I don't know when I can capture the murderer.)
Stative Verbs	All Tenses	~은 지 after a consonant ~ㄴ 지 after a vowel	[물이 얼마나 깊은 지](를) 전혀 몰랐다. (=I had no clue how deep the water is.) 메리는 [그 문제가 얼마나 중요한 지](를) 이미 알고 있었다. (=Mary already knew how important the issue was.)

**Note:**

1. The Korean complementizer “지” has been treated as a part of the conjugation suffixes “~는지, ~(으)ㄴ지, ~(으)르지, ~았는/었는지” in many traditional grammar books, and therefore each of these suffixes is written as a single grammatical unit without a space between the noun modifying suffixes and “지.” However, this kind of grammatical treatment cannot account for the fact that “지” is combined with the noun modifying suffixes such as “~는, ~(으)ㄴ, ~(으)르.” In addition, it cannot explain the reason why the optional subject and object case markers can be attached to “지.” Therefore, it is more reasonable to assume that “지” is indeed a noun complementizer that is used to indicate the functional boundary between the main clause and the subordinate clause in line with other complementizers.

On the other hand, the complementizer “줄” carries more or less the same function as the complementizer “지,” but its actual usage is more limited. It can only serve as the object, but not as the subject of a sentence. In addition, it takes different modifying suffixes for action verbs in past tense as shown below.

Verb Types	Tense	Complementizer with its modifying suffix	Examples (예문)
Action Verbs	Present	<p>~는 줄</p> <p>after a consonant or a vowel</p>	<p>나는 [존이 지금 뭐하고 있는 줄](을) 안다. (=I know what John is doing now.)</p> <p>[존이 요즘 뭐하고 있는 줄](이) 궁금하다. (NOT OK) (=I am curious about what John has been doing.)</p>
	Past	<p>~은 줄</p> <p>after a consonant</p> <p>~ㄴ 줄</p> <p>after a vowel</p>	<p>그 아이의 어머니는 [경찰이 아이를 찾은 줄](을) 몰랐다. (=The child's mother didn't know that the police found the child.)</p> <p>나는 [메리가 그렇게 고생한 줄](을) 몰랐다. (=I didn't know that Mary suffered that much.)</p>
	Future	<p>~을 줄</p> <p>after a consonant</p> <p>~ㄹ 줄</p> <p>after a vowel</p>	<p>[그 살인범을 언제 잡을 수 있을 줄](을) 모르겠다. (=I don't know when I can capture the murderer.)</p> <p>나는 [다음 월드컵에서 누가 우승할 줄](을) 모르겠다. (=I don't know who is going to win the next World Cup.)</p>
Stative Verbs	All Tenses	<p>~은 줄</p> <p>after a consonant</p> <p>~ㄴ 줄</p> <p>after a vowel</p>	<p>[물이 얼마나 깊은 줄](을) 전혀 몰랐다. (=I had no clue how deep the water is.)</p> <p>메리는 [그 문제가 얼마나 중요한 줄](을) 이미 알고 있었다. (=Mary already knew how important the issue was.)</p>

### 3. ~는/ (으)ㄴ/ (으)ㄹ 바

The complementizer “바” carries the same function as the other complementizers that we have discussed so far. But its function is much more limited than others and can be used only with a handful of action verbs in some idiomatic expressions.

Verb Types	Tense	Complementizer with its modifying suffix	Examples (예문)
Action Verbs	Present	<p>~는 바</p> <p>after a consonant or a vowel</p>	<p>존은 내가 말하고자 하는 바를 이해를 못한다. (=John cannot understand what I intend to say.)</p> <p>아시는 바와 같이 인간은 누구나 자유를 누릴 권리가 있습니다. (=As you know, all human beings have the right to enjoy their freedom.)</p>
	Past	<p>~은 바</p> <p>after a consonant</p> <p>~ㄴ 바</p> <p>after a vowel</p>	<p>그 일을 겪고 나니 깨달은 바(가) 많습니다. (=There are many things that I learned after suffering from the ordeal.)</p> <p>위에서 살펴본 바와 같이 실업률이 급격히 높아지고 있습니다. (=As we investigated above, the unemployment rate is rapidly increasing.)</p>

Future	<p>~을 바 after a consonant</p> <p>~르 바 after a vowel</p>	<p>그걸 먹을 <u>바</u>에야 차라리 굶는 게 낫겠다. (=It would be better not to eat anything rather than eating that one.)</p> <p>이렇게 죽을 <u>바</u>에야 적과 한 번 싸워나 보자. (=Let's fight against the enemy forces rather than dying like this.)</p> <p>그건 내가 <u>알 바</u>(가) 아니죠. (=It is nothing that I need to be concerned about.)</p> <p>뭐를 해도 안 되니 어찌 <u>할 바</u>(를) 모르겠다. (=I don't know what to do because everything that I did went wrong.)</p>
--------	---	---



A pronoun is a grammatical element which can substitute for the noun or noun phrase that has been previously mentioned or can be easily retrieved from the context. If its referent is an animate noun, it is more specifically called a personal pronoun (인칭대명사). In this chapter, we will explore a wide variety of Korean personal pronouns and examine their specific functions when they are used in a given sentence. Along with this, we will carefully look into some alternative devices that are frequently used in place of pronouns. Next, we will continue to delve into various demonstratives and their corresponding diminutives.

## I . Personal Pronouns (인칭대명사)

Unlike English, the grammatical function of personal pronouns in Korean is very limited. Since Korean is the so called "pro-drop" language, anything including personal pronouns can be freely deleted (or more correctly suppressed) if its referent is clear or can be easily retrieved from the context. Therefore, we often hear so many sentences in normal conversation with missing subjects, objects, etc.

Take a look at the following conversation with some missing information underlined in English translation. Speaker A is trying to elicit some personal information from Interlocutor B.

A: 고향이 어디십니까? (=What is your hometown?)

B: 서울입니다. (=My home town is Seoul.)

- A: 가족은 어떻게 되십니까? (=How many are there in your family?)  
 B: 부모님, 남동생 하나, 모두 네 명입니다.  
 (=Altogether there are four in my family, my parents and one younger brother.)
- A: 직업이 어떻게 되십니까? (=What is your occupation?)  
 B: 공무원입니다. (=I am a government employee.)
- A: 취미는 무엇입니까? (=What are your hobbies?)  
 B: 독서입니다. (=My hobby is reading books.)

In this short conversation, all the questions posed by Speaker A are targeting Interlocutor B. It sounds redundant, therefore, to repeat the same second person pronouns in Speaker A's questions. On the other hand, Interlocutor B responds to the questions by providing his/her personal information to Speaker A. Again, it seems to be redundant to repeat the same first person pronouns in his/her responses to the questions. In a formal conversational situation, however, if Speaker A and Interlocutor B want to avoid any possible confusion or to show more courtesy to each other, they can specify all the information in their questions and responses as shown below.

- A: 선생님(의) 고향이 어디입니까? (=What is your hometown?)  
 B: 제 고향은 서울입니다. (=My hometown is Seoul.)
- A: 선생님(의) 가족은 어떻게 되십니까? (=How many are there in your family?)  
 B: 제 가족은 제 부모님, 남동생 하나, 모두 네 명입니다.  
 (=Altogether there are four in my family, my parents and one younger brother.)
- A: 선생님(의) 직업이 어떻게 되십니까? (=What is your occupation?)  
 B: 제 직업은 공무원입니다. (=I am a government worker.)
- A: 선생님(의) 취미는 무엇입니까? (=What are your hobbies?)  
 B: 제 취미는 독서입니다. (=My hobby is reading books.)

Let us now discuss more specific usage of Korean personal pronouns in more detail.

## 1. First Person Pronouns (1인칭 대명사)

First Person Pronouns (1인칭 대명사)			Examples (예문)
Singular (단수)	Subject	내	내가 학교에 갔다. (=I went to school.)
	Non-subject	나	존이 나를 좋아한다. (=John likes me.) 메리가 나에게 이메일을 보냈다. (=Mary sent me an email.)
	Possessive	내	내 책이 책상 위에 있다. (=My books are on the desk.)
	Subject (Humble)	제	제가 내일 떠납니다. (=I am going to leave tomorrow.)
	Non-subject (Humble)	저	존이 저를 도와 주었습니다. (=John helped me.) 메리가 저에게 돈을 주었습니다. (=Mary gave me some money.)
	Possessive (Humble)	제	존이 제 가방을 갖다 주었습니다. (=John brought me my bag.)
Plural (복수)	Subject	우리	우리가 그 일을 처리하겠습니다. (=We will take care of that matter.)
	Non-subject		존이 우리를 무시했습니다. (=John ignored us.) 메리가 우리에게 경고를 했습니다. (=Mary warned against us.)
	Possessive		우리 집이 아주 큼니다. (=Our house is so big.)
	Subject (Humble)	저희	저희가 교실을 청소하겠습니다. (=We will clean the classroom.)
	Non-subject (Humble)		존이 저희를 괴롭혔습니다. (=John harassed us.) 메리가 저희에게 저녁을 사 주었습니다. (=Mary treated us for dinner.)
	Possessive (Humble)		저희 집에 한번 놀러 오세요. (=Please visit our house.)

### (1) Using the humble forms to show respect to the listener

When you are talking to a person who is older than you, whose social status is higher than yours, or who is a stranger to you, you must show respect to the listener. There are basically two different ways to carry out this task from the grammatical point of view. One is to show respect directly to the listener, which has an effect of raising the grammatical status of the listener. It can be done by attaching the formal honorific suffixes “~ㅁ/습니다” or the informal honorific suffixes “~아요/어요” to the corresponding verb stems depending on the formality of a speech situation. Another way is to show respect indirectly to the listener by humbling or lowering your own grammatical status with respect to the listener’s. It can be accomplished by using the humble forms of the first person pronouns such as “제, 저, 저희” instead of the regular first person pronouns “내, 나, 우리,” respectively, whenever you need to refer to yourself.

Two Different Ways to Show Respect to the Listener	
Showing Respect Directly to the Listener	
Showing Respect Indirectly to the Listener	

## (2) Using the plural forms to express the solidarity of a group

Another important aspect regarding the usage of the first person pronouns is that Koreans prefer to use the plural forms “우리” or “저희” instead of their singular counterparts “내/나” or “제/저” whenever it’s possible. These plural forms of pronouns are often used to express the speaker’s solidarity with the group to which he/she belongs. If the speaker keeps using the singular forms more than is necessary, he/she may be considered a very selfish person. Therefore, it is highly desirable to use the plural forms whenever it’s possible.

Expressing Solidarity		
English Expression	Plain Forms	Humble Forms
My country	내 나라 → 우리 나라	제 나라 → 우리 나라 <sup>1</sup>
My company	내 회사 → 우리 회사	제 회사 → 저희 회사
My company president	내 사장님 → 우리 사장님	제 사장님 → 저희 사장님
My school	내 학교 → 우리 학교	제 학교 → 저희 학교
My teacher	내 선생님 → 우리 선생님	제 선생님 → 저희 선생님
My family	내 가족 → 우리 가족	제 가족 → 저희 가족
My father	내 아버지 → 우리 아버지	제 아버지 → 저희 아버지
My mother	내 어머니 → 우리 어머니	제 어머니 → 저희 어머니
My house	내 집 → 우리 집	제 집 → 저희 집

### Note:

1. When we refer to our country, “우리 나라” is recommended to be used as a default expression in place of the humble form “저희 나라.” The reason is that it is not desirable to humble and thereby sacrifice our country’s pride just for the sake of showing respect to the listener.

## 2. Second Person Pronouns (2인칭 대명사)

Second Person Pronouns (2인칭 대명사)			Examples (예문)
Singular (단수)	Subject	네/니 <sup>1</sup>	네가 그 것을 한 번 해 봐. (=Why don't you try to do that?) 니가 어떻게 나를 배신해? (=How come you betrayed me?)
	Non-subject	너	존이 너를 만나고 싶어한다. (=John wants to see you.) 메리가 너에게 거기에 가라고 했다. (=Mary asked you to go there.)
	Possessive	네/니	존이 네 컴퓨터를 쓰고 있다. (=John is using your computer.) 존이 니 돈을 다 써 버렸다. (=John used up your money.)
	Alienated (Honorific)	당신 자네	당신이 잘 못한 거예요. (=It was your fault.) 존이 당신을 싫어해요. (=John doesn't like you.) 메리가 자네에게 이걸 갖다주라고 하네. (=Mary asked me to give this to you.) 내가 이번에 자네를 한 번 대접하고 싶네. (=I want to treat you this time.)
	Literary (Honorific)	그대	그대가 원하신다면 뭐든지 다 하겠습니다. (=If you want, I will do whatever it takes.) 나는 진정 그대를 사랑합니다. (=I love you from the bottom of my heart.) 그대에게 작은 선물을 보냅니다. (=I am sending you a small gift.) 그대의 모든 것을 알고 싶습니다. (=I want to know everything about you.)
Plural (복수)	Subject		너희가 뭔데? (=Who do you think you guys are?) 니네들이 나한테 해 준 게 뭔데? (=What have you guys done for me?)
	Non-subject	너희 니네/ 니네들	선생님이 너희를 찾고 계셔. (=The teacher is looking for you guys.) 존이 너희에게 뭐라고 했니? (=What did John say to you guys?) 존이 니네들을 혼내 줄 거야. (=John will punish you guys.)
	Possessive		너희 학교가 얼마나 크니? (=How big is your school, guys?) 니네/니네들 선생님이 누구니? (=Who is your teacher, guys?)
	Alienated (Honorific)	당신들	당신들이 잘못된 거예요. (=It was your fault, folks.) 존이 당신들을 싫어해요. (=John doesn't like you, folks.) 메리가 당신들에게 이걸 갖다주래요. (=Mary asked me to give this to you folks.) 존이 당신들의 집을 방문했어요. (=John visited your house, folks.)
	Literary (Honorific)	그대들	그대들이 원하신다면 뭐든지 다 하겠습니다. (=If you folks want, I will do whatever it takes.) 나는 진정 그대들을 사랑합니다. (=I truly love you folks.) 그대들에게 작은 선물을 보냅니다. (=I am sending you folks a small gift.) 그대들의 모든 것을 알고 싶습니다. (=I want to know everything about you folks.)

#### Note

1. “ㄴ” is a phonological variant of its standard form “네”, and it is more frequently used in conversation than its standard form. The reason is that it can be pronounced with much less effort because the consonant “ㄴ” and the vowel “이” are both pronounced at the same place of articulation near the alveolar ridge. In contrast, when we pronounce “네,” we must move the tongue down to the middle of the oral cavity to pronounce the mid front vowel “에” after pronouncing the consonant “ㄴ.” Therefore, it requires some additional effort to pronounce the standard form “네.”

The second person pronouns in Korean are much more limited in their usage mainly due to some nonlinguistic factors. It is generally considered too direct and therefore quite offensive to refer to a person using the second person pronouns. For example, the second person pronoun “너” can be only used when we refer to a little child, or a close friend of the same age. The second person pronoun “당신” was originally used as an honorific pronoun, but it has somehow acquired some negative connotation. It is now more likely to be used when we are finger pointing at the other party while confronting him/her in a verbal fight. On the other hand, “당신” can also be used when a husband refers to his own wife in place of the second person vocative noun “여보 (Honey)” which is frequently used to call each other between husband and wife. Nowadays among young couples, “당신” and “여보” tend to be replaced by “자기(야) (sweetheart).” In addition, the second person pronoun “자네” can be used when an elderly man calls a younger-generation male in such situations that a father-in-law is calling a son-in-law or a teacher is calling his old male student who is visiting him long after his graduation, etc. Even with this rich set of the second person pronouns, nothing is available to refer to an adult interlocutor in a normal conversation. The main reason is that other alternative devices such as the ones below are readily available and more commonly used.

#### (1) Using One’s Title

If you know the other party’s title, you can refer to the person using his/her title instead of using a pronoun. The honorific suffix “~님” can be attached to the title if you need to show respect to the person. The following is a partial list of some commonly used titles.

### (a) Titles for Government Officials

Titles		
Government Officials	President	대통령
	Prime Minister	국무총리
	Vice Prime Minister	부총리
	Minister	장관
	Deputy Minister	차관
	President's Chief of Staff	대통령 비서실장
	President's Spokesperson	청와대 대변인
	Governor	도지사
	Mayor	시장
	Speaker of the National Assembly	국회의장
	National Assemblyman	국회의원
	Supreme Court Chief Justice	대법원장
	Attorney General	검찰총장
	Chief of Korean Central Intelligence Agency	국정원장
	National Police Chief	경찰총장
	Joint Chief of Staff	합참의장
Army/Air Force/Navy Chief of Staff	육군참모총장/공군참모총장/해군참모총장	

### (b) Titles for Private Company Officers

Titles		
Private Company Officers	Chief Executive Officer	회장
	Vice Chief Executive Officer	부회장
	Chairman of the Board	이사장
	President	사장
	Executive Director	전무
	Managing Director	상무
	Department Chief	부장
	Section Chief	과장
	Team Leader	팀장

### (c) Some Commonly Used Titles

Titles		
Common Titles	Chief of a Bank	은행장
	Branch chief of a Bank	지점장
	Chief of a Hospital	병원장
	College Chancellor/President	대학 총장
	College Professor	교수
	Principal (K-12)	교장 (선생님)
	Vice Principal (K-12)	교감 (선생님)
	Teacher (K-12)	선생님
	Medical Doctor	의사 (선생님)
	Judge	판사
	Trial Judge	재판장
	Prosecutor	검사
	Lawyer	변호사
	Local Police Chief	경찰서장
	Pharmacist	약사
	Nurse	간호사
	Movie Director, Music Director	(영화)감독, (음악)감독
	TV Program Producer	피디
	Airplane Pilot	기장
	Orchestra/Symphony Conductor	(오케스트라/심포니) 지휘자
Driver	기사	
Railroad/Subway Station Chief	역장	
Train/Subway Conductor	기관사	
Small Store Owner/Company President	사장	

### (2) Using Kinship Terms

In a conversation between family members, a variety of kinship terms can be used instead of pronouns.

Kinship Terms	
Grandparents	조부모/조부모님
Grandfather	할아버지/할아버님
Grandmother	할머니/할머님
Parents	부모님
Father	아버지/아버님
Mother	어머니/어머님
Father-in-law to a male	장인어른
Mother-in-law to a male	장모님
Father-in-law to a female	시아버지/시아버님
Mother-in-law to a female	시어머니/시어머님
Father's older brother	큰아버지/큰아버님
Wife of father's older brother	큰어머니/큰어머님
Father's younger brother (married)	작은아버지/작은아버님
Wife of father's younger brother	작은어머니/작은어머님
Father's unmarried brothers	삼촌
Father's sisters	고모
Husband of father's sister	고모부
Mother's brothers	(외)삼촌
Wife of mother's brothers	외숙모
Mother's sisters	이모
Husband of mother's sisters	이모부
Older brother to a male	형/형님
Older brother to a female	오빠
Older sister to a male	누나/누님
Older sister to a female	언니
Younger brother	남동생
Younger sister	여동생
Son	아들
Daughter-in-law	며느리
Daughter	딸
Son-in-law	사위
Grandchild	손주
Grandson	손자
Granddaughter	손녀

### (3) Using One's Name + 씨

If you are talking to a person who is not one of your family members, and you don't know his/her title, you can still refer to the person using his/her name with the honorific suffix “~씨.” In the case that you need to show respect to the addressee in a formal situation, it is highly recommended to use the honorific suffix with the person's full name. More recently, another honorific suffix “~님” is more frequently used in place of “~씨” especially when a person on a waiting list is being called at public places, such as hospitals, banks, government offices, etc. In an informal conversation between a male and a female, especially between lovers, a person's first name with the honorific suffix “~씨” is often used to call the other party. On the other hand, the last name with the honorific suffix “~씨” can be used when a private employer calls his or her worker. But we must avoid using this whenever it's possible because it somehow acquired a negative connotation of treating one's employee like a mercenary.

### (4) Using Common Nouns

A variety of common nouns have also been used to refer to a person with whom you are not acquainted. They are commonly used to call a stranger whom you may encounter on a street or at public places.

Common Nouns	
A very old man who looks like someone's grandfather	할아버지
A very old lady who looks like someone's grandmother	할머니
A man who is old enough to be someone's father	아버님
A woman who is old enough to be someone's mother	어머님
An elderly man	아저씨 or 선생님
Any small business owner	사장님
A noble wife	사모님
An elderly married woman	아주머니
A vulgar term for an elderly married woman	아줌마 <sup>1</sup>
A female server at a traditional restaurant	이모
A young unmarried man	총각 <sup>2</sup>
A young unmarried woman	아가씨 <sup>2</sup>

A male or female who might be in school age	학생
If you know the first name of someone's son/daughter	First Name + 아빠/아버지/아버님, 엄마/어머니/어머님

**Note:**

1. “아줌마” used to be used quite often when we called an old female server at a small traditional restaurant. But now it is replaced by “이모.” At a fancy western-style restaurant, however, the vocative expression “저기요” can be used instead to draw a server’s attention.
2. These common nouns fell out of fashion and are no longer used in normal conversation. Especially, many women feel quite offended when they are called by “아가씨.”

**(5) Using a Person’s Last Name + 선배(님) or just “선배(님)”**

When you refer to a person who is a senior colleague at a workplace, you can use his/her last name with the noun “선배(님)” or just “선배(님)” without using the last name. They can also be used to refer to a college student who is senior to you. Sometimes “형” as a gender neutral term can also be used in place of “선배(님)” to show a little more emotional attachment to the addressee.

**3. Third Person Pronouns (3인칭 대명사)**

Third Person Pronouns (3인칭 대명사)		Examples (예문)
Singular (단수)	Subject	이분/그분/저분이 우리 선생님이십니다. (=This person/The person next to you/That person over there is my teacher.) 어제 만난 <u>그분</u> 이 이 학교 교장선생님이십니다. (=The person you met yesterday is the principal of this school.) <u>이 사람</u> /그 사람/저 사람이 돈을 훔쳤습니다. (=This person/The person next to you/That person over there stole the money.)
	Non-subject	이분/이 사람을 만나신 적이 있습니까? (=Have you ever met this person?) <u>그분</u> /그 사람을 전에 만나신 적이 있습니까? (=Have you met the person before? <u>저분</u> /저 사람을 만나신 적이 있습니까? (=Have you ever met the person over there?)
	Possessive	이분/그분/저분/이 사람/그 사람/저 사람의 차가 빨간색이다. (=The red car belongs to this person/the person next you/the person over there.)

Plural (복수)	Subject	이/그/저 + Counter/ Noun + 들	이분들/그분들/저분들이 우리 아버지 친구분들이다. (=These people/Those people next to you/Those people over there are my father's friends.) 이 사람들/그 사람들/저 사람들이 범인이다. (=These people/Those people next to you/Those people over there are the suspects.)
	Non-subject		이분들/그분들/저분들을 호텔에 모시고 가세요. (=Please take these folks/those folks next to you/those folks over there to the hotel.) 이 사람들/그 사람들/저 사람들에게 음식을 좀 드리세요. (=Please give some food to these people/those people next to you/those people over there.)
	Possessive		이분들/그분들/저분들이 사람들/그 사람들/저 사람들의 집이 지진으로 무너졌습니다. (=The houses of these people/those people next to you/those people over there collapsed due to the earthquake.)

**Note:**

- In addition, the third person pronouns “그,” “이들,” “그들,” and “저들” which are not accompanied by a counter or common noun can also be used in literary text.

그가 오늘 집에 온다. (=He/she will come to my house.)

존이 그를 만났다. (=John met him/her.)

그의 목표는 대학에 가는 것이다. (=His/her goal is to enter a college.)

이들이 뭐 하는지 아무도 모른다. (=No one knows what these people are doing.)

그들을 용서하세요. (=Please forgive them.)

저들의 잘못된 행동을 처벌하세요. (=Please punish their wrongdoings.)

However, “이” and “저” do not allow this type of personal pronouns. Therefore, the following sentences are ungrammatical.

이가/저가 오늘 집에 온다. (NOT OK)

존이 이를/저를 만났다. (NOT OK)

이의/저의 목표는 대학에 가는 것이다. (NOT OK)

The third person pronouns in Korean are basically derived from the combination of the demonstratives “이(this), 그(that), 저(the one over there)” and the counter “분(honorific), 녀름(jerk), etc.” In place of the counters, we can also use the nouns like “사람(person) and 것(thing).”

In addition to the third person pronouns above, there are more third person pronouns which are frequently used in casual conversation. For example, the third person pronoun “애,” which was originally derived from the combination of the demonstrative “이” and the noun “아이(kid),” can be used to refer to a little kid or a close friend who is physi-

cally close to the speaker. It can also be used as a derogatory pronoun to refer to someone who is younger than the speaker. By the same token, “**개**,” the short form of “**그 아이**|(the kid next to you) can be used to refer to someone physically close to the listener and “**재**(**저 아이**: the kid over there)” for someone away from both the speaker and the listener. Like other demonstrative pronouns, “**개**” can also be used for someone who was mentioned before, but is currently out of sight from both the speaker and the listener. The plural forms of these pronouns are “**애들/애네(들)**,” “**개들/개네(들)**,” “**재들/재네(들)**,” respectively.

Third Person Pronouns (3인칭 대명사)		Examples (예문)
Singular (단수)	<b>애</b> (이 아이)	Close to the speaker <b>애</b> 엄마가 선생님이야. (=This kid's mom is a teacher.) <b>애</b> 는 만날 때마다 지각이다. (=This guy always comes late whenever we meet together.)
	<b>개</b> (그 아이)	Close to the listener 너, 앞으로 <b>개</b> 랑 놀지 마. (=Hey you, stop playing with the kid next to you from now on.) <b>개</b> 더러 말조심하라고 해. (=Tell him/her to watch his/her language.)
	<b>재</b> (저 아이)	Away from both <b>재</b> 는 운동도 잘하네. (=That kid over there is good at sports as well.) <b>재</b> 는 정말 멍청해. (=That guy over there is so stupid.)
	<b>개</b>	Mentioned before, but currently out of sight from both <b>개</b> 는 뭐든지 자기 마음대로 해. (=He/she always does things the way he/she wants.) <b>개</b> 를 만나면 안부 전해 줘. (=Give my regards to the guy when you meet him/her.)
Plural (복수)	<b>애들/애네(들)</b>	Close to the speaker <b>애네</b> 는/ <b>애네들</b> 은 서울에 살아. (=These kids are living in Seoul.)
	<b>개들/개네(들)</b>	Close to the listener <b>개들</b> 은/ <b>개네</b> 는/ <b>개네들</b> 은 어느 학교 다니니? (=Which school do they go to?)
	<b>재들/재네(들)</b>	Away from both <b>재들/재네/재네들</b> 좀 봐. (Look at those kids.)
	<b>개들/개네(들)</b>	Mentioned before, but currently out of sight from both <b>개들</b> 은/ <b>개네</b> 는/ <b>개네들</b> 은 지금 뭐 하니? (=What are those guys doing now?)

#### 4. Reflexive Pronouns (재귀대명사)

Reflexive Pronouns (재귀대명사)		Examples (예문)
Singular (단수)	Subject	<b>자기가/자신이/자기 자신이</b> 한 일은 책임져야 한다. <b>1</b> (=One must take responsibility for the thing he (himself)/she (herself) has done.)
	Non-subject	존은 <b>자기를/자신을/자기 자신을/그 자신</b> 을 믿지 못한다. (=John cannot trust himself.) 존은 <b>자기에게/자신에게/자기 자신/그 자신</b> 에게 아주 엄격하다. (=Mary is very strict with herself.)
	Possessive	존은 <b>자기의/자신의/자기 자신의/그 자신의</b> 잘못을 모른다. (=John cannot recognize his own wrongdoing.) <b>네 자신의</b> 불행을 남에게 탓하지 말라. (=Do not blame others for your misfortune.)
Plural (복수)	Subject	<b>자기들/자신들/자기 자신들이</b> 영웅인 척 행동한다. (=They act like they themselves are heroes.)
	Non-subject	사람들은 남에게 엄격하고 <b>자기들에게</b> 는 관대하다. (=People are strict with others, but generous with themselves.) 우리는 항상 <b>자신들/자기 자신들/우리들 자신</b> 을 먼저 생각한다. (=We always take care of ourselves first.)
	Possessive	사람들은 <b>자기들/자신들/자기 자신들의</b> 실수는 쉽게 용서한다. (=People easily forgive their own mistakes.) <b>너희들 자신의</b> 과오를 인정해야 한다. (=You must admit your own mistakes.)

**Note:**

1. Unlike English, reflexive pronouns can also serve as the subject of a sentence.

존 말이야. (=I am talking about John.)

**자기가** 뭐라고 나한테 반말이야.

(=Who does he think he (himself) is? Why is he using such blunt expressions for me?)

On the other hand, the reflexive pronoun “지” and its plural forms “지네들/지들” are the colloquial variants of “자기” and “자기들,” respectively. They are very commonly used in informal conversation.

존이 **지/자기** 동생한테 함부로 한다. (=John treats his own younger sibling badly.)

존 **지/자기가** 감히 나한테 이럴 수 있나. (=How could John dare to treat me like this?)

메리는 **지/자기가** 뭔데 나한테 이래라 저래라 하는 거야.

(=Who does Mary (herself) think she is? Why is she telling me to do this or that?)

개네들은 **자들/지네들/자기들**끼리 싸운다. (=Those guys are fighting with each other.)

Summary of Korean Personal Pronouns

Personal Pronouns (인칭대명사)					
Person	Grammatical Functions	Singular (단수)		Plural (복수)	
First Person 1인칭	Subject	내	내가	우리	우리가
	Non-subject	나	나를, 나에게		우리를/우리에게
	Possessive	내	내 가방		우리 집
	Subject (Humble)	제	제가	저희	저희가
	Non-subject (Humble)	저	저를, 저에게		저희를/저희에게
	Possessive (Humble)	제	제 가방		저희 집
Second Person 2인칭	Subject	네/니	네가/니가	너희 니네/ 니네들	너희가/니네들이
	Non-subject	너	너를		너희를/너희에게/ 니네들을
	Possessive	네/니	네 가방/니 가방		너희 학교/니네(들) 학교
	Alienated (Honorific)	당신 자네	당신이/을/에게/의 자네가/를/에게/의	당신들 자네들	당신들이/을/에게/의 자네들이/을/에게/의
	Literary (Honorific)	그대	그대가/를/ 에게/의	그대들	그대들이/을/에게/의
Third Person 3인칭	Subject	이/그/저 + Counter/ Noun	그가 이/그/저분이 이/그/저 사람이	이/그/저 + Counter/ Noun + 들	이/그/저들이 이/그/저분들이 이/그/저 사람들이
	Non-subject		그를 이/그/저분을 이/그/저 사람을		이/그/저들을 이/그/저분들을 이/그/저 사람들을
	Possessive		그의 이/그/저분의 이/그/저 사람의		이/그/저들의 이/그/저분들의 이/그/저 사람들의
Reflexive Pronoun 재귀대명사	자기(들) 자신(들) 자기 자신(들) Pronoun + (들) + 자신	자기가/를/에게/의 자신이/을/에게/의 자기 자신이/을/에게/의 내/너/그 자신이/을/에게/의		자기들이/을/에게/의 자신들이/을/에게/의 자기 자신들이/을/에게/의 우리들/너희들/그들 자신이/을/에게/의	

## II . Demonstratives (지시사) and Their Corresponding Diminutive Forms (지소사)

### 1. Demonstratives (지시사)

A demonstrative is a grammatical device that can be used to point out the thing that is being referred to or to distinguish it from other things of the same categorical class. Depending on what it refers to, such as places, directions, specific thing or person, method, and kind, a variety of different demonstrative devices have been developed in Korean.

Demonstratives (지시사)			
Place	여기	The place close to the speaker	<b>여기</b> 가 어디예요? (=Can you tell me where I am?)
	거기	The place close to the listener	<b>거기</b> 에 뭐가 있어요? (=What's in there?)
	저기	The place away from both	<b>저기</b> 에 사람들이 많아요. (=There are many people over there.)
	거기	The place mentioned before, but out of sight now from both	한국에 가면 <b>거기</b> 에서 뭐 하실 거예요? (=When you go to Korea, what are you going to do there?)
Direction	이리(로) 여기(로)	The direction close to the speaker	<b>이리(로)/여기(로)</b> 오세요. (=Please come this way.)
	그리(로) 거기(로)	The direction close to the listener	<b>그리(로)/거기(로)</b> 가세요. (=Please go that way.)
	저리(로) 저기(로)	The direction away from both	<b>저리(로)/저기(로)</b> 가세요. (=Please go that way over there.)
	그리(로) 거기(로)	The direction mentioned before, but out of sight now from both	학교 뒤쪽 <b>그리(로)/거기(로)</b> 가세요. (=Please go that way behind the school.)
Thing or person	이 + Noun/것*1	The person/thing close to the speaker	<b>이</b> 사람은 직업이 뭐예요? (=What is this person's occupation?) <b>이것</b> 이 무엇인가요? (=What is this?) 존이 <b>이것</b> 을 샀어요. (=John bought this thing.)
	그 + Noun/것	The person/thing close to the listener	<b>그</b> 사람은 직업이 뭐예요? (=What is that person's occupation?) <b>그것</b> 이 무엇인가요? (=What is that?) 존이 <b>그것</b> 을 샀어요. (=John bought that thing.)

	저 + Noun/것	The person/thing away from both	<b>저</b> 사람은 직업이 뭐예요? (=What is the person's occupation over there?) <b>저것</b> 이 무엇인가요? (=What is the thing over there?) 존이 <b>저것</b> 을 샀어요. (=John bought that thing over there.)
	그 + Noun/것	The person/thing mentioned before, but out of sight now from both	어제 말한 <b>그</b> 사람 직업이 뭐죠? (=What is the person's occupation that you mentioned yesterday?) <b>그것</b> 이 뭐에 필요하죠? (=What is that thing for?) 존이 어제 말한 <b>그것</b> 을 샀어요. (=John bought the thing that I mentioned yesterday.)
Method	이렇게	Like the way the speaker is doing now	<b>이렇게</b> 하세요. (=Please do it like this.)
	그렇게	Like the way the listener is doing now	계속 <b>그렇게</b> 하세요. (=Please continue to do it like that.)
	저렇게	Like the way the third party is doing now	<b>저렇게</b> 하세요. (=Please do it like the way over there.)
	그렇게	Like the way already mentioned	어제 말씀드린 것처럼 <b>그렇게</b> 하세요. (=Please do it like the way I told you yesterday.)
Kind	이런 + Noun/것	Such as the person or the thing close to the speaker	<b>이런</b> 사람/것은 찾기 힘들어요. (=It is hard to find a person/thing such as this one.)
	그런 + Noun/것	Such as the person or the thing close to the listener	<b>그런</b> 사람/것은 또 없어요. (=There is no person/thing such as that one next to you.)
	저런 + Noun/것	Such as the person or the thing away from both	<b>저런</b> 사람/것은 피하세요. (=Please avoid a person/thing such as the one over there.)
	그런 + Noun/것	Such as the person or the thing mentioned before, but out of sight now from both	<b>그런</b> 사람을 만나면 꼭 결혼하세요. (=When you meet such a person, you must get married to him/her.) <b>그런</b> 것을 찾으시면 연락해 주세요. (=When you find such a thing, please contact me.)

**Note:**

- In casual speech, when “이것/그것/저것/그것” serve as the subject, they can be contracted together with the subject case markers “~이/가” into “이게/그게/저게/그게,” respectively.

**이게** 뭐예요? (이것 + 이) (=What is this thing?)

**그게** 뭐예요? (그것 + 이) (=What is that thing?)

저게 뭐예요? (저것 + 이) (=What is that thing over there?)

조금 전에 말한 그게 뭐예요? (그것 + 이) (=What is the thing that you mentioned a moment ago?)

On the other hand, if “이것/그것/저것/그것” serve as the object, then they can be contracted together with the object case markers “을/를” into “이걸/그걸/저걸/그걸,” respectively.

존이 이걸 샀어요. (이것 + 을) (=John bought this thing.)

존이 그걸 샀어요. (그것 + 을) (=John bought that thing.)

존이 저걸 샀어요. (저것 + 을) (=John bought that thing over there.)

존이 어제 말한 그걸 샀어요. (그것 + 을) (=John bought the thing that he mentioned yesterday.)

In addition, if “이것/그것/저것/그것” are used with the instrumental case marker “으(로),” they can be contracted into “이걸로/그걸로/저걸로/그걸로,” respectively.

이걸로 뭐 하실 거예요? (이것 + 으로) (=What are you going to do with this thing?)

그걸로 뭐 하실 거예요? (그것 + 으로) (=What are you going to do with that thing?)

저걸로 뭐 하실 거예요? (저것 + 으로) (=What are you going to do with that thing over there?)

조금 전에 말한 그걸로 뭐 하실 거예요? (그것 + 으로)

(=What are you going to do with the thing that you mentioned a moment ago?)

Sometimes, “이걸로/그걸로/저걸로/그걸로” can be optionally used to replace the object “이걸/그걸/저걸/그걸,” respectively.

존이 이걸/이걸로 샀어요. (=John bought this thing.)

존이 그걸/그걸로 샀어요. (=John bought that thing.)

존이 저걸/저걸로 샀어요. (=John bought that thing over there.)

존이 어제 말한 그걸/그걸로 샀어요. (=John bought the thing that he mentioned yesterday.)

이걸/이걸로 주세요. (=Please give me this thing.)

그걸/그걸로 주세요. (=Please give me that thing.)

저걸/저걸로 주세요. (=Please give me that thing over there.)

어제 말한 그걸/그걸로 주세요. (=Please give me the thing that you mentioned yesterday.)

Lastly, if “이것/그것/저것/그것” serve as the topic or contrastive focus, then they can be contracted together with the topic/contrastive focus markers “은/는” into “이건/그건/저건/그건,” respectively.

(1) “이건/그건/저건/그건” can function as the topic of a sentence when they occur at the beginning of a sentence or a clause.

이건 존이 샀어요. (이것 + 은) (=As for this thing, John bought it.)

그건 존이 샀어요. (그것 + 은) (=As for that thing, John bought it.)

저건 존이 샀어요. (저것 + 은) (=As for that thing over there, John bought it.)

어제 말한 그건 존이 샀어요. (그것 + 은) (=As for the thing that I mentioned yesterday, John bought it.)

(2) “이건/그건/저건/그건” can function as the contrastive focus of a sentence when they appear in non-sentence initial position.

존이 이건 샀어요. (이것 + 은) (=John bought this thing, but not other things.)

존이 그건 샀어요. (그것 + 은) (=John bought that thing, but not other things.)

존이 저건 샀어요. (저것 + 은) (=John bought that thing over there, but not other things.)

존이 내가 어제 말한 그건 샀어요. (그것 + 은)

(=John bought the thing that I mentioned yesterday, but not others.)

## 2. Diminutives (지소사)

Demonstratives introduced above have their own diminutive forms which are sometimes used in casual conversation to exaggerate the smallness, cuteness, or trivialness of a person, object, method, place, kind, etc. Since the usage of a diminutive form often brings the connotation of belittling the entity that it refers to, it should be used with extra caution.

The derivation of a diminutive form from its corresponding demonstrative is very straightforward. Regardless of the type of demonstrative, (1) if it refers to something close to the speaker, its first syllable must be changed into “요”; (2) if it refers to something close to the listener, its first syllable must be changed into “고”; (3) if it refers to something away from both the speaker and the listener, its first syllable must be changed into “조”; lastly (4) if it refers to something that was mentioned before, but is out of sight now from both the speaker and the listener, its first syllable must be changed into “코.”

Relative Location	Demonstratives (지시사)	Diminutives (지소사)
Something close to the speaker	여기	요기
	이리(로)	요리(로)
	여기(로)	요기(로)
	이 + Noun/것	요 + Noun/것
	이렇게	요렇게
	이런 + Noun/것	요런 + Noun/것
	이게	요게
	이걸	요걸
	이건	요건
Something close to the listener	거기	고기
	그리(로)	고리(로)
	거기(로)	고기(로)
	그 + Noun/것	고 + Noun/것
	그렇게	고렇게

	그런 + Noun/것	고런 + Noun/것
	그게	고게
	그걸	고걸
	그건	고건
Something away from both the speaker and the listener	저기	조기
	저리(로)	조리(로)
	저기(로)	조기(로)
	저 + Noun/것	조 + Noun/것
	저렇게	조렇게
	저런 + Noun/것	조런 + Noun/것
	저게	조게
	저걸	조걸
	저건	조건
	Something that was mentioned before, but out of sight now from both the speaker and the listener	거기
그리(로)		고리(로)
거기(로)		고기(로)
그 + Noun/것		고 + Noun/것
그렇게		고렇게
그런 + Noun/것		고런 + Noun/것
그게		고게
그걸		고걸
	그건	고건



whereas “및” is the most formal one, and it is exclusively used in written text and formal speech. The other two in the middle are frequently used in both written text and informal conversation.

존이랑 메리가 학교에 갑니다.

(=John and Mary are going to school.)

메리랑 존이 학교에 갑니다.

(=Mary and John are going to school.)

아버지하고 어머니가 거실에서 이야기 하신다.

(=My father and my mother are talking to each other in the living room.)

김선생님과 박선생님이 교실에서 학생들을 가르친다.

(=Mr. Kim and Ms. Park are teaching students in the classroom.)

메리와 존이 도서관에서 공부한다.

(=Mary and John are studying in the library.)

정보통신망 이용 및 보호 등에 관한 법률이 국회에서 통과되었다.

(=The bill of the usage and protection of the informational network was passed in the National Assembly.)

These noun conjunctions with the exception of “및” can also be used with the optional adverbs “함께, 같이, and 더불어(서) (together)” to express the joint action which is being carried out with another party. Due to its formality, however, “더불어(서)” can only be used in written text.

존이 메리랑 (함께/같이) 산책을 한다.

(=John is taking a walk together with Mary.)

할아버지가 할머니하고 (함께/같이) 식사를 하신다.

(=Grandfather is eating food together with Grandmother.)

존은 음악활동과 (함께/같이/더불어(서)) 미술활동에도 참여하고 있습니다.

(=John is participating in fine arts activities together with music activities.)

## 2. Enumerating the options: ~(이)나

Function	Enumerating the options	
Form	~이나 (After a consonant)	~나 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Or	
Examples	존 <u>이</u> 나 메리 (John or Mary)	메리 <u>나</u> 존 (Mary or John)

The conjunction “~(이)나” can be used to provide an exhaustive list of options to choose from the specified items, which can be rendered as “or.” The last noun is the carrier of the case marker for the entire list of nouns.

존이나 메리를 보내 주세요.

(=Please send me John or Mary.)

삼성 갤럭시나 아이폰을 사고 싶습니다.

(=I want to buy a Samsung Galaxy or an iPhone.)

아스피린이나 타이레놀이나 에드빌을 사다 주세요.

(=Please buy me an aspirin, a Tylenol, or an Advil.)

But it should be distinguished from the particle “~(이)나” which is used to express that any option would be acceptable as long as it is one of the specified options, which can be rendered as “either \_or \_.” In this case, the particle “~(이)나” must be attached to each and every option including the last one. (See Chapter 5 Particles)

라면이나 국수나 상관 없습니다.

(=I don't care whether it's either ramen or noodles.)

삼성 갤럭시나 아이폰이나 아무거나 괜찮아요.

(=Anything will be fine whether it's either a Samsung Galaxy or an iPhone.)

아스피린이나 타이레놀이나 뭐든지 갖다주세요.

(=Please bring me anything whether it's either an aspirin or a Tylenol.)

### 3. Expressing “Unlike”: ~(이)랑 달리, ~하고 달리, ~과/와 달리

Function	Expressing “Unlike”		
Form	~이랑 달리 (After a consonant) ~랑 달리 (After a vowel)	~하고 달리 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~과 달리 (After a consonant) ~와 달리 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Unlike		
Examples	존이랑 달리 (Unlike John) 메리랑 달리 (Unlike Mary)	존하고 달리 (Unlike John)	존과 달리 (Unlike John) 메리와 달리 (Unlike Mary)

“~(이)랑/하고/과/와 달리” can be used to express that one is different from the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “unlike.”

말티즈는 불독이랑 달리/불독하고 달리/불독과 달리 순한 편이다.  
(=A Maltese is docile unlike a pit bull.)

메리는 존이랑 달리/존하고 달리/존과 달리 열심히 공부합니다.  
(=Mary studies hard unlike John.)

“달리” can be replaced by “다르게” without changing the meaning. The former is more likely to be used in conversation, whereas the latter can be freely used in both written text and conversation.

존은 생긴 것이랑 다르게/것하고 다르게/것과 다르게 일을 아주 잘 합니다.  
(=John is a very skilled worker despite his looks.)

### 4. Expressing the purpose of taking action:

~을/를 위해(서), ~을/를 위하여, ~을/를 위한

“~을/를 위해(서), ~을/를 위하여” can be used to express that one is to carry out the action for the benefit of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “for.” They are more or less interchangeable, but the latter is more likely to be used in written text and formal speech. Their modifying form “~을/를 위한” is used to modify the following

noun. (See Chapter 16 Modifying Verbal Suffixes for more discussion)

Function	Expressing the purpose of taking action		
Form	~을 위해(서) (After a consonant) ~를 위해(서) (After a vowel)	~을 위하여 (After a consonant) ~를 위하여 (After a vowel)	~을 위한 (After a consonant) ~를 위한 (After a vowel)
Meaning	For		
Examples	존을 위해(서) (For John) 메리를 위해(서) (For Mary)	존을 위하여 (For John) 메리를 위하여 (For Mary)	존을 위한 (For John) 메리를 위한 (For Mary)

아버님을 위해(서) 선물을 샀다.

(=I bought a present for my father.)

정부는 이번 동계올림픽의 성공을 위하여 아낌 없이 지원할 예정입니다.

(=The government is planning to provide full support for the success of this Winter Olympic Games.)

이건 아버님을 위한 선물이다.

(=This is the present for my father.)

## 5. Expressing “About/Regarding”:

~에 대해(서), ~에 대한, ~에 관해(서), ~에 관한

Function	Expressing “About, Regarding”			
Form	~에 대해(서) (After a consonant or a vowel)	~에 대한 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~에 관해(서) (After a consonant or a vowel)	~에 관한 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	About/Regarding			
Examples	존에 대해(서) (About John)	메리에 대한 (About Mary)	그 문제에 관해(서) (Regarding the issue)	그 문제에 관한 (Regarding the issue)

“~에 대해(서), ~에 관해(서)” can be used to express that the situation in a given sentence is about the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “about/regarding.” “~에 대해(서)”

can be freely used in both written text and conversation, whereas “~에 관해(서)” is more likely to be used in written text and formal speech. Their noun modifying forms are “~에 대한,” “~에 관한,” respectively. (See Chapter 16 Modifying Verbal Suffixes for more discussion)

나는 그 사람에 대해(서) 아무것도 모른다.

(=I don't know anything about the person.)

당신은 이번 사건에 대해(서) 묵비권을 행사할 권리가 있습니다.

(=You have the right to remain silent regarding this case.)

그 문제에 관해(서) 질문이 있습니다.

(=I have a question about the problem.)

그 사건에 관해(서) 수사가 진행 중입니다.

(=An investigation is ongoing regarding the case.)

개인신상에 대한 정보는 물어보지 마세요.

(=Please don't ask any information about personal matters.)

업무에 관한 일은 누설하지 마세요.

(=Please do not leak any information about our business matters.)

## 6. Expressing “Including/If we include”:

~을/를 포함해(서), ~을/를 비롯해(서), ~을/를 포함하면

Function	Expressing “Including”		
Form	~을 포함해(서) (After a consonant) ~를 포함해(서) (After a vowel)	~을 비롯해(서) (After a consonant) ~를 비롯해(서) (After a vowel)	~을 포함하면 (After a consonant) ~를 포함하면 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Including		If we include
Examples	학생 <u>들</u> 을 포함해(서) (Including students) 운전사 <u>를</u> 포함해(서) (Including the driver)	과일 <u>을</u> 비롯해(서) (Including fruit) 가구 <u>를</u> 비롯해(서) (Including furniture)	존 <u>을</u> 포함하면 (If we include John) 메리 <u>를</u> 포함하면 (If we include Mary)

“~을/를 포함해(서), ~을/를 비롯해(서)” can be used to express that the total number is

calculated including the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “including.” “~을/를 포함해(서)” can be freely used in both written text and conversation, whereas “~을/를 비롯해(서)” is more likely to be used in written text and formal speech. “~을/를 포함하면” is a conditional expression which can be rendered as “if we include the preceding noun.”

존을 포함해(서) 모두 5명이 식당에서 저녁을 먹었다.

(=Altogether five people including John ate dinner at the restaurant.)

선량한 주부들을 비롯해(서) 이번 다단계 피해자 모두 5천명입니다.

(=Altogether five thousand people including innocent housewives got victimized by this pyramid scheme.)

메리를 포함하면 학생이 모두 다섯 명입니다.

(=There are five students altogether if we include Mary.)

## 7. Expressing an alternative option: 대신(에)

Function	Expressing an alternative option
Form	대신(에) (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Instead of
Examples	존 <u>대신(에)</u> (Instead of John)

“대신(에)” can be used to express that an alternative option can be taken because the preceding noun is a less-preferred option, or it might not be available in the given situation, which can be rendered as “instead of.”

생일선물 대신(에) 용돈을 좀 더 올려 주세요.

(=Please raise my allowance instead of a birthday present.)

존 대신(에) 메리가 왔다.

(=Mary came instead of John.)

저 대신(에) 이 일 좀 해 주세요.

(=Please do this work instead of me.)

## 8. Expressing the direct cause: 때문에

Function	Expressing the direct cause
Form	때문에 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Because of
Examples	날씨 <b>때문에</b> (Because of the weather)

“때문에” can be used to express that the preceding noun is the direct cause of the given situation, which can be rendered as “because of.” It can be freely used in both written text and conversation.

존 **때문에** 공부를 할 수가 없다.

(=I cannot study because of John.)

숙제 **때문에** 어젯밤에 잠을 한숨도 못 잤다.

(=I could not sleep at all because of my homework.)

## 9. Expressing “Due to”:

~(으)로, ~(으)로 인해(서), ~(으)로 인하여, ~(으)로 말미암아

Function	Expressing “Due to”			
Form	~으로 (After a consonant)	~으로 인해(서) (After a consonant)	~으로 인하여 (After a consonant)	~으로 말미암아 (After a consonant)
	~로 (After a vowel or “르”)	~로 인해(서) (After a vowel or “르”)	~로 인하여 (After a vowel or “르”)	~로 말미암아 (After a vowel or “르”)
Meaning	Due to			
Examples	지진 <b>으로</b> (Due to the earthquake)	폭염 <b>으로</b> 인해(서) (Due to the heat wave)	가뭄 <b>으로</b> 인하여 (Due to the drought)	전쟁 <b>으로</b> 말미암아 (Due to the war)
	폭발 <b>로</b> (Due to the explosion)	폭우 <b>로</b> 인해(서) (Due to the heavy rain)	폭설 <b>로</b> 인하여 (Due to the blizzard)	이번 화재 <b>로</b> 말미암아 (Due to this fire)

“~(으)로 인해(서), ~(으)로 인하여, ~(으)로 말미암아” and their contraction form “~(으)로” can be used to express that the preceding noun is the main cause of the situation in a given sentence, which can be rendered as “due to.” They are all interchangeable and

are typically used in written text and formal speech. In informal conversation, their equivalent grammar feature “때문에” is more likely to be used instead.

최근 가뭄으로 이 저수지의 물이 다 말랐다.

(=All the water in this reservoir dried up due to the recent drought.)

남부 지방의 홍수로 인해(서) 많은 사람이 죽었다.

(=Many people died due to the flood in the southern region.)

폭설로 인해(서) 오늘 모든 항공편이 취소되었다.

(=All the flights have been cancelled today due to the snow storm.)

전쟁으로 인하여 피난민이 증가하고 있다.

(=The number of refugees is on the rise due to the war.)

경제불황으로 말미암아 가계수입이 점점 줄어들고 있다.

(=Household incomes have been gradually decreasing due to the economic recession.)

## 10. Expressing “Due to”: 관계로, 관계상

Function	Expressing “Due to”	
Form	관계로 (After a consonant or a vowel)	관계상 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Due to	
Examples	날씨 <b>관계로</b> (Due to the weather)	시간 <b>관계상</b> (Due to the time limitation)

“관계로, 관계상” can be used to express that the preceding noun is the direct cause of the situation in a given sentence, which can be rendered as “due to.” They are more likely to be used in a formal situation, such as news briefings and official announcements.

날씨 **관계로** 모든 뉴욕 행 비행기가 취소됐습니다.

(=All the flights to New York have been cancelled due to the (inclement) weather.)

시간 **관계상** 다음 인터뷰는 취소하기로 했습니다.

(=We decided to cancel the next interview due to the time limitation.)

## 11. Expressing gratitude: 덕(분)에, 덕택에

Function	Expressing gratitude	
Form	덕(분)에 (After a consonant or a vowel)	덕택에 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Thanks to	
Examples	부모님 <b>덕(분)에</b> (Thanks to my parents)	선생님 <b>덕택에</b> (Thanks to the teacher)

“덕(분)에, 덕택에” can be used to express that the situation in a given sentence can be attributed to the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “thanks to.”

부모님 **덕(분)에/덕택에** 한국에서 공부할 수 있었다.

(=Thanks to my parents, I could study in Korea.)

선생님 **덕(분)에/덕택에** 시험에 합격했습니다.

(=I passed the test thanks to my teacher.)

## 12. Expressing comparison/consideration: ~에 비해(서)

Function	Comparison	Consideration
Form	~에 비해(서) (After a consonant or a vowel)	
Meaning	Compared to	Considering
Examples	메리 <b>에 비해(서)</b> (Comparing to Mary)	나이 <b>에 비해(서)</b> (Considering one's age)

“~에 비해(서)” can be used to compare one thing to another, which can be rendered as “compared to.” The preceding noun is used as the reference point for comparison.

존은 다른 학생**에 비해(서)** 키가 큼니다.

(=John is tall compared to other students.)

It can also be used to evaluate a situation or one's status using the preceding noun as a main criterion, which can be rendered as “considering.”

메리는 나이에 비해(서) 성숙한 편이다.

(=Mary is kind of mature considering her age.)

노력에 비해(서) 결과가 별로 좋지 않았다.

(=The result was not that good considering my efforts.)

### 13. Expressing “Depending on/In accordance with”: ~에 따라(서)

Function	Expressing “Depending on/In accordance with”	
Form	~에 따라(서) (After a consonant or a vowel)	
Meaning	Depending on	In accordance with
Examples	사람에 따라(서) (Depending on people)	정부 방침에 따라(서) (Following the government policy)

“~에 따라(서)” can be used to express that the situation in a given sentence depends on the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “depending on.”

미대륙은 땅이 아주 넓기 때문에 지역에 따라(서) 날씨 변화가 아주 심하다.

(=Because the American continent is so large, weather changes radically depending on the region.)

나이에 따라(서) 옷 입는 스타일이 다르다.

(=Fashion styles differ depending on age groups.)

사람의 성격은 자라온 환경에 따라(서) 다르다.

(=One’s personality varies depending on the environment where he/she grew up.)

이 상황을 어떻게 대처하느냐는 사람에 따라(서) 천차만별이다.

(=It completely differs depending on how each person handles this situation.)

(=It completely differs from person to person how they handle this situation.)

On the other hand, “~에 따라(서)” can also be used to express that the situation in a given sentence happens following the law, policy, rule, or regulation specified in the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “in accordance with.”

정부 방침에 따라(서) 모든 화력발전소는 곧 폐쇄될 거다.

(=In accordance with the government policy, all thermoelectric power plants will be shut down soon.)

김선생님은 학교 규칙에 따라(서) 3개월 정직을 당했다.

(=In accordance with the school regulation, Mr. Kim received a three month suspension.)

## 14. Indicating the agent of an action/the source for decision making:

~에 의해(서), ~에 의한

Function	The agent of an action		The source for decision making
Form	~에 의해(서), ~에 의한 (After a consonant or a vowel)		
Meaning	By		In accordance with
Examples	존에 의해(서) (By John)	국민에 의한 (By the people)	형법 제2 조에 의해(서) (In accordance with Article 2 of the Criminal Law)

“~에 의해(서)” can be used to indicate that the preceding noun is the agent of an action, which can be rendered as “by.” Its noun modifying form “~에 의한” can be used to modify a following noun.

존에 의해 모든 비밀이 누설되었다.

(=All the secrets were leaked by John.)

이번 테러 공격은 IS에 의해(서) 저질러 졌다.

(=This terrorist attack was committed by the IS.)

김정은 정권은 조만간 북한 군부에 의해(서) 무너질 것이다.

(=The Kim Jong-un regime will be soon overthrown by the North Korean military.)

북한에도 국민의, 국민에 의한, 국민을 위한 정부가 세워지길 바란다.

(=I wish the government of the people, by the people, and for the people could also be established in North Korea.)

On the other hand, “~에 의해(서)” can also be used to indicate that the preceding noun is the main source for a decision-making process, which can be rendered as “in accord-

ance with.” It is more likely to be used in written text and in a formal situation, such as a court trial. It is interchangeable with “~에 의거하여.”

헌법에 의해(서) 표현의 자유는 보장된다.

(=In accordance with the Constitution, freedom of speech is guaranteed.)

형법 제2 조에 의해(서) 피고에게 무기징역을 선고한다.

(=In accordance with Article 2 of the Criminal Law, I hereby sentence the defendant to life imprisonment.)

형법 제4 조에 의거하여 피고에게 징역 1년 집행유예 2년을 선고한다.

(=In accordance with Article 4 of the Criminal Law, I hereby sentence the defendant to one year imprisonment with a two-year probation.)

## 15. Indicating the source of information: ~에 따르면, ~에 의하면

Function	Indicating the source of information	
Form	~에 따르면 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~에 의하면 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	According to	
Examples	이번 연구 결과에 <u>따르면</u> (According to this research result)	정부 정책에 <u>의하면</u> (According to the government policy)

“~에 따르면, ~에 의하면” can be used to indicate that the preceding noun is the main source of information in a given sentence, which can be rendered as “according to.” They are freely interchangeable, but “~에 의하면” is slightly more formal than “~에 따르면”.

최근 연구 결과에 따르면/연구 결과에 의하면 포도주가 심장병 예방에 효과가 있습니다.  
(=According to recent research findings, drinking wine is effective to prevent heart disease.)

정부 발표에 따르면/정부 발표에 의하면 북한은 오늘 새벽 6시 동해상으로 미사일 다섯 발을 발사했다고 합니다.

(=According to a government announcement, North Korea launched five missiles over the East Sea at six in the morning.)

## 16. Expressing “Via”: ~을/를 통해(서)

Function	Expressing “Via”	
Form	~을 통해(서) (After a consonant)	~를 통해(서) (After a vowel)
Meaning	Via	
Examples	선생님을 통해(서) (Via the teacher)	매니저를 통해(서) (Via the manager)

“~을/를 통해(서)” can be used to express that the action in a given sentence is to be carried out by going through the channel of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “via.”

팀장을 통해(서) 모든 사업과 관련된 일을 처리하세요.

(=Please take care of all business matters via your team leader.)

위성방송을 통해(서) 올림픽 경기를 봤습니다.

(=I watched the Olympic Games via satellite broadcasting.)

## 17. Expressing “As well as”:

~뿐만 아니라, ~은/는 물론(이고), ~은/는 물론이려니와

Function	Expressing “As well as”		
Form	~뿐만 아니라 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~은 물론(이고) (After a consonant) ~는 물론(이고) (After a vowel)	~은 물론이려니와 (After a consonant) ~는 물론이려니와 (After a vowel)
Meaning	As well as		
Examples	존 <b>뿐만</b> 아니라 (As well as John) 공부 <b>뿐만</b> 아니라 (As well as study)	존 <b>은</b> 물론(이고) (As well as John) 공부 <b>는</b> 물론(이고) (As well as study)	존 <b>은</b> 물론이려니와 (As well as John) 공부 <b>는</b> 물론이려니와 (As well as study)

“~뿐만 아니라, ~은/는 물론(이고)” and their contraction forms “~뿐만 아니라, ~은/는 물론” can be used to express that the given situation applies to the following noun as well as the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “as well as.” “~은/는 물론이려니와”

is more likely to be used in written text and formal speech.

존은 야구뿐만(만) 아니라/야구는 물론(이고) 축구도 좋아한다.

(=John also likes soccer as well as basketball.)

5호 태풍 멜리사로 인해 남부지방뿐만(만) 아니라/남부지방은 물론(이고) 수도권 전체에 홍수 피해가 예상됩니다.

(=Flood damage is expected in the entire metropolitan area as well as the southern region due to the fifth typhoon Melisa.)

최근 북한은 핵실험은 물론이러니와 대륙간탄도미사일을 시험발사해 주변국가들을 위협하고 있다.

(=Recently North Korea is threatening neighboring countries by test firing their ICBMs as well as carrying out their nuclear tests.)

## 18. Expressing “In addition to/On top of”: ~에다가, ~에다, ~에

Function	Expressing “In addition to/On top of”		
Form	~에다가 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~에다 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~에 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	In addition to/On top of		
Examples	전화비 <u>에</u> 전기세 <u>에다</u> 수도요금 <u>에다가</u> 자동차 할부금 (Car payment on top of water bill, electricity bill, and phone bill)		

“~에다가” and its contraction forms “~에다, ~에” can be used to add an additional item to the preceding noun which caused the situation in the subsequent clause. They can be rendered as “in addition to/on top of.” We can add as many items as we want to clarify the cause for the given situation.

집안 청소에 빨래에 할 일이 너무 많아요.

(=I have a lot of things to do, such as doing laundry in addition to house cleaning.)

숙제에다 시험 준비에다 요즘 너무 지쳤어요.

(=I am so exhausted these days from preparing for the test on top of doing homework.)

소주에다가 위스키까지 마셨더니 필름이 끊겼어요.

(=I cannot remember anything because I even drank whisky on top of soju.)

요즘 전화비에 전기세에다 수도요금에다가 자동차 할부금까지 돈이 너무 많이 나가요.

(=I have to pay a lot of money for the car payment on top of the water bill, electricity bill, and phone bill.)

## 19. Expressing “Other than”: **외에**

Function	Expressing “Other than”
Form	외에 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Other than
Examples	메리 <b>외에</b> (Other than Mary) 그 <b>외에</b> (Other than that)

“외에” can be used to express that the preceding noun is the only exception to the negative statement, which can be rendered as “other than.” It can be freely used in both written text and conversation.

존은 메리 **외에** 친구가 없습니다.

(=John has no friends other than Mary.)

메리 **외에** 아무도 그 일을 못합니다.

(=No one can do it other than Mary.)

그 **외에** 다른 것은 모릅니다.

(=I don't know anything other than that.)

“외에” can be used only in a negative sentence.

존은 메리 **외에** 친구가 있습니다. (NOT OK)

메리 **외에** 아무도 그 일을 합니다. (NOT OK)

그 **외에** 다른 것은 입니다. (NOT OK)

## 20. Expressing “Other than”: **말고, 빼고**

Function	Expressing “Other than”	
Form	<b>말고</b> (After a consonant or a vowel)	<b>빼고</b> (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Other than	
Examples	<b>존 말고</b> (Other than John)	<b>부엌 빼고</b> (Other than the kitchen)

“말고, 빼고” can be used to express that the given situation applies to all others except the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “other than.” They are generally interchangeable and typically used in casual speech.

존 **말고/빼고** 다른 사람을 보내 주세요.

(=Please send me a different person other than John.)

이것 **말고/빼고** 다른 것을 보여 주세요.

(=Please show me a different thing other than this one.)

저 냉장고 **말고/빼고** 이 냉장고를 사세요.

(=Please buy this refrigerator other than that one.)

Unlike “외에”, they can be used in both positive and negative sentences.

존은 메리 **말고/빼고** 친구가 없습니다.

(=John has no friends other than Mary.)

메리 **말고/빼고** 아무도 그 일을 못합니다.

(=No one can do it other than Mary.)

## 21. Expressing “Except”: **말고는, 빼(놓)고는, 외에는**

“말고는, 빼(놓)고는, 외에는” can be used to emphasize that the preceding noun is the only exception for the given situation, which can be rendered as “except.” “외에는” can be freely used in both written text and conversation, but “말고는, 빼(놓)고는” are more likely to be used in casual speech.

Function	Expressing "Except"		
Form	말고는 (After a consonant or a vowel)	빼놓고는/빼고는 (After a consonant or a vowel)	외에는 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Except		
Examples	존 <b>말고는</b> (Except John)	고기 <b>빼놓고는/빼고는</b> (Except meat)	여동생 <b>외에는</b> (Except my younger sister)

존 말고는/빼(놓)고는/외에는 그 일을 할 수 있는 사람이 아무도 없다.

(=No one can do the job except John.)

사과 말고는/빼(놓)고는/외에는 다 먹어도 괜찮다.

(=You are allowed to eat anything except apples.)

이 집은 부엌 말고는/빼(놓)고는/외에는 다 좋아요.

(=Everything is good in this house except the kitchen.)

## 22. Expressing "At the Risk of/In honor of/Betting on the preceding noun":

### ~을/를 걸고

Function	Expressing "At the risk of/In honor of/Betting on the preceding noun"	
Form	~을 걸고 (After a consonant)	~를 걸고 (After a vowel)
Meaning	At the risk of/In honor of/Betting on the preceding noun	
Examples	목숨을 <b>걸고</b> (At the risk of my life)	명예를 <b>걸고</b> (In honor of my reputation)

"~을/를 걸고" can be used to express that one is to carry out the action in a given sentence at the risk of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as "at the risk of/in honor of/betting" depending on the context.

목숨을 걸고 반드시 적을 무찌르겠습니다.

(=I will defeat the enemy without fail at the risk of my life.)

돈을 걸고 내기 골프를 하면 도박으로 간주된다.

(=If you bet money on playing golf, it is considered gambling.)

제 명예를 걸고 반드시 범인을 잡아내교야 말겠습니다.

(=I will capture the suspect without fail in honor of my reputation.)

## 23. Expressing “Before/After”: 전에, 후에, 후에야

Function	Expressing “Before/After”		
Form	전에 (After a consonant or a vowel)	후에 (After a consonant or a vowel)	후에야 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Before/Ago	After	Only after
Examples	일주일 <b>전에</b> (A week ago)	저녁 식사 <b>후에</b> (After dinner)	은퇴 <b>후에야</b> (Only after retirement)

“전에” can be used to express that the situation in a given sentence occurs before the time indicated by the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “before/ago.”

존은 한 달 전에 결혼했다.

(=John got married a month ago.)

다섯 시 전에 일을 끝마쳤다.

(=I finished the work before five.)

“후에” can be used to express that the situation in a given sentence occurs after the time indicated by the preceding noun which can be rendered as “after.”

메리는 일주일 후에 약혼한다.

(=Mary will get engaged a week from now.)

아침 식사 후에 미팅에 참석했다.

(=I attended the meeting after eating breakfast.)

“후에야” can be used to express that the situation in a given sentence occurs only after the time indicated by the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “only after.”

존은 퇴직 후에야 가족을 돌보기 시작했다.

(=John started taking care of his family only after his retirement.)

이혼 후에야 전 남편이 결혼 전 유부남이었다는 걸 알게 되었다.

(=Only after the divorce, I found out that my ex-husband was a married man before we got married.)

## 24. Expressing “In the middle of/In the aftermath of”: (도)중에, 중간에, 통에

Function	Expressing “In the middle of/In the aftermath of”	
Form	(도)중에, 중간에 (After a consonant or a vowel)	통에 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	In the middle of	In the aftermath of
Examples	회의 <u>도중에/중간에/중에</u> (In the middle of the meeting)	전쟁 <u>통에</u> (In the aftermath of the war)

“(도)중에, 중간에” can be used to express that the situation in a given sentence occurs in the middle of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “in the middle of.” They are compatible with the preceding noun that refers to a specific event. But if the preceding noun is a time expression, only “중에” can be used.

회의 (도)중에/중간에 갑자기 전기가 나갔다.

(=The power went out in the middle of the meeting.)

식사 (도)중에/중간에 말을 하지 마라.

(=Stopping talking in the middle of mealtimes.)

내일 오전 중에 일을 끝마치겠습니다.

(=I will finish the work in the middle of the morning tomorrow.)

내일 오전 도중에/중간에 일을 끝마치겠습니다. (NOT OK)

On the other hand, “통에” can be used to express that the unpleasant situation in a given sentence occurred in the aftermath of the preceding noun which is not under one’s control. It can be rendered as “in the aftermath of.”

전쟁 통에 부모님을 잃었다.

(=I lost my parents in the aftermath of the war.)

난리 통에 남동생을 잃어버렸다.

(=I lost my younger brother in the aftermath of the fuss.)

복새 통에 정신이 하나도 없어요.

(=I cannot think straight in the aftermath of this chaotic situation.)

Its related grammar feature “와중에 (in the midst of the turmoil)” can be used with demonstratives as in “이 와중에” or “그 와중에” to express that the situation in a given sentence occurs in the midst of a turmoil, which can be rendered as “in the midst of this/that turmoil.”

존은 이 와중에도 게임을 한다.

(=John is playing a game even in the midst of this turmoil.)

메리는 그 와중에도 공부를 했다.

(=Mary was studying even in the midst of that turmoil.)

## 25. Expressing “At the end of”: 끝에

Function	Expressing “At the end of”
Form	<u>끝에</u> (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	At the end of
Examples	전쟁 <u>끝에</u> (At the end of the war)

“끝에” can be used to express that the situation in a given sentence occurs at the end of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “at the end of.” The preceding noun typically refers to some kind of hardships.

존은 과로 끝에 쓰러졌다.

(=John collapsed at the end of the excessive work.)

고생 끝에 낙이 온다.

(=Pleasure comes at the end of hardships.)

오랜 장마 끝에 많은 사람들이 집을 잃었다.

(=Many people lost their homes at the end of the long rainy spell.)

## 26. Expressing the starting point of an action: ~을/를 기해

Function	Expressing the starting point of an action	
Form	~을 기해 (After a consonant)	~를 기해 (After a vowel)
Meaning	As of	
Examples	7월 4일을 기해 (As of July 4)	오늘 밤 12시를 기해 (As of midnight tonight)

“~을/를 기해” can be used with a specific time expression to indicate the starting point of the situation in a given sentence, which can be rendered as “as of.”

1950년 6월 25일을 기해 북한이 남한을 침공했다.

(=North Korea invaded South Korea as of June 25, 1950.)

어제 오후 6시를 기해 발포 명령이 떨어졌다.

(=The firing command was issued as of 6:00 P.M. yesterday.)

## 27. Expressing “After the elapse of a certain time period”: 만에

Function	Expressing “After the elapse of a certain time period”
Form	만에 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	After
Examples	10년 만에 (After ten years)

“만에” can be used to express that the situation in a given sentence occurred after the elapse of a certain time period, which can be rendered as “after.”

존은 3년 만에 집에 돌아왔습니다.

(=John came back home after three years had passed.)

메리는 10년 만에 대학을 졸업했습니다.

(=Mary graduated from college after spending 10 years.)

## 28. Expressing “Since”: 이래(로)

Function	Expressing “Since”
Form	이래(로) (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Since
Examples	회사 창립 <u>이래(로)</u> (Since the foundation of the company)

“이래(로)” can be used to express that the situation in a given sentence has happened since the beginning of the preceding noun which represents a significant event. It can be rendered as “since.”

이 회사는 1980년 창사 이래(로) 한 번도 손해를 본 적이 없다.

(=This company has never recorded a loss since the foundation of the company in 1980.)

대한민국 정부수립 이래(로) 여러 가지 많은 사회 변화가 있었다.

(=There have been many changes in society since the establishment of the Korean government.)

## 29. Holding multiple titles at the same time: ~이자

Function	Holding multiple titles at the same time
Form	~이자 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	A is _ and _
Examples	교수 <u>이자</u> 정치인 (A professor and politician)

“~이자” can be used to express that one is holding multiple titles at the same time.

존은 가수이자 대학 교수입니다.  
 (=John is a singer and college professor.)

메리는 주부이자 전업작가입니다.  
 (=Mary is a housewife and full-time writer.)

“~이자” can also be used in the following idiomatic expression “처음이자 마지막 (first and last).”

이건 제 인생의 처음이자 마지막 기회입니다.  
 (=This is the first and last opportunity in my life.)

### 30. Expressing a surprise: Number expression + (이)나

Function	Expressing a surprise	
Form	~이나 (After a consonant)	~나 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Surprisingly	
Examples	오백명 <u>이나</u> (Surprisingly five hundred people)	일 리터 <u>나</u> (Surprisingly one liter)

“Number+(이)나” can be used to express a surprise because the number turned out to be beyond one’s expectation, which can be rendered as “surprisingly.”

아직 교실에 학생이 열명이나 있습니다.  
 (=Surprisingly, there are still ten students staying in the classroom.)

이번 지진으로 인한 부상자가 500명이나 됩니다.  
 (=Surprisingly, there are five hundred injured people because of this earthquake.)

이 스포츠카는 시속 320km나 낼 수 있습니다.  
 (=Surprisingly, this sports car can speed up to 320km an hour.)  
 (=This sports car can speed up to a whopping 320km an hour.)



# 11 Noun Conjunctions II (명사 접속사 II)

## 1. Issuing a warning/Providing advice: ~일랑 ~지(도) 말다

Function	Issuing a warning/Providing advice
Form	~일랑 ~지(도) 말다 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Don't even _
Examples	여기서 도망갈 생각일랑 아예 하지(도) 말아라. (Don't even think of escaping from here.)

“~일랑 ~지(도) 말다” can be used to express that the speaker is issuing a warning or providing advice that the preceding noun is not a good option to take, which can be rendered as “don't even \_.”

여기서 도망갈 생각일랑 아예 하지(도) 말아라.

(=Don't even think of escaping from here.)

자동차 살 생각일랑 하지(도) 말아라.

(=Don't even think of buying a car.)

그걸로 돈 벌 생각일랑 하지(도) 말아라.

(=Don't even think of making money off it.)

존과 결혼할 생각일랑 하지(도) 말아라.

(=Don't even think of getting married to John.)

유학일랑 꿈도 꾸지 말아라.

(=Don't even dream of studying abroad.)

아무 걱정일랑 하지 말아라.

(=Don't even worry about anything.)

## 2. Expressing “Following the preceding noun/In one’s own way”: ~대로

Function	Expressing “Following the preceding noun/In one’s own way”	
Form	~대로 (After a consonant or a vowel)	
Meaning	Following	In one’s own way
Examples	부모님 말씀 <u>대로</u> (Following what my parents said)	제멋 <u>대로</u> (In his/her own way)

“~대로” can be used to express that one is to carry out the action in a given sentence following the way in which the preceding noun says, which can be rendered as “following.”

선생님 말씀대로 열심히 공부했습니다.

(=I studied hard following what my teacher said.)

(=I studied hard as my teacher said.)

부모님 말씀대로 하세요.

(=Please do it following what your parents said.)

(=Please do it as your parents said.)

비행기는 예정대로 출발했습니다.

(=The airplane took off following the schedule.)

(=The airplane took off as scheduled.)

명령대로 임무를 완수했습니다.

(=I accomplished the mission following your orders.)

순서대로 들어오세요.

(=Please come in following the order.)

It can also be used to express that one is to carry out the action the way in which he/she wants. It can be rendered as “in one’s own way.”

존은 항상 모든 일을 제 멋대로 합니다.

(=John always does things in his own way.)

마음대로 하세요.

(=Do it your own way, =Do it as you wish.)

### 3. Expressing “Sorting items or people of the same kind”:

~은/는 ~대로, ~은/는 ~ 별로

Function	Expressing “Sorting items or people of the same kind”	
Form	Noun 1은 Noun 2대로 (After a consonant) Noun 1는 Noun 2대로 (After a vowel)	Noun 1은 Noun 2별로 (After a consonant) Noun 1는 Noun 2별로 (After a vowel)
Meaning	As for Noun 1, according to Noun 2	
Examples	옷은 색깔 <u>대로</u> (As for clothes, according to their color)	음료수는 종류 <u>별로</u> (As for beverages, according to their kinds)

“Noun 1은/는 Noun 2대로” can be used to express how to sort a group of items or people (Noun 1) according to the criteria of the preceding noun (Noun 2), which can be rendered as “as for Noun 1, according to Noun 2.” Noun 2 is a noun that sets the standard for sorting. “Noun 1은/는 Noun 2대로” can be freely used in both written text and conversation.

사과는 크기대로 상자에 넣으세요.

(=As for apples, put them in the boxes according to their size.)

재활용품은 재활용품대로, 쓰레기는 쓰레기대로 분리해서 따로 비닐봉지에 넣으세요.

(=Please put recyclable items and trash into separate vinyl bags.)

선생님은 선생님대로, 학생은 학생대로 따로 모이세요.

(=Teachers and students gather together separately from each other.)

On the other hand, “Noun 1은/는 Noun 2별로” carries the same function, but it is more likely to be used in conversation.

옷은 색깔별로 정리하세요.

(=As for clothes, please arrange them according to their color.)

음료수는 종류별로 따로 테이블에 놓으세요.

(=As for beverages, please separate them on the table according to their kind.)

#### 4. Expressing “On top of the preceding noun”: ~도 ~(이)려니와

Function	Expressing “On top of the preceding noun”	
Form	~도 ~이려니와 (After a consonant)	~도 ~려니와 (After a vowel)
Meaning	On top of	
Examples	돈도 돈이려니와 (On top of money) 공부도 공부려니와 (On top of your study)	

“~도 ~(이)려니와” can be used to express that one needs to consider another important factor in the situation in a given sentence on top of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “on top of.”

그 일을 끝내기에는 돈도 돈이려니와 시간이 부족해요.  
(=We have an insufficient amount of time to finish the work, on top of the cost.)

애들도 애들이려니와 부모님들의 고생이 너무 심하다.  
(=The parents are suffering way too much, on top of their children’s going through the hardships.)

공부도 공부려니와 건강부터 챙겨라.  
(=You must take care of your health first, on top of your study.)

#### 5. Expressing “Not all Ns are the same”: ~도 ~ 나름이다

Function	Expressing “Not all Ns are the same”
Form	~도 ~ 나름이다 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Not all Ns are the same
Examples	남편도 남편 나름이다 (Not all husbands are the same.)

“~도 ~ 나름이다” can be used to express that not all members of the preceding noun are the same, which can be rendered as “not all Nouns are the same.”

학생도 학생 나름이다.

(=Not all students are the same. =It depends on what kind of student he/she is.)

여자도 여자 나름이다.

(=Not all women are the same. =It depends on what kind of woman she is.)

남편도 남편 나름이다.

(=Not all husbands are the same. =It depends on what kind of husband he is.)

기차도 기차 나름이다.

(=Not all trains are the same. =It depends on what kind of train it is.)

## 6. Expressing “In the same size as \_\_, Not as good as \_\_”: ~만하다, ~만 못하다

Function	Expressing “In the same size as __, Not as good as __”	
Form	~만하다 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~만 못하다 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	As __ as __	Not as good as __
Examples	야구장 <u>만하다</u> (As big as a baseball stadium)	내 컴퓨터 <u>만 못하다</u> (Not so good as my computer)

“~만 하다” can be used to express that an object or a person is the same size as the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “as \_\_ as \_\_.” It is typically used to exaggerate the largeness or smallness of an object or a person.

그 집은 크기가 축구장만하다.

(=The size of that house is as big as a soccer stadium.)

이 집은 코딱지만하다.

(=The size of this house is as small as a booger.)

그 UFC 파이터는 몸이 집채만하다.

(=The body size of that UFC fighter is as big as a house.)

On the other hand, “~만 못하다” can be used to express that an object or a person is not as good as the preceding noun in terms of quality, which can be rendered as “not as good as \_\_.”

이 물건은 그 물건만 못하다.

(=This product is not as good as that product.)

이 포도주는 맛이 저 포도주만 못하다.

(=The taste of this wine is not as good as that wine.)

이 아파트는 전에 살던 아파트만 못하다.

(=This apartment is not as good as the one where I used to live.)

존은 자기 남동생만 못하다.

(=John is not as good as his younger brother.)

## 7. Expressing “Considering the aspect of the preceding noun”: ~(으)로 보나

Function	Expressing “Considering the aspect of the preceding noun”	
Form	~으로 보나 (After a consonant)	~로 보나 (After a vowel or “ㄹ”)
Meaning	Considering	
Examples	직업 <u>으로 보나</u> (Considering his occupation) 얼굴 <u>로 보나</u> (Considering his look)	

“~(으)로 보나” can be used to evaluate a person or an item from the criterion of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “considering.” More than one criterion must be listed in a given sentence.

존은 얼굴로 보나 직업으로 보나 좋은 신랑감이다.

(=John will make a good bridegroom considering his looks or his occupation.

그 사람은 학식으로 보나 인품으로 보나 그런 흉악한 범죄를 저지를 사람이 아니다.

(=He/she is not the kind of a person who commits such a heinous crime considering his/her scholastic knowledge or his/her personal character.)

We can also use the expressions like “무엇으로 보나” or “어느 모로 보나” to express “from every aspect.”

무엇으로 보나 존은 정말 좋은 사람이다.

(=John is really a good person from every aspect.)

어느 모로 보나 링컨은 훌륭한 대통령이였다.

(=Lincoln was an excellent president from every aspect.)

## 8. Expressing “Between/Among”: **사이에, 간에**

Function	Expressing “Between/Among”	
Form	사이에 (After a consonant or a vowel)	간에 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Between/Among	
Examples	부부 <b>사이에</b> (Between husband and wife)	주변국 <b>간에</b> (Among the neighboring countries)

“사이에/간에” can be used to express that the situation in a given sentence applies to the members of the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “between/among.”

부부 사이에도/간에도 서로 존중해야 한다.

(=We must respect each other even between husband and wife.)

친구 사이에/간에 서로 도와 줘야지.

(=You must help each other between friends.)

젊은 사람들 사이에 가장 인기 있는 연예인이 누군가요?

(=Who is the most popular celebrity among young people?)

한국의 사드 배치 문제로 한반도 주변국 사이에/간에 갈등이 생겼다.

(=A conflict arose among the neighboring countries of the Korean peninsula due to the issue of deploying the THAAD (Terminal High Altitude Area Defense) missile system to Korea.)

## 9. Expressing “Despite”: **~에도 불구하고, ~(口/음)에도 불구하고**

“~에도 불구하고” can be used to express that the situation in a given sentence happens despite the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “despite.”

Function	Expressing "Despite"	
Form	~에도 불구하고 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~음에도 불구하고 (After a consonant) ~ㄹ에도 불구하고 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Despite	
Examples	악천후 <u>에도 불구하고</u> (Despite the bad weather)	죽었 <u>음에도 불구하고</u> (Despite his/her death) 부자 <u>임에도 불구하고</u> (Despite his/her richness)

악천후에도 불구하고 비행기가 무사히 착륙했다.

(=The airplane landed safely despite the inclement weather.)

북한 경비정이 우리 해군의 경고 사격에도 불구하고 영해를 침범했다.

(=The North Korean patrol boat violated our territorial waters despite our Navy's warning shots.)

It can also be used with a verb after attaching the noun-making suffix “ㄹ/음” to the verb stem.

존은 집행유예 기간임에도 불구하고 또 다시 범죄를 저질렀다.

(=John committed another crime despite the fact that he was on probation.)

저녁을 먹었음에도 불구하고 아직 배가 고프다.

(=I am still hungry despite the fact that I already ate dinner.)

존은 키가 작음에도 불구하고 농구를 잘한다.

(=John is good at basketball despite the fact that he is short.)

## 10. Expressing “Regardless of”:

~(이)며 (간에/할 것 없이), ~(이)거나 (간에/할 것 없이)

“~(이)며” and “~(이)거나” can be attached to two or more nouns in the given list to express that the situation in a given sentence applies regardless of the preceding nouns, which can be rendered as “regardless of.” They can be often used with the optional expressions “간에” or “할 것 없이.”

Function	Expressing "Regardless of"	
Form	~이며 (간에/할 것 없이) (After a consonant) ~며 (간에/할 것 없이) (After a vowel)	~이거나 (간에/할 것 없이) (After a consonant) ~거나 (간에/할 것 없이) (After a vowel)
Meaning	Regardless of	
Examples	집 <b>이며</b> 자동차 <b>며</b> (간에/할 것 없이) (Regardless of whether it is a house or a car)	아이 <b>거나</b> 어른 <b>이거나</b> (간에/할 것 없이) (Regardless of whether they are children or adults)

이번 산불로 집**이며** 자동차**며** (간에/할 것 없이) 모두 불에 타 없어졌다.  
(=Because of this forest fire, everything burned down regardless of whether it was a house or a car.)

존은 고기**며** 생선**이며** (간에/할 것 없이) 아무 거나 잘 먹는다.  
(=John eats anything regardless of whether it is meat or fish.)

존은 밤**이거나** 낮**이거나** (간에/할 것 없이) 하루 종일 게임만 한다.  
(=John only plays games day and night.)

아이**거나** 어른**이거나** (간에/할 것 없이) 모두들 제 멋대로 행동한다.  
(=They act in their own way regardless of whether they are children or adults.)

## 11. Expressing "Not to mention": ~은/는 고사하고, ~은/는 말할 것도 없고

Function	Expressing "Not to mention"	
Form	~은 고사하고 (After a consonant) ~는 고사하고 (After a vowel)	~은 말할 것도 없고 (After a consonant) ~는 말할 것도 없고 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Not to mention	
Examples	저녁 <b>은 고사하고</b> (Not to mention dinner) 시험준비 <b>는 고사하고</b> (Not to mention test preparation)	저녁 <b>은 말할 것도 없고</b> (Not to mention dinner) 시험준비 <b>는 말할 것도 없고</b> (Not to mention test preparation)

"~은/는 고사하고" can be used to express that it is needless to talk about the preceding noun because the less favorable situation in a given sentence happened, which can be

rendered as “not to mention.” It is always used in a negative sentence.

10불은 고사하고 단돈 1불도 없습니다.

(=I don't even have a dollar, not to mention ten dollars.)

저녁은 고사하고 점심도 못 먹었습니다.

(=I didn't eat lunch, not to mention dinner.)

시험 준비는 고사하고 숙제도 아직 못 했습니다.

(=I didn't do my homework, not to mention test preparation.)

“~은/는 말할 것도 없고” carries the same function, but unlike “~은/는 고사하고,” it can be freely used in both positive and negative sentences.

10불은 말할 것도 없고 단돈 1불도 없습니다.

(=I don't even have a dollar, not to mention ten dollars.)

저녁은 말할 것도 없고 점심도 못 먹었습니다.

(=I didn't eat lunch, not to mention dinner.)

시험 준비는 말할 것도 없고 숙제도 아직 못 했습니다.

(=I didn't do my homework, not to mention test preparation.)

고등학생은 말할 것도 없고 중학생도 이 문제를 쉽게 풀 수 있다.

(=Even middle school students can solve this problem easily, not to mention high school students.)

그 돈이면 부산은 말할 것도 없고 서울에서도 집을 살 수 있다.

(=If you have that much money, you can also buy a house in Seoul, not to mention in Pusan.)

북한의 미사일은 한반도는 말할 것도 없고 괌까지 사정거리 안에 있다.

(=Even Guam is within firing range of North Korean missiles, not to mention the Korean peninsula.)

## 12. Expressing “Regardless of”:

**~을/를 막론하고, ~을/를 불문하고, ~(이)고 뭐고 (간에)**

“~을/를 막론하고, ~을/를 불문하고” can be used to express that the situation in a given

sentence applies regardless of the preceding noun(s).” They have the literal meanings of “without discussing the preceding topic(s) any further,” “without asking any further questions about the preceding topic(s),” respectively. They both can be rendered as “regardless of.”

Function	Expressing “Regardless of the preceding noun”		
Form	~을 막론하고 (After a consonant) ~를 막론하고 (After a vowel)	~을 불문하고 (After a consonant) ~를 불문하고 (After a vowel)	~이고 뭐고 (간에) (After a consonant) ~고 뭐고 (간에) (After a vowel)
Meaning	Regardless of		
Examples	잘잘못을 <b>막론하고</b> (Regardless of who is right or wrong) 지위 <b>고하</b> 를 <b>막론하고</b> (Regardless of one’s position)	메리의 잘못을 <b>불문하고</b> (Regardless of Mary’s wrongdoing) 이유를 <b>불문하고</b> (Regardless of the reason)	시험 <b>이고 뭐고 (간에)</b> (Regardless of whether it’s a test or not) 자동차 <b>고 뭐고 (간에)</b> (Regardless of whether it’s a car or not)

잘잘못을 **막론하고** 더 이상 그 이야기를 꺼내지 말자.

(=Let’s not talk about it anymore regardless of who is right or wrong.)

인간은 성별, 나이, 종교를 **막론하고** 누구나 평등하다.

(=All human beings are equal regardless of their gender, age, and religion.)

이 곳에 들어오려는 사람은 지위 **고하**를 **막론하고** 신분증을 제시해야 합니다.

(=A person who wants to enter these premises must present his/her ID regardless of his/her position.)

메리는 존의 잘못을 **불문하고** 용서해 주기로 했다.

(=Mary decided to forgive John regardless of his wrongdoing.)

존은 이유를 **불문하고** 메리에게 무조건 용서를 빌어야 한다.

(=John must apologize to Mary unconditionally regardless of his justification.)

On the other hand, “~(이)고 뭐고 (간에)” carries a similar function, but it is more likely to be used in casual speech.

적군은 아이들**이고 뭐고 (간에)** 다 잔인하게 죽여 버렸다.

(=The enemy forces brutally killed everyone regardless of whether or not they were

children.)

국회의원이고 뭐고 (간에) 누구나 죄를 지으면 감옥에 가야 한다.

(=Anyone who commits a crime should go to jail regardless of whether or not he/she is a National Assemblyman.)

존은 자기 미래고 뭐고 (간에) 아무 관심이 없다.

(=John doesn't care about anything regardless of whether or not it is about his future.)

### 13. Expressing “Just because of one’s holding the title”: ~(이)라고 해서

Function	Expressing “Just because of one’s holding the title”	
Form	~이라고 해서 (After a consonant)	~라고 해서 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Just because	
Examples	<p>선생님<u>이라고 해서</u> (Just because he/she is a teacher)</p> <p>천재<u>라고 해서</u> (Just because he/she is a genius)</p>	

“~(이)라고 해서” can be used to express that the preceding noun, typically a generic title, cannot guarantee the situation in a given sentence, which can be rendered as “just because.” It is typically used in a negative sentence.

선생님이라고 해서 모든 것을 다 아는 것은 아니다.

(=It is not the case that a person knows everything just because he/she is a teacher.)

대통령이라고 해서 법 위에 있는 것은 아니다.

(=It is not the case that a person is above the law just because he/she is a president.)

천재라고 해서 모든 걸 다 잘하는 것은 아니다.

(=It is not the case that a person is good at everything just because he/she is a genius.)

변호사라고 해서 다 같은 변호사는 아니다.

(=Not all lawyers are the same just because they are lawyers.)

Sometimes it can be used in a positive sentence if the preceding noun refers back to a specific referent in a given sentence. Then the preceding clause indicates the justification for one's carrying out the action in the following clause, which can be rendered as "just because."

존은 주인이라고 해서 모든 걸 마음대로 한다.

(=John does everything in his own way just because he is the owner.)

여기가 한국에서 제일 유명한 곳이라고 해서 한 번 와 봤습니다.

(=I came here just because I heard that this is the most famous place in Korea.)

#### 14. Taking advantage of one's position: ~(이)랍시고, ~입네 하면서

Function	Taking advantage of one's position	
Form	~이랍시고 (After a consonant) ~랍시고 (After a vowel)	~입네 하면서 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Taking advantage of	
Examples	가게 주인 <i>이랍시고</i> (Taking advantage of being the owner of the store) 형사 <i>랍시고</i> (Taking advantage of being a police detective)	기자 <i>입네 하면서</i> (Taking advantage of being a reporter)

"~(이)랍시고, ~입네 하면서" can be used to express that one is holding the position of the preceding noun and taking advantage of his/her position in a negative way, as in the situation in a given sentence, which can be rendered as "taking advantage of." They are typically used in colloquial speech.

존은 가게 주인*이랍시고*/가게 주인*입네 하면서* 직원들을 함부로 대해요.

(=Taking advantage of being the owner of the store, John treats his employees badly.)

그 사람은 국회의원*이랍시고*/국회의원*입네 하면서* 되게 거들먹거리네요.

(=Taking advantage of being a National Assemblyman, he/she acts like a snob.)

메리는 기자*랍시고*/기자*입네 하면서* 남의 사생활을 침해했어요.

(=Taking advantage of being a reporter, Mary violated other people's privacy.)

## 15. Having the exclusive privilege of taking action: ~(이)라야

Function	Having the exclusive privilege of taking action	
Form	~이라야 (After a consonant)	~라야 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Only ~ (but not others)	
Examples	<p>군인<b>이라야</b> (Only military personnel, but not others)</p> <p>전문가<b>라야</b> (Only experts, but not others)</p>	

“~(이)라야” can be used to express that only the preceding noun has the exclusive privilege of carrying out the action in the given situation, which can be rendered as “only.”

이곳은 군인**이라야** 들어갈 수 있습니다.

(=Only military personnel may enter these premises.)

전문가**라야** 명품백과 모조품을 구별할 수 있습니다.

(=Only experts can distinguish between famous brand bags and their imitations.)

국제선 여행객**이라야** 면세품을 살 수 있어요.

(=Only international travelers can buy duty-free items.)

필기시험에 합격한 사람**이라야** 면접시험을 볼 수 있습니다.

(=Only a person who passed the written test can take an interview test.)

## 16. Expressing “No other options acceptable except the preceding noun”:

### ~(이)면 몰라도

Function	Expressing “No other options acceptable except the preceding noun”	
Form	~이면 몰라도 (After a consonant)	~면 몰라도 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Except	
Examples	<p>한국<b>이면 몰라도</b> (Except Korea)</p> <p>전문가<b>면 몰라도</b> (Except experts)</p>	

“~(이)면 몰라도” can be used to express that no other options can work out for the given situation except the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “except.” It is typically used in a negative sentence.

존이면 몰라도 다른 사람은 그 문제를 해결할 수 없다.

(=No one can resolve the problem except John.)

메리면 몰라도 다른 여자와 데이트하고 싶지 않다.

(=I don't feel like dating with others except Mary.)

한국이면 몰라도 다른 나라에는 살고 싶지 않다.

(=I don't want to live in any other countries except Korea.)

다음 주면 몰라도 이번 주에는 그 일을 끝낼 수 없다.

(=I cannot finish the work by this week, but rather by next week.)

(=I cannot finish the work by this week, but might be able to finish it by next week.)

전문가면 몰라도 명품백과 모조품을 쉽게 구별할 수 없습니다.

(=People cannot easily distinguish between famous brand bags and their imitations, except experts.)

강남에 있는 아파트면 몰라도 다른 아파트로는 이사 가고 싶지 않다.

(=I don't want move into another apartment except the one in the Gangnam district.)

## 17. Expressing “Not meeting one’s expectations”:

~(이)래야, ~(이)래 봐야, ~(이)라고 해 (봐)야

Function	Expressing “Not meeting one’s expectations”		
Form	~이래야 (After a consonant) ~래야 (After a vowel)	~이래봐야 (After a consonant) ~래봐야 (After a vowel)	~이라고 해(봐)야 (After a consonant) ~라고 해(봐)야 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Just talking about		
Examples	월급 <u>이래야</u> (Just talking about monthly income) 학교 <u>래야</u> (Just talking about schools)	가족 <u>이래봐야</u> (Just talking about my family) 휴가 <u>래봐야</u> (Just talking about my paid leave)	집 <u>이라고 해봐야</u> (Just talking about my house) 노래 <u>라고 해봐야</u> (Just talking about songs)

“~(이)래야, ~(이)래봐야, ~(이)라고 해(봐)야” can be used to express that the quantity or quality related to the preceding noun does not meet one’s expectations as in the situation in a given sentence, which can be rendered as “just talking about.” They are often used with expressions like “고작 (at most),” “단지 (only),” “밖에 (other than).”

월급이래야 고작 백만 원도 안 되는 걸.

(=Just talking about my monthly income, it is less than one million Won at most.)

여기는 학교래야 초등학교 하나 밖에 없어요.

(=Just talking about schools, there is only one elementary school here.)

가족이래봐야 누나 밖에 없어요.

(=Just talking about my family, I have only one sister.)

휴가래봐야 일년에 이주일 밖에 안 됩니다.

(=Just talking about my paid leave, it is just two weeks annually.)

외국 여행이래봐야 한국에 한 번 가본 게 다예요.

(=Just talking about my overseas travel experience, I have only visited Korea once.)

집이라고 해봐야 방이 두 개 밖에 없습니다.

(=Just talking about my house, it has only two rooms.)

여기서 아는 노래라고 해봐야 두 곡 밖에 없어요.

(=Just talking about the songs that I know, there are only two songs from here.)

## 18. Expressing “A probable cause”: ~(이)라서 그런지, ~이어서/여서 그런지

Function	Expressing “A probable cause”	
Form	~이라서 그런지 (After a consonant) ~라서 그런지 (After a vowel)	~이어서 그런지 (After a consonant) ~여서 그런지 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Perhaps because	
Examples	여름 <u>이</u> 라서 그런지 (Perhaps because it’s summer) 다이아몬드 <u>라</u> 서 그런지 (Perhaps because it’s a diamond)	경찰관 <u>이</u> 어서 그런지 (Perhaps because he/she is a police officer) 육군장교 <u>여</u> 서 그런지 (Perhaps because he/she is an Army officer)

“~(이)라서 그런지, ~이어서/여서 그런지” can be used to express that the preceding noun is a probable cause for the situation in a given sentence, which can be rendered as “perhaps because.”

여름이라서 그런지 땀이 많이 나네요.

(=I sweat a lot perhaps because it's summer now.)

비싼 소파라서 그런지 가죽이 아주 부드럽네요.

(=The leather is very soft perhaps because it's an expensive sofa.)

일등석이어서 그런지 자리가 아주 편하네요.

(=It's very comfortable perhaps because it is a first class seat.)

벤츠여서 그런지 차가 아주 좋네요.

(=This car is so good perhaps because it's a Mercedes Benz.)

이 물건은 진짜여서 그런지 색이 잘 변하지 않네요.

(=The color of this item doesn't get tarnished easily perhaps because it is a real McCoy (a genuine one).)

## 19. Expressing “An acknowledgment that contradicts the situation”:

### ~(이)로되

Function	Expressing “An acknowledgment that contradicts the situation”	
Form	~이로되 (After a consonant)	~로되 (After a vowel)
Meaning	It is __, but	
Examples	봄 <u>이</u> 로되 (It is spring, but) 괴수 <u>로</u> 되 (It is a beast, but)	

“~(이)로되” can be used to express that the situation in a given sentence is contradictory to the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “It is \_\_, but.” It is typically used in literary texts. It is now on the verge of becoming an archaic expression.

봄은 봄이로되 아직 날씨가 제법 쌀쌀하다.

(=It's spring, but the weather is a little bit chilly.)

몸은 괴수로되 얼굴은 사람의 형상이다.

(=Its body is like a beast, but it has a human face.)

## 20. Rephrasing what the preceding noun is: ~인즉(슨)

Function	Rephrasing what the preceding noun is
Form	~인즉(슨) (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	What _ is saying is that
Examples	내 말 <b>인즉(슨)</b> (What I am saying is that)

“~인즉” can be used to clarify what the preceding noun says by rephrasing its content, as in the following clause, which can be rendered as “what \_ is saying is that.” “~인즉슨” can also be used, but it is now on the verge of becoming an archaic expression.

그 사람 말**인즉**, 어떤 고등학생이 어린아이를 납치했습니다.

(=What he/she was saying is that a high school student kidnapped a child.)

내 말**인즉(슨)**, 사람은 누구나 실수를 할 수 있다는 말이다.

(=What I am saying is that anyone can make a mistake.)

그 보고서 내용**인즉**, 북한의 수소폭탄 실험은 허위로 밝혀졌다는 것이다.

(=What the contents of the report is saying is that North Korea's hydrogen bomb test turned out to be a fake one.)

## 21. Refraining from taking further action: 같아서는, 같(았)으면

Function	Refraining from taking further action	
Form	같아서는 (After a consonant or a vowel)	같(았)으면 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	If I followed _	
Examples	마음 <b>같아서는</b> (If I followed my feeling)	성질 <b>같(았)으면</b> (If I followed my temperament)

“같이서는, 같(았)으면” can be used to express that the action in the following clause can be normally expected to be carried out if one is to follow his/her natural feeling or thought like the preceding noun, but he/she is actually refraining from carrying out the further action. It can be rendered as “if I followed \_.”

마음 같이서는 지금 당장이라도 존을 두들겨 패주고 싶다.

(=If I followed my feeling, I would like to beat John up right now.)

(=I feel like beating John up right now, but I won't.)

내 성질 같았으면 벌써 존은 맞아 죽었다.

(=If I had followed my temperament, John could have already been beaten to death.)

(=If I had lost my temper, John could have already been beaten to death.)

They can also be used to express that one's feelings or thoughts about the situation in the following clause might be different from reality.

생각 같이서는 쉽게 돈을 벌 수 있을 것 같은데.

(=I feel that I can make money easily, but it may not be that easy.)

오늘만 같으면 더 바랄 게 없겠다.

(=If things are going well, like today, there must be nothing more to be desired.)

## 22. Limiting the scope of discussion: ~만 해도/하더라도

Function	Limiting the scope of discussion	
Form	~만 해도 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~만 하더라도 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Just talking about	
Examples	서울 <u>만</u> 해도 (Just talking about Seoul)	메리 <u>만</u> 하더라도 (Just talking about Mary)

“~만 해도/하더라도” can be used to express that the situation in the following clause holds true, limiting the scope of discussion to the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “just talking about.”

조금 전만 하더라도 우리 팀이 경기에 이기는 것 같았다.  
 (=Just talking about the situation a moment ago, our team was likely to win the game.)  
 (=Our team was likely to win the game just a moment ago.)

서울만 해도/하더라도 경기가 별로 안 좋다.  
 (=Just talking about Seoul, business conditions are not particularly good.)  
 (=Business conditions are not particularly good even in Seoul.)

존만 해도/하더라도 먹고 살기 힘들어 한다.  
 (=Just talking about John, he has difficulty making ends meet.)  
 (=Even John has difficulty making ends meet.)

10년 전만 해도 지금보다 훨씬 살기가 좋았다.  
 (=Just talking about ten years ago, living condition were much better than now.)  
 (=Just looking back ten years ago, living conditions were much better than now.)

### 23. Indicating an intermediary agent of an action: ~(으)로 하여금

Function	Indicating an intermediary agent of an action	
Form	~으로 하여금 (After a consonant)	~로 하여금 (After a vowel or “ㄹ”)
Meaning	By	
Examples	그 학생 <u>으로 하여금</u> (By that student) 교수들 <u>로 하여금</u> (By the professors)	

In a causative construction created by attaching “~게 하다” to a main verb stem, there are two actors—a main actor and an intermediary agent—each of whom takes his/her corresponding action.

존이 메리에게 사과를 먹게 했다.  
 (=John forced Mary to eat the apple.)  
 Main actor intermediary agent

In the sentence above, the main actor “존” is the person who orchestrates the whole

event. The intermediary agent “메리” marked by the default case marker “~에게” is the person who actually carries out the specific action of eating the apple. Sometimes, the intermediary agent case marker “~에게” can be optionally replaced by “~(으)로 하여금,” which can be rendered as “by.” (See Chapter 20 Causative Verbs)

존이 메리로 하여금 사과를 먹게 했다.

(=John forced Mary to eat the apple.)

선생님이 학생들로 하여금 교실을 청소하게 했다.

(=The teacher made students clean the classroom.)

학생들로 하여금 스스로 공부하게 하세요.

(=Please make students study by themselves.)

## 24. Expressing “Through, Heading toward/Targeting”:

~을/를 거쳐(서), ~을/를 향해(서)

Function	Through	Heading toward/Targeting
Form	~을 거쳐(서) (After a consonant) ~를 거쳐(서) (After a vowel)	~을 향해(서) (After a consonant) ~를 향해(서) (After a vowel)
Meaning	Through	Heading toward/Targeting
Examples	중국을 거쳐(서) (Through China) 프랑스를 거쳐(서) (Through France)	북극을 향해(서) (Heading toward the North Pole) 미국 본토를 향해(서) (Targeting the US continent)

“~을/를 거쳐(서)” can be used to express that the action in a given sentence is to be carried out by passing through the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “through.”

그 탈북자는 태국을 거쳐(서) 한국에 입국했다.

(=The North Korean defector came to Korea through Thailand.)

메리의 손을 거쳐(서) 그 예술 작품이 완성됐다.

(=The art work was completed through the hands of Mary.)

On the other hand, “~을/를 향해(서)” can be used to express that the action in a given sentence is to be carried out by heading toward or targeting the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “heading toward/targeting.”

그 배는 남극을 향해서 항해하고 있다.

(=The ship is navigating by heading toward the South Pole.)

북한은 미국 본토를 향해서 핵미사일을 쏜다고 위협하고 있다.

(=North Korea is threatening to launch a nuclear missile targeting the US continent.)

다함께 조국통일이라는 목표를 향해서 전진합시다.

(=Let’s move forward together, targeting the goal of our country’s unification.)

(=Let’s move forward together to achieve the goal of our country’s unification.)

## 25. Expressing “According to one’s own standard”: **판에는, 나름대로는**

Function	Expressing “According to one’s own standard”	
Form	판에는 (After a consonant or a vowel)	나름대로는 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	According to one’s own standard	
Examples	제 <b>판에는</b> (According to his/her own standard)	자기 <b>나름대로는</b> (According to his/her own standard)

“판에는, 나름대로(는)” can be used to express that one is to carry out the action in a given sentence while evaluating the situation according to his/her own standard, which can be rendered as “according to one’s own standard.”

존은 자기 판에는/나름대로는 열심히 했을 겁니다.

(=John may have worked hard according to his own standard.)

존은 제 판에는/나름대로는 별로 어렵지 않겠다고 생각했겠지요.

(=John must have thought that it was not particularly hard to do it according to his own standard.)

## 26. Blaming a person for the given situation: ~(의) 탓이다

Function	Blaming a person for the given situation
Form	탓이다, ~의 탓이다 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Be blamed for
Examples	내 <b>탓이다</b> (I am to be blamed for)

“~(의) 탓이다” can be used to express that the preceding noun or pronoun is to be blamed for the given situation, which can be rendered as “be blamed for.” The possessive case marker “~의” is often deleted when it is preceded by a noun. When “~(의) 탓이다” is used with a pronoun, an appropriate form of a possessive pronoun must be used.

존이 사업에 실패한 건 친구(의) 탓이다.  
(=John’s friend is to be blamed for his business failure.)

모든 게 다 내 탓이다. (Possessive pronoun: 내)  
모든 게 다 나 탓이다. (NOT OK)  
(=I am to be blamed for everything.)

그건 다 네 탓이다. (Possessive pronoun: 네)  
그건 다 너 탓이다. (NOT OK)  
(=You are to be blamed for that.)

It can also be also used in the following idiomatic expression.

잘 되면 제 탓이고 못 되면 조상(의) 탓이다.  
(= If everything goes well, one claims that he/she is the one who deserves the credit for. But if something goes wrong, he/she claims that it's his/her ancestors who must be blamed.)

## 27. Expressing a gratitude to a person: ~(의) 덕(분)이다

Function	Expressing a gratitude to a person
Form	덕(분)이다, ~의 덕(분)이다 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Thanks to
Examples	선생님 <b>덕(분)이다</b> (Thanks to my teacher)

“~(의) 덕(분)이다” can be used to give the preceding noun credit for the favorable situation in a given sentence, which can be rendered as “thanks to.” The possessive case marker “~의” is often deleted without changing its meaning. When it is used with a pronoun, an appropriate form of a possessive pronoun must be used.

이게 다 선생님(의) 덕(분)입니다.

(=I owe everything to you, teacher. =Everything went well thanks to you, teacher.)

모든 게 다 네 덕(분)이다. (Possessive pronoun: 네)

(=I owe everything to you. =Everything went well thanks to you.)

모든 게 다 너 덕(분)이다. (NOT OK)

## 28. Expressing “Depending on”: ~에/에게/한테 달려 있다

Function	Expressing “Depending on”		
Form	~에 달려 있다 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~에게 달려 있다 (After a consonant or a vowel)	~한테 달려 있다 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Depending on		
	(Inanimate noun)	(Animate noun, Formal)	(Animate noun, Informal)
Examples	이번 시험 <b>에 달려 있다</b> (Depending on this match)	존 <b>에게 달려 있다</b> (Depending on John)	메리 <b>한테 달려 있다</b> (Depending on Mary)

“~에/에게/한테 달려 있다” can be used to express that the outcome of the given situation depends on the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “depending on.” “~에 달려 있다” is used if the preceding noun is an inanimate noun, whereas “~에게/한테 달려 있다” are to be used with an animate noun.

우리가 우승하느냐 못하느냐는 이번 시합 결과에 달려 있다.  
 (=Whether we can win the championship or not depends on the result of this match.)

모든 것은 존의 마지막 결정에 달려 있다.  
 (=Everything depends on John's final decision.)

우리나라의 미래는 젊은 세대에게 달려 있다.  
 (=Our country's future depends on our younger generation.)

존의 운명은 메리한테 달려 있어요.  
 (=John's destiny depends on Mary.)

## 29. Expressing “There is no room left”: ~의 여지가 없다

Function	Expressing “There is no room left”
Form	~의 여지가 없다 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	There is no room left
Examples	선택의 여지가 없다. (There is no room left for other options)

“~의 여지가 없다” can be used to express that there is no room left for the preceding noun, which can be rendered as “there is no room left.”

날씨가 몹시 더워서 해운대 해수욕장이 입추의 여지가 없다.  
 (=Because of the sizzling weather, there is no room left for other people to come to Haeundae Beach.)

(=Haeundae Beach is fully packed because of the sizzling weather.)

지금 우리는 선택의 여지가 없다.  
 (=There is no room left for other options now.)  
 (=We have no other options now.)

### 30. Drawing the listener's attention to one's topic:

#### 말이다, 말이야, 말이지, 말입니다, 말이에요

Function	Drawing the listener's attention to one's topic of choice	
Form	말이다, 말이야, 말이지 (After a consonant or a vowel)	말입니다, 말이에요 (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	I am talking about _	
	(Blunt forms)	(Honorific forms)
Examples	존 <b>말이다/말이야/말이지</b> (I am talking about John)	그 집 <b>말입니다/말이에요</b> (I am talking about that house)

“말이다, 말이야, 말이지, 말입니다, 말이에요” can be used to draw the listener's attention to the preceding noun, which is the speaker's choice of topic, which can be rendered as “I am talking about.”

그 살인사건 말이다/말이야/말이지, 글썽 범인이 아직 안 잡혔대.

(=I am talking about the murder case. Well, the suspect hasn't been caught yet.)

김과장님 말입니다/말이에요, 이번에 부장으로 진급했대요.

(=I am talking about our section chief, Kim. He's been promoted to department chief this time.)

They can also be used in conversational idioms such as “만약에 말이다/말이야/말이지/말입니다/말이에요 (What ~ if ~),” “왜냐하면 말이다/말이야/말이지/말입니다/말이에요 (The reason is that),” and “그러게 말이다/ 말이야/말이지/말입니다/말이에요 (What you said is just right).”

만약에 말이다/말이야/말이지, 한반도에서 전쟁이 나면 어떻게 될 것 같니?

(=What would happen if a war breaks out on the Korean peninsula?)

왜냐하면 말입니다/말이에요, 북한은 벌써 ICBM을 개발했어요.

(=The reason is that North Korea has already developed an ICBM.)

그러게 말이다/말이야/말이지/말입니다/말이에요.

(=What you said is just right.)

### 31. Reconfirming the topic of a discussion:

#### 말이야?, 말이지?, 말입니까?, 말이에요?

Function	Reconfirming the topic of a discussion	
Form	말이야?, 말이지? (After a consonant or a vowel)	말입니까?, 말이에요? (After a consonant or a vowel)
Meaning	Are you talking about ~?	
	(Blunt forms)	(Honorific forms)
Examples	그 사건 <b>말이야?/말이지?</b> (Are you talking about that case?)	메리의 부모님 <b>말입니까?/말이에요?</b> (Are you talking about Mary's parents?)

“말이야?, 말이지?, 말입니까?, 말이에요?” can be used to express that the speaker is asking the listener to clarify what he/she has mentioned or what topic he/she is talking about, which can be rendered as “Are you talking about \_?”

메리가 데이트한 남자 **말이야?/말이지?/말입니까?/말이에요?**

(=Are you talking about the guy with whom Mary went on a date?)

그 살인사건 **말이야?/말이지?/말입니까?/말이에요?**

(=Are you talking about that murder case?)

### 32. Making a complaint: ~이/가 (도대체) 뭐예요?/뭐길래/뭐기에/뭐라고

Function	Making a complaint	
Form	~이 (도대체) 뭐예요? (After a consonant) ~가 (도대체) 뭐예요? (After a vowel)	~이 (도대체) 뭐길래/뭐기에/뭐라고 (After a consonant) ~가 (도대체) 뭐길래/뭐기에/뭐라고 (After a vowel)
Meaning	Who/What do you think (the preceding noun) is?	
Examples	당신 <b>이</b> (도대체) <b>뭐예요?</b> (Who do you think you are?) 이 냄새 <b>가</b> (도대체) <b>뭐예요?</b> (What do you think this smell is?)	존 <b>이</b> (도대체) <b>뭐길래/뭐기에/뭐라고</b> (Who does he/she think he is?) 이 냄새 <b>가</b> (도대체) <b>뭐길래/뭐기에/뭐라고</b> (What do you think this smell is?)

“~이/가 (도대체) 뭐예요?” can be used to express that the speaker is making a complaint about the possible abusive power or the unpleasant nature of the preceding noun, which

can be rendered as “Who/What do you think (the preceding noun) is?” It is frequently used with the optional adverb “도대체 (what on earth)” in conversation.

당신이 (도대체) 뭐예요?

(=Who do you think you are?)

이 냄새가 (도대체) 뭐예요?

(=What do you think this smell is?)

이게 (도대체) 뭐예요? (“이게” is the contraction form of “이것이”)

(=What do you think this is?)

“~가/이 (도대체) 뭐길래/뭐기에/뭐라고” can be used to express that the speaker is making a complaint about the possible abusive power or the unpleasant nature of the preceding noun because it is the main cause for the unfavorable situation in the following clause.

존이 (도대체) 뭐길래/뭐기에/뭐라고 그렇게 짹짹맵니까?

(=Who do you think John is? Why are you so afraid of him?)

이 냄새가 (도대체) 뭐길래/뭐기에/뭐라고 이렇게 지독합니까?

(=What do you think this smell is? Why is the smell so strong?)

그 남자가 (도대체) 뭐길래/뭐기에/뭐라고 자기 마음대로 합니까?

(=Who does he think he is? Why is he doing things in his own way?)



## 12 Verbs (동사)

Verbs in Korean can be classified into two major categories: action verbs and stative verbs. Action verbs in Korean are the prototypical verbs that can be used to describe various kinds of physical or mental activities. They correspond to English verbs and are sometimes called “processive verbs” in other literature. On the other hand, stative verbs are the verbs that can be used to describe, identify or define the properties or characteristics of an entity. They are also called “adjectives” or “descriptive verbs.”

### I . Stative Verbs or Adjectives?

Stative verbs in Korean have been often categorized into adjectives (형용사) in most Korean grammar books simply because they are semantically similar to English adjectives. But the term “adjectives” is not only inappropriate to characterize Korean stative verbs but also misleading as to the true nature of their grammatical behaviors. For example, in English, one of the most distinctive grammatical features that differentiate between adjectives and verbs is that verbs can be inflected for tense, aspect, and number while adjectives cannot. (See the first table on the next page.)

However, this line of division disappears with regard to the grammatical behaviors of Korean stative verbs and action verbs. As you can see in the second table on the next page, Korean stative verbs can be fully inflected just like action verbs. The only exception is that they cannot be used in imperative or propositional sentences. But it is simply because of their semantic nature, not because of their grammatical properties. For example, it is nonsensical to order or to propose that someone be “smart, pretty, tall, etc.” without using a sorcerer’s magic wand. Therefore, although Korean stative

verbs are semantically similar to English adjectives, it is more appropriate to say that they must be grammatically categorized into verbs.

Grammatical Features		Example Sentences (예문)	
		English Verbs	English Adjectives
Tense	Present	They work <u>hard</u> .	They <u>busy</u> . (NOT OK)
	Past	They work <u>ed</u> hard.	They busi <u>ed</u> . (NOT OK)
	Future	They <u>will</u> work hard.	They <u>will</u> busy. (NOT OK)
Aspect	Progressive	They <u>are</u> work <u>ing</u> hard.	They <u>are</u> busi <u>ing</u> . (NOT OK)
		They <u>were</u> work <u>ing</u> hard.	They <u>were</u> busi <u>ing</u> . (NOT OK)
		They <u>will be</u> work <u>ing</u> hard.	They <u>will be</u> busi <u>ing</u> . (NOT OK)
	Perfect	They <u>have</u> work <u>ed</u> hard.	They <u>have</u> busi <u>ed</u> . (NOT OK)
		They <u>had</u> work <u>ed</u> hard.	They <u>had</u> busi <u>ed</u> . (NOT OK)
		They <u>will have</u> work <u>ed</u> hard.	They <u>will have</u> busi <u>ed</u> . (NOT OK)
Number	3 <sup>rd</sup> Person Singular in Present Tense	He work <u>s</u> hard.	He busi <u>es</u> . (NOT OK)

Grammatical Features		Example Sentences (예문)	
		Korean Action Verbs	Korean Stative Verbs
Tense	Present	존이 학교에 간다.	메리가 똑똑하다.
	Past	존이 학교에 갔다.	메리가 똑똑했다.
	Future	존이 학교에 갈 거다.	메리가 똑똑할 거다.
Honorifics	Subject Honorifics	선생님이 학교에 가신다.	선생님이 똑똑하시다.
	Statement	선생님이 학교에 가십니다.	선생님이 똑똑하십니다.
	Question	선생님이 학교에 가십니까?	선생님이 똑똑하십니까?
	Imperative	선생님, 학교에 가십시오.	-
	Proposition	선생님, 학교에 가십시오.	-
Sentence Endings	Statement	존이 학교에 간다.	메리가 똑똑하다.
	Question	존이 학교에 가니?	메리가 똑똑하니?
	Imperative	존, 학교에 가라.	-
	Proposition	존, 학교에 가자.	-

## II . Differences between Stative Verbs and Action Verbs

As we discussed above, Korean stative verbs and action verbs show similar grammatical behaviors with respect to their verbal inflections. Because of this reason, they must be classified under the category of verbs. However, their similarities end there, and indeed there are some crucial grammatical differences between them. First, stative verbs cannot take an object under any circumstances, whereas action verbs, more specifically transitive action verbs, can take an object in a given sentence.

존은 이 컴퓨터를 좋습니다. (NOT OK)

존은 이 컴퓨터를 샀습니다. (=John bought this computer.)

The only possible way to allow stative verbs to take an object is to change them into their corresponding action verbs by attaching the suffix “~아/어하다” to the verb stem: “~아하다” is used if the preceding syllable of a verb stem contains the vowel “오” or “아”, otherwise “~어하다” is used instead. Then, the newly created action verb can take an object. The transitive action verb-creating suffix “~아/어하다” can be typically attached to the so-called “verbs of emotion” such as “좋다(to be good),” “싫다(to be hateful),” etc., and the limited number of other stative verbs such as “예쁘다(to be pretty)” and “귀엽다(to be cute).”

Stative Verbs (Verbs of Emotion)	Transitive Action Verbs	Example Sentences (예문)
좋다 (to be good)	<u>좋아하다</u> (to like)	이 컴퓨터가 <u>좋습니다</u> . (=This computer is good.) 존은 이 컴퓨터를 <u>좋아합니다</u> . (=John likes this computer.)
싫다 (to be hateful)	<u>싫어하다</u> (to dislike)	제 동생이 <u>싫습니다</u> . (=My younger sibling is hateful.) 저는 제 동생을 <u>싫어합니다</u> . (=I dislike my younger sibling.)
미다 (to be hateful)	<u>미워하다</u> (to hate)	존이 <u>미습니다</u> . (=John is a hateful person.) 존이 메리를 <u>미워합니다</u> . (=John hates Mary.)
무섭다 (to be scary)	<u>무서워하다</u> (to be afraid of)	그 영화가 <u>무섭습니다</u> . (=That movie is scary.) 존이 메리를 <u>무서워합니다</u> . (=John is afraid of Mary.)
기쁘다 (to be happy)	<u>기뻐하다</u> (to rejoice)	존은 메리를 보니 <u>기뻐습니다</u> . (=John was happy to see Mary.) 우리 모두 승리를 <u>기뻐했습니다</u> . (=We all rejoiced over our victory.)
즐겁다 (to be joyful)	<u>즐거워하다</u> (to enjoy)	존은 항상 <u>즐겁습니다</u> . (=John is always joyful.) 존은 학교생활을 <u>즐거워합니다</u> . (=John enjoys his school life.)

슬프다 (to be sad)	슬 <u>퍼</u> 하다 (to feel sympathy for)	그 이야기는 아주 슬픉니다. (=That story is very sad.) 메리는 존의 죽음을 슬 <u>퍼</u> 했습니다. (=Mary mourned John's death.)
반갑다 (to be glad)	반가 <u>워</u> 하다 (to greet)	친구를 만나서 반가 <u>워</u> 다. (=I was glad to see my friend.) 메리는 친구를 반가 <u>워</u> 했습니다. (=Mary greeted her friend.)
괴롭다 (to be distressed)	괴로 <u>워</u> 하다 (to be distressed with)	메리를 보니 괴로 <u>워</u> 습니다. (=I feel distressed to see Mary.) 존은 자신의 실패를 괴로 <u>워</u> 했습니다. (=John was distressed with his failure.)
예쁘다 (to be pretty)	예 <u>뻐</u> 하다 (to adore)	메리는 예 <u>뻐</u> 합니다. (=Mary is pretty.) 아버지는 늘 메리를 예 <u>뻐</u> 합니다. (=My father always adores Mary.)
귀엽다 (to be cute)	귀여 <u>워</u> 하다 (to fondle)	메리는 귀엽 <u>워</u> 습니다. (=Mary is cute.) 메리는 강아지를 귀여 <u>워</u> 합니다. (=Mary fondles the puppy.)

Another difference between stative verbs and action verbs in terms of their grammatical behaviors is that stative verbs cannot be used with the progressive aspect, whereas action verbs can. But it is sometimes necessary to express the ongoing change of state in our conversational situations. In that case, we need to change stative verbs into their corresponding action verbs by attaching the suffix “~아/어지다 (to become/get)” to the verb stem: “~아지다” is used if the preceding syllable of a verb stem contains the vowel “오” or “아, otherwise “~어지다” is used instead. Then, the newly-created action verbs can

Stative Verbs	Action Verbs	Progressive Aspect	Example Sentences (예문)
좋다 (to be good)	좋 <u>아</u> 지다 (to get better)	좋아지 <u>고</u> 있다	메리는 건강이 좋 <u>아</u> 지고 있습니다. (=As for Mary, her health is getting better.)
나쁘다 (to be bad)	나 <u>빠</u> 지다 (to get worse)	나빠지 <u>고</u> 있다	존은 성격이 나 <u>빠</u> 지고 있습니다. (=As for John, his personality is getting worse.)
예쁘다 (to be pretty)	예 <u>뻐</u> 지다 (to become prettier)	예뻐지 <u>고</u> 있다	메리는 얼굴이 점점 예 <u>뻐</u> 지고 있어요. (=As for Mary, she is getting prettier little by little.)
많다 (a lot)	많 <u>아</u> 지다 (to become more)	많아지 <u>고</u> 있다	해야 일이 많 <u>아</u> 지고 있어요. (=I am getting more and more work to do.)
길다 (to be long)	길 <u>어</u> 지다 (to become longer)	길어지 <u>고</u> 있다	낮이 길 <u>어</u> 지고 있어요. (=Daytime is getting longer.)
빠르다 (to be fast)	빨 <u>라</u> 지다 (to get faster)	빨라지 <u>고</u> 있다	천천히 가세요. 속도가 빨 <u>라</u> 지고 있어요. (=Please slow down. You are going faster.)
늦다 (to be late)	늦 <u>어</u> 지다 (to be more delayed)	늦어지 <u>고</u> 있다	계획이 늦 <u>어</u> 지고 있어요. (=Our plan is getting more delayed.)
바쁘다 (to be busy)	바 <u>빠</u> 지다 (to get busier)	바빠지 <u>고</u> 있다	요즘 바 <u>빠</u> 지고 있어요. (=I am getting busier these days.)

take the progressive aspect suffix “~고 있다 (be -ing).” The action verb-creating suffix “~아/어지다” which is traditionally called an “inchoative suffix”(기동동사 접미사) is very productive, and it can be attached to the majority of stative verbs.

Lastly, as we already mentioned above, stative verbs cannot be used in imperative or propositional sentences, whereas action verbs can. But in some written text like the Holy Bible, stative verbs can sometimes appear even in imperative sentences once they are changed into their corresponding action verbs by attaching the suffix “~아/어하다” to the verb stem: “~아하다” is used if the preceding syllable of a verb stem contains the vowel “오” or “아, otherwise “~어하다” is used instead.

**기뻐하고 즐거워하라** 하늘에서 너희의 상이 큼이라 너희 전에 있던 선지자들도 이같이 박해하였느니라 [마태복음 5:12]

(Rejoice and be glad, for your reward is great in heaven, for so they persecuted the prophets who were before you.) [Matthew 5:12 English Standard Version]

항상 **기뻐하라** 쉬지 말고 기도하라 범사에 감사하라 이는 그리스도 예수 안에서 너희를 향하신 하나님의 뜻이니라 [데살로니가전서 5:16-18]

(Rejoice always, pray continually, give thanks in all circumstances; for this is God's will for you in Christ Jesus.) [Thessalonians 5:16-18 New International Version]

### III . Special Verbs

#### 1. The copula “~이다”

The Korean copula “~이다,” which is equivalent to the English verb “be (am, is, or are),” can be used to equate the subject with the corresponding predicate noun, also called a complement noun. Its main function is to express that the subject is identified with the predicate noun or it belongs to the possible member of the group that the predicate noun refers to. One unique grammatical feature of this special verb is that, unlike other verbs, it cannot stand alone, and therefore it must be always attached to the preceding noun like a noun suffix.

이 학생이 존입니다. (=This student is John.)

이 것이 존의 컴퓨터입니다. (=This is John's computer.)

그 분이 메리의 선생님입니다. (=That person is Mary's teacher.)

존이 학생입니다.

(=John is a student. = John is a member of the group being called "student.")

메리가 천재입니다.

(=Mary is a genius. =Mary is a member of the group being called "genius.")

## 2. The Existential/Possessive Verb “있다”

The Korean verb “있다” can be classified into two different verbal categories according to its specific function: the existential verb and the possession verb.

### (1) The existential verb “있다”

The existential verb “있다” can be used to express the location of an object or a person with a locational phrase marked by the location case marker “~에.”

존이 학교에 있습니다.

(=John is at school.)

메리가 한국에 있습니다.

(=Mary is in Korea.)

If we need to express the specific location of an object or a person in terms of their relative position from another object or person, we can use various kinds of locational nouns (위치명사) with the location case marker “~에.”

Locational Nouns (위치명사)	Example Sentences (예문)
앞 (in front of)	책상 <u>앞에</u> 의자가 있습니다. (=There is a chair in front of the desk.)
뒤 (behind)	의자 <u>뒤에</u> 가방이 있습니다. (=There is a bag behind the chair.)

옆 (next to)	존 <b>옆에</b> 메리가 있습니다. (=Mary is next to John.)
위 (on/above)	책상 <b>위에</b> 컴퓨터가 있습니다. (=There is a computer on the desk.)
아래 (under)	계단 <b>아래에</b> 창고가 있습니다. (There is a storage room under the stairs.)
밑 (beneath)	침대 <b>밑에</b> 상자가 있습니다. (=There is a box right under the bed.)
안 (inside)	방 <b>안에</b> TV가 있습니다. (There is a TV inside the room.)
밖 (outside)	집 <b>밖에</b> 정원이 있습니다. (=There is a garden outside the house.)
왼쪽 (to the left)	침대 <b>왼쪽에</b> 옷장이 있습니다. (=There is a closet to the left of the bed.)
오른쪽 (to the right)	냉장고 <b>오른쪽에</b> 전자레인지가 있습니다. (=There is a microwave to the right of the refrigerator.)
사이 (between)	거실과 부엌 <b>사이에</b> 화장실이 있습니다. (=There is a bathroom between the living room and the kitchen.)
가운데 (in the center)	공원 <b>가운데에</b> 분수대가 있습니다. (=There is a water fountain in the center of the park.)
반대쪽/반대편 (on the opposite side)	학교는 반도체 공장 <b>반대편에</b> 있습니다. (=The school is on the opposite side of the semiconductor factory.)
건너편 (across)	그 길 <b>건너편에</b> 약국이 있습니다. (=There is a pharmacy across the street.)
너머 (over)	산 <b>너머에</b> 골프장이 있습니다. (=There is a golf course over the mountains.)

## (2) The possessive verb “있다”

Unlike English, possession in Korean is indirectly expressed with the verbs of existence such as “있다/없다/많다/적다.” More specifically, it works the way in which the possessed exists to the possessor which eventually means that the possessor has the possessed. The possessor takes the dative case marker “~에게/한테” if the possessor is an animate noun. Otherwise, the location marker “~에” must be attached to the possessor.

존**에게/한테** 휴대폰이 있습니다.

(=A cell phone exists to John. =John has a cell phone)

메리에게/한테 차가 없습니다.

(=A car doesn't exist to Mary. =Mary doesn't have a car.)

메리에게/한테 친구가 많습니다.

(=Many friends exist to Mary. =Mary has a lot of friends.)

우리 반에 학생이 적습니다.

(=A few students exist in our class. =Our class has a few students.)

이 가게에 물건이 많습니다.

(=A lot of things exist at this store. =This store has a lot of things.)

### 3. Compound Verbs (복합동사) with “가다” and “오다”

The verb “가다” can be used to express that the subject is moving away from the speaker, whereas the verb “오다” expresses that the subject is getting closer to the speaker. Likewise, when the verb “가다” is used as the part of a compound verb, it signifies that the action results in the subject's moving away from the speaker. In contrast, “오다” is used when the purported action results in the subject's getting closer to the speaker.

먼저 들어가세요. (=Please go into the place first.)

어서 들어오세요. (=Please come in.)

여기서 나가세요. (=Please get out of here.)

빨리 나오세요. (=Please come out quickly.)

고향에 돌아가세요. (=Please go back to your hometown.)

제게 돌아오세요. (=Please come back to me.)

이 책 가져가세요. (=Please take this book with you.)

돈을 가져오세요. (=Please bring some money.)

### 4. Irregular Verbs (불규칙 동사)

There are some irregular verbs that subsequently change their verb stems when they are combined with various types of suffixes.

Irregular Verbs		Description of Rule	Example Sentences (예문)
ㄹ irregular verbs	멀다 (far) 알다 (to know) 놀다 (to play) 만들다 (to make) 팔다 (to sell) 살다 (to sell) 열다 (to open)	“ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ.”	집이 여기서 아주 <b>멀</b> 니다. ( <b>멀</b> → <b>머</b> + <b>ㅂ니다</b> ) (=My house is far from here.) 존은 메리를 <b>알</b> 니다. ( <b>알</b> → <b>아</b> + <b>ㅂ니다</b> ) (=John knows Mary.) 존이 밖에서 <b>놀</b> 니다. ( <b>놀</b> → <b>노</b> + <b>ㅂ니다</b> ) (=John is playing outside.)
ㅂ irregular verbs	돕다 (to help) 곱다 (pretty) 눅다 (to lie down) 줍다 (to pick up) 가볍다 (light) 무겁다 (heavy) 춥다 (cold) 덥다 (hot)	“ㅂ” at the end of a verb stem is changed into the vowel “오” or “우” before a vowel. If the syllable contains the vowel “오” or “아,” it will be changed into “오.” Otherwise, it will be changed into “우.”	존이 어머니를 <b>도</b> 왔다. ( <b>돕</b> → <b>도오</b> + <b>왔다</b> ) (=John was helping his mother.) 그 컴퓨터는 아주 <b>가</b> 벼웠다. ( <b>가</b> 볍 → <b>가벼우</b> + <b>었다</b> ) (=This computer was very light.) 메리는 아주 <b>아</b> 름다웠다. ( <b>아</b> 름답 → <b>아름다우</b> + <b>었다</b> ) <sup>1</sup> (=Mary was so beautiful.)
ㄷ irregular verbs	걷다 (to walk) 묻다 (to ask) 듣다 (to listen) 싣다 (to load) 깨달다 (to realize)	“ㄷ” at the end of a verb stem is changed into the consonant “ㄹ” before a vowel.	우리 학교는 <b>걸</b> 어서 10분 걸려요. ( <b>걸</b> → <b>걸</b> + <b>어서</b> ) (=It takes ten minutes to go to school on foot.) 존은 메리의 목소리를 <b>들</b> 었다. ( <b>들</b> → <b>들</b> + <b>었다</b> ) (=John heard Mary's voice.)
ㅅ irregular verbs	붓다 (to pour, to swell) 짓다 (to build) 젓다 (to stir) 긋다 (to draw)	“ㅅ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before a vowel.	냄비에 물을 <b>부</b> 었다. ( <b>붓</b> → <b>부</b> + <b>었다</b> ) (=I put water in the pot.) 존의 얼굴이 <b>부</b> 었다. ( <b>붓</b> → <b>부</b> + <b>었다</b> ) (=John's face got swollen.) 메리는 공책에 선을 <b>그</b> 었다. ( <b>긋</b> → <b>그</b> + <b>었다</b> ) (=Mary drew a line in the notebook.)
ㅎ irregular verbs	빨갳다 (red) 파랳다 (blue) 노랳다 (yellow) 까맣다 (black) 하얳다 (white)	“ㅎ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before a vowel, and the remaining vowel combination is changed into the vowel “애.”	색깔이 <b>빨</b> 개요. ( <b>빨</b> 갳 → <b>빨가</b> + <b>아요</b> → <b>빨개요</b> ) (=The color is red.) 하늘이 <b>파</b> 래요. ( <b>파</b> 랳 → <b>파라</b> + <b>아요</b> → <b>파래요</b> ) (=The sky is blue.) 메리는 얼굴이 <b>하</b> 애요. ( <b>하</b> 얳 → <b>하야</b> + <b>아요</b> → <b>하애요</b> ) <sup>2</sup> (=Mary's face is white.)
ㄹ irregular verbs	다르다 (different) 부르다 (to call) 고르다 (to choose) 누르다 (to press) 흐르다 (to flow) 모르다 (don't know)	“ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem loses its vowel “으” before a vowel, and the leftover consonant “ㄹ” is attached to the preceding syllable. At the same time, the additional consonant “ㄹ” is inserted.	이번 시험은 지난 시험과 <b>달</b> 라요. ( <b>다</b> 르 → <b>다르</b> + <b>아요</b> → <b>달</b> + <b>아요</b> → <b>달</b> + <b>ㄹ</b> + <b>아요</b> → <b>달라요</b> ) (=This competition is different from the last one.) 저는 그 사건에 대해서 전혀 <b>몰</b> 라요. ( <b>모</b> 르 → <b>모르</b> + <b>아요</b> → <b>몰</b> + <b>아요</b> → <b>몰</b> + <b>ㄹ</b> + <b>아요</b> → <b>몰라요</b> ) (=I don't know anything about the incident.)

**Note:**

1. The consonant “ㅂ” in the verb “아름답다” is an exception to the rule, and it is changed into “우,” rather than the intended vowel “오.”
2. Unlike other color verbs, the remaining vowel combination of “하얗다” after dropping “ㅎ” is changed into the vowel “애,” rather than “애.”



The Korean honorific system(존대법) seems to be one of the most difficult grammatical features to understand for non-native speakers. But if we carefully look at its underlying principles, the inner workings of the system are rather simple and systematic. In a typical communication, we usually assess the formality of a speech situation—formal or informal—before we actually engage in a conversation. For example, the way we talk to our family members or friends might be quite different from the way we talk to our colleagues in a professional work environment. It is, therefore, not surprising that the honorific system in Korean is largely divided into two different subsystems: the formal honorific system and the informal counterpart.

Once the formality of a speech situation is determined, we need to consider our relationship with the listener and determine whether it is necessary to show respect to him/her. Another consideration weighs in regarding whether to show our respect to the subject of a sentence. In addition, we need to take into consideration our relationship with the other individual parties who are mentioned in a given sentence. The decision whether to show our respect to the parties involved in a conversation depends on our relative perception of their age, social status, and familiarity. For example, when we are talking to or talking about someone who is older than us, whose social status is higher than ours, or who is not familiar to us, it is a courtesy to show our respect to the person by using appropriate honorific devices. Although it is not obligatory to use proper honorifics from the grammatical point of view, it is a serious violation of the widely accepted social convention. Therefore, if we do not follow the system correctly, we will be treated as a social outcast and end up being disassociated from other people against our will.

All these honorific situations are differently encoded in a given sentence. First, various

types of honorific sentence endings can be used to show respect to the listener (청자/상대 존대). Second, the subject honorific suffixes “~(으)시” can be attached to a verb stem to show respect to the subject of a sentence (주체/주어 존대). Third, special honorific suffixes can be directly attached to the nouns to whom we need to show respect, or alternative deferential expressions can be selected in place of regular non-honorific nouns (객체 존대).

## I . Formal Honorific System for Statements and Questions

### 1. Showing respect just to the listener

Speech Situation	Sentence Types	Honorific Endings	Examples (예문)
The Subject John (a student)	Statement	~습니다 After a vowel	선생님, 존이 도서관에서 공부합니다. (=Teacher, John is studying at the library.)
The Speaker Mary (a student)		~습니다 After a consonant	선생님, 존이 식당에서 저녁을 먹습니다. (=Teacher, Mary is eating dinner at a restaurant.)
The Listener (teacher)	Question	~습니까? After a vowel	선생님, 존이 언제 학교에 옵니까? (=Teacher, when is John coming to school?)
		~습니까? After a consonant	선생님, 존이 교실에 있습니까? (=Teacher, is John in the classroom?)

### 2. Showing respect just to the subject

Speech Situation	Sentence Types	Honorific Suffixes	Examples (예문)
The Subject (teacher)	Statement	~시 After a vowel	존, 선생님이 아주 좋아하십니다. (=Hey John, the teacher likes it a lot.)
The Speaker Mary (a student)		~으시 After a consonant	존, 선생님이 사무실에서 책을 읽으십니다. (=Hey John, the teacher is reading a book in his office.)
The Listener John (a student)	Question	+ Blunt Endings <sup>1,2</sup>	존, 선생님이 교실에서 책을 읽으시냐? (=Hey John, is the teacher reading a book in the classroom?) 존, 선생님이 지금 학생들을 가르치시냐? (=Hey John, is the teacher teaching his students now?)

### 3. Showing respect both to the subject and to the listener

Speech Situation	Sentence Types	Honorific Suffixes Plus Endings	Examples (예문)
The Subject (Mr. Kim)	Statement	~십니다 After a vowel	박선생님, 김선생님이 교실에서 학생을 가르치 <u>십니다</u> . (=Ms. Park, Mr. Kim is teaching students in the classroom.)
The Speaker Mary (a student)		~으십니다 After a consonant	박선생님, 김선생님이 지금 사무실에서 신문을 읽 <u>으십니다</u> . (=Ms. Park, Mr. Kim is reading a newspaper in his office now.)
The Listener (Ms. Park)	Question	~십니까? After a vowel	박선생님, 김선생님이 지금 바쁘 <u>십니까</u> ? (=Ms. Park, is Mr. Kim busy now?)
		~으십니까? After a consonant	박선생님, 김선생님이 휴대폰을 찾으 <u>으십니까</u> ? (=Ms. Park, is Mr. Kim looking for his cell phone?)

### 4. Showing no respect to the subject and to the listener

Speech Situation	Sentence Types	Blunt Endings	Examples (예문)
The Subject (John)	Statement	~는다 <sup>1</sup>	메리야, 존이 집에서 밥을 먹 <u>는다</u> . (=Hey Mary, John is eating food at home.)
The Speaker (John's mother or father)		~는다	메리야, 존이 지금 학교에 <u>간다</u> . (=Hey Mary, John is going to school now.)
The Listener (Mary)		~다	메리야, 존이 아주 바쁘 <u>다</u> . (=Hey Mary, John is very busy.)
John and Mary are friends	Question	~냐? <sup>2</sup>	메리야, 존이 도서관에서 공부하 <u>냐</u> ? (=Hey Mary, is John studying in the library?)
		~니?	메리야, 존이 학교에서 열심히 공부하 <u>니</u> ? (=Hey Mary, does John study hard at school?)

**Note:**

1. Formal Blunt Endings for Statement: ~는다/는다/다

When the listener is the person to whom we don't need to show respect, blunt endings are attached to verb stems. “~는다” is used for an action verb in the present tense ending with a vowel, and “~는다” is for an action verb in the present tense ending with a consonant. “~다” is used for the rest of the verbs.

존은 8시에 학교에 간다.  
(=John goes to school at eight.)  
메리는 6시에 저녁을 먹는다.  
(=Mary eats dinner at six.)

메리는 얼굴이 예쁘다.  
 (=Mary has a pretty face.)  
 존은 8시에 학교에 갔다.  
 (=John went to school at eight.)  
 메리는 6시에 저녁을 먹었다.  
 (=Mary ate dinner at six.)

According to our social conventions, the formal blunt endings are officially used in most written text, such as newspapers, books, journals, manuals, etc.

“28일 오전 8시15분께 충북 옥천군 옥천읍 옥천역 부근 철로에서 신원미상자가 KTX 서울행 열차에 치여 숨졌다. 또 사고를 수습하기 위해 열차가 옥천역에 20분 가량 정차해 승객들이 불편을 겪었다. 기관사는 경찰에서 “옥천역을 통과할 무렵 선로 가운데에 사람이 서 있어 급정차했지만 결국 사고가 났다”고 말한 것으로 알려졌다. 경찰은 사망자의 신원을 확인하는 한편, 기관사와 목격자 등의 진술을 토대로 정확한 사고 경위를 조사중이다.”

2. Formal Blunt Endings for Questions: ~냐?, ~니?, ~나?, ~는/(으)ㄴ가?

“~냐?” is more likely to be used by a male speaker, whereas “~니?” tends to be used more by a female speaker. “~냐?” and “~(으)ㄴ/는가?” are typically used in the case that the listener is a mature adult who is younger than the speaker. “~냐?, ~니?, ~나?” can be used with action verbs and stative verbs in all tenses. In the case of “~(으)ㄴ/는가?”, “~은가?” is used for a present-tense stative verb ending with a consonant, and “~ㄴ가?” for a present-tense stative verb ending with a vowel. “~는가?” is used for the rest of the verbs.

지금 뭐 하냐?/하니?/하나?  
 (=What are you doing now?)  
 저녁 먹었냐?/먹었니?/먹었나?  
 (=Did you eat dinner?)  
 지금 바쁘냐?/바쁘니?/바쁘나?  
 (=Are you busy now?)  
 어제 바빴냐?/바빴니?/바빴나?  
 (=Were you busy yesterday?)  
 그 집 전망이 좀 좋은가?  
 (=Does the house have a good view?)  
 지금 바쁘는가?  
 (=Are you busy now?)  
 이게 마음에 드는가?  
 (=Do you like this?)  
 그 영화 재미있었는가?  
 (=Was the movie interesting?)

## II . Formal Honorific System for Imperative and Proposition

In imperative and propositional sentences, the listener and the subject are the same. Therefore, it results in the combination of the subject honorific suffixes and the honorific endings when we need to show respect either to the listener or to the subject.

## 1. Showing respect to the listener-subject

Speech Situation	Sentence Types	Honorific Suffixes Plus Endings	Examples (예문)
The Subject & The Listener (Ms. Park)	Imperative	~십시오 <sup>1,2</sup> After a vowel	박선생님, 천천히 하 <u>십시오</u> . (=Ms. Park, take your time.)
		~으십시오 After a consonant	박선생님, 여기 앉 <u>으십시오</u> . (=Ms. Park, please sit here.)
The Speaker (Mr. Kim)	Proposition	~십시오 <sup>3</sup> After a vowel	박선생님, 같이 산책하 <u>십시오</u> . (=Ms. Park, let's take a walk together.)
		~으십시오 After a consonant	박선생님, 그 노래 같이 들 <u>으십시오</u> . (=Ms. Park, let's listen to the music together.)

### Note:

1. In imperative sentences, the super-honorific endings (극존칭) “~으시옵소서/시옵소서” can be used to express one’s wish to a supernatural being, such as God or an ancient king.

“이르시되 아버지여 만일 아버지의 뜻이거든 이 잔을 내게서 옮기시옵소서” (누가복음 22장 42절)

“Father, if you are willing, take this cup from me; yet not my will, but yours be done.” (Luke 22:42)

“마마, 소신을 용서하여 주시옵소서” (=My Lord, please forgive me.)

2. There are other variants of honorific endings such as “~(으)시오,” “~소,” and “~(으)오” that are still being used especially in local dialects, including North Korean. These endings can be typically used to the person who is of equal status to yours. Therefore, they show less respect to the listener-subject than “~(으)십시오” and “~(으)십시오.” Some of these endings, especially “~(으)오,” are already on the verge of extinction.

내용을 자세히 살펴보시오.

(=Please examine the contents in more detail.)

몸조심 하시오.

(=Please take care of yourself.)

밖에 누구시오?

(=Who is he?)

잘 들어보소.

(Please listen carefully.)

먼저 가소.

(=You go first.)

생각 좀 해 보았소?

(=Did you think about it?)

여기 누구 없소?

(=Is anyone here?)

부디 행복하기 바라오.

(=I wish you a happy life.)

내 걱정일랑 하지 마오.

(=Please don't worry about me.)

3. In the case of propositional sentences, “~십시오/으십시오” and “~십시오/읍시다” are interchangeable in actual conversation. They are typically used if the speaker and the listener are in the more or less equal status, i.e., between colleagues. It is, therefore, highly discouraged to use them if the speaker’s status is lower than the listener’s. The former are used when we want to show more respect to the listener-subject, and the latter are used to show less respect to the listener-subject.

박선생님, 그 노래 같이 들으십시오/들읍시다.  
 (=Ms. Park, let’s listen to the music together.)  
 박선생님, 우리 같이 걸으십시오/걸읍시다.  
 (=Ms. Park, let’s walk together.)

## 2. Showing no respect to the listener-subject

Speech Situation	Sentence Types	Blunt Endings	Examples (예문)
The Subject & The Listener (Mary) The Speaker (John) John and Mary are mutual friends	Imperative	~아라 <sup>1</sup> ~어라 ~거라	메리야, 내 손 <u>잡아라</u> . (=Hey Mary, hold my hand.) 메리야, 저녁 <u>먹어라</u> . (=Hey Mary, eat dinner. =Hey Mary, dinner is ready.) 메리야, 이제 그만 <u>자거라</u> . (=Hey Mary, go to bed now.)
	Proposition	~자	메리야, 지금 집에 <u>가자</u> . (=Hey Mary, let’s go home now.) 메리야, 같이 저녁 <u>먹자</u> . (=Hey Mary, let’s eat dinner together.)

### Note:

#### 1. Formal Blunt Endings for Imperative: ~아라/어라, ~거라, ~게(나)

“~아라” is used if the preceding syllable contains the vowel “오” or “아.” Otherwise, “~어라” is used instead. “~거라” is interchangeable with “~아라/어라,” but it sounds like a somewhat old expression. “~게(나)” is used in the case that the listener is a mature adult, but is still younger than the speaker.

빨리 가라.  
 (=Go quickly.)  
 천천히 먹어라.  
 (=Eat slowly.)  
 이제 그만 자거라.  
 (=Go to bed now.)  
 자네가 한번 해 보게(나).  
 (=Why don’t you try this?)  
 내 입장을 한번 생각해 보게(나).  
 (=Why don’t you consider my situation?)

### III . Informal Honorific System for Statements and Questions

The informal honorific system typically applies to a conversational situation among family members, relatives, friends, etc. The speaker in this situation must consider whether or not he/she needs to show both respect and intimacy (closeness) to the listener.

#### 1. Showing both respect and closeness just to the listener

Speech Situation	Sentence Types	Honorific Endings	Examples (예문)
The Subject John (Mary's younger brother)  The speaker (Mary)  The Listener (Mary's mother)	Statement	~아요 <sup>1</sup> if the preceding syllable contains the vowel "오" or "아"	엄마, 존이 밖에서 놀아요. (=Mom, John is playing outside.) 엄마, 존이 친구하고 점심을 먹어요. (=Mom, John is eating lunch with his friend.)
	Question	Otherwise, ~어요	엄마, 존이 언제 학교 소풍을 가요? <sup>2</sup> (=Mom, when does John go on a school picnic?) 엄마, 메리가 지금 어디 있어요? (=Mom, where is Mary now?)

#### Note:

1. A more precise description of the rule is that "~아요" is used if the preceding syllable of a present tense verb contains the vowel "오" or "아." Otherwise, "~어요" is used regardless of whether the preceding syllable contains the vowel "오" or "아."

존이 새를 잡았어요. (=John caught a bird.)

메리가 학교에 갔어요. (=Mary went to school.)

2. "~나요?" and "~(으)ㄴ/는가요?" are the variants of the more common honorific question endings "~아/어요?" In most cases, they are interchangeable, but differ in terms of the degree of closeness to the listener.

~아/어요?	>	~나요?	>	~(으)ㄴ/는가요?
Closer relationship				Less close relationship

몇 시부터 운동하세요?

(=What time do you start exercising?)

밖이 추워요?

(=Is it cold outside?)

몇 시부터 운동하시나요/는가요?

(=What time do you start exercising?)

밖이 추나요/추운가요?

(=Is it cold outside?)

There are some irregular forms in the way in which the informal honorific endings “~아요/어요” are combined with a verb stem.

Verbs	Verb Stem + 아요/어요	Final Forms
가다(to go)	가 + 아요	가요
오다(to come)	오 + 아요	와요
크다 (big)	크 + 어요	커요
하다(to do)	하 + 아요	해요
이다(to be)	이 + 어요	이에요/예요 <sup>1</sup>
가깝다 (to be near)	가까 <u>우</u> + 어요	가까워요 <sup>2</sup>
Verb Stem + 시	가 + 시 + 어요 → 가셔요	가세요 <sup>3</sup>
Verb Stem + 시	오 + 시 + 어요 → 오셔요	오세요
Verb Stem + 시	하 + 시 + 어요 → 하셔요	하세요
Verb Stem + 시	이 + 시 + 어요 → 이셔요	이세요/세요 <sup>4</sup>

#### Note

1. The copula “이다(to be)” is changed into “~이에요” if the preceding noun ends with a consonant, and the verb is in present tense. But if the preceding noun ends with a vowel, and the verb is in present tense, “~예요” is used instead. For all other cases, “~어요” is used.

존은 학생이에요.

(=John is a student.)

메리는 변호사예요.

(=Mary is a lawyer.)

존은 학생이었어요.

(=John was a student.)

메리는 변호사이었어요.

(=Mary is a lawyer.)

2. “ㅂ” irregular verbs: 반갑다, 아름답다, 높다, 춥다, 가볍다, 무겁다, 춥다, 덥다, etc.

If a verb stem final consonant “ㅂ” is followed by a vowel, then “ㅂ” will be changed into the vowel “우.”

만나서 반가워요. (반갑 + 아요 → 반가우 + 아요 → 반가워요)

(=Nice to meet you.)

공원이 참 아름다워요. (아름답 → 아름다우 + 어요 → 아름다워요)

(=The park is so beautiful.)

날씨가 추워요. (춥 + 어요 → 추우 + 어요 → 추워요)

(=The weather is cold.)

3. If “~아요/어요” is combined with the subject honorific suffixes “~(으)시,” they will be changed into “~으세요, ~세요.” But in some local dialects, “~으셔요, ~셔요” are still used.
4. “~이세요” is used if the preceding noun ends with a consonant. Otherwise “~세요” is used instead.

## 2. Showing both respect and closeness just to the subject

Speech Situation	Sentence Types	Honorific Suffixes Plus Endings	Examples (예문)
The Subject (Father)	Statement	<p>~셔<sup>1</sup> (시+어) After a vowel</p>	메리아, <b>아빠가</b> 거실에서 책을 읽으셔. (=Hey Mary, Dad is reading a book in the living room.)
The Speaker (John)			메리아, <b>아빠가</b> 아주 좋아하셔. (=Hey Mary, Dad likes it a lot.)
The Listener Mary (John's younger sister)	Question	<p>~으셔 (으시+어) After a consonant</p>	메리아, <b>아빠가</b> 나를 찾으셔? (=Hey Mary, is Dad looking for me?) 메리아, <b>아빠가</b> 뭐 하셔? (=Hey Mary, what is Dad doing?)

### Note:

- In this situation, since you must show respect only to the subject, not to the listener, the subject honorific suffixes “~(으)시” are used together with the informal blunt verb endings “~아/어,” which are derived from the informal honorific endings “~아요/어요” by dropping the last vowel “~요.”

## 3. Showing both respect and closeness to the subject and the listener.

Speech Situation	Sentence Types	Honorific Suffixes Plus Endings	Examples (예문)
The Subject (John's father)	Statement	<p>~세요 After a vowel</p>	<b>엄마, 아빠가</b> 부르세요. (=Mom, Dad is calling you.)
The Speaker (John)			<b>엄마, 아빠가</b> 잔디를 깎으세요. (=Mom, Dad is mowing the grass.)
The Listener (John's mother)	Question	<p>~으세요 After a consonant</p>	<b>엄마, 아빠가</b> 집안 청소를 하세요? (=Mom, is Dad cleaning the house?) <b>엄마, 아빠가</b> 머리를 깎으세요? (=Mom, is Dad getting a haircut?)

#### 4. Showing both respect and closeness to neither the subject nor the listener

Speech Situation	Sentence Types	Blunt Endings	Examples (예문)
The Subject (John)	Statement	<p>~아<sup>1</sup></p> <p>if the preceding syllable contains the vowel “오” or “아”</p>	메리야, 존이 아주 똑똑해. (=Hey Mary, John is very smart.)
The Speaker (Bob)			메리야, 존이 집에서 밥을 먹어. (=Hey Mary, John is eating food at home.)
The Listener (Mary)	Question	<p>Otherwise,</p> <p>~어</p>	메리야, 존이 경찰관이야. <sup>2</sup> (=Hey Mary, John is a police officer.)
John, Bob, and Mary are all close friends			메리야, 존이 변호사야. (=Hey Mary, John is a lawyer.)
			메리야, 존이 지금 뭐 해? (=Hey Mary, what is John doing now?)
			메리야, 존이 오늘 몇 시에 집에 와? (=Hey Mary, when is John coming home today?)
			메리야, 존이 경찰관이야? (=Hey Mary, is John a police officer?)
			메리야, 존이 변호사야? (=Hey Mary, is John a lawyer?)

**Note:**

1. The informal blunt endings “~아/어” are derived from the informal honorific endings “~아요/어요” by simply dropping the last syllable “~요.”
2. If the verb is the copula “이다,” then “~이야” is used when the preceding noun ends with a consonant. Otherwise, “~아” is used instead.

### IV. Informal Honorific System for Imperative and Proposition

As we discussed above, in imperative and propositional sentences, the listener and the subject are the same. Therefore, it results in the combination of the subject honorific suffixes and the honorific sentence endings when we need to show respect and closeness either to the listener or to the subject.

## 1. Showing respect to the listener-subject

Speech Situation	Sentence Types	Honorific Suffixes Plus Endings	Examples (예문)
The Subject & The Listener (Mother)	Imperative	~세요 After a vowel	엄마, 빨리 여기 오세요. <sup>1</sup> (=Mom, please come here quickly.) 엄마, 책 그만 읽으세요. (=Mom, please stop reading the book.)
	Proposition	~으세요 After a consonant	엄마, 콘서트에 저랑 같이 가세요. (=Mom, let's go to the concert together.) 엄마, 저와 같이 공원에서 걸으세요. (=Mom, let's take a walk in the park together.)

### Note:

1. In imperative and propositional sentences, “~세요/으세요” and “~아요/어요” are equally used in actual conversation. The former are used when we want to show more respect to the listener-subject, and the latter are used to show less respect to the listener-subject.

#### (1) Imperative

제 손 꼭 잡으세요/잡아요.

(=Please hold my hand tight.)

TV 좀 작게 틀으세요/틀어요.

(=Please turn down the volume of the TV.)

#### (2) Proposition

저랑 같이 유럽 여행가세요/여행가요.

(=Let's take a trip to Europe together.)

저랑 같이 운동하세요/운동해요.

(=Let's exercise together.)

## 2. Showing no respect to the listener-subject

Speech Situation	Sentence Types	Blunt Endings	Examples (예문)
The Subject & The Listener Mary (daughter)	Imperative	~아 if the preceding syllable contains the vowel “오” or “아”	메리아, 내 손 잡아. (=Hey Mary, hold my hand.) 메리아, 저녁 먹어. (=Hey Mary, eat dinner, =Hey Mary, dinner is ready.)
	Proposition	Otherwise, ~어	메리아, 같이 가. (=Hey Mary, let's go together.) 메리아, 같이 저녁 먹어. (=Hey Mary, let's eat dinner together.)

## V. Other Honorific Devices (객체 존대)

We have thus far investigated how the Korean honorific system works with regard to the relationship between the subject, the listener, and the speaker. We will now turn our attention to more specific honorific devices that are attached to individual elements in a given sentence.

### 1. Honorific Noun Suffix “~님”

Attached to	Examples (예제)
Kinship Terms	아버지 → <b>아버님</b> (father), 어머니 → <b>어머님</b> (mother), 부모 → <b>부모님</b> (parents) 할아버지 → <b>할아버님</b> (grandfather), 할머니 → <b>할머님</b> (grandmother), 조부모 → <b>조부모님</b> (grandparents) 형 → <b>형님</b> (older brother who is much older than you or someone else's older brother) 누나 → <b>누님</b> (older sister who is much older than you or someone else's older sister) 아들 → <b>아드님</b> (the respectable person's son) 딸 → <b>따님</b> (the respectable person's daughter)
Titles	선생 → <b>선생님</b> (teacher), 스승 → <b>스승님</b> (master) 과장 → <b>과장님</b> (section chief), 팀장 → <b>팀장님</b> (team leader), 회장 → <b>회장님</b> (CEO) 대통령 → <b>대통령님</b> (Mr. President) which used to be called “대통령각하”
Full Name	김미선 <b>님</b> (Ms. Misun Kim)

The honorific noun suffix “~님” is attached to the title or kinship term of the person to whom we need to show respect regardless of whether it is the subject or the listener. In addition, it can also be attached to a person's full name when we page a person or call a customer in line at a public place, such as a bank, hospital, district office, etc.

선생**님**이 존을 좋아한다.

(=The teacher likes John.)

존이 선생**님**을 좋아한다.

(=John likes the teacher.)

메리가 아버**님**한테 소포를 보낸다.

(=Mary is sending a package to Father.)

메리가 선생님의 책상을 닦는다.  
(=Mary is cleaning the teacher's desk.)

아버님이 선생님의 어머니를 만나셨다.  
(=My father met the teacher's mother.)

## 2. Honorific Noun Suffix “~씨”

The honorific noun suffix “~씨” can be attached to the full name or first name of the person who is considered to be of equal status to the speaker. With one's full name, it is frequently used when we call our colleagues. With one's first name, it is typically used between lovers. But it can also be attached to one's last name, which can be used to call a labor worker.

Attached to	Examples (예제)
Full Name	박우경씨, 그만 퇴근합니다. (=Ms. Woo Kyung Park, let's call it a day.)
First Name	우경씨, 사랑해요. (=Woo Kyung, I love you.)
Last Name	이씨, 집에 안 가? (=Hey Lee, aren't you going home?)

## 3. Honorific Subject Case Marker “~께서” and Honorific Dative Case Marker “~께”

The honorific subject case marker “~께서” is used to show more respect to the subject, whereas the honorific dative case marker “~께” is used to show respect to the dative object.

아버님께서 내일 떠나신다.  
(=My father is leaving tomorrow.)

존이 어머님께 편지를 쓴다.  
(=John is writing a letter to his mother.)

아버님께서 선생님께 선물을 보내신다.  
(=My father is sending a gift to the teacher.)

#### 4. Honorific Counter “분”

The honorific counter “분” is used instead of the regular counter “명” when we count a number of people to whom we must show respect.

- 집에 오는 길에 선생님 세 분을 만났다.  
(=I met three teachers on my way home.)
- 부모님 두 분이 함께 여행을 가신다.  
(=Both of my parents are taking a trip together.)

#### 5. Irregular Honorific Verbs

Some verbs have their own honorific verb forms which can be used instead of the ones derived by the regular honorific rules.

##### (1) To show respect to the subject

- 먹다 → 드시다 or 잡수시다 (to eat)  
있다 → 계시다 (to be)  
자다 → 주무시다 (to sleep)  
말하다 → 말씀하시다 (to say, to talk about)  
죽다 → 돌아가시다 (to die)
- 아버님이 저녁을 드신다.  
(=My father is eating dinner.)
- 할머님이 아침을 잡수신다.  
(=My grandmother is eating breakfast.)
- 선생님이 사무실에 계신다.  
(=The teacher is in his office.)
- 어머님이 방에서 주무신다.  
(=My mother is sleeping in her room.)
- 할아버님이 한국전쟁에 대해 말씀하신다.  
(=My grandfather is talking about the Korean War.)

아버님이 2년 전에 돌아가셨다.  
(=My father died two years ago.)

## (2) To show respect to the object

보다 → 뵙다/뵈다 (to meet)

나중에 뵙겠습니다.

(=I will see you later.)

어머님을 작년에 (찾아)뵈었습니다.

(=I visited my mother last year.)

## (3) To show respect to the dative object

묻다 → 여쭙다/여쭙다 (to ask)

선생님께 몇가지 여쭙겠습니다.

(=I will ask you some questions.)

아버님께 할아버님에 대해 여쭙어 보았습니다.

(=I asked my father about my grandfather.)

## 6. Irregular Honorific Nouns

Some nouns have their own honorific forms.

연세/춘추 (old person's age) (cf) 나이 (age)

생신 (old person's birthday) (cf) 생일 (birthday)

부인/사모님 (someone else's wife) (cf) 아내 (one's own wife)

자녀/자제분 (someone else's offspring) (cf) 아이들 (offspring)

춘부장 (someone else's father)

영부인 (First Lady=president's wife)

영애 (First Daughter=president's daughter), 영식 (First Son=president's son)

귀빈 (honorable guest) (cf) 손님 (guest)

귀하 (to whom it may concern)

댁(someone else's house): 집 (house)

식사/진지(cooked rice or food) (cf) 밥

약주(alcoholic beverage) (cf) 술

용안(king's face)

용포(king's clothes)

옥체(king's body)

## VI. Summary

The following table summarizes what we have discussed so far with regard to the Korean honorific system.

Formality	Showing respect	Grammatical Forms To Be Used	
Formal	to the listener	Honorific Suffixes and Endings	For statement: ~ <b>니다/습니다</b> For question: ~ <b>니까?/습니까?</b> For imperative: ~ <b>시오/으시오</b> For proposition: ~ <b>시다/으시다</b> ~ <b>시다/읍시다</b>
	to the subject		~(으)시 + <b>Blunt Endings</b>
	to the listener and the subject	Blunt Endings	For statement: (으)시 + <b>니다</b> → ~ <b>니다/으십니다</b> For question: (으)시 + <b>니까?</b> → ~ <b>니까?/으십니까?</b> For imperative: (으)시 + <b>시오</b> → ~ <b>시오/으시오</b> ~ <b>시오/으시오</b> ~ <b>소</b> ~ <b>오/으오</b> For proposition: (으)시 + <b>시다</b> → ~ <b>시다/으십니다</b> ~ <b>시다/읍시다</b>
	to none of them		For statement: ~ <b>니다/는다/다</b> For question: ~ <b>냐?, ~니?, ~나?, ~(으)ㄴ/는가?</b> For imperative: ~ <b>아라/어라, ~거라, ~게/게나</b> For proposition: ~ <b>자</b>
Informal	to the listener	Honorific Suffixes and Endings	For statement: ~ <b>아요/어요, ~이에요/예요</b> for “이다” For question: ~ <b>아요?/어요?, ~나요?, ~ (으)ㄴ/는가요?</b> ~ <b>이에요?/예요?</b> for “이다” For imperative: ~ <b>세요/으세요, 아요/어요</b> For proposition: ~ <b>세요/으세요, 아요/어요</b>
	to the subject		~ <b>셔/으셔</b>
	to the listener and the subject	Blunt Endings	~ <b>세요/으세요</b> for all sentence types For imperative and proposition, ~ <b>아요/어요</b> can also be used.
	to none of them		For all sentence types: ~ <b>아/어</b> For statement and question: ~ <b>이야/야</b> for “이다”
Individual element		Honorific Forms	~ <b>님</b> or ~ <b>씨</b> (Honorific noun suffixes) ~ <b>께서</b> (Honorific subject suffix), ~ <b>께</b> (Honorific dative suffix) ~ <b>분</b> (Honorific Counter) ~ <b>드시다, 접수시다, 계시다, 주무시다, 말씀하시다, 돌아가시다</b> ~ <b>뵙다, 여쭙다</b> (Special Honorific verbs) ~ <b>연세/춘추, 생신, 부인/사모님, 자녀/자제분, 춘부장, 영부인</b> ~ <b>영애, 영식, 귀하, 귀빈, 댁, 식사/진지, 약주, 용안, 용포, 옥체</b> (Special Honorific Nouns)



## CHAPTER 14 Tense and Aspect (시제와 상)

### I . Tense (시제)

Tense is a grammatical category that can be defined in terms of the temporal relationship between the event time (사건시: when an action or state occurs) and the speech time (발화시: when the expression is said) on a timeline. It can be divided into three major subcategories: the present, the past, and the future.

Tense (시제)	Definition
Present Tense (현재)	The event time coincides with the speech time.
Past Tense (과거)	The event time is ahead of the speech time.
Future Tense (미래)	The event time is after the speech time.

#### 1. Present Tense (현재 시제): $\phi$

There have been many discussions in the literature regarding how the Korean present tense is grammatically encoded in a given sentence. One of the most linguistically appealing claims is that it is marked by the dummy “ $\phi$ ” attached to a verb stem. In other words, nothing is attached to a verb stem to indicate the present tense in Korean. At first, it sounds illegitimate to make such a claim, but it is not uncommon in many other languages, including English. For example, the present tense in English is marked on a verb if and only if the subject is in the third person singular, as in the following examples:

I usually eat breakfast at 7:00 A.M.

You eat breakfast at 7:00 A.M., don't you?

Mary eats breakfast at 7:00 A.M.

They eat breakfast at 7:00 A.M.

I kiss my wife before I go to work.

You kiss your wife before you go to work, don't you?

John kisses Mary before he goes to work.

They kiss each other before they go to work.

In the examples above, the verbs “eat, kiss” carry the present tense suffix “~s/es” only if the subject is in the third person. For this reason, many English grammarians define the English present tense rule as follows: “Attach the suffix “~s/es” to a verb if and only if the subject is in the third person singular, otherwise no present tense suffix is attached to a verb.” The default (or unmarked) present tense suffix is, therefore, considered to be the dummy “ $\phi$ ” which does not appear on the surface form of a verb. The suffix “~s/es” for the third person singular subject can be then treated as an exception (or a marked case).

Likewise, many Korean grammarians currently reached the consensus that the present tense in Korean is not visibly marked on a verb. For grammatical purposes, we can simply assume that it is marked by the dummy “ $\phi$ ” which does not appear on the surface form of a verb and is not pronounced because it does not have a sound value.

Tense (시제)	Inflectional Suffixes	Example Sentences in Present Tense (현재 시제 예문)
Present (현재)	예쁘 + $\phi$ + ㅂ니다 → 예쁩니다	메리가 예쁩니다. (=Mary is pretty.)
	먹 + $\phi$ + 습니다 → 먹습니다	존이 과일을 먹습니다. (=John is eating/eats fruit.)
	입 + $\phi$ + ㄴ다 → 입는다	메리가 옷을 입는다. (=Mary is wearing clothes.)
	하 + $\phi$ + ㄴ다 → 한다	존이 운동을 한다. (=John is exercising.)
	작 + $\phi$ + 다 → 작다	메리가 키가 작다. (=Mary is short.)
	읽 + $\phi$ + 어요 → 읽어요	존이 책을 읽어요. (=John is reading a book.)
	오 + $\phi$ + 아요 → 와요	메리가 우리 집에 와요. (=Mary is coming to my house.)
	하 + $\phi$ + 아 → 해	존이 운동을 해. (=John is exercising.)
가 + $\phi$ + 아 → 가	메리가 학교에 가. (=Mary is going to school.)	

Some Korean grammarians still claim that all the inflectional suffixes in the table above such as “~ㅂ니다/습니다, ㅂ니다/ㄴ다/다, 아요/어요, 아/어” are the real present tense markers. But it is very unreasonable to make such a claim because it lumps together two radically different grammatical concepts, the tense system and the honorific/blunt system. These suffixes are indeed the honorific or blunt suffixes which have nothing to do with the tense of a verb. For example, as we discussed in Chapter 13 Honorific and Blunt Systems, “~ㅂ니다/습니다” are the formal honorific endings; “~아요/어요” are the informal honorific counterparts; “~는다/ㄴ다/다” are the formal blunt endings; “~아/어” are the informal blunt counterparts. In addition, as far as I know, there are no natural languages that have such a large corpus of suffix variants to indicate a single tense concept. From now on, we will therefore consider the dummy  $\phi$  as the Korean present tense suffix.

The present tense in Korean carries different semantic functions depending on what kind of verb it is used with. When it is used with an action verb, it describes an ongoing action or a routinely habitual action depending on the context. If it is used with a stative verb, then it describes a continuing state, an absolute truth, and so forth, which can be determined from the context.

### (1) Action verb in present tense (Ongoing action)

존이 지금 공부합니다.

(=John is studying now.)

메리가 지금 집을 청소합니다.

(=Mary is cleaning the house now.)

### (2) Action verb in present tense (Habitual action)

존이 매일 컴퓨터 게임을 한다.

(=John plays computer games every day.)

메리가 매일 밤 클럽에 간다.

(=Mary goes to the club every night.)

### (3) Stative verb in present tense (Continuing state)

존이 돈이 많다.

(=John has a lot of money.)

메리가 얼굴이 귀엽다.

(=Mary has a cute face.)

### (4) Stative verb in present tense (Absolute Truth)

지구는 둥글다.

(=The earth is round.)

하늘은 파랗다.

(=The sky is blue.)

## 2. Past Tense (과거 시제): ~았/었

The past tense in Korean is indicated by the suffixes “~았/었” attached to a verb stem. If the preceding syllable contains the vowel “오” or “아,” the past tense suffix “~았” is attached to the verb stem, otherwise, “~었” is attached instead.

경찰이 범인을 잡았다.

(=The police captured the suspect.)

존이 가방을 책상 위에 놓았다.

(=John put the bag on the desk.)

메리가 7시에 저녁을 먹었다.

(=Mary ate dinner at seven.)

When the past tense suffix is combined with the preceding syllable, it sometimes undergoes a contraction rule, creating irregular verb forms such as “갔다,” “왔다,” “했다,” and so forth.

존은 아침에 학교에 갔다 (가+았+다).

(=John went to school in the morning.)

메리는 늦게 집에 왔다 (오+았+다).

(=Mary came home late.)

존은 도서관에서 숙제를 했다 (하+았+다).

(=John did his homework at the library.)

The past tense suffixes are sometimes used when we describe a person's present state of being in the sense that a certain voluntary or involuntary action was already taken in the past which results in the person's current state.

존은 잘생겼다 (생기+었+다).

(=John is handsome.)

존은 못생겼다 (생기+었+다).

(=John is ugly.)

메리는 결혼했다.

(=Mary is married.)

메리는 약혼했다.

(=Mary is engaged.)

메리는 이혼했다.

(=Mary is divorced.)

메리는 어머니를 닮았다.

(=Mary resembles her mother.)

존은 까만 양복을 입었다.

(=John is wearing a black suit.)

메리가 임신했다.

(=Mary is pregnant.)

얼굴이 부었다.

(=My face is swollen.)

The first two examples above are describing John's current physical appearances, but the past tense suffixes are used in these sentences. The logic behind using the past tense suffixes is that the involuntary action of the verb “생기다 (to be formed)” actually

occurred in the past, which made an impact on his current looks. By the same reasoning, one's current marital status can be described by using the past tense suffixes because it can be viewed as the outcome of having a wedding or engagement ceremony or filing a divorce suit that happened in the past. The rest of the sentences can also be explained by the way in which one's resemblance of someone, current attire, pregnancy, medical condition were initiated by the voluntary or involuntary actions that already started in the past.

### 3. Future Tense (미래 시제): ~겠, ~을/르거다

Like many other languages, it is difficult to say that there is a pure future tense marker in English. Most traditional English grammar books claim that the future tense in English is indicated by an auxiliary verb. But the problem is that English auxiliary verbs always bring additional modal meanings, such as obligation, capability, permission, etc., aside from their intended future tense function.

I must finish it by tomorrow. (Obligation)

I can finish it by tomorrow. (Capability)

You may leave tomorrow. (Permission)

Even the English auxiliary verb “will”—which is the most likely candidate for future tense marker—also comes with additional modal meanings, such as intention or probability as shown in the examples below.

I will finish it tomorrow. (Intention)

I will kill you. (Intention)

It will rain tomorrow. (Probability)

In its strict sense, therefore, we cannot say that there is a grammatical device that directly expresses the future tense in English, but rather the future tense is indirectly indicated by an auxiliary verb which always comes with an additional modal meaning.

The future tense in Korean is also indirectly indicated by the modal suffixes “~겠” and

“~(으)르 거다,” both of which are always accompanied by some additional modal meanings. Since the future tense is not logically compatible with imperative and propositional sentences, “~겠” and “~(으)르 거다” can be exclusively used in statements or questions.

In a statement with the first person subject (“I” or “We”), “~겠” is used to express the speaker’s strong intention to carry out an action in the future, which can be rendered as “I/We will.” It can also be used with the second person subject (“You”) in a question to politely ask about the listener’s intention, which can be rendered as “Would you like to \_?”

제가 그 미팅에 참석하겠습니다.

(=I will attend the meeting.)

우리가 거기에 가겠습니다.

(=We will go there.)

그 미팅에 참석하시겠습니까?

(=Would you like to attend the meeting?)

뭐 드시겠습니까?

(=What would you like to eat?)

By the same token, “~(으)르 거다” is used with the first person subject (“I” or “We”) in a statement to express the speaker’s weak commitment to take action, which can be rendered as “I/We intend to \_.” It can also be used with the second person subject (“You”) in a question to ask about the listener’s weak commitment to take action, which can be rendered as “Do you intend to \_?”

제가 그 미팅에 갈 겁니다.

(=I intend to go to the meeting.)

우리가 거기에 갈 거예요.

(=We intend to go there.)

그 미팅에 참석하실 겁니까?

(=Do you intend to attend the meeting?)

뭐 드실 거예요?

(=What do you intend to eat?)

On the other hand, in a statement with the second person or the third person subject, “~겠” can be used to express the speaker’s conjecture on the strong possibility of a current or future event, which can be rendered as “must.” It can also be used in a question with the first person or third person subject to ask the listener to make a conjecture about the strong possibility of a future event, which can be rendered as “Is it possible that \_?”

하루 종일 일하시느라 피곤하시겠어요.

(=You must be tired because you have worked all day long.)

점심을 안 드셔서 시장하시겠어요.

(=You skipped lunch, and so you must be hungry.)

서두르지 않으면 미팅에 늦겠어요.

(=If you don’t hurry, you must be late for the meeting.)

내일 오전에는 전국적으로 비가 오겠습니다.

(=Tomorrow morning it must be raining nationwide.)

존이 명문대에 합격해서 존의 어머니가 좋아하시겠어요.

(=John got admitted to the prestigious college, and so John’s mother must be happy about it.)

잠시 후에 결혼식이 시작되겠습니다.

(=The wedding ceremony must begin shortly.)

그거 재미있겠다.

(=That must be fun.)

제가 그걸 할 수 있겠습니까?

(=Is it possible that I can do it?)

존이 그걸 할 수 있겠습니까?

(=Is it possible that John can do it?)

제가 이번 시험에 합격하겠습니까?

(=Is it possible that I can pass this test?)

존이 이번 시험에 합격하겠습니까?

(=Is it possible that John can pass this test?)

Likewise, in a statement with the second person or the third person subject, “~(으)ㄴ 거다” can be used to express the speaker’s conjecture on the weak possibility of a current or future event, which can be rendered as “may.” It can also be used in a question with the first person or third person subject to ask the listener to make a conjecture about the weak possibility of a future event, which can be rendered as “Is there a chance that \_?”

하루 종일 일하시느라 피곤하실 거예요.

(=You may be tired because you have worked all day long.)

점심을 안 드셔서 시장하실 거예요.

(=You skipped lunch, and so you may be hungry.)

서두르지 않으면 미팅에 늦을 거예요.

(=If you don’t hurry, you may be late for the meeting.)

밖에 날씨가 따뜻하할 거다.

(=It may be warm outside.)

메리가 반장으로 뽑혀서 메리의 아버님이 좋아하실 거예요.

(= Mary got elected to become the class leader, and so Mary’s father may be happy about it.)

잠시 후에 결혼식이 시작될 겁니다.

(=The wedding ceremony may begin shortly.)

메리가 오늘 미팅에 참석하실 겁니까?

(=Is there a chance that Mary is going to attend today’s meeting?)

제가 이 일을 맡을 겁니까?

(=Is there a chance that I will be in charge of this work?)

메리가 오늘 밤에 도착하실 겁니까?

(=Is there a chance that Mary will arrive tonight?)

제가 다른 부서에 배치될 겁니까?

(=Is there a chance that I will be assigned to a different department?)

For the reasons that we have discussed above, “~겠” and “~(으)ㄴ 거다” are sometimes referred to as periphrastic future tense suffixes in the sense that their main functions are to carry their modal meanings in addition to their subsidiary function of indicating the future tense.

Additional strong evidence that “~겠” and “~(으)ㄴ 거다” are not pure future tense markers is that they can sometimes be used with the past tense suffixes “~았/었.” In that case, “~겠” expresses a strong possibility of the outcome of a past event, which can be rendered as “must have +pp,” whereas “~(으)ㄴ 거다” indicates a weak possibility, which can be rendered as “may have +pp.”

존이 지금쯤 서울에 도착했겠다. (도착하+았+겠다)

(=John must have arrived in Seoul by this time.)

지진 때문에 피해가 많았겠다. (많+았+겠다)

(=A lot of damage must have been incurred due to the earthquake.)

숙제하느라 피곤했겠다. (피곤하+았+겠다)

(=You must have been tired because you were doing your homework.)

존이 지금쯤 서울에 도착했을 거다. (도착하+았+을 거다)

(=John may have arrived in Seoul by this time.)

지진 때문에 피해가 많았을 거다. (많+았+을 거다)

(=A lot of damage may have been incurred due to the earthquake.)

숙제하느라 피곤했을 거다. (피곤하+았+을 거다)

(=You may have been tired because you were doing your homework.)

The following table summarizes the Korean tense suffixes that we have discussed so far.

Tense (시제)	Tense Suffix (시제 접미사)	Examples (예문)
Present (현재)	∅	존이 지금 공부합니다. (=John is studying now.) 메리가 옷을 입는다. (=Mary is wearing clothes.) 존이 매일 컴퓨터 게임을 한다. (=John plays computer games every day.) 메리가 얼굴이 귀엽다. (=Mary has a cute face.) 지구는 둥글다. (=The earth is round.)
Past (과거)	~았 if the preceding syllable contains "오" or "아" Otherwise, ~었	존은 7시에 저녁을 먹었다. (=John ate dinner at seven.) 경찰이 범인을 잡았다. (=The police captured the suspect.) 존은 아침에 학교에 갔다. (=John went to school in the morning.) 메리는 늦게 집에 왔다. (=Mary came home late.) 존은 도서관에서 숙제를 했다. (=John did his homework at the library.)
Future (미래)	~겠 <sup>1</sup>	제가 거기에 가겠습니다. (=I will go there.) 곧 결혼식이 시작되겠습니다. (=The wedding ceremony must begin shortly.)
	~을 거다 After a consonant ~르 거다 After a vowel or "르"	제가 그 미팅에 갈 겁니다. (=I intend to go to the meeting.) 밖에 날씨가 따뜻할 거예요. <sup>2,3</sup> (=It may be warm outside.)

**Note:**

1. “~겠” can also be used in some conversational idioms.

또 뵈겠습니다. (=I will see you again.)  
네, 알겠습니다. (=Ok, I got it.)  
잘 모르겠습니다. (=I have no idea.)

2. “~(으)르 거다” has variant forms in terms of formality and honorifics.

밖에 날씨가 따뜻할 겁니다. (Formal honorific form)  
밖에 날씨가 따뜻할 거다. (Formal blunt form)  
밖에 날씨가 따뜻할 거예요. (Informal honorific form)  
밖에 날씨가 따뜻할 거야. (Informal blunt form)  
(=It may be warm outside.)

3. “~(으)르 걸(요)” is another variant of “~(으)르 거예요/거야” which can be used to express a weaker possibility.

밖에 날씨가 따뜻할 걸요. (Informal honorific form)  
밖에 날씨가 따뜻할 걸. (Informal blunt form)  
(=Maybe it is warm outside.)

## II . Aspect (상)

Aspect is a grammatical category that indicates how an action occurs in a single block of time. The progressive aspect indicates an ongoing action over an extended period of time, whereas the perfect aspect focuses on the completion of an action that starts at the beginning and ends at the end of a block of time.

### 1. Progressive (진행형): ~고 있다, ~는 중이다

The progressive aspect in Korean can be expressed by “~고 있다” and “~는 중이다” which can be attached to an action verb. The former focuses on the ongoing state of an action while the latter emphasizes the ongoing action itself. These suffixes also serve as tense carriers and can be inflected into the present, past, and future progressive aspects.

Progressive (진행형)	Suffixes (접미사)	Examples (예문)
Present Progressive (현재진행)	~고 있다 ~는 중이다	존은 체육관에서 운동하고 <b>있습니다</b> . (=John is in the middle of exercising at the gym.) 메리는 지금 도서관에서 공부하는 <b>중입니다</b> . (=Now Mary is studying at the library.)
Past Progressive (과거진행)	~고 <b>있었다</b> ~는 <b>중이었다</b>	존은 체육관에서 운동하고 <b>있었습니다</b> . (=John was in the middle of exercising at the gym.) 메리는 도서관에서 공부하는 <b>중이었습니다</b> . (=Mary was studying at the library.)
Future Progressive (미래진행)	~고 <b>있겠다</b> ~는 <b>중이겠다</b> ~고 <b>있을 거다</b> ~는 <b>중일 거다</b>	오늘 밤에 존은 체육관에서 운동하고 <b>있겠다</b> . (Strong Possibility) (=John must be in the middle of exercising at the gym tonight.) 집에 가면 메리는 공부하는 <b>중이겠다</b> . (Strong Possibility) (=Mary must be studying when I arrive home.) 오늘 밤에 존은 체육관에서 운동하고 <b>있을 겁니다</b> . (Weak Possibility) (=John may be in the middle of exercising at the gym tonight.) 집에 가시면 메리는 공부하는 <b>중일 겁니다</b> . (Weak Possibility) (=Mary may be studying when you go home.)

As we discussed in Chapter 12 Verbs, stative verbs cannot be used in progressive aspect,

whereas action verbs can. To express the ongoing change of state, however, we can change stative verbs into their corresponding action verbs by attaching the action verb-creating suffix “~아/어지다 (to become/get)” to the verb stem: “~아 지다” is used if the preceding syllable of a verb stem contains the vowel “오” or “아, otherwise “~어 지다” is used instead. Then, the newly created action verbs can take the progressive aspect suffixes as shown in the following table, repeated here for your convenience.

Stative Verbs	Action Verbs	Progressive Aspect	Example Sentences (예문)
좋다 (to be good)	좋 <b>아</b> 지다 (to get better)	좋 <b>아</b> 지 <b>고</b> 있다	메리는 건강이 <b>좋아지고</b> 있습니다. (=Mary's health is getting better.)
나쁘다 (to be bad)	나 <b>빠</b> 지다 (to get worse)	나 <b>빠</b> 지 <b>고</b> 있다	존은 성격이 <b>나빠지고</b> 있습니다. (=John's personality is getting worse.)
예쁘다 (to be pretty)	예 <b>뻐</b> 지다 (to become prettier)	예 <b>뻐</b> 지 <b>고</b> 있다	메리는 얼굴이 점점 <b>예뻐지고</b> 있어요. (=Mary is getting prettier little by little.)
많다 (a lot)	많 <b>아</b> 지다 (to become more)	많 <b>아</b> 지 <b>고</b> 있다	해야 일이 <b> 많아지고</b> 있어요. (=I am getting more and more work to do.)
길다 (to be long)	길 <b>어</b> 지다 (to become longer)	길 <b>어</b> 지 <b>고</b> 있다	낮이 <b> 길어지고</b> 있어요. (=Daytime is getting longer.)
빠르다 (to be fast)	빨 <b>라</b> 지다 (to get faster)	빨 <b>라</b> 지 <b>고</b> 있다	천천히 가세요. 속도가 <b> 빨라지고</b> 있어요. (=Please slow down. You are going faster.)
늦다 (to be late)	늦 <b>어</b> 지다 (to be more delayed)	늦 <b>어</b> 지 <b>고</b> 있다	계획이 <b> 늦어지고</b> 있어요. (=Our plan is getting more delayed.)
바쁘다 (to be busy)	바 <b>빠</b> 지다 (to get busier)	바 <b>빠</b> 지 <b>고</b> 있다	요즘 <b> 바빠지고</b> 있어요. (=I am getting busier these days.)

## 2. Perfect (완료시제)

The perfect aspect in Korean can be indirectly expressed by using various suffixes: the suffix “~아/어 왔다” for the present perfect, the double past tense suffixes “~았었/었었” for the past perfect, and the suffix “~아/어 가다” for the future perfect.

### (1) Present Perfect (현재 완료): ~아/어 왔다

The suffix “~아/어 왔다” which is the combination of “~아/어 오다” and the past tense suffix “~았” can be used to express that a repetitive action which started at some point in the past has continued up to the present time. It is equivalent to the English present perfect “have+verb+pp.”

Perfect (완료형)	Suffixes (접미사)	Examples (예문)
Present Perfect (현재완료)	<p>~아 왔다 if the preceding syllable contains the vowel "오" or "아"</p> <p>Otherwise, ~어 왔다</p>	<p>지금까지 힘들게 살아 <b>왔어요</b>. (=I have lived a tough life up until now.)</p> <p>시부모님을 평생 모셔 <b>왔어요</b>. (=I have taken care of my in-laws during my entire life.)</p> <p>메리는 지금까지 양로원에서 봉사<b>해 왔어요</b>. (=Mary has done volunteer service at a nursing home until now.)</p>

## (2) Past Perfect (과거 완료): ~았었/였었

The double past-tense suffixes “~았었/였었” are used to express that an action that started in the past was completed at some time later in the past. It is equivalent to the English past perfect “had+verb+pp.” For subordinate clauses, “~(았/였)던” are going to be used instead. These double past-tense suffixes always bring the implication that one’s habitual action or continuing state used to be true in the past, but it is no longer true at the present time.

Perfect (완료형)	Suffixes (접미사)	Examples (예문)
Past Perfect (과거완료)	<p>For main clauses, ~<b>았었</b> if the preceding syllable contains the vowel "오" or "아"</p> <p>Otherwise, ~<b>였었</b></p>	<p>존은 고등학교 때까지 열심히 공부<b>했었다</b>. (=John had studied hard until he was in high school, but not anymore.)</p> <p>작년까지 여기 저기 여행을 많이 다<b>녔었다</b>. (=Until last year, I had traveled a lot here and there, but not anymore.)</p> <p>지난주까지 아주 바<b>빻었다</b>. (=I had been very busy until last week, but not anymore.)</p> <p>메리는 어렸을 때 키가 작<b>았었다</b>. (=Mary was short when she was young, but not anymore.)</p>
	<p>For subordinate clauses, ~(<b>았/였</b>)<b>던</b> if the preceding syllable contains the vowel "오" or "아"</p> <p>Otherwise, ~(<b>았/였</b>)<b>던</b></p>	<p>여기가 [내가 자주 <b>갔던/가던</b>] 식당이다. (=This is the restaurant where I used to go often, but not anymore.)</p> <p>[메리는 아주 <b>귀여웠던/귀엽던</b>] 학생이다. (=Mary used to be a very cute student, but not anymore.)</p>

### (3) Future Perfect (미래 완료): ~아/어 가다

The suffix “~아/어 가다” which is the combination of “~아/어 가다” and the present tense suffix “ $\phi$ ” can be used to express that a repetitive action will continue until it is completed at some point in the future. It is equivalent to the English future perfect “will have+verb+pp.”

Perfect (완료형)	Suffixes (접미사)	Examples (예문)
Future Perfect (미래완료)	<p>~아 가다 if the preceding syllable contains the vowel “오” or “아”</p> <p>Otherwise, ~어 가다</p>	<p>영화가 다 끝나 <u>갑니다</u>. (=The movie will have ended soon, =The movie is almost over.)</p> <p>이제 거의 다 <u>와 가요</u>. (=We will have arrived there soon, =We are almost getting there.)</p> <p>그 책을 거의 다 <u>읽어 갑니다</u>. (=I will have finished the book soon, =I almost finished reading the book.)</p> <p>건물이 곧 <u>완성돼 가요</u>. (=The building will have been completed soon.)</p>



## 15 Quotation (화법)

There are two different ways to quote what other people said: direct quotation which literally repeats what was said without any modification, and indirect quotation which rephrases what was said from the speaker's or the writer's point of view.

### I . Direct Quotation (직접화법)

A direct quotation is reported speech of the exact words that the speaker or the writer originally transmitted in communication. Although it is used sparingly in normal conversation, it is quite an effective way to give more credibility or authoritative power to the message that we want to convey to the listener or the reader. It is, therefore, often used in high-stakes situations such as providing a testimonial statement in a legal battle, criticizing a politician's campaign pledge that was not kept after the election, supporting our idea that is in line with a famous person's statement, and so forth. In Korean, the direct quotation suffix “~라고 하다” is used with quotation marks to express that the preceding expression is directly quoted verbatim from other sources. It can be used regardless of the sentence type of the quoted expression.

Sentence Types	Direct Quotation Suffix	Examples (예문)
Statement	~라고 하다	존은 나에게 “메리가 천재다”라고 했습니다. (=John said to me, “Mary is a genius.”)
Question		존은 나에게 “메리가 천재냐?”라고 했습니다. (=John asked me, “Is Mary a genius?”)
Imperative		존은 메리에게 “집에 가라”라고 했습니다. (=John told Mary, “Go back home.”)
Proposition		존은 메리에게 “이제 집에 가자”라고 했습니다. (=John told Mary, “Let's go home now.”)

## II . Indirect Quotation (간접화법)

An indirect quotation is reported speech that conveys another person's message by re-phrasing what was said from the speaker's or the writer's point of view. It is typically used in news reports to transmit some key information about an accident, an incident, a crime, etc. In Korean, there are four different types of indirect quotation suffixes. Each of them is used differently depending on the sentence type of the quoted expression as shown below.

Sentence Types	Indirect Quotation Suffixes	Examples (예문)
Statement	~다고 하다	메리가 저에게 존은 저녁을 먹었다고 했습니다. (=Mary told me that John ate dinner.)
Question	~냐고 하다	메리가 저에게 아침을 먹냐고 했습니다. (=Mary asked me whether I eat breakfast.)
Imperative	~(으)라고 하다	존이 메리에게 저녁을 빨리 먹으라고 했습니다. (=John asked Mary to eat dinner quickly.) 메리가 존에게 학교에 일찍 가라고 했습니다. (=Mary asked John to go to school early.)
Proposition	~자고 하다	존이 메리에게 유럽여행을 가자고 했습니다. (=John proposed to Mary to take a trip to Europe.)

More often than not, the following contraction forms of the indirect quotation suffixes are more frequently used in formal conversation instead of their full-fledged forms.

Sentence Types	Indirect Quotation Suffixes	Examples (예문)
Statement	~다고 하다 → ~답니다	존이 지금 공부하답니다. (=He/she says John is studying now.)
Question	~냐고 하다 → ~납니까	메리가 언제 출발하납니까. (=He/she asks me when Mary is going to leave.)
Imperative	~(으)라고 하다 → ~(으)랍니다	존이 메리한테 자기를 믿으랍니다. (=John asks Mary to trust him.) 메리가 존한테 집에 가랍니다. (=Mary asks John to go home.)
Proposition	~자고 하다 → ~잡니다	내일 외식을 하잡니다. (=He/she suggests to me to eat out tomorrow.)

In casual speech, the following contraction forms of the indirect quotation suffixes are often used.

Sentence Types	Indirect Quotation Suffixes	Examples (예문)
Statement	~다고 해요 → ~대요	존이 지금 공부한대요. (=He/she says John is studying now.) 존이 메리한테 못생겼대요. (=John says to Mary that she is ugly.)
Question	~냐고 해요 → ~내요	메리가 언제 출발하내요. (=He/she asks me when Mary is going to leave.) 메리가 여름방학이 언제내요. (=Mary asks me when our summer break starts.)
Imperative	~(으)라고 해요 → ~(으)래요	존이 나무를 여기에 심으래요. (=John asks me to plant a tree here.) 메리가 저한테 조용히 하래요. (=Mary asks me to be quiet.)
Proposition	~자고 해요 → ~재요	내일 외식을 하재요. (=He/she suggests to me to eat out tomorrow.) 내일 같이 학교에 가재요. (=He/she suggests to me to go to school together tomorrow.)



## 16 Noun-Modifying Suffixes (명사 수식 접미사)

In English, adjectives can be divided into two subcategories depending on their positions with respect to their related nouns. If an adjective is a part of a predicate and occurs after a subject and a linking verb (an English copula or a “be verb”), we call it a predicate adjective. The main semantic function of a predicate adjective is to provide additional information about the subject such as a description, characteristics, or properties of the subject. In contrast, if it occurs before its related noun, it is called an attributive adjective. Its semantic function is to limit the range or class of the following noun which carries the specific properties of the adjective.

(1) Mary is [pretty].

predicate adjective

(2) Mary is a [pretty] girl.

attributive adjective

The predicate adjective in the first sentence above occurs as a part of the predicate and provides a physical description of the subject’s being pretty. On the other hand, the attributive adjective occurs right before the modified noun and indicates that the subject “Mary” is not just any kind of girl, but the girl with the specific characteristic of being pretty.

### I . Noun-Modifying Suffixes for Stative Verbs

Korean stative verbs which are equivalent to English adjectives carry exactly the same functions. A predicate stative verb occurs as part of a predicate and it is placed at the

end of a sentence. It provides additional information about the subject. On the other hand, an attributive stative verb occurs right before the noun that it modifies and narrows down the range or class of the following noun having the specific properties of the attributive stative verb.

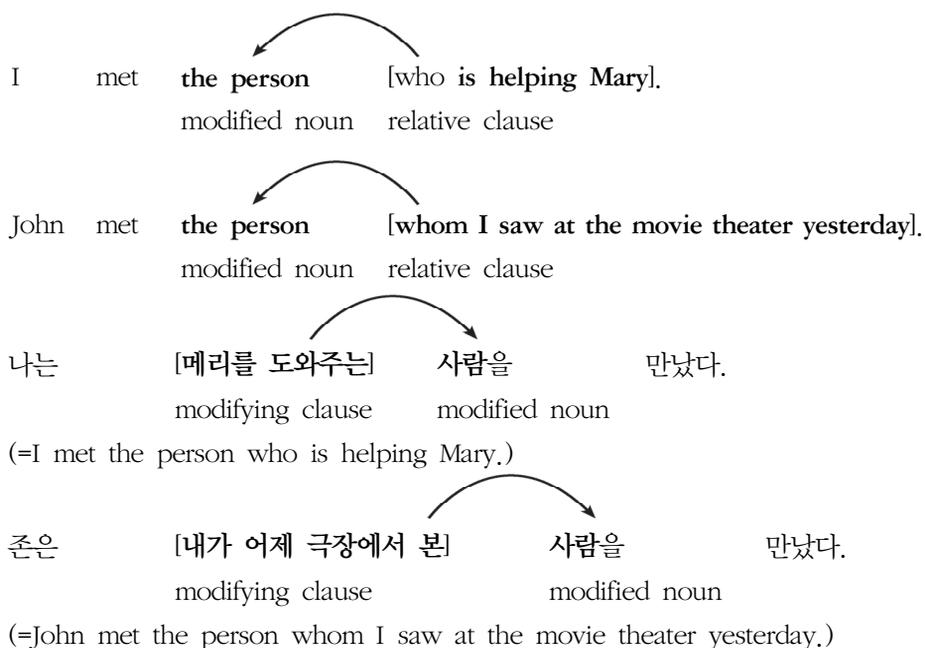
- (1) 메리가 [예쁘다]. (**predicate stative verb**)  
 (=Mary is pretty.)
- (2) 메리가 [예쁜] 아이다. (**attributive stative verb**)  
 (=Mary is a pretty child.)

The predicate stative verb in the first sentence appears as the predicate at the end of the sentence, and it gives a physical description of the subject. In the second sentence above, the attributive stative verb appears before its modified noun and limits the range of the noun having the characteristics of being pretty. However, unlike English adjectives, which take the same form regardless of whether they are used as predicate adjectives or attributive adjectives, stative verbs in Korean take the noun-modifying suffixes when they are used as attributive stative verbs.

Verb Types	Tense	Noun modifying suffixes	Examples (예문)
Attributive Stative Verbs	All Tenses	<p>~은 After a consonant</p> <p>~ㄴ After a vowel</p>	<p>나는 [작은] 차를 하나 사고 싶다. (=I want to buy a small car.)</p> <p>오늘은 하루 종일 [맑은] 날씨가 계속되겠습니다. (=Today clear weather must continue throughout the day.)</p> <p>존은 [많은] 돈이 필요하다. (=John needs a lot of money.)</p> <p>메리는 [큰] 가방을 좋아한다. (=Mary likes a big bag.)</p> <p>우리 선생님은 아주 [친절한] 사람이다. (=My teacher is a very kind person.)</p> <p>우리 반에 [예쁜] 학생이 많다. (=There are many pretty students in my class.)</p>

## II . Noun-Modifying Suffixes for Action Verbs

Noun modifying function in Korean is not just limited to attributive stative verbs. In fact, it is more frequently used with action verbs. Aside from the opposite order of modifying clauses and their modified nouns and the lack of relative pronouns, noun-modifying clauses with action verbs are very similar to English relative clauses.



As we see in the sentences above, each noun-modifying clause is a subordinate clause which is semantically a complete idea unit with one piece of information missing. The missing information is provided by the preceding noun in English and the following noun in Korean.

Special attention must be paid to the fact that a noun-modifying clause with an action verb in Korean takes a different modifying suffix depending on the tense of the modifying clause as shown below.

Verb Types	Tense	Noun modifying suffixes	Examples (예문)
Modifying Action Verbs	Present	~는 After a consonant or a vowel	[존이 먹 <b>는</b> ] 피자가 맛있게 보입니다. (=The pizza that John is eating looks delicious.) [메리가 사 <b>는</b> ] 가방이 아주 비싸다. (=The bag that Mary is buying is very expensive.)
	Past	~은 After a consonant ~ㄴ After a vowel	[존이 먹 <b>은</b> ] 피자가 맛있게 보였습니다. (=The pizza that John ate looked delicious.) [메리가 사 <b>는</b> ] 가방이 아주 비싸다. (=The bag that Mary bought is very expensive.)
	Future	~을 After a consonant ~ㄹ After a vowel or “ㄹ”	[존이 먹 <b>을</b> ] 피자가 맛있게 보입니다. (=The pizza that John will eat looks delicious.) [메리가 사 <b>는</b> ] 가방이 아주 비싸다. (=The bag that Mary will buy is very expensive.)

### III . Noun-Modifying Suffixes Expressing Temporary State or Habitual Action in the Past

Verb Types	Tense	Noun modifying suffixes	Examples (예문)
Stative Verbs	Temporary State in the Past	~(았)던 if the preceding syllable contains the vowel “오” or “아” Otherwise, ~(었)던	존은 키가 [작 <b>았</b> 던/작 <b>던</b> ] 학생이었다. (=John used to be a short student.) 메리는 얼굴이 [예 <b>했</b> 던/예 <b>쁘</b> 던] 아이였다. (=Mary used to be a pretty girl.) 우리 회사는 일하기가 [좋 <b>았</b> 던/좋 <b>던</b> ] 곳이었다. (=Our company used to be a good place to work.) 여기는 아주 [조용 <b>했</b> 던/조용하 <b>던</b> ] 곳이었다. (=This place used to be very quiet.)
Action Verbs	Temporary Habitual Action in the Past	~(았)던 if the preceding syllable contains the vowel “오” or “아” Otherwise, ~(었)던	이 식당이 [내가 자주 갔 <b>던</b> /가 <b>던</b> ] 식당이다. (=This is the restaurant where I used to go often.) 이 옷이 [내가 자주 입 <b>었</b> 던/입 <b>던</b> ] 옷이다. (=These are the clothes that I used to wear often.) 여기는 [내가 자주 걸 <b>었</b> 던/걸 <b>던</b> ] 곳이다. (=This is the place where I used to take a walk often.) 존은 [공부를 잘 <b>했</b> 던/잘하 <b>던</b> ] 학생이었다. (=John used to be a student who studied well.)

In addition to the regular noun modifying suffixes for stative and action verbs that we have discussed so far, there are some variants of the past tense noun-modifying suffixes. “~(았/었)던” are used with a stative verb and indicate that the following noun used to be in the temporary state of having the properties of the preceding stative verb. But when they are attached to an action verb, they indicate that the following noun used to be the target of the habitual action that had continued for some time in the past, but is no longer true afterwards.

## IV. Summary of Noun-Modifying Suffixes

Verb Types	Tense	Noun modifying suffixes	Examples (예문)
Action Verbs	Present	<p>~는</p> <p>After a consonant or a vowel</p>	<p>[존이 먹<b>는</b> 피자]가 맛있게 보입니다. (=The pizza that John is eating looks delicious.)</p> <p>[메리가 사<b>는</b> 가방]이 아주 비싸다. (=The bag that Mary is buying is very expensive.)</p>
	Past	<p>~은</p> <p>After a consonant</p> <p>~ㄴ</p> <p>After a vowel</p>	<p>[존이 먹<b>은</b> 피자]가 맛있게 보였습니다. (=The pizza that John ate looked delicious.)</p> <p>[메리가 사<b>는</b> 가방]이 아주 비싸다. (=The bag that Mary bought is very expensive.)</p>
	Future	<p>~을</p> <p>After a consonant</p> <p>~ㄹ</p> <p>After a vowel or "ㄹ"</p>	<p>[존이 먹<b>을</b> 피자]가 맛있게 보입니다. (=The pizza that John will eat looks delicious.)</p> <p>[메리가 사<b>를</b> 가방]이 아주 비싸다. (=The bag that Mary will buy is very expensive.)</p>
	Temporary Habitual Action in the Past	<p>~(았)던</p> <p>if the preceding syllable contains the vowel "오" or "아" Otherwise,</p> <p>~(었)던</p>	<p>이 식당이 [내가 자주 <b>갔</b>던/가<b>던</b>] 식당이다. (=This is the restaurant where I used to go often.)</p> <p>이 옷이 [내가 자주 <b>입</b>었던/입<b>던</b>] 옷이다. (=These are the clothes that I used to wear often.)</p> <p>여기는 [내가 자주 <b>걸</b>었던/걸<b>던</b>] 곳이다. (=This is the place where I used to take a walk often.)</p> <p>존은 [공부를 <b>잘</b>했<b>던</b>/잘하<b>던</b>] 학생이었다. (=John used to be a student who studied well.)</p>
Stative Verbs	All Tenses	<p>~은</p> <p>After a consonant</p> <p>~ㄴ</p> <p>After a vowel</p>	<p>나는 [작<b>은</b> 차]를 하나 사고 싶다. (=I want to buy a small car.)</p> <p>오늘은 하루 종일 [맑<b>은</b> 날씨가] 계속되겠습니다. (=Today clear weather must continue throughout the day.)</p> <p>존은 [많<b>은</b> 돈]이 필요하다. (=John needs a lot of money.)</p> <p>메리는 [큰] 가방을 좋아한다. (=Mary likes a big bag.)</p> <p>우리 선생님은 아주 [친절<b>한</b>] 사람이다. (=My teacher is a very kind person.)</p>
	Temporary State in the Past	<p>~(았)던</p> <p>if the preceding syllable contains the vowel "오" or "아" Otherwise,</p> <p>~(었)던</p>	<p>존은 키가 [작<b>았</b>던/작<b>던</b>] 학생이었다. (=John used to be a short student.)</p> <p>메리는 얼굴이 [예<b>뻤</b>던/예<b>쁘</b>던] 아이였다. (=Mary used to be a pretty girl.)</p> <p>우리 회사는 일하기가 [좋<b>았</b>던/좋<b>던</b>] 곳이었다. (=Our company used to be a good place to work.)</p> <p>여기는 아주 [조용<b>했</b>던/조용하<b>던</b>] 곳이었다. (=This place used to be very quiet.)</p>



## 17 Negation (부정문)

In Korean, there are basically two different forms of negation: the short form of negation and the long form of negation. The former is used to directly negate a verb using the negative markers “안” or “못,” whereas the latter is used to negate the truth value of the preceding statement using the negative verbal suffixes “~지 않다” or “~지 못하다.” In the case of negating imperative and propositional sentences, however, we use the negative verbal suffix “~지 말다” instead. Also, there are some verbs such as “이다,” “있다” and “알다” that have their own specific negative forms “아니다,” “없다,” “모르다,” respectively. On the other hand, we can also classify some negative sentences in terms of the degree of negation. For example, when “아무+Noun+도” is used in a negative sentence, it expresses complete negation, whereas “아무+Noun+(이)나” in a negative sentence indicates partial negation. Unlike “아무+Noun+도,” “아무+Noun+(이)나” can also be used in a positive sentence to express complete assertion. We will also discuss some useful negative expressions in this chapter.

### I . Short Form of Negation: “안” and “못”

#### (1) Negating an Action Verb

When we negate an action verb with the negative markers “안” and “못,” we must place the negative markers right before the verb. The negative marker “안” carries the implication that the subject has an option whether to carry out the specified action or not, but actually didn't. In contrast, the negative marker “못” implies that the subject is somehow unable to carry out the specified action due to some external reasons.

Negative Marker	Examples with Action Verbs
안	<p>존은 학교에 <b>안</b> 간다. (=John doesn't go to school (because he doesn't want to).)</p> <p>존은 땅콩을 <b>안</b> 먹는다. (=John doesn't eat peanuts (because he doesn't want to).)</p> <p>존은 노래를 <b>안</b> 부른다. (=John doesn't sing a song (because he doesn't want to).)</p> <p>존은 영화를 <b>안</b> 본다. (=John doesn't watch a movie (because he doesn't want to).)</p>
못	<p>메리는 학교에 <b>못</b> 간다. (=Mary cannot go to school (because she is so sick).)</p> <p>메리는 땅콩을 <b>못</b> 먹는다. (=Mary cannot eat peanuts (because she is allergic to them).)</p> <p>메리는 노래를 <b>못</b> 부른다. (=Mary cannot sing a song (because she had oral surgery last week).)</p> <p>메리는 공포영화를 <b>못</b> 본다. (=Mary cannot watch a horror movie (because she gets scared to death).)</p>

However, if the negative markers “안” and “못” are used with the action verb that was originally derived from the combination of a Chinese noun and the verbal suffix “~하다,” then they must be placed between the noun and “~하다” by separating them from each other. Subsequently, the separated noun will become an independent noun which can serve as the object of the separated verb “하다.” Therefore, it can take the object case markers “~을/를” even though these case markers are more likely de-

Nouns originated from	Noun + 하다 Action Verbs	Examples (예문)
Chinese	공부 + 하다 (to study)	존은 전혀 공부(를) <b>안</b> 한다. (=John doesn't study at all.)
	숙제 + 하다 (to do homework)	메리는 숙제(를) <b>못</b> 했다. (=Mary couldn't do her homework.)
	합격 + 하다 (to pass an exam)	존은 시험에 합격(을) <b>못</b> 했다. (=John could not pass the exam.)
Korean	사랑 + 하다 (to love)	메리는 존을 사랑 <b>안</b> 한다. (=Mary doesn't love John.)
	노래 + 하다 (to sing a song)	존은 노래(를) <b>못</b> 한다. (=John cannot sing well.)
	고자질 + 하다 (to snitch on)	메리는 존을 고자질(을) <b>안</b> 했다. (=Mary didn't snitch on John.)
English	게임 + 하다 (to play a game)	존은 컴퓨터 게임(을) <b>안</b> 한다. (=John doesn't play computer games.)
	데이트 + 하다 (to go on a date)	메리는 존과 데이트(를) <b>못</b> 했다. (=Mary couldn't go on a date with John.)
	인터넷 + 하다 (to surf on the internet)	존은 9시 이후에 인터넷(을) <b>못</b> 한다. (=John cannot surf on the internet after 9:00 PM.)

leted in conversation. This negation rule is now extended to apply to any verb that is created by combining a noun with the verbal suffix “~하다.”

However, a little caution must be paid to the verbs that were originally derived from the combination of a Chinese verb and the verbal suffix “~하다” such as “망(亡)+하다” and “변(變)+하다.” In this case, the negative marker must be placed before the verb, not between the component parts.

그 회사는 안 망했다. (=The company didn't go bankrupt.)

그 회사는 망 안 했다. (NOT OK)

존은 전혀 안 변했다. (=John hasn't changed at all.)

존은 전혀 변 안 했다. (NOT OK)

## (2) Negating a Stative Verb

Stative Verbs	Examples with Stative Verbs
작다 (small or short)	존은 키가 <u>안</u> 크다. (=John is not tall.)
예쁘다 (pretty)	메리는 <u>안</u> 예쁘다. (=Mary is not pretty.)
많다 (a lot)	백화점에 사람이 <u>안</u> 많다. (There are not many people at the department store.)
날씬하다 (slender)	메리는 <u>안</u> 날씬하다. (=Mary is not slender.) 메리는 날씬 <u>안</u> 하다. (NOT OK)
착하다 (kindhearted)	존은 <u>안</u> 착하다. (=John is not kindhearted.) 존은 착 <u>안</u> 하다. (NOT OK)
독하다 (spiteful)	메리는 <u>안</u> 독하다. (=Mary is not a spiteful woman.) 메리는 독 <u>안</u> 하다. (NOT OK)
연하다 (soft)	이 고기는 <u>안</u> 연하다. (=This meat is not soft.) 이 고기는 연 <u>안</u> 하다. (NOT OK)
순진하다 (naive)	메리는 <u>안</u> 순진하다. (=Mary is not naive.) 메리는 순진 <u>안</u> 하다. (NOT OK)
정직하다 (正直) (honest)	존은 <u>안</u> 정직하다. (=John is not honest.) 존은 정직 <u>안</u> 하다. (NOT OK)
순수하다 (純粹) (pure hearted)	메리는 <u>안</u> 순수하다. (=Mary is not pure hearted.) 메리는 순수 <u>안</u> 하다. (NOT OK)
부지런하다 (diligent)	메리는 <u>안</u> 부지런하다. (=Mary is not diligent.) 메리는 부지런 <u>안</u> 하다. (NOT OK)
아름답다 (beautiful)	우리 집 정원은 <u>안</u> 아름답습니다. (OK, but it sounds unnatural.) 우리 집 정원은 아름답 <u>지</u> 않습니다. (=Our garden is not beautiful.)
탐욕스럽다 (greedy)	그 사람은 <u>안</u> 탐욕스럽다. (NOT OK) 그 사람은 탐욕스럽 <u>지</u> 않다. (=That person is not greedy.)
먹음직스럽다 (mouth-watering)	그 사과는 <u>안</u> 먹음직스럽다. (OK, but it sounds unnatural.) 그 사과는 먹음직스럽 <u>지</u> 않다. (=That apple is not mouth-watering.)
사랑스럽다 (lovely)	메리는 <u>안</u> 사랑스럽다. (NOT OK) 메리는 사랑스럽 <u>지</u> 않다. (=Mary is not a lovely person.)
울퉁불퉁하다 (rugged)	길이 <u>안</u> 울퉁불퉁하다. (NOT OK) 길이 울퉁불퉁 <u>하</u> 지 않다. (The road is not rugged.)

The negative marker “안” is used when we negate a stative verb, and it is always placed before the verb. Even in the case that a stative verb was originally derived from the combination of a Chinese noun and the verbal suffix “~하다” such as “정직(正直:honesty)+하다” and “순수(純粹:purity)+하다,” the negative marker “안” must be placed before the entire verb, not in between. On the other hand, if the verb stem of a stative verb contains three or more syllables, it will be more natural to negate the verb using the long form of negation with “~지 않다” rather than using the negative marker “안.” In general, for stative verbs, the long form of negation is the default rule and can be freely used in both written text and conversation, whereas the short form of negation with “안” is primarily used in casual conversation.

## II . Long form of Negation: “~지 않다” and “~지 못하다”

Unlike the short form of negation which directly negates a verb, the long form of negation with the negative verbal suffixes “~지 않다” or “~지 못하다” reflects the speaker/writer’s negative judgment on the truth value of the preceding statement, which can be rendered as “It is not the case that \_.” “~지 않다” can be used with an action verb when the speaker/writer thinks that the subject has control over whether to take action or not but actually does not take it. “~지 못하다” can be used when the speaker/writer thinks that the subject is unable to carry out an action due to some external reasons. In the case of negating stative verbs, “~지 않다” is used as a default form and simply negates the truth value of the preceding statement according to the speaker/writer’s personal judgment. On the other hand, “~지 못하다” is used when the speaker/writer is unable to accept the preceding statement due to some external reasons, but its usage is quite limited.

Verbs	Negative Verbal Suffix	Examples for Long Form of Negation
Action Verbs	~지 않다	<p>존은 복숭아를 먹지 않는다. (=It is not the case that John does eat peaches.) (=John doesn't eat peaches (because he doesn't want to).)</p> <p>존은 저녁을 아직 먹지 않았다. (=It is not the case that John ate dinner already.) (=John did not eat dinner yet (because he was not hungry).)</p> <p>존은 저녁을 먹지 않을 거다. (=It is not the case that John will eat dinner.) (=John will not eat dinner (because he is on a diet).)</p>
	~지 못하다	<p>존은 복숭아를 먹지 못한다. (=It is not the case that John is able to eat peaches.) (=John cannot eat peaches (because he is allergic to them).)</p> <p>존은 저녁을 아직 먹지 못했다. (=It is not the case that John was able to eat dinner already.) (=John could not eat dinner yet (because there was no food at home).)</p> <p>존은 저녁을 먹지 못할 거다. (=It is not the case that John will be able to eat dinner.) (=John will not be able to eat dinner (because of his oral surgery).)</p>
Stative Verbs	~지 않다	<p>존은 지금 바쁘지 않다. (=It is not the case that John is busy now.)</p> <p>존은 뚱뚱하지 않다. (=It is not the case that John is fat.)</p>
	~지 못하다	<p>이런 행동은 옳바르지 못하다. (=It is not the case that this kind of behavior is right (according to our social convention).)</p> <p>이 사건의 증거가 확실하지 못하다. (=It is not the case that the evidence of this case is solid (because you provided me only circumstantial evidence).)</p>

### Ⅲ . Negating Imperative and Propositional Sentences Using “~지 않다”

To negate an imperative or propositional sentence, the negative suffix “~지 않다” can be attached to a verb stem. In an imperative sentence, the speaker orders the listener not to do something. Similarly, in a propositional sentence, the speaker proposes to the listener not to carry out an action.

Negative Suffix	Sentence Types	Examples (예문)
~지 말다	Imperative	그곳에 들어가지 <b>마십시오</b> . (=Please don't enter the premises.) 그 남자와 결혼하지 <b>마라</b> . (=Don't get married to him.) 수업시간에 떠들지 <b>마세요</b> . (=Please do not make any noise during class.) 메리를 괴롭히지 <b>마요</b> . (=Please don't bother Mary.) 이 케이크는 먹지 <b>마</b> . (=Don't eat this cake.)
	Proposition	존과 같이 여행가지 <b>맙시다</b> . (=Let's not take a trip with John.) 우리 숙제하지 <b>말자</b> . (=Let's not do our homework.) 우리 거기 가지 <b>마요</b> . (=Let's not go there.) 우리 피자 먹지 <b>말지</b> . (=Let's not eat pizza)

## IV. Special Negative Verbs: 이다 → 아니다, 있다 → 없다, 알다 → 모르다

Some verbs have their own negative verb counterparts which override any possible negative forms that can be generated by applying the negation rules that we have discussed so far.

### 1. “~이다” and Its Negative Verb “아니다”

The copula “~이다” is used to express an equational sentence rendered as “A equals B.” The subject is equal to or is a possible member of the predicate noun. But it cannot stand alone, and therefore it is always attached to the preceding noun. Unlike “~이다,” however, its negative form “아니다” is an independent verb and cannot be attached to the predicate noun. Therefore, when we negate an equational sentence, a grammatically unusual situation will be created. The predicate noun goes astray without carrying a case marker, unlike other regular nouns. To avoid this undesirable situation, we attach the subject case markers “~이/가” to the predicate noun as a default case marker in the sense that the subject and the predicate noun are grammatically in equal status. Consequently, it creates a seemingly unusual sentence that has two different subjects in a single sentence. But this kind of double subject construction or even multiple subject

construction is not only permissible but also frequently occurs in Korean, which will be discussed later in Chapter 21 Double Subjects and Objects.

존이 학생입니다. → 존이 학생 아닙니다 → 존이 학생이 아닙니다.  
 (=John is a student.) (=John is not a student.)

메리가 교수입니다. → 메리가 교수 아닙니다 → 메리가 교수가 아닙니다.  
 (=Mary is a professor.) (=Mary is not a professor.)

Below are example sentences that show how to negate the various honorific and blunt forms of the copula “이다.”

Inflecting forms of “이다”	Positive Sentences	Negative Sentences
Formal Honorific/ Blunt Forms	존이 경찰관 <u>입니다</u> . (=John is a police officer.) 메리가 변호사 <u>입니다</u> . (=Mary is a lawyer.)	존이 경찰관이 <u>아닙니다</u> . 메리가 변호사가 <u>아닙니다</u> .
	아버님이 국회의원 <u>입니다</u> . (=My father is a National Assemblyman.) 어머님이 가정주부 <u>입니다</u> . (=My mother is a homemaker.)	아버님이 국회의원이 <u>아니시다</u> . 어머님이 가정주부가 <u>아니시다</u> .
	아버님이 공무원 <u>입니다</u> . (=My father is a civil servant.) 어머님이 요리사 <u>입니다</u> . (=My mother is a cook.)	아버님이 공무원이 <u>아니십니다</u> . 어머님이 요리사가 <u>아니십니다</u> .
	존이 학생 <u>이다</u> . (=John is a student.) 메리가 의사 <u>다</u> . <sup>1</sup> (=Mary is a doctor.)	존이 학생이 <u>아니다</u> . 메리가 의사가 <u>아니다</u> .
Informal Honorific/ Blunt Forms	존이 소방관 <u>이에요</u> . (=John is a firefighter.) 메리가 간호사 <u>예요</u> . (=Mary is a nurse.)	존이 소방관이 <u>아니예요</u> . 메리가 간호사가 <u>아니예요</u> .
	아버님이 회장님 <u>이셔</u> . (=My father is a company CEO.) 어머님이 검사 <u>셔</u> . (=My mother is a prosecutor.)	아버님이 회장님이 <u>아니셔</u> . 어머님이 검사 <u>가 아니셔</u> .
	아버님이 군인 <u>이세요</u> . (=My father is a military serviceman.) 어머님이 판사 <u>세요</u> . (=My mother is a judge.)	아버님이 군인이 <u>아니세요</u> . 어머님이 판사 <u>가 아니세요</u> .
	존이 범인 <u>이야</u> . (=John is a suspect.) 메리가 천사 <u>야</u> . <sup>2</sup> (=Mary is an angel.)	존이 범인이 <u>아니야</u> . 메리가 천사가 <u>아니야</u> .

**Note**

1. The formal blunt form of the copula “이다” is “다” if the preceding noun ends with a vowel. But “이다” can sometimes be used instead to emphasize the preceding complement noun.
2. The informal blunt form of the copula verb is “야” if the preceding noun ends with a vowel.

## 2. “있다” and Its Negative Verb “없다”

The verb “있다” carries two different functions. One is to express the location of the subject with the location case marker “~에” (see Chapter 4 Nouns and Case Markers for more details). The other is to indicate one’s possession of an item which can be expressed with the dative case markers “~에게” and “~한테” (see Chapter 12 Verbs) or in the double subject construction (see Chapter 21 Double Subjects and Objects for more details).

### (1) Location

존이 학교에 있다.

(=John is at school.)

책이 책상에 있다.

(=The book is on the table.)

### (2) Possession

존에게/한테 차가 있다.

(=John has a car.)

존이 차가 있다.

(=It is John who has a car.)

But regardless of its different functions, the negative form of the verb “있다” is always “없다.”

존이 학교에 없다.

(=John is not at school.)

존이 차가 없다.

(=It is John who does not have a car.)

## 3. “알다” and Its Negative Verb “모르다”

The negative form of the verb “알다” is “모르다.”

존은 메리를 압니다.  
 (=John knows Mary.)

존은 메리를 모릅니다.  
 (=John doesn't know Mary.)

## V. Complete Negation vs. Partial Negation vs. Complete Assertion

### 1. Complete Negation: 아무 + Noun + 도 in a negative sentence

“아무+Noun+도” can be used in a negative sentence to express complete negation. The noun used here is typically a generic noun such as “것(thing)” or “일(happening)” as in “아무것도(anything), 아무 일도(any happening).” If we intend to refer to a place, the generic place nouns “테(place)” or “곳(place)” can be used instead as in “아무 데도 (anywhere)” and “아무 곳에도(anywhere).” In the case that we intend to refer to a non-specific person, the noun part can be simply dropped as in “아무도(anyone)” or “아무한테도(to anyone).”

Complete Negation in a Negative Sentence	
아무 + Noun + 도 <sup>1</sup>	존한테서 <u>아무 소식도</u> 없어요. (=There is no news coming from John.) 주차장에 <u>아무 차도</u> 없어요. (There is no car in the parking lot.) 메리가 <u>아무 말도</u> 하지 않았어요. (=Mary didn't say anything.)
아무것도 (nothing)	저는 <u>아무것도</u> 안 했습니다. (=As for me, I didn't do anything.)
아무 일도 (nothing)	냉장고에 <u>아무것도</u> 없습니다. (=There's nothing in the refrigerator.)
아무 데도 (nowhere)	존은 <u>아무것도</u> 모릅니다. (=As for John, he doesn't know anything.) <u>아무 일도</u> 아니에요. (=It's just nothing.)
아무 곳에도 (nowhere)	메리는 지난 주말에 <u>아무 데도</u> 안 갔습니다. (=As for Mary, she didn't go anywhere last weekend.)
아무도 (no one)	다 찾아봤는데 <u>아무 데도</u> 없습니다. (=I searched everywhere, but it was not there.)
아무한테도 (not to anyone)	<u>아무 곳에도</u> 가지 마세요. (=Don't go anywhere.) 방에 <u>아무도</u> 없습니다. (=No one is in the room.) <u>아무도</u> 거기에 가지 않았습니니다. (=No one went there.) 이걸 <u>아무한테도</u> 말하지 마세요. (=Don't tell anyone about this.) 존은 <u>아무한테도</u> 약속을 지키지 않았다. (=As for John, he didn't keep his promise to anyone.)

**Note:**

1. Instead of “아무 + Noun + 도,” “아무런 + Noun + 도” can sometimes be used in a negative sentence to express “not any kind of the noun.”

존은 아무런 말도 하지 않았다.  
 (=As for John, he didn't say a word.)  
 어제 아무런 일도 일어나지 않았다.  
 (=Nothing happened yesterday.)

## 2. Partial Negation: 아무 + Noun + (이)나 in a negative sentence

“아무+Noun+(이)나” can be used in a negative sentence to express partial negation, which can be rendered as “not just anything/any place/anyone.” The noun is often replaced by the generic noun “것(thing)” or its contraction form “거(thing)” if it refers to a generic object as in “아무것이나(anything)” and “아무거나(anything).” If we intend to refer to a place, the generic place nouns “데(place)” or “곳(place)” can be used instead as in “아무 데나(anywhere)” and “아무 곳에나(anywhere).” In the case that we intend to refer to a non-specific person, “아무나(anyone)” or “아무한테나(to anyone)” can be used.

Partial Negation in a Negative Sentence	
아무 + Noun + (이)나	<p>존은 <u>아무 식당이나</u> 가지 않습니다.          (=John doesn't go to just any restaurant, =John only goes to some special restaurants.)</p> <p>메리는 <u>아무 옷이나</u> 안 입는다.          (=Mary doesn't wear just any kind of clothes, =Mary only wears specific kind of clothes.)</p> <p><u>아무 컴퓨터나</u> 사지 마세요.          (=Don't buy just any kind of computer, =Buy a special brand of computer.)</p>
아무것이나/ 아무거나 (nothing) 아무 데나 (nowhere) 아무 곳에나 (nowhere)	<p><u>아무것이나</u> 사지 마세요.          (Please don't buy just anything, =Please buy something that meets your need.)</p> <p>존은 <u>아무거나</u> 안 먹어요.          (=John doesn't eat just any kind of food, =John is a picky eater.)</p> <p>귀중품은 <u>아무 데나</u> 두지 마세요.          (=Don't put your valuables just anywhere, =Put your valuables in a secure area.)</p> <p><u>아무 곳에나</u> 침을 뱉지 마세요.          (=Don't just spit any place, =You may spit in the trash can.)</p>
아무나 (no one) 아무한테나 (not to anyone)	<p>여기는 <u>아무나</u> 들어올 수 없습니다.          (=Not just anyone can enter these premises, =Only a person with a security clearance may enter these premises.)</p> <p>이 프로젝트는 <u>아무한테나</u> 부탁할 수 없습니다.          (=I cannot ask just anyone to do this project, =I can only ask an expert to do this project.)</p>

### 3. Complete Assertion: 아무 + Noun + (이)나 in a positive sentence

“아무+Noun+(이)나” can be used in a positive sentence to express complete assertion, which can be rendered as “just anything/any place/anyone.” The noun is often replaced by the generic noun “것(thing)” or its contraction form “거(thing)” if it refers to a generic object, as in “아무것이나 (anything)” and “아무거나(anything).” If we intend to refer to a place, the generic place nouns “데(place)” or “곳(place)” can be used instead, as in “아무 데나(anywhere)” and “아무 곳에나(anywhere).” In the case that we intend to refer to a non-specific person, “아무나(anyone)” or “아무한테나(to anyone)” will be used.

Complete Assertion in a Positive Sentence	
아무 + Noun + (이)나	<p>존은 <u>아무 식당이나</u> 갑니다. (=John goes to just any restaurant.)</p> <p>메리는 <u>아무 옷이나</u> 입는다. (=Mary wears just any kind of clothes.)</p> <p><u>아무 컴퓨터나</u> 사세요. (=Just buy any kind of computer.)</p>
<p><u>아무것이나/아무거나</u> (anything)</p> <p><u>아무 데나</u> (anywhere)</p> <p><u>아무 곳에나</u> (anywhere)</p>	<p><u>아무것이나</u> 사세요. (=Just buy anything.)</p> <p>그냥 <u>아무거나</u> 주세요. (=Just give me anything.)</p> <p>여기 <u>아무 데나</u> 두세요. (=Just put it anywhere here.)</p> <p>그건 백화점 <u>아무 곳에나</u> 가면 살 수 있어요. (=You can buy it at any department store.)</p>
<p><u>아무나</u> (anyone)</p> <p><u>아무한테나</u> (to anyone)</p>	<p>그 일은 <u>아무나</u> 할 수 있어요. (=Anyone can do the job.)</p> <p>거기 <u>아무한테나</u> 부탁하세요. (=Just ask anyone there to do it for you.)</p>

## VI. Some Useful Negative Expressions

### 1. A이지 B이/가 아니다 (Making strong confirmation/denial)

“A이지 B이/가 아니다” can be used to express strong confirmation of “A” and at the same time strong denial of “B.”

여기가 우리 집이지 니네 집이 아니다.

(=This is my house, not yours.)

단지 실수였을 뿐이지 고의가 아니었다.

(=It was just a mistake. I didn't do it on purpose.)

## 2. A이/가 아니라 B (Fixing incorrect information)

“A이/가 아니라 B” can be used to fix the wrong information “A” into the correct one “B” by directly quoting the incorrect information.

A: 존이 선생님을 도와 드렸다. (=John helped the teacher.)

B: 존이 아니라 메리가 도와 드렸다.

(=It was Mary, but not John, who helped the teacher.)

A: 존이 아직 학교에 있어요? (=Is John still at school?)

B: 학교가 아니라 지금 친구집에 있다.

(=It is at his friend's house, but not at school, where he is now.)

A: 오늘 밤에 일찍 자자. (=Let's go to bed early tonight.)

B: 피곤하세요? (=Are you tired?)

A: 피곤해서가 아니라 내일 일찍 일어나야 하기 때문이다.

(=It is not because I am tired, but because I have to get up early tomorrow.)

## 3. ~이/가 아닌가요? (Seeking confirmation)

“~(이/가) 아닌가요?” can be used in a question to seek confirmation from the listener whether the preceding expression is true or not.

오늘 존의 생일이 아닌가요?

(=Today is John's birthday, right?)

메리가 변호사가 아닌가요?

(=Mary is a lawyer, right?)

#### 4. ~이/가 아니고서는 (If it's not an A, it's impossible)

“~이/가 아니고서는” can be used in a negative sentence to express that the preceding noun is the precondition for carrying out the action in the following clause or to be in the specific state, as in the following clause. Since “~이/가 아니고서는” is already in negative form and must be used in a negative sentence, the resulting sentence will be in double-negative form, which can be rendered as a strong positive sentence.

전문가가 아니고서는 도저히 이 문제를 풀 수가 없다.

(=If someone is not an expert, he/she cannot solve this problem. =Only an expert can solve this problem.)

진짜 다이아몬드가 아니고서는 이렇게 빛이 날 수가 없다.

(=If it is not a real diamond, it cannot shine like this. = Only a real diamond can shine like this.)



## CHAPTER 18 Comparison (비교구문)

In Korean, there are three different ways to compare a noun or pronoun with another noun or pronoun with respect to the quality or quantity that a stative verb or an adverb describes. In terms of the degree of comparison, they can be classified into equatives, comparatives, and superlatives. The equative suffix “~만큼 (as \_ as)” is used to express that two different nouns or pronouns are basically equivalent to each other from the aspect that they are being compared. The comparative suffixes “~보다 (더) (more \_ than)” and “~보다 덜 (less \_ than)” are used to indicate the differences between two entities in terms of the quality or quantity by which they are being compared. Lastly, the superlative form “~에서/중(에)(서)/가운데(서) 제일/가장 (the most \_ in/among)” is used to designate a noun or pronoun that surpasses all other members of the group it belongs to in terms of the quality or quantity by which it is being compared with others.

### I . Expressing the different degree of comparison

Degree of comparison	Comparison Forms	Examples (예문)
Equative	~만큼 (as _ as)	존이 아인슈타인만큼 <b>똑똑하다</b> . (=John is as smart as Einstein.) 메리가 그 영화배우만큼 <b>예쁘다</b> . (=Mary is as pretty as that actress.) 존이 메리만큼 <b>열심히</b> 일한다. (=John works as hard as Mary.)
Comparative	~보다 (더) (_er/more _ than)	존이 아인슈타인보다 (더) <b>똑똑하다</b> . (=John is smarter than Einstein.) 메리가 그 영화배우보다 (더) <b>예쁘다</b> . (=Mary is prettier than that actress.) 존이 메리보다 (더) <b>열심히</b> 일한다. (=John works harder than Mary.)
	~보다 덜 (less _ than)	존이 아인슈타인보다 <b>덜 똑똑하다</b> . (=John is less smart than Einstein.) 메리가 그 영화배우보다 <b>덜 예쁘다</b> . (=Mary is less pretty than that actress.) 존이 메리보다 <b>덜 열심히</b> 일한다. (=John works less hard than Mary.)

Superlative	~에서 제일/가장 <sup>1</sup>	존이 자기 <b>반에서 제일/가장 똑똑하다.</b> (=John is the smartest one in his class.)
	중(에)(서)	
	제일/가장 가운데(서)	메리가 자기 반 학생들 <b>중/중에/중에서 제일/가장 예쁘다.</b> (=Mary is the prettiest one among all the students in her class.)
	제일/가장 (the most _ among)	존이 이 학생들 <b>가운데(서) 제일/가장 열심히</b> 일한다. (=John is the hardest working student among these students.)

**Note:**

1. “~에서” is used with a collective noun that refers to the group of which the preceding noun is a member, whereas “중/중에/중에서/가운데(서)” are used with a plural noun or pronoun that refers to a multiple number of individual items or people.

## II . Additional forms of comparison

In addition to the comparison forms that we have discussed so far, there are also other frequently-used comparison forms that are being used to compare two different entities.

Comparison Formulas	Examples (예문)
A가/이 B(이)랑/하고/과/와 같다 (A is the same as B)	존이 메리랑 나이가 <u>같다</u> . 존이 메리 <u>하고</u> 나이가 <u>같다</u> . 존이 메리 <u>와</u> 나이가 <u>같다</u> . (=John is the same age as Mary.)
A(이)랑/하고 B(이)랑/하고 같다 (A and B are the same) <sup>1</sup>	<u>존이랑</u> 메리랑 나이가 <u>같다</u> . <u>존하고</u> 메리 <u>하고</u> 나이가 <u>같다</u> . (=John and Mary are the same age.) <u>존과</u> 메리 <u>와</u> 나이가 <u>같다</u> . (NOT OK) (=John and Mary are the same age.)
A가/이 B(이)랑/하고/과/와 다르다 (A is different from B)	존이 메리랑 의견이 <u>다르다</u> . 존이 메리 <u>하고</u> 의견이 <u>다르다</u> . 존이 메리 <u>와</u> 의견이 <u>다르다</u> . (=John has a different opinion from Mary's.)
A(이)랑/하고 B(이)랑/하고 다르다 (A and B are different) <sup>1</sup>	<u>존이랑</u> 메리랑 의견이 <u>다르다</u> . <u>존하고</u> 메리 <u>하고</u> 의견이 <u>다르다</u> . (=John and Mary have different opinions.) <u>존과</u> 메리 <u>와</u> 의견이 <u>다르다</u> . (NOT OK) (=John and Mary have different opinions.)
A가/이 B(이)랑/하고/과/와 비슷하다 (A is similar to B)	존이 메리랑 성격이 <u>비슷하다</u> . 존이 메리 <u>하고</u> 성격이 <u>비슷하다</u> . 존이 메리 <u>와</u> 성격이 <u>비슷하다</u> . (=John is similar in character to Mary.)

<p>A(이)랑/하고 B(이)랑/하고 비슷하다 A(이)나 B(이)나 비슷하다 (A and B are similar)<sup>1</sup></p>	<p>존이랑 메리랑 성격이 <u>비슷하다</u>. 존<u>하고</u> 메리<u>하고</u> 성격이 <u>비슷하다</u>. 존<u>이나</u> 메리<u>나</u> 성격이 <u>비슷하다</u>. (=John and Mary are similar in character.) 존<u>과</u> 메리<u>와</u> 성격이 <u>비슷하다</u>. (NOT OK) (=John and Mary are similar in character.)</p>
<p>A가/이 B(이)랑/하고/과/와 마찬가지로 (A is just the same as B)</p>	<p>이 TV는 저 TV<u>랑</u> 화질이 <u>마찬가지다</u>. 이 TV는 저 TV<u>하고</u> 화질이 <u>마찬가지다</u>. 이 TV는 저 TV<u>와</u> 화질이 <u>마찬가지다</u>. (=This TV has just the same picture quality as that TV.)</p>
<p>A(이)랑/하고 B(이)랑/하고 마찬가지로 A(이)나 B(이)나 마찬가지다 (A and B are just the same)<sup>*1</sup></p>	<p>이 차<u>랑</u> 저 차<u>랑</u> 가격이 <u>마찬가지다</u>. 이 차<u>하고</u> 저 차<u>하고</u> 가격이 <u>마찬가지다</u>. 이 차<u>나</u> 저 차<u>나</u> 가격이 <u>마찬가지다</u>. (=This car and that car are just the same in price.) 이 차<u>와</u> 저 차<u>와</u> 가격이 <u>마찬가지다</u>. (NOT OK) (=This car and that car are just the same in price.)</p>
<p>A가/이 B(이)랑/하고/과/와 <u>땀판</u>이다 (A is completely different from B)</p>	<p>존은 형이<u>랑</u> 얼굴이 <u>땀판</u>이다. 존은 형<u>하고</u> 얼굴이 <u>땀판</u>이다. 존은 형<u>과</u> 얼굴이 <u>땀판</u>이다. (=John's face is completely different from his brother's.)</p>
<p>A(이)랑/하고 B(이)랑/하고 <u>땀판</u>이다 (A and B are completely different)<sup>*1</sup></p>	<p>존이<u>랑</u> 형이<u>랑</u> 얼굴이 <u>땀판</u>이다. 존<u>하고</u> 형<u>하고</u> 얼굴이 <u>땀판</u>이다. (=John and his brother have completely different faces.) 존<u>과</u> 형<u>과</u> 얼굴이 <u>땀판</u>이다. (NOT OK) (=John and his brother have completely different faces.)</p>
<p>A가/이 B만 못하다 (A is not as good as B)</p>	<p>존은 인물이 동생<u>만</u> 못하다. (=John's physical appearance is not as good as his younger brother's.) 이번 공연이 지난번 공연<u>만</u> 못하다. (=This performance is not as good as the last one.)</p>

**Note: 1.** “~과/와” are not compatible with this comparison formula.



## 19 Passive Voice (수동태)

### I . Active Voice (능동태) vs. Passive Voice (수동태)

In English, there are two different ways to create a sentence that describes the action of a transitive verb. One is to put more focus on the role of the subject who takes the action than the result of the action that happened to the object. If a sentence is created for this purpose, we can say that it is in the active voice. In a typical active sentence, the subject is semantically, or more correctly thematically, portrayed as the actor (or the agent) of an action, whereas the object is considered to be the patient affected by the action.

**The terrorist** killed the policeman.  
[actor]                      [patient]

**Mary** broke the window.  
[actor]                      patient]

Another way to describe the same action is to put more emphasis on the result of the action itself. A sentence of this type is said to be in the passive voice. In a passive sentence, the patient of the action now becomes the subject followed by an appropriate form of a “be verb” and the past participle form of the action verb. It is subsequently followed by an optional “by phrase” which specifies who the actor is.

**The policeman** was killed (by the terrorist).  
[patient]                      [actor]

**The window** was broken (by Mary).  
[patient]                      [actor]

Although the frequency of passive sentences used in English is much less than that of active sentences, there are some specific speech situations in which passive sentences are strategically preferred. For example, it would be wise to use a passive sentence rather than its active counterpart in the case that (1) the speaker does not have the prior knowledge of who the actor is, (2) the speaker thinks that information about the actor is not that significant, or (3) the speaker does not want to make a strong commitment by saying who the actor is in high-stakes statements, such as legal documents or testimonial statements. In all of these speech situations, most speakers prefer to use passive sentences because of the optional nature of “by phrase,” which makes it possible to avoid mentioning who the actor is. It might be one of the main reasons that passive sentences are more predominantly used in legal documents than in any other forms of speech.

In Korean, the usage of the passive voice and the number of action verbs that actually participate in the passive construction are much more limited than in English. One reason is that Korean is the so-called “pro drop language,” which makes it possible to delete any part of a sentence if it is clear and can be easily retrieved from the context. Therefore, unlike English, the strategic advantage of using the passive voice is overshadowed. Another reason is that there are some other alternative grammatical constructions that will deliver the same effect as the passive voice while focusing on the result of an action. These grammatical devices apply more systematically to a much wider range of verbs. They are sometimes called “periphrastic passives” in the literature. Below we will first discuss how to make a Korean passive sentence and then continue to examine various types of periphrastic passives.

## II . Korean Passive Suffixes (수동접미사): ~이/~히/~리/~기

One of the most distinctive features of the Korean passive construction is that a transitive verb can be passivized simply by attaching one of the four passive suffixes to its verb stem without using any additional grammatical devices, such as the copula and past participle forms, as in English passive sentences. However, due to the idiosyncratic behavior of each passive suffix, it is impossible to predict what kind of passive suffix each verb

takes. Therefore, we need to treat passivized verbs as separate vocabulary items.

Passive Suffix	Verbs That Take Their Corresponding Passive Suffix	Examples (예문)
~이	보이다(to be seen), 쓰이다(to be used) 놓이다(to be put on) 쌓이다(to be stacked), 섞이다(to be mixed) 바뀌다(to be changed), 낚이다(to get caught) 모이다(to be gathered), 닦이다(to be wiped off) 파이다(to be dug), 덮이다(to be covered) 꼬이다(to be entangled) 꺼이다(to be broken off)	존이 메리를 봤습니다. (=John saw Mary.) 메리가 (존에게) <b>보였습니다</b> . (보 + <b>이</b> + 었습니다) <sup>1</sup> (=Mary was seen by John.) 존이 학생들을 모았습니다. (=John gathered the students.) 학생들이 <b>모였습니다</b> . (모 + <b>이</b> + 었습니다) (=The students were gathered.)
~히	먹히다(to be eaten), 잡히다(to be caught) 읽히다(to be read), 밟히다(to get stepped on) 접히다(to be folded), 막히다(to get clogged) 닫히다(to be closed), 꽃히다(to get stuck) 얽히다(to be entangled), 묻히다(to be buried) 씹히다(to be chewed) 긁히다(to be scratched) 뽑히다(to be selected) 잊히다(to be forgotten) 업히다(to be carried on one's back)	경찰이 강도를 잡았습니다. (The police caught the robber.) 강도가 (경찰한테) <b>잡혔습니다</b> . (잡 + <b>히</b> + 었습니다) <sup>1</sup> (=The robber was caught by the police.) 학생들이 우리반 반장을 뽑았습니다. (=The students selected our class leader.) 우리반 반장이 <b>뽑혔습니다</b> . (뽑 + <b>히</b> + 었습니다) (=Our class leader was selected.)
~리	팔리다(to be sold) 밀리다(to be pushed) 풀리다(to be solved) 열리다(to be opened) 걸리다(to be hung) 들리다(to be heard) 뚫리다(to be pierced) 불리다(to be called) 물리다(to be bitten), 잘리다(to be cut) 끌리다(to be drawn), 눌리다(to be pressed)	존이 메리의 집을 팔았습니다. (=John sold Mary's house.) 메리의 집이 <b>팔렸습니다</b> . (팔 + <b>리</b> + 었습니다) (=Mary's house was sold.) 존이 자동차를 밀었습니다. (=John pushed the car.) 자동차가 (존에 의해) <b>밀렸습니다</b> . (밀 + <b>리</b> + 었습니다) <sup>1</sup> (=The car was pushed by John.)
~기	쫓기다(to be chased) 찢기다(to be ripped) 안기다(to be cuddled) 빼기다(to be deprived) 끊기다(to be cut off) 담기다(to be contained) 감기다(to be wound) 믿기다(to be believed) 빼앗기다(to be taken away)	경찰이 도둑을 쫓았습니다. (=The police chased the burglar.) 도둑이 경찰에게 <b>쫓겼습니다</b> . (쫓 + <b>기</b> + 었습니다) (=The burglar was chased by the police.) 존이 메리의 옷을 찢었습니다. (=John ripped Mary's clothes.) 메리의 옷이 <b>찢겼습니다</b> . (찢 + <b>기</b> + 었습니다) (=Mary's clothes were ripped.)

**Note: 1.** “Noun + 에게/한테” and “Noun + 에 의해(서)” which are equivalent to the English “by” phrase are generally optional and can be freely deleted.

### III . Periphrastic Passives

#### 1. Periphrastic Passive Suffix “~아/어지다” with Stative Verbs

This periphrastic passive construction, sometimes called the inchoative construction, applies to almost all stative verbs by simply attaching the suffix “~아/어지다” to a verb stem. It can be used to express a certain change of state of the subject with or without reference to the cause of the change, which can be rendered as “become+stative verb.”

Stative Verbs	Periphrastic Passive Suffix	Examples (예문)
좋다 (good)	if the preceding syllable contains the vowel “오” or “아”  Otherwise, ~어지다	운동을 하고 나니 기분이 <b>좋아졌어요.</b> (=I feel good after working out.)
나쁘다 (bad)		요즘 경기가 아주 <b>나빠졌어요.</b> (=Business conditions became much worse these days.)
작다 (small, short)		옷을 빨았더니 <b>작아졌어요.</b> (=My clothes shrank after I washed them.)
바쁘다 (busy)		장사가 잘 돼서 <b>바빠졌어요.</b> (=I became busy because my business is going well.)
따뜻하다 (warm)		봄이라서 그런지 날씨가 <b>따뜻해졌어요.</b> (=The weather became warm perhaps because it's spring.)
피곤하다 (tired)		하루 종일 일을 해서 몸이 <b>피곤해졌어요.</b> (=I became tired because I worked all day long.)
약하다 (weak)		나이가 들어서 그런지 몸이 <b>약해졌어요.</b> (=I became weak perhaps because of my old age.)
복잡하다 (congested)		출근길이 <b>복잡해졌어요.</b> (=The street became congested on my way to work.)
간단하다 (simple)		소프트웨어를 사용하니 일이 아주 <b>간단해졌어요.</b> (=The work became simplified after using software.)
깨끗하다 (clean)		청소를 하고 나니 방이 <b>깨끗해졌어요.</b> (=My room became clean after I cleaned it.)
하얗다 (white, pale)		메리의 얼굴이 갑자기 <b>하얘졌어요.</b> (=Mary's face suddenly became white/pale.)
길다 (long)		사람들이 많아서 줄이 <b>길어졌어요.</b> (=The line became long because there are so many people.)
느리다 (slow)		바이러스 때문에 컴퓨터가 <b>느려졌어요.</b> (=My computer became slow because it's infected with a virus.)
멀다 (far, dissociated)		싸우고 난 다음에 존과 <b>멀어졌어요.</b> (=I became dissociated from John after the fight.)
예쁘다 (pretty)		얼굴이 몰라보게 <b>예뻐졌어요.</b> (=You became so pretty that I could not recognize your face.)

넓다 (wide, spacious)	공사를 한 후에 길이 <b>넓어졌어요.</b> (=The street became wider after the construction.)
어둡다 (dark)	갑자기 날이 <b>어두워졌어요.</b> (=Suddenly it became dark.)
더럽다 (dirty)	옷이 <b>더러워졌어요.</b> (=My clothes became dirty.)
춥다 (cold)	날씨가 <b>추워졌어요.</b> (=The weather became colder.)
덥다 (hot)	지구온난화 때문에 날씨가 <b>더워졌어요.</b> (=The weather became hotter because of global warming.)
가깝다 (close)	새 집으로 이사를 하고 나니 학교가 <b>가까워졌어요.</b> (=I became closer to school after I moved into the new house.)

## 2. Periphrastic Passive Suffix “~아/어지다” with Action Verbs

Action Verbs	Periphrastic Passive Suffix	Examples (예문)
쏟다 (to spill)	~아지다 if the preceding syllable contains the vowel “오” or “아”	물이 바닥에 <b>쏟아졌다.</b> (=The water was spilled on the floor.)
켜다 (to turn on)		저절로 TV가 <b>켜졌습니다.</b> (=The TV was turned on by itself.)
끄다 (to turn off)		불이 한 시간 만에 <b>꺼졌습니다.</b> (=The fire was put out after an hour.)
밝히다 (to reveal)		존이 그 일에 관여했다는 사실이 <b>밝혀졌습니다.</b> (=The fact that John was involved in the case was revealed.)
이루다 (to accomplish)		마침내 우리의 꿈이 <b>이루어졌습니다.</b> (=At last our dream came true.)
기다리다 (to wait)		시험 결과가 <b>기다려집니다.</b> (=I can't wait for the test result.)
만들다 (to make)		이 공장에서는 가방이 하루에 5천 개씩 <b>만들어집니다.</b> (=Five thousand bags are manufactured a day at this factory.)
정하다 (to decide)		북한에 대한 선제공격 계획이 <b>정해졌습니다.</b> (=The preemptive strike plan against North Korea has been set.)
믿다 (to believe)		존이 이혼했다는 사실이 <b>믿어지지 않습니다.</b> (=I cannot believe that John got divorced.)
끊다 (to cut off)		갑자기 전기가 <b>끊어졌습니다.</b> (=Suddenly electricity got cut off.)
쓰다 (to write)	Otherwise, ~어지다	이 볼펜은 잘 안 <b>써져요.</b> (=This ballpoint pen doesn't write well.)
꺼다 (to break off)		많은 나뭇가지가 <b>꺼어졌습니다.</b> (=A lot of tree branches got broken off.)
깨다 (to break)		꽃병이 <b>깨졌습니다.</b> (=The flower vase was broken.)

The periphrastic passive suffix “~아/어지다” can also be attached to some action verbs and creates a passive-like sentence that focuses mainly on the result of an action without reference to the actor of an action. It is sometimes called as an “agentless passive” in other literature.

### 3. Double Passive with the Periphrastic Passive Suffix “~아/어지다”

The periphrastic passive suffix “~아/어지다” can sometimes be attached to a verb stem that has been already passivized. It creates a situation where the verb apparently carries two different passive suffixes. Therefore, it is called a “double passive construction” in the literature. Like the “agentless passives” above, this construction is used to focus on

Passive Verbs	Periphrastic Passive Suffix	Examples (예문)
섞다 → 섞 <b>이다</b> (to be mixed)	~아지다	물과 기름은 잘 <b>섞여</b> 지 <b>지</b> 않는다. (=Oil and water don't mix well.)
모으다 → 모 <b>이다</b> (to be gathered)		메리를 도와줄 충분한 돈이 <b>모여</b> 졌다. (=Enough money was collected to help Mary.)
닦다 → 닦 <b>이다</b> (to be wiped off)		기름때는 잘 안 <b>닦여</b> 진다. (=Oil stains don't come off easily.)
닫다 → 닫 <b>히</b> 다 (to be closed)		이 문은 항상 <b>닫혀</b> 져 있다. (=This door is always locked.)
묻다 → 묻 <b>히</b> 다 (to be buried)		진실은 쉽게 <b>묻혀</b> 지 <b>지</b> 않는다. (=The truth cannot be buried easily.)
잊다 → 잊 <b>히</b> 다 (to be forgotten)		아픈 기억은 쉽게 <b>잊혀</b> 지 <b>지</b> 않는다. (=A painful memory cannot be easily forgotten.)
열다 → 열 <b>리</b> 다 (to be opened)		갑자기 문이 활짝 <b>열려</b> 졌다. (=The door was flung open suddenly.)
자르다 → 잘 <b>리</b> 다 (to be cut)		존의 손가락이 <b>잘려</b> 졌다. (=John's finger was cut off.)
누르다 → 눌 <b>리</b> 다 (to be pressed down)		비상 버튼이 잘 <b>눌려</b> 지 <b>지</b> 않는다. (=It is hard to press this emergency button.)
찢다 → 찢 <b>기</b> 다 (to be torn)		드레스가 갈기갈기 <b>찢겨</b> 졌다. (=The dress was torn into pieces.)
잠그다 → 잠 <b>기</b> 다 (to be locked)	이 문은 잘 <b>잠겨</b> 지 <b>지</b> 않는다. (=This door doesn't lock properly.)	
믿다 → 믿 <b>기</b> 다 (to be believed)	존이 시험에 떨어졌다는 것이 <b>믿겨</b> 지 <b>지</b> 않는다. (=I cannot believe that John failed the test.)	

the result of an action without reference to the actor of an action. Although this double-passive construction is frequently used in everyday conversation, the National Institute of Korean Language (국립국어원) strongly asks native speakers not to use it.

#### 4. Periphrastic Passive Suffix “~게 되다”

Verbs	Periphrastic Passive Suffix	Examples (예문)
사랑하다 (to love)	~게 되다	존이 메리를 사랑하게 되었다. (=John ended up falling in love with Mary.)
싫어하다 (to hate)		메리가 존을 싫어하게 되었다. (=Mary ended up hating John.)
알다 (to know)		존이 메리의 비밀을 알게 되었다. (=John ended up knowing Mary's secret.)
받다 (to receive)		메리가 상을 받게 되었다. (=Mary ended up receiving the award.)
사다 (to buy)		존이 그 집을 사게 되었다. (=John ended up buying the house.)
팔다 (to sell)		메리가 그 집을 팔게 되었다. (=Mary ended up selling the house.)
가다 (to go)		존은 한국에 가게 되었다. (=John ended up going to Korea.)
다니다 (to attend)		메리는 사립학교에 다니게 되었다. (=Mary ended up attending a private school.)
결혼하다 (to marry)		존은 메리와 결혼하게 되었다. (=John ended up getting married to Mary.)
이혼하다 (to divorce)		메리는 존과 이혼하게 되었다. (=Mary ended up getting divorced from John.)
이해하다 (to understand)		존은 메리의 사정을 이해하게 되었다. (=John ended up understanding Mary's situation.)
이기다 (to win)		우리는 그 시합을 이기게 되었다. (=We ended up winning the competition.)
만나다 (to meet)		메리는 존과 이혼하게 되었다. (=Mary ended up getting divorced from John.)
취직하다 (to get a job)		존은 삼성에 취직하게 되었다. (=John ended up getting a job at Samsung.)
잘하다 (to do well)		메리는 공부를 잘하게 되었다. (=Mary ended up studying well.)

This periphrastic passive construction is directly related to the causative construction which will be discussed at length in the next chapter. The causative construction addressed here is derived by attaching the causative suffix “~게 하다 (make)” to a verb stem.

존이 [메리가 사과를 먹]게 했다.  
 (=John made Mary eat the apple.)

In the sentence above, “존” is the subject of the main clause, and “했다” is the main verb which is a part of the verbal suffix “~게 했다.” The bracketed expression is the subordinate clause that describes the event of “Mary’s eating the apple.” Like other passives that we have discussed so far, if we want to put more emphasis on the result of an action, we can change the causative suffix “~게 하다” into the periphrastic passive suffix “~게 되다,” which can be rendered as “ended up verb+ing.”

[메리가 사과를 먹]게 됐다. (먹+게 되+었다 → 먹게 됐다)  
 (=Mary ended up eating the apple.)

Since the causative suffix “~게 하다” can be attached to almost all action verbs, their corresponding periphrastic passive sentences can be freely created by simply changing the suffix into “~게 되다.”

## 5. Periphrastic Passive Verbs

There are some verbs that consist of “Noun+되다” which are already in the periphrastic passive voice. Most of them are actually derived from “Noun+하다” by simply changing the suffix “하다” into “되다.” Since it is impossible to predict what kind of a verb undergoes this process, it is highly recommended that we must treat these verbs as separate vocabulary items.

Verbs	Periphrastic Passive Verbs	Examples (예문)
체포하다 (to capture)	체포되다	용의자가 경찰에 체포되었다. (=The suspect was captured by the police.)
구속하다 (to arrest)	구속되다	범인이 구속되었다. (The criminal was arrested and detained.)
납치하다 (to kidnap)	납치되다	어린이가 납치되었다. (=A child was kidnapped.)
-	당선되다 (to get elected)	존이 국회의원에 당선되었다. (=John was elected as the National Assemblyman.)
시작하다 (to start)	시작되다	테러와의 전쟁이 시작되었다. (=The war against terrorism started.)
완성하다 (to complete)	완성되다	그 프로젝트가 완성되었다. (=The project was completed.)
진정하다 (to calm down)	진정되다	거센 파도가 진정되었다. (=Strong high tide died down)
고생하다 (to suffer from)	고생되다	고생되더라도 조금만 기다려라. (=Wait a little more although you are getting suffered.)
포함하다 (to include)	포함되다	이 가격은 왕복 비행기 값이 포함된다. (=The roundtrip air fare is included in this price.)
제공하다 (to provide)	제공되다	저녁이 무료로 제공된다. (=Dinner will be provided for free of charge.)
준비하다 (to prepare)	준비되다	모든 것이 준비되었다. (=Everything got ready.)
이해하다 (to understand)	이해되다	이 문제는 잘 이해되지 않는다. (=This problem cannot be figured out.)
취직하다 (to get a job)	취직되다	존이 현대자동차에 취직되었다. (=John was hired by Hyundai Motor Company.)
-	오염되다 (to get polluted)	물이 오염되었다. (=The water was polluted.)
-	감염되다 (to get contaminated)	존의 컴퓨터가 바이러스에 감염되었다. (=John's computer was virus infected.)
-	감전되다 (to receive an electric shock)	존이 전기에 감전되었다. (=John received an electric shock.)
강조하다 (to emphasize)	강조되다	자녀교육에 부모의 역할이 강조되었다. (=Parents' role was emphasized for child education.)
금지하다 (to prohibit, ban)	금지되다	대량살상무기 생산이 금지되었다. (=The production of weapons of mass destruction was banned.)
-	마비되다 (to get paralyzed)	교통이 마비되었다. (=The traffic was paralyzed.)
해방하다 (to liberate)	해방되다	우리나라가 해방되었다. (=Our country was liberated.)



## 20 Causative Verbs (사역동사)

A causative is a grammatical construction that expresses a cause and effect relationship. A limited number of English verbs such as “make,” “cause,” “have,” “get,” “let,” “force,” “help,” etc., are used to create this grammatical construction. In a causative sentence, a causer/cause is the person or the thing that makes someone do something or causes a certain event or situation to occur. A causee is the person or the thing that actually carries out a task or undergoes a certain situation.

[John] made [him] eat the apple.

causer            causee

[John's rudeness] caused [her] to become angry.

cause                    causee

[John] had [him] clean the room.

causer            causee

[Mary] can get [him] to bring her money here.

causer            causee

[Mary] didn't let [him] stay in her house.

causer            causee

[Mary] forced [him] to finish the work by tomorrow.

causer            causee

In Korean, there are two different types of causative constructions: one is used to express the direct cause and effect relationship which means that a causer/cause directly imposes or acts on a causee to go through a caused event. It can be formulated by simply attaching one of the seven causative suffixes to a verb stem. The other is sometimes called the “periphrastic causative construction” in the literature which is used to express the

indirect cause and effect relationship. In this construction, a causer/cause indirectly creates a situation or environment in which a causee goes through a caused event. Below we will first discuss how to make a Korean causative sentence and then continue to examine the periphrastic causative construction in more detail.

## I . Korean Causative Suffixes (사동접미사):

### ~이/~히/~리/~기/~우/~구/~추

The direct cause and effect relationship can be grammatically expressed by attaching one of the seven causative suffixes “~이/~히/~리/~기/~우/~구/~추” to a verb stem.

Causative Suffix	Verbs That Take Each Causative Suffix	Examples (예문)
~이	먹이다(to feed), 녹이다(to melt) 보이다(to show), 죽이다(to kill) 높이다(to raise), 줄이다(to reduce) 속이다(to deceive), 끓이다(to boil) 붙이다(to attach)	존이 아이에게 밥을 먹였다. (=John forced the child to eat the food. =John fed the child the food.) 메리가 물을 끓였다. (=Mary made the water boil. =Mary boiled the water.)
~히	넓히다(to widen), 좁히다(to narrow) 앉히다(to seat), 입히다(to dress) 익히다(to ripen), 식히다(to cool down) 읽히다(to make someone read) 밝히다(to lighten), 눕히다(to lay down) 맞히다(to hit the target) 젓히다(to fling open)	선생님이 학생들을 의자에 앉혔다. (=The teacher forced the students to sit on their chairs. =The teacher seated the students on their chairs.) 메리가 정답을 맞혔다. (=Mary got the answer right. =Mary got the right answer.)
~리	알리다(to inform), 얼리다(to freeze) 올리다(to raise), 돌리다(to turn) 울리다(to make someone cry) 살리다(to save one's life) 늘리다(to increase), 말리다(to dry) 물리다(to charge), 굴리다(to roll) 걸리다(to take), 놀리다(to make fun of) 날리다(to fly away)	존이 부모님께 그 사실을 알렸다. (=John let his parents know the fact. =John informed his parents of the fact.) 메리가 존을 살렸다. (=Mary helped John survive. =Mary saved John's life)
~기	웃기다(to make someone laugh) 신기다(to make someone wear shoes/ socks) 맡기다(to entrust), 숨기다(to hide) 벗기다(to take off), 씻기다(to wash)	존이 옷장에 돈을 숨겼다. (=John had the money hidden in the closet. =John hid the money in the closet.)

	남기다(to leave something behind) 감기다(to wash one's hair) 옮기다(to move), 넘기다(to flip over) 굶기다(to make someone skip a meal)	메리가 책상을 방으로 옮겼다. (=Mary had the desk moved into her room. =Mary moved the desk into her room.)
~우	깨우다(to awaken) 재우다(to put to sleep) 채우다(to fill up), 세우다(to build) 태우다(to burn), 비우다(to empty) 지우다(to erase), 띄우다(to float) 씌우다(to cover), 키우다(to raise)	존이 메리를 깨웠다. (=John made Mary wake up. =John woke up Mary.) 메리가 병에 물을 채웠다. (=Mary had the bottle filled with water. =Mary filled the bottle with water.)
~구	돋구다(to stimulate) 달구다(to scorch)	맛있는 냄새가 식욕을 돋구었다. (Delicious smells had my appetite stimulated. =Delicious smells stimulated my appetite.) 햇별이 아스팔트를 달구었다. (The sunlight made the asphalt hot. =The sunlight scorched the asphalt.)
~추	낮추다(to lower) 늦추다(to delay) 맞추다(to order tailor-made clothes)	선생님이 약속을 늦추었다. (=The teacher had the appointment postponed. =The teacher postponed the appointment.) 메리가 드레스를 맞추었다. (=Mary had the dress tailor-made. =Mary ordered a tailored-made dress.)

This causative construction expresses that a causer directly acts on a causee to go through a caused event or a cause initiates the situation in which it brings a direct impact on a causee.

[존]이 [사람]을 죽였다. [죽+이+었다]

causer causee

(=John made someone die. =John killed someone.)

[햇별]이 [아스팔트]를 달구었다. [달+구+었다]

cause causee

(The sunlight made the asphalt hot. =The sunlight scorched the asphalt.)

In the first sentence above, “John” is portrayed as the killer who directly caused someone to die by taking action, such as stabbing the victim with a lethal weapon, strangling the victim, or shooting the victim with a gun, etc. In the same sense, “the sunlight” in the second sentence is the direct cause that made the asphalt scorching hot.

Just like the passive suffixes in Chapter 19 Passive Voice, it is impossible to predict what kind of causative suffix each verb takes. Because of this idiosyncratic behavior of each causative suffix, we need to treat causative verbs as separate vocabulary items. In addition, since the first four causative suffixes “~이, ~히, ~리, ~기” are in exactly the same form as the passive suffixes, we need to pay special attention to the verbs with these suffixes. For example, the verb “보이다” can function as a causative verb with the meaning of “make someone see” or “to show,” and it can also function as a passive verb with the different meaning of “to be seen.”

존이 성적표를 어머니께 보여 드렸습니다. (보+이+어 드리다) (Causative Suffix)  
 (=John showed his report card to his mother.)

앞에 큰 건물이 보입니다. (보+이+ㅂ니다) (Passive Suffix)  
 (=A large building can be seen in front of me.)

## II . Periphrastic Causative Suffix: “~게 하다”

The indirect cause and effect relationship can be grammatically expressed by attaching the periphrastic causative suffix “~게 하다” to a verb stem. As we briefly discussed above, a causer/cause in this construction indirectly creates a situation or environment in which a causee goes through a caused event. This periphrastic causative suffix is quite productive and can be attached to almost all Korean verbs across the board regardless of whether they are stative verbs or action verbs.

[존]이 [그 사람이 죽]게 했다. (Action verb: 죽다)  
 causer caused event main verb  
 (=John made the person die.)

[존]이 [메리가 피곤하]게 했다. (Stative verb: 피곤하다)  
 causer caused event main verb  
 (=John made Mary become tired.)

The grammatical structure of this periphrastic causative construction actually consists of two different clauses. The main clause consists of the subject which is “a causer/cause”

and the verb “하다,” whereas the subordinate clause is the one that describes a caused event.

When these two clauses are grammatically combined together into a single sentence, the subject of the subordinate clause (or a caused event) takes a different case marker in the merged sentence depending on the transitivity of the subordinate clause. More specifically, if the subordinate clause is intransitive (without an object), its subject can take the object case maker “~을/를” in the merged sentence. On the other hand, if the subordinate clause is transitive (with an object), then its subject can optionally take three different case markers in the merged sentence: the subject case markers “~이/가,” the object case markers “~을/를,” or the dative case marker “~에게.”

(1) The subordinate clause is intransitive, which means that the verb takes no object.

[존이] [그 사람이 죽]게 했다. → 존이 그 사람을 죽게 했다.  
 main subject subordinate clause main verb (=John made the person die.)

[존이] [메리가 피곤하]게 했다. → 존이 메리를 피곤하게 했다.  
 main subject subordinate clause main verb (=John made Mary feel tired.)

(2) The subordinate clause is transitive, which means that the verb takes an object.

[존이] [메리가 그 책]을 사게 했다. → 존이 메리가 그 책을 사게 했다.  
 main subject subordinate clause main verb 존이 메리를 그 책을 사게 했다.  
 존이 메리에게 그 책을 사게 했다.  
 (=John forced Mary to buy the book.)

Another fascinating fact about the periphrastic causative construction is that the meaning of its sentence can be ambiguous if the subject (a causer) is a person, and the verb is an action verb. In terms of whether the causer is actively or passively involved in the caused event, the sentence can be actually interpreted into two different ways.

존이 그 사람을 죽게 했다.  
 (=John made the person die.) (Active involvement)

(=John let the person die.) (Passive involvement)

존이 메리가/를/에게 그 책을 사게 했다.

(=John forced Mary to buy the book.) (Active involvement)

(=John let Mary buy the book.) (Passive involvement)

In the sentences above, the interpretation of the causer's active involvement in the caused event is that the causer somehow created the situation in which the causee must go through the caused event which resulted in the causee's death or the causee's buying the book. In this case, the periphrastic causative suffix “~게 하다” can be appropriately rendered as “make” or “force.” On the other hand, the causer's passive involvement in the caused event can be interpreted the way in which the causer simply gives permission to the causee to carry out the action in the caused event. The periphrastic causative suffix “~게 하다” in this case can be rendered as “let.” Below are more examples that show the ambiguity of the periphrastic causative construction.

Grammatical Condition	Examples (예문)
The subject (a causer) is a person, and the verb is an action verb.	<p><u>아버지</u>가 존을 일찍 <u>자</u>게 했다. Active involvement: Father had John go to bed early. Passive involvement: Father let John go to bed early.</p>
	<p><u>존</u>이 메리를 미국에 <u>돌아가</u>게 했다. Active involvement: John forced Mary to go back to America. Passive involvement: John let Mary go back to America.</p>
	<p><u>메리</u>가 존을 자기 방에서 <u>쉬</u>게 했다. Active involvement: Mary had John take a rest in her room. Passive involvement: Mary let John take a rest in her room.</p>
	<p><u>존</u>이 메리가/를/에게 그 프로젝트를 <u>하</u>게 했다. Active involvement: John had Mary work on the project. Passive involvement: John let Mary work on the project.</p>
	<p><u>메리</u>가 존이/을/에게 돈을 <u>관리하</u>게 했다. Active involvement: Mary had John take care of the money. Passive involvement: Mary let John take care of the money.</p>
	<p><u>존</u>이 메리가/를/에게 숙제를 <u>하</u>게 했다. Active involvement: John forced Mary to do her homework. Passive involvement: John let Mary do her homework.</p>

However, this kind of ambiguity disappears if the subject is not a person or the verb

is a stative verb. In those cases, the causer/cause's active involvement in the caused event is the only possible interpretation.

한국의 경제발전이 한국사회를 변하게 했다. (The subject: inanimate noun)  
(=Korea's economic development made Korean society change.) (Active involvement)  
(=Korea's economic development let Korean society be changed.) (Passive involvement: NOT OK)

존이 메리를 화나게 했다. (Stative verb: 화나다)  
(=John made Mary angry.) (Active involvement)  
(=John let Mary be angry.) (Passive involvement: NOT OK)

그 소식이 모두를 기쁘게 했다. (The subject: inanimate noun, stative verb: 기쁘다)  
(=That news made everyone happy.) (Active involvement)  
(=That news let everyone be happy.) (Passive involvement: NOT OK)



## 21 Double Subjects and Objects (이중주어/목적어)

One of the most distinctive grammatical features in Korean is that it allows more than one subject in a simple sentence. This apparently unnatural grammatical phenomenon has baffled many Korean grammarians who hold the firm belief that there should be only one subject per clause. To support their theoretical catch phrase, a number of research papers have been published to try to correctly identify what the real subject is in a given sentence while relegating the other subject candidate(s) to non-subject status. However, most of their arguments and self-claimed subject test tools were not very convincing because they left so many counterexamples unanswered. Indeed, they brought more confusion than ever before to this elusive grammatical phenomenon. This kind of undesirable research outcome actually stems from their unyielding claim that there should be no more than one subject in each sentence. But if we turn our attention to the discussion of the number of objects allowed in English, it is not as mysterious as we believe to have more than one subject in a simple sentence.

John gave me a present.

John sent me a letter.

John bought Mary a house.

John asked Mary a question.

As you can see in the sentences above, the English verbs “give, send, buy, and ask” allow two different objects, traditionally called a direct object (DO) and an indirect object (IO). Actually, a considerable number of other English verbs also participate in this grammatical construction. The following is the partial list of such verbs which are introduced here for your reference.

give, lend, offer, pass, post, read, sell, send, show, promise, tell, award, pay, write, grant, teach, mail, present, owe, cost, wish, bake, find, pour, book, get, prepare, build,

knit, reserve, buy, make, sing, cook, order, provide, keep, bring, save, ask, etc.

Thus a question arises as to whether it is also possible to have more than one subject in a simple sentence. As we all know, English does not allow such a case. In Korean, however, it is not only permissible but also frequently occurs in many sentences. We will now focus on what makes it possible to generate more than one subject in a given sentence in Korean. Then, we will continue to discuss whether it is also possible to have more than one object in a given sentence.

## I . Different Sources of Double Subject Construction

### 1. Negation with the Verb “아니다”

The copula “이다” in Korean is used to express an equational sentence rendered as “A equals B.” This grammatical construction indicates that the subject A is equal to the complement noun B or it is a possible member of the complement noun. One unique grammatical feature of this special verb is that, unlike other verbs, it cannot stand alone, and therefore it must be always attached to the preceding noun like a noun suffix.

그 사람이 존이다.

(=That person is John.)

존이 학생이다.

(=John is a student. =John is a member of the group being called students.)

In contrast, its negative counterpart “아니다” is an independent verb and cannot be attached to the preceding noun. Therefore, when we negate an equational sentence, a grammatically unusual situation will be created by the way in which the complement noun becomes detached without carrying any case marker unlike other normal nouns do. To avoid this undesirable situation, we attach the subject case markers “~이/가” to the complement noun as a default case marker with the proviso that the subject and the complement noun have grammatically equal status. It subsequently creates a negative



In this indirect possession construction, the possessor seems to be deemphasized and hidden behind the scene. But if we want to put more focus on the possessor, we can optionally assign the subject case marker instead of the default dative case marker, which results in two different subjects in a given sentence. The resulting sentence is equivalent to the English focus construction, which can be rendered as “It is \_ that/who \_.”

Source of Double Subjects	Examples (예문)
Possession with the Verbs of Existence 있다 (there is) 없다 (there is not) 많다 (there is a lot) 적다 (there are a few)	존이 휴대폰이 있습니다. (=It is John who has a cell phone.) 메리가 휴대폰이 없습니다. (=It is Mary who does not have a cell phone.) 이 음료수가 설탕이 많습니다. (=It is this drink that contains a lot of sugar.) 요즘 우리 가게가 손님이 적습니다. (=It is our store that has few customers these days.)

### 3. Inchoative Verb “되다(to become)”

As in the case of the copula “이다,” the inchoative verb “되다(to become)” can also take a complement noun as a part of the predicate. Given the assumption that the subject and the complement noun are grammatically in equal status, we can assign the subject case marker to the complement noun. Otherwise, it would become detached without carrying a case marker. This creates another example that contains two different subjects in the given sentence.

Source of Double Subjects	Examples (예문)
Inchoative Verb 되다 (to become)	존이 공무원이 되었다. (=John became a government employee.) 메리가 의사가 되었다. (=Mary became a doctor.) 우리나라가 선진국이 되었다. (=Our country became an advanced nation.) 도시가 폐허가 되었다. (=The city was ruined.)

### 4. Possessive Marker “~의”: Inalienable Possession

The possessive marker “~의” is equivalent to the English “s.” The preceding noun is the possessor, and the following noun is the possessed.

존의 사과가 맛있다.

(=John's apples are delicious.)

One interesting fact regarding this construction is that the possessor can sometimes acquire the same grammatical status as the possessed. For example, if we want to put more focus on the ownership of the possessor, we can optionally assign the subject case marker to the possessor, which results in two different subjects in the given sentence. The resulting sentence is equivalent to the English focus construction, which can be rendered as “It is \_ that/who \_.”

존의 집이 크다.

(=John's house is big.)

존이 집이 크다.

(=It is John whose house is big.)

존의 차가 빨간색입니다.

(=John's car is red.)

존이 차가 빨간색입니다.

(=It is John whose car is red.)

However, not all possessive constructions can undergo this grammatical process.

존의 사과가 맛있다.

(=John's apples are delicious.)

존이 사과가 맛있다. (NOT OK)

메리의 책이 비싸다.

(=Mary's book is expensive.)

메리가 책이 비싸다. (NOT OK)

There are some specific semantic restrictions imposed on the relationship between the possessor and the possessed that allow this type of possessor-focused construction. The possessor and the possessed must be in a certain semantic relationship called “inalienable or inseparable possession.” More specifically, the possessed must be the body part, the family member, the product or the sales item, the legally owned item, or the inherent

nature which cannot be separated or alienated from the possessor.

Source of Double Subjects	Semantic Relationship	Examples (예문)
Possessive Marker “~의” (Inalienable Possession)	Body Parts	존의 얼굴이 빨갱게 변했다. (=John’s face turned red.) 존이 얼굴이 빨갱게 변했다. (=It is John whose face turned red.)
		메리의 키가 큼니다. (=Mary is tall.) 메리가 키가 큼니다. (=It is Mary who is tall)
		존의 몸무게가 많이 나갑니다. (=John weighs a lot.) 존이 몸무게가 많이 나갑니다. (=It is John who weighs a lot.)
		마이클 조던의 다리가 깁니다. (=Michael Jordan’s legs are long.) 마이클 조던이 다리가 깁니다. (=It is Michael John whose legs are long.)
		존의 여동생이 예쁘다. (=John’s younger sister is pretty.) 존이 여동생이 예쁘다. (=It is John whose younger sister is pretty.)
		메리의 아버님이 변호사이십니다. (=Mary’s mother is beautiful.) 메리가 아버님이 변호사이십니다. (=It is Mary whose father is a lawyer.)
	Products or Sales Items	삼성의 휴대폰이 제일 좋습니다. (=Samsung’s cellphones are the best.) 삼성이 휴대폰이 제일 좋습니다. (=It is Samsung that makes the best cell phones.)
		이 식당의 음식이 맛있습니다. (=This restaurant’s food is delicious.) 이 식당이 음식이 맛있습니다. (=It is this restaurant that serves delicious food.)
		월마트의 물건이 싸다. (=The items at Walmart are inexpensive.) 월마트가 물건이 싸다. (=It is Walmart that offers inexpensive items.)
	Legal Ownership	존의 집이 팔렸습니다. (=John’s house was sold.) 존이 집이 팔렸습니다. (=It is John whose house was sold.)
		존의 차가 빨간색이다. (=John’s car is red.) 존이 차가 빨간색이다. (=It is John whose car is red.)
		메리의 전화번호가 바뀌었습니다. (=Mary’s phone number has been changed.) 메리가 전화번호가 바뀌었습니다. (=It is Mary whose phone number has been changed.)
	Inherent Nature	이 TV의 화질이 훌륭합니다. (=The picture quality of this TV is excellent.) 이 TV가 화질이 훌륭합니다. (=It is this TV whose picture quality is excellent.)
		우리나라의 출산율이 아주 낮습니다. (=Our country’s birth rate is way too low.) 우리나라가 출산율이 아주 낮습니다. (=It is our country whose birth rate is way too low.)

If the above semantic conditions are met in a given sentence, then even more than two subjects— theoretically an infinite number of subjects—may possibly appear in a single

sentence.

Source of Multiple Subjects	Semantic Relationship	Examples (예문)
Possessive Marker “~의” (Inalienable Possession)	Body Parts	존의 얼굴의 색깔이 빨갱게 변했다. (=John's face color turned red.) 존이 얼굴이 색깔이 빨갱게 변했다. (=It is John whose facial color turned red.)
	Products or Sales Items	이 식당의 음식의 맛이 좋다. (=The taste of the food at this restaurant is delicious.) 이 식당이 음식이 맛이 좋다. (=It is this restaurant at which the taste of food is delicious.)
	Legal Ownership & Inherent Nature	우리나라의 남부지방의 날씨가 따뜻하다. (=The weather is warm in the southern part of our country.) 우리나라가 남부지방이 날씨가 따뜻하다. (=It is our country where the weather is warm in the southern region.) 우리나라의 남부지방의 날씨의 변화가 심하다. (=The weather changes a lot in the southern part of our country.) 우리나라가 남부지방이 날씨가 변화가 심하다. (=It is our country where the change of weather is severe in the southern region.)

## 5. Noun + Number + Counter, Noun + Number

We count a number of people or items in Korean using the pattern of “Noun + Number + Counter” or “Noun + Number.” Case markers are attached to the end of these patterns. But if we want to put more focus on the noun that we are counting, we can optionally separate the noun from the rest of the patterns and assign the same case markers as the entire expressions carry. This will create another example of a sentence with two different subjects.

Source of Double Subjects	Examples (예문)
Noun + Number + Counter	우리 집에 손님 다섯 명이 왔다. (=Five guests came to my house.) 우리 집에 손님이 다섯 명이 왔다. (=It is the five guests that came to my house.) 버스 두 대가 충돌했다. (=Two buses were collided.) 버스가 두대가 충돌했다. (=It is the two buses that collided.) 사과 세 개가 썩었다. (=Three apples are rotten.) 사과가 세 개가 썩었다. (=It is the three apples that are rotten.)
Noun + Number	학생 둘이 서로 싸우고 있다. (=Two students are fighting with each other.) 학생이 둘이 서로 싸우고 있다. (=It is the two students that are fighting with each other.)

## 6. Summary

Sources of Double Subjects	Examples (예문)
Negative Verb 아니다 (be + not)	존이 학생입니다. → 존이 <b>학생</b> 아닙니다 → 존이 <b>학생이</b> 아닙니다. (=John is a student.) (=John is not a student.) 메리가 교수입니다. → 메리가 <b>교수</b> 아닙니다 → 메리가 <b>교수가</b> 아닙니다. (=Mary is a professor.) (=Mary is not a professor.)
Verbs of Existence 있다 (there is) 없다 (there is no) 많다 (a lot) 적다 (a few)	존이 휴대폰 <b>이</b> 있습니다. (=It is John who has a cell phone) 존이 열쇠 <b>가</b> 있습니다. (=It is Mary who has the key.) 메리 <b>가</b> 휴대폰 <b>이</b> 없습니다. (=It is Mary who does not have a cell phone.) 메리 <b>가</b> 열쇠 <b>가</b> 없습니다. (=It is Mary who does not have the key.) 이 음료수 <b>가</b> 설탕 <b>이</b> 많습니다. (=It is this drink that contains a lot of sugar.) 존 <b>이</b> 친구 <b>가</b> 많습니다. (=It is John who has many friends.) 이 음료수 <b>가</b> 설탕 <b>이</b> 적습니다. (=It is this drink that contains less sugar.) 요즘 우리 가게 <b>가</b> 손님 <b>이</b> 적습니다. (=It is our store that has few customers these days.)
Inchoative Verb 되다 (to become)	존 <b>이</b> 공무원 <b>이</b> 되었다. (=John became a government employee.) 메리 <b>가</b> 의사 <b>가</b> 되었다. (=Mary became a doctor.) 우리나라 <b>가</b> 선진국 <b>이</b> 되었다. (=Our country became an advanced nation.) 우리나라 <b>가</b> 해방 <b>이</b> 되었다. (=Our country became liberated.) 도시 <b>가</b> 폐허 <b>가</b> 되었다. (=The city was ruined.)
Possessive Marker “~의” (Inalienable Possession)	존 <b>이</b> 얼굴 <b>이</b> 빨갈게 변했다. (=It is John whose face turned red.) 메리 <b>가</b> 키 <b>가</b> 큼니다. (=It is Mary who is tall) 존 <b>이</b> 몸무게 <b>가</b> 많이 나갑니다. (=It is John who weighs a lot.) 마이클 조던 <b>이</b> 다리 <b>가</b> 길다. (=It is Michael Jordan whose legs are long.) 존 <b>이</b> 여동생 <b>이</b> 예쁘다. (=It is John whose younger sister is pretty.) 메리 <b>가</b> 아버님 <b>이</b> 변호사이십니다. (=It is Mary whose father is a lawyer.) 삼성 <b>이</b> 휴대폰 <b>이</b> 제일 좋습니다. (=It is Samsung that makes the best cell phones.) 이 식당 <b>이</b> 음식 <b>이</b> 맛있습다. (=It is this restaurant that serves delicious food.) 월마트 <b>가</b> 물건 <b>이</b> 싸다. (=It is Walmart that offers inexpensively-priced items.) 존 <b>이</b> 집 <b>이</b> 팔렸습다. (=It is John whose house was sold.) 존 <b>이</b> 차 <b>가</b> 빨간색이다. (=It is John whose car is red.) 메리 <b>가</b> 전화번호 <b>가</b> 바뀌었습다. (=It is Mary whose phone number has been changed.) 이 TV <b>가</b> 화질 <b>이</b> 훌륭합니다. (=It is this TV which has an excellent picture.) 우리나라 <b>가</b> 출산율 <b>이</b> 아주 낮습다. (=It is our country which has a birth rate that is way too low.)
Noun + Number + Counter or Noun + Number	우리 집에 손님 <b>이</b> 다섯 명 <b>이</b> 왔다. (=It is the five guests that came to my house.) 버스 <b>가</b> 두대 <b>가</b> 충돌했다. (=It is the two buses that collided.) 사과 <b>가</b> 세 개 <b>가</b> 썩었다. (=It is the three apples that are rotten.) 학생 <b>이</b> 둘 <b>이</b> 서로 싸우고 있다. (=It is the two students that are fighting with each other.)

## II . Different Sources of Double-Object Construction

### 1. “Noun + 하다” Verbs

Many action verbs in Korean were originally derived by combining a noun with the verb “하다(to do),” which can be rendered as “doing the action of the noun.” But the linkage between the noun and the verb is not so tight that they can easily be separated from each other as we already discussed in Chapter 17 Negation. For example, the negative form of “공부하다(to study)” is “**공부** 안 **하다**(does not study).” Another case of breaking up the “Noun+하다” verbs occurs if we want to put more focus on the action itself. In this case, the noun can be treated as the object of the verb “하다” and receives the object case marker “~을/를,” which will create an example of the double-object construction.

Noun + 하다 (Action Verbs)	Examples (예문)
공부 + 하다 (to study)	존이 한국말을 공부합니다. (=John studies Korean.) 존이 한국말을 공부 <b>를</b> 합니다.
사랑 + 하다 (to love)	메리가 존을 사랑합니다. (=Mary loves John.) 메리가 존을 사랑 <b>을</b> 합니다.
칭찬 + 하다 (to compliment)	선생님이 메리를 칭찬했다. (=The teacher praised Mary.) 선생님이 메리를 칭찬 <b>을</b> 했다.
고자질 + 하다 (to snitch on)	존이 메리를 고자질했습니다. (=Mary snitched on John.) 존이 메리를 고자질 <b>을</b> 했습니다.
비난 + 하다 (to criticize)	국회가 정부를 비난합니다. (=The National Assembly criticized the government.) 국회가 정부를 비난 <b>을</b> 합니다.
공격 + 하다 (to attack)	적이 우리를 선제공격했습니다. (=The enemy forces staged a preemptive strike on us.) 적이 우리를 선제공격 <b>을</b> 했습니다.
치료 + 하다 (to provide medical treatment)	의사가 환자를 치료했다. (=The doctor treated his patient.) 의사가 환자를 치료 <b>를</b> 했다.
수리 + 하다 (to repair)	부모님이 집을 수리했습니다. (=My parents remodeled the house.) 부모님이 집을 수리 <b>를</b> 했습니다.

## 2. Possessive Marker “~의”: Inalienable Possession

As in the case of the subject possessive construction, the possessor of the object possessive construction can also acquire the same grammatical status of the possessed. For example, if we want to put more focus on the ownership of the possessor, we can optionally assign the object case marker to the possessor in addition to the object case marker carried by the possessed, which results in two different objects in the given sentence.

메리가 존<sup>의</sup> 얼굴<sup>을</sup> 때렸다.  
 (=Mary slapped John in the face.)

메리가 존<sup>을</sup> 얼굴<sup>을</sup> 때렸다.

However, there is a stricter semantic condition imposed on the possible double-object construction derived from this object possessive construction. Only when the possessed

Source of Double Objects	Semantic Relationship	Examples (예문)
Possessive Marker “~의”  (Inalienable Possession)	Body Parts	존이 메리 <sup>의</sup> 뺨 <sup>을</sup> 때렸다. (=John slapped Mary on the cheek.) 존이 메리 <sup>를</sup> 뺨 <sup>을</sup> 때렸다.
		존이 메리 <sup>의</sup> 손 <sup>을</sup> 잡았다. (=John grabbed Mary's hands.) 존이 메리 <sup>를</sup> 손 <sup>을</sup> 잡았다.
	Inherent Nature	존이 차 <sup>의</sup> 속도 <sup>를</sup> 낮추었다. (=John slowed down the car.) 존이 차 <sup>를</sup> 속도 <sup>를</sup> 낮추었다.
		이마트가 계란 <sup>의</sup> 값 <sup>을</sup> 올렸다. (=E-Mart raised the price of eggs.) 이마트가 계란 <sup>을</sup> 값 <sup>을</sup> 올렸다.
		대한항공이 의자 <sup>의</sup> 간격 <sup>을</sup> 넓혔다. (=Korean Air widened the space between seats.) 대한항공이 의자 <sup>를</sup> 간격 <sup>을</sup> 넓혔다.
	Kinship Terms	메리가 존 <sup>의</sup> 어머니 <sup>를</sup> 만났다. (=Mary met John's mother.) 메리가 존 <sup>을</sup> 어머니 <sup>를</sup> 만났다. (NOT OK: Kinship Terms)
Products or Sales Items	메리가 월마트 <sup>의</sup> 물건 <sup>을</sup> 좋아합니다. (=Mary likes the items at Walmart.) 메리가 월마트 <sup>를</sup> 물건 <sup>을</sup> 좋아합니다. (NOT OK: Products or Sales Items)	
Legal Ownership	존이 메리 <sup>의</sup> 집 <sup>을</sup> 샀다. (=John bought Mary's house.) 존이 메리 <sup>를</sup> 집 <sup>을</sup> 샀다. (NOT OK: Legal Ownership)	

refers to the body part or the inherent nature of the possessor, the object possessive construction allows the possessor to take the object case marker.

### 3. Noun + Number + Counter, Noun + Number

If we want to put more focus on the noun that we are counting, we can optionally separate the noun from the rest of the expression and assign the same case marker as the entire expression carries. This will create another example of a sentence with two different objects.

Source of Double Objects	Examples (예문)
Noun + Number + Counter	메리가 손님 다섯 명을 집들이에 초대했다. (=Mary invited five guests to her house-warming party.) 메리가 손님 <u>을</u> 다섯 명을 집들이에 초대했다.
	존이 올해 스포츠카 두 대를 샀다. (=John bought two sports cars this year.) 존이 올해 스포츠카 <u>를</u> 두 대를 샀다.
Noun + Number	존이 공원에서 친구 셋을 만났다. (=John met three of his friends at the park.) 존이 공원에서 친구 <u>를</u> 셋을 만났다.

### 4. Causative Verbs

Source of Double Objects	Examples (예문)
Causative Verbs	존이 그 아이에게 음식을 먹였다. (=John fed that child some food.) 존이 그 아이 <u>를</u> 음식 <u>을</u> 먹였다. (=It is that child whom John fed some food.)
	메리가 아이에게 옷을 입혔다. (=Mary dressed up the child with the clothes.) 메리가 아이 <u>를</u> 옷 <u>을</u> 입혔다. (=It is the child that Mary dressed up with the clothes.)
	법원이 존에게 벌금을 물렸다. (=The court charged John a fine.) 법원이 존 <u>을</u> 벌금 <u>을</u> 물렸다. (=It is John who was charged a fine by the court.)
	메리가 아이에게 신을 신겼다. (=Mary put the shoes on the child.) 메리가 아이 <u>를</u> 신 <u>을</u> 신겼다. (=It is the child that Mary put the shoes on.)
	존이 메리한테 돈을 맡겼다. (=John entrusted his money to Mary.) 존이 메리 <u>를</u> 돈 <u>을</u> 맡겼다. (=It is Mary to whom John entrusted his money.)

Some transitive verbs in Korean can be changed into their causative counterparts by taking the causative suffixes “~이/~히/~리/~기/~우/~구/~추” to their verb stems as we discussed in Chapter 20 Causatives. The newly-created causative verbs can occur with an object and the dative phrase “Noun + 에게/한테/께.” For these causative verbs, if we want to put more focus on the recipient of the caused action, we can optionally assign the object case markers “~을/를” to the noun of the dative phrase, which results in two different objects in a sentence. The resulting sentence can be rendered as the English focus construction “It is \_ that/who \_.”

## 5. Summary

Sources of Double Objects	Examples (예문)
Noun + 하다 (Action Verbs)	<p>존이 한국말을 공부를 합니다. (=John studies Korean.)</p> <p>메리가 존을 사랑을 합니다. (=Mary loves John.)</p> <p>선생님이 메리를 칭찬을 했다. (=The teacher praised Mary.)</p> <p>존이 메리를 고자질을 했습니다. (=John snitched on Mary.)</p> <p>국회가 정부를 비난을 합니다. (=The National Assembly criticized the government.)</p> <p>적이 우리를 선제공격을 합니다. (=The enemy forces staged a preemptive strike on us.)</p> <p>의사가 환자를 치료를 했다. (=The doctor treated his patient.)</p> <p>부모님이 집을 수리를 했습니다. (=My parents remodeled their house.)</p>
Possessive Marker “~의” (Inalienable Possession) Body Parts & Inherent Nature	<p>존이 메리를 뺨을 때렸다. (=John slapped Mary on the check.)</p> <p>존이 메리를 손을 잡았다. (=John grabbed Mary’s hands.)</p> <p>존이 차를 속도를 낮추었다. (=John slowed down the car.)</p> <p>이마트가 계란을 값을 올렸다. (=E-Mart raised the price of eggs.)</p> <p>대한항공이 의자를 간격을 넓혔다. (=Korean Air widened the space between seats.)</p>
Noun + Number + Counter Noun + Number	<p>메리가 손님을 다섯 명을 집들이에 초대했다. (=Mary invited five guests to her house-warming party.)</p> <p>존이 올해 스포츠카를 두 대를 샀다. (=John bought two sports cars this year.)</p> <p>존이 공원에서 친구를 셋을 만났다. (=John met three of his friends at the park.)</p>
Causative Verbs	<p>존이 그 아이를 음식을 먹였다. (=John fed that child the food.)</p> <p>메리가 아이를 옷을 입혔다. (=Mary dressed up the child with the clothes.)</p> <p>법원이 존을 벌금을 물렸다. (=The court charged John with the fine.)</p> <p>메리가 아이를 신을 신겼다. (=Mary put the shoes on the child.)</p> <p>존이 메리를 돈을 맡겼다. (=John entrusted his money to Mary.)</p>



## 22 Modal Auxiliaries I (보조동사 I)

A modal auxiliary is a grammatical unit that is used to enrich the semantic content of a main verb. It provides an additional meaning, such as intention, ability, possibility, purpose, wish, necessity, permission, etc. Unlike most English auxiliary verbs such as “can, will, must, may, etc.,” a Korean modal auxiliary consists of two different parts: a linking connector and an auxiliary verb. A linking connector is a grammatical device that is used to connect a main verb and an auxiliary verb. It is required because two verbs in Korean cannot be connected back to back without such a device. It takes various types of grammatical forms ranging from a simple vowel as in “~아/어 보다 (try to),” a gerundival suffix “기” as in “~기(를) 바라다 (I hope),” a modifying suffix plus a noun as in “~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 것 같다 (It seems that)” and so on. Unfortunately, it cannot be predicted what type of a linking connector each modal auxiliary takes. It is, therefore, highly recommended that we should treat each modal auxiliary as a single unit without breaking it into its component parts.

On the other hand, the main grammatical function of a modal auxiliary is to carry various inflectional suffixes such as tense markers, honorific suffixes, and sentence endings. Although a main verb can sometimes carry a tense marker or the subject honorific suffix “~(으)시,” a modal auxiliary is indeed the default carrier of all inflectional suffixes. The following two chapters of this book will examine various kinds of core modal auxiliaries that are currently being used in Korean.

### 1. Expressing one's intention or the possibility of an event in the near future: ~(으)려고 하다

“~(으)려고 하다” can be used to express that the subject intends to make an effort to

Function	Expressing one's intention	Expressing the possibility of an event in the near future		
Form	~(으)려고 하다			
Meaning	Intend to		Be about to	
Distribution	Present	Past	Future	
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~으려고 하다*		
	After a vowel	~려고 하다*		
	After "ㄹ"	~려고 하다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After "ㄹ"			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

carry out the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as "intend to." The subject in this case must be an animate noun.

저는 나중에 저녁을 먹으려고 합니다.

(=I intend to eat dinner later.)

메리는 고아원에서 헤어진 남동생을 찾으려고 합니다.

(=Mary intends to find her younger brother who was separated from her at the orphanage.)

존은 내년엔 메리와 결혼하려고 합니다.

(=John intends to get married to Mary next year.)

메리는 다음 달엔 한국을 방문하려고 합니다.

(=Mary intends to visit Korea next month.)

저는 다음 학기부터 한국어 공부를 하려고 합니다.

(=I intend to study Korean starting from the next semester.)

존은 집을 팔려고 합니다.

(=John intends to sell his house.)

On the other hand, "~(으)려고 하다" can also be used to express the possibility of an event which is about to occur in the immediate future or may occur in the near future,

which can be rendered as “be about to.” The subject must be an inanimate noun which does not have volition.

밖에 비가 오려고 합니다.

(=It's about to rain outside.)

밖이 어두워지려고 합니다.

(=It's about to get darker outside.)

시동이 꺼지려고 합니다.

(=My car is about to stall.)

집이 무너지려고 합니다.

(=The house is about to collapse.)

폭동이 일어나려고 합니다.

(=A riot is about to occur.)

화산이 폭발하려고 합니다.

(=The volcano is about to erupt.)

Sometimes “~(으)려고 하다” can be used with an animate subject to express the possibility of an event in the immediate future. In this case, the subject must be under the condition that he/she is unable to control the situation.

존이 갑자기 쓰러지려고 합니다.

(=John is suddenly about to collapse.)

메리가 숨을 거두려고 합니다.

(=Mary is about to die.)

## 2. Expressing one's making a strong effort to carry out his/her planned action: ~고자 하다

“~고자 하다” can be used to express that the subject is making a strong effort to carry out the planned action in the near future, which can be rendered as “would like to.” The subject in this case must be an animate noun. It is more likely to be used in written

text or in formal speech.

Function		Expressing one's making a strong effort to carry out his/her planned action		
Form		~고자 하다		
Meaning		Would like to		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~고자하다*		
	After a vowel	~고자하다*		
	After "ㄹ"	~고자하다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After "ㄹ"			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

한국말을 배운 후에 한국 회사에 취직하고자 합니다.

(=I would like to get a job at a Korean company after learning Korean.)

이번 TV 토론을 통해 시청자 여러분들과 함께 다양한 의견을 나누고자 합니다.

(=We would like to share various kinds of opinions with the viewers through this TV debate.)

우리 정부는 북한의 도발행위에 대해서 강력히 대응하고자 합니다.

(=Our government would like to take decisive action against North Korea's provocative acts.)

On the other hand, unlike “~(으)려고 하다,” “~고자 하다” cannot be used to express the possibility of an event which is about to occur in the immediate future or may occur in the near future.

밖에 비가 오고자 합니다. (NOT OK)

(=It's about to rain outside.)

시동이 꺼지고자 합니다. (NOT OK)

(=My car is about to stall.)

화산이 폭발하고자 합니다. (NOT OK)

(=The volcano is about to erupt.)

### 3. Expressing the speaker's weak intention or the weak possibility:

~(으)ㄴ 거다, ~(으)ㄴ 것이다

Function		Expressing the speaker's weak intention			Expressing the weak possibility of an event		
Form		~(으)ㄴ 거다			~(으)ㄴ 거다, ~(으)ㄴ 것이다		
Meaning		I intend to _			May/May have + pp		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을 거다		~았/었을 거다	~을 거다 ~을 것이다
	After a vowel			~ㄴ 거다		~았/었을 거다	~ㄴ 거다 ~ㄴ 것이다
	After "ㄹ"			거다		~았/었을 거다	거다 것이다
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant					~았/었을 거다	~을 거다 ~을 것이다
	After a vowel					~았/었을 거다	~ㄴ 거다 ~ㄴ 것이다
	After "ㄹ"					~았/었을 거다	거다 것이다

“~(으)ㄴ 거다” can be used to express the speaker's weak intention to carry out the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “I intend to \_.” Since it is generally difficult to figure out someone else's intention, “~(으)ㄴ 거다” is used with the first person subject in a statement.

그저 제가 먹을 겁니다.

(=I intend to eat that.)

그 미팅에 제가 갈 겁니다.

(=I intend to go to the meeting.)

이 문제는 제가 처리할 겁니다.

(=I intend to take care of this matter.)

오늘은 제가 돈을 낼 겁니다.

(=I intend to treat you this time.)

“~(으)ㄹ 거다” can also be used in a question to ask about the listener’s intention.

언제 한국에 가실 겁니까?

(=When do you intend to go to Korea?)

한국에 얼마 동안 계실 겁니까?

(=How long do you intend to stay in Korea?)

On the other hand, “~(으)ㄹ 거다, ~(으)ㄹ 것이다” can be used in a statement to express the possibility of the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “may.” “~(으)ㄹ 거다” can be freely used in both written text and conversation, whereas “~(으)ㄹ 것이다” can be mainly used in written text or in some very formal conversations. These grammar features require the subject not to be in the first person.

존이 저녁을 먹고 있을 겁니다.

존이 저녁을 먹고 있을 것입니다.

(=John may be eating dinner.)

내일 비가 올 겁니다.

내일 비가 올 것입니다.

(=It may rain tomorrow.)

선생님이 사무실에 계실 겁니다.

선생님이 사무실에 계실 것입니다.

(=The teacher may be in his/her office.)

이 약을 먹으면 금방 나을 겁니다.

이 약을 먹으면 금방 나을 것입니다.

(=You may get better soon if you take this medicine.)

“~았/었을 거다, ~았/었을 것이다” can be used to express the possibility of the past situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “may have+pp.”

존이 어제 그 일을 다 끝냈을 겁니다.  
 존이 어제 그 일을 다 끝냈을 것입니다.  
 (=John may have finished the work yesterday.)

메리가 기분이 좋았을 겁니다.  
 메리가 기분이 좋았을 것입니다.  
 (=Mary may have been in a good mood.)

존한테는 그 문제가 좀 어려웠을 겁니다.  
 존한테는 그 문제가 좀 어려웠을 것입니다.  
 (=The problem may have been a little difficult for John.)

#### 4. Expressing one's decision to take action: ~기로 하다

Function		Expressing one's decision to take action		
Form		~기로 하다		
Meaning		Decide to		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~기로 하다*		
	After a vowel	~기로 하다*		
	After "ㄹ"	~기로 하다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After "ㄹ"			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~기로 하다” can be used to express one's decision to carry out the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “decide to.”

다음달에 한국에 가기로 했습니다.  
 (=I decided to go to Korea next month.)  
 존이 다시는 결혼하지 않기로 했습니다.  
 (=John decided not to get married ever again.)

내일 떠나기로 합시다.

(=Let's make a decision to leave tomorrow.)

메리한테 그 일을 맡기기로 합시다.

(=Let's make a decision to let Mary do the job.)

더 이상 그 문제에 대해서 이야기하지 않기로 하겠습니다.

(=I will make a decision not to talk about the issue any more.)

The generic verb “하다” in “~기로 하다” can sometimes be replaced with the more specific verbs like “계획하다(plan to), 약속하다(promise to), 결심하다(make up one's mind),” etc.

메리는 다음 달까지 그 프로젝트를 끝내기로 계획했습니다.

(=Mary planned to finish the project by next month.)

존은 메리에게 결혼하기로 약속했습니다.

(=John promised to Mary that he is going to marry her.)

메리는 다시는 존을 안 만나기로 결심했습니다.

(=Mary made her mind up not to meet John again.)

## 5. Expressing “To try to make sure”: ~도록 하다

Function		Expressing “To try to make sure”		
Form		~도록 하다		
Meaning		To try to make sure that _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~도록 하다*		
	After a vowel	~도록 하다*		
	After “ㄹ”	~도록 하다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~도록 하다” can be used to express that the speaker wants to make sure that the preceding event actually occurs, which can be rendered as “to try to make sure that \_.”

다음 시험에는 꼭 합격하도록 하겠습니다.

(=I will try to make sure that I will pass the exam next time without fail.)

다음 주까지는 이 일을 다 끝내도록 하겠습니다.

(=I will try to make sure that I will finish this work by next week.)

오늘 밤에는 일찍 자도록 해라.

(=Try to make sure that you go to bed early tonight.)

밤 열 시까지는 집에 돌아오도록 해라.

(=Try to make sure that you come back home by ten o'clock at night.)

밖에 나 갈 때는 반드시 문을 잠그도록 하세요.

(=Please try to make sure that you lock the door when you go out.)

수업시간에 늦지 않도록 합시다.

(=Let's try to make sure that we are not going to be late for class.)

## 6. Thinking about/planning to/determined to take action:

~(으)ㄹ 생각/계획/예정/작정이다

Function		Thinking about/planning to/determined to take action		
Form		~(으)ㄹ 생각이다	~(으)ㄹ 계획/예정이다	~(으)ㄹ 작정이다
Meaning		Be thinking about	Be planning to	Be determined to
Distribution		Future	Future	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~을 생각이다*	~을 계획/예정이다*	~을 작정이다*
	After a vowel	~르 생각이다*	~르 계획/예정이다*	~르 작정이다*
	After “ㄹ”	생각이다*	계획/예정이다*	작정이다*
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~(으)ㄴ 생각이다” can be used to express that one is thinking about carrying out the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “be thinking about.”

내일 존과 같이 저녁을 먹을 생각이다.

(=I am thinking about eating dinner with John tomorrow.)

내일은 부산에 갈 생각이다.

(=I am thinking about going to Busan tomorrow.)

다음달에 집을 팔 생각이다.

(=I am thinking about selling my house next month.)

“~(으)ㄴ 계획이다, ~(으)ㄴ 예정이다” can be used to express that one is to carry out the action in the preceding clause that has been already planned, which can be rendered as “be planning to.”

존은 내년엔 메리와 결혼할 계획입니다.

(=John is planning to get married to Mary next year.)

미국은 북한의 정권교체를 위해서 선제공격을 할 계획이다.

(=The US is planning to make a preemptive strike on North Korea for its regime change.)

유엔안보리는 대북제재에 관한 결의안을 채택할 예정입니다.

(=The UN Security Council is planning to adopt the resolution that imposes sanctions against North Korea.)

“~(으)ㄴ 작정이다” can be used to express that one is determined to carry out the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “be determined to.”

매일 아침 한 시간씩 운동할 작정이다.

(=I am determined to do exercise for an hour every morning.)

다시는 남의 일에 참견하지 않을 작정이다.

(=I am determined to keep my nose out of other people's matters.)

## 7. Expressing a weak commitment to take action:

~(으)르까 하다, ~(으)르까 보다, ~(으)르까 싶다

Function		Expressing a weak commitment to take action		
Form		~(으)르까 하다	~(으)르까 보다	~(으)르까 싶다
Meaning		I am thinking about	I am wondering whether	
Distribution		Future	Future	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~을까 하다*	~을까 보다*	~을까 싶다*
	After a vowel	~르까 하다*	~르까 보다*	~르까 싶다*
	After “ㄹ”	~까 하다*	~까 보다*	~까 싶다*
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant		~을까 보다*	~을까 싶다*
	After a vowel		~르까 보다*	~르까 싶다*
	After “ㄹ”		~까 보다*	~까 싶다*

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~(으)르까 하다” can be used to express the speaker's weak commitment to take action that is flexible enough to be readily changed later depending on the situation. It can be rendered as “I am thinking about.”

배가 불러서 이걸 나중에 먹을까 한다.

(=I am thinking about eating this later because I am full.)

다음 달에 서울로 이사 갈까 한다.

(=I am thinking about moving to Seoul next month.)

그 사람을 한 번 만나 볼까 한다.

(=I am thinking about meeting the person once.)

오늘은 영화나 한편 볼까 한다.

(=I am thinking about watching a movie today.)

다음 달에 집을 팔까 한다.

(=I am thinking about selling my house next month.)

On the other hand, “~(으)르까 보다” and “~(으)르까 싶다” can be used to express the speaker's much weaker commitment to take action, and the option whether to take ac-

tion or not is more wide-open, which can be rendered as “I am wondering whether.”

여기에 나무를 심을까 보다/싶다.

(=I am wondering whether or not to plant a tree here.)

오늘 저녁은 외식을 할까 보다/싶다.

(=I am wondering whether or not to eat out for dinner tonight.)

존이랑 결혼해 버릴까 보다/싶다.

(=I am wondering whether or not to get married to John.)

그냥 죽어 버릴까 보다/싶다.

(=I am wondering whether or not to just kill myself.)

In addition, “~(으)르까 보다” and “~(으)르까 싶다” can also be used with a stative verb to express the speaker’s speculation on the situation in the preceding clause, which can also be rendered as “I am wondering whether.”

이 차를 사기에는 돈이 좀 모자랄까 보다/싶다.

(=I am wondering whether I have enough money to buy this car.)

이 집은 우리 가족이 살기에 좀 작을까 보다/싶다.

(=I am wondering whether this house is big enough for my family.)

## 8. Expressing “Be about to”: ~(으)려던 참이다, ~(으)려던 중이다

Function		Expressing “Be about to”	
Form		~(으)려던 참이다	~(으)려던 중이다
Meaning		Be about to	Be in the middle of starting
Distribution		Present	Present
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~으려던 참이다*	~으려던 중이다*
	After a vowel	~려던 참이다*	~려던 중이다*
	After “ㄹ”	~려던 참이다*	~려던 중이다*
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant		
	After a vowel		
	After “ㄹ”		

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~(으)려던 참이다” can be used to express that one is about to carry out the action in the preceding clause, but the action itself has not been actually carried out yet. It can be rendered as “be about to.” It is frequently used with the optional adverbial phrases “마침 (At this moment), 그렇지 않아도/안 그래도 (As a matter of fact).”

(마침) 지금 막 저녁을 먹으려던 참이었다.

(=I was about to eat dinner at this moment.)

(그렇지 않아도) 아침 일찍 떠나려던 참이었다.

(=As a matter of fact, I was about to leave early in the morning.)

(안 그래도) 메리에게 전화하려던 참이었다.

(=As a matter of fact, I was about to call Mary.)

“~(으)려던 중이다” can be used to express that one is already in the early stage of carrying out the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “be in the middle of starting.” It can also be used with the optional adverbial phrases “마침 (At this moment), 그렇지 않아도/안 그래도 (As a matter of fact).”

(마침) 지금 막 저녁을 먹으려던 중이었다.

(=I was in the middle of starting to eat dinner at this moment.)

(그렇지 않아도) 집을 팔려던 중이었다.

(=As a matter of fact, I was in the middle of starting to sell my house.)

(안 그래도) 메리에게 사과하려던 중이었다.

(=As a matter of fact, I was in the middle of starting to make an apology to Mary.)

## 9. Expressing responsibility/obligation/necessity:

**~아/어야 하다, ~아/어야 되다, ~아/어야 겠다**

“~아/어야 하다” can be used to express one's responsibility for taking action. The decision on whether to take action or not still falls under the subject's control. It can be rendered as “must.”

저는 지금 숙제를 해야 합니다.

(=I must do my homework now.)

Function		Expressing responsibility/obligation/necessity		
Form		~아/어야 하다	~아/어야 되다	~아/어야겠다
Meaning		Must	Have no choice but to_ /Must	Need to _
Distribution		Present	Present	Future
Action Verb	After “오” or “아”	~아야 하다*	~아야 되다*	~아야겠다
Stem	Otherwise	~어야 하다*	~어야 되다*	~어야겠다
Stative Verb	After “오” or “아”	~아야 하다*	~아야 되다*	
Stem	Otherwise	~어야 하다*	~어야 되다*	

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

존은 집안 청소를 해야 합니다.

(=John must clean his house.)

“~아/어야 되다” can be used to express one's obligation to take action which is enforced by some external reasons. The decision on whether to take action or not is not under the subject's control, but rather it depends on some external causes. It can be rendered as “have no choice but to \_.”

내일이 마감일이기 때문에 지금 일해야 됩니다.

(=I have no choice but to work now because tomorrow is the deadline.)

오늘 손님을 초대했기 때문에 집안 청소를 해야 됩니다.

(=I have no choice but to clean the house because I invited some guests today.)

But when “~아/어야 하다” and “~아/어야 되다” are used with a stative verb and with a conditional clause, they express that one must be in the certain state of the preceding verb to meet the requirement of the conditional clause. It can be rendered as “must be.”

연예인이 되려면 얼굴이 예뻐야 합니다.

연예인이 되려면 얼굴이 예뻐야 됩니다.

(=If you want to become an entertainer, you must be pretty.)

농구를 하려면 키가 커야 합니다.

농구를 하려면 키가 커야 됩니다.

(=If you want to play basketball, you must be tall.)

모델이 되려면 날씬해야 합니다.

모델이 되려면 날씬해야 됩니다.

(=If you want to become a fashion model, you must be slender.)

On the other hand, “~아/어야겠다” can be used to express the speaker’s volition to take action because he/she feels that it needs to be done. It can be rendered as “need to \_.”

내일은 좀 쉬어야겠다.

(=I need to take a rest tomorrow.)

빚을 갚으려면 집을 팔아야겠다.

(=I need to sell my house to pay off my debt.)

존한테 그 이야기를 해 주어야겠다.

(=I need to tell John about the story.)

## 10. Granting permission or Expressing concession: ~아/어도 좋다/되다/괜찮다

Function		Granting permission	Expressing concession
Form		~아/어도 좋다/되다/괜찮다	
Meaning		It's ok to do so/You are allowed to do so	It's ok even though _
Distribution		Present	Present
Action Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”	~아도 좋다* ~아도 되다* ~아도 괜찮다*	
	Otherwise	~어도 좋다* ~어도 되다* ~어도 괜찮다*	
Stative Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”		~아도 좋다* ~아도 되다* ~아도 괜찮다*
	Otherwise		~어도 좋다* ~어도 되다* ~어도 괜찮다*

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~아/어도 좋다, ~아/어도 되다, ~아/어도 괜찮다” can be used to grant permission, which can be rendered as “It’s ok to do so/You are allowed to do so.” In addition, they can be used to express concession to the listener, which can be rendered as “It’s ok even though \_.”

이 사과를 먹어도 좋습니다.

(=It’s ok to eat this apple. =You are allowed to eat this apple.)

피곤하면 집에 가도 좋습니다.

(=If you are tired, it’s ok to go home. =If you are tired, you are allowed to go home.)

힘드시면 안 하셔도 됩니다.

(=If it’s too hard for you, it’s ok not to do it. =If it’s too hard for you, you don’t need to do it.)

그냥 가셔도 됩니다.

(=It’s ok to go without doing anything.)

천천히 하셔도 됩니다.

(=It’s ok even though you do it slowly. =It’s ok to take your time.)

시간이 많이 걸려도 괜찮습니다.

(=It’s ok even though it takes long.)

기차를 타고 가도 괜찮습니다.

(=It’s ok even though you take a train.)

But when “~아/어도 좋다, ~아/어도 되다, ~아/어도 괜찮다” are used with stative verbs, they only express concession, which can be rendered as “It’s ok even though \_.”

키가 작아도 좋습니다/됩니다/괜찮습니다.

(=It’s ok even though one is not tall. =It does matter regardless of one’s height.)

값이 비싸도 좋습니다/됩니다/괜찮습니다.

(=It’s ok even though the price is expensive. = It doesn’t matter regardless of the price.)

## 11. Denying permission or Warning against an illegitimate behavior:

### ~(으)면 안 되다

Function		Denying permission	Warning against an illegitimate behavior
Form		~(으)면 안 되다	
Meaning		It's not ok to do so/ One is not allowed to do so	It's not ok if _/ One must not be
Distribution		Present	Present
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~으면 안 되다*	
	After a vowel	~면 안 되다*	
	After "ㄹ"	~면 안 되다*	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant		~으면 안 되다*
	After a vowel		~면 안 되다*
	After "ㄹ"		~면 안 되다*

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~(으)면 안 되다” can be used to deny permission or to issue a warning against an illegitimate behavior, which can be rendered as “It’s not ok to do so/One is not allowed to do so.”

도서관에서 음식을 먹으면 안 됩니다.

(=It is not ok to eat food at the library. =You are not allowed to eat food at the library.)

정치인은 어떤 종류의 뇌물도 받으면 안 됩니다.

(=It’s not ok for politicians to receive any kind of bribes. =Politicians are not allowed to receive any kind of bribes.)

이 곳에 들어오시면 안 됩니다.

(=It’s not ok to enter these premises. =You are not allowed to enter these premises.)

여기에 주차하시면 안 됩니다.

(=It’s not ok to park here. =You are not allowed to park here.)

학교에서 술을 마시면 안 됩니다.

(=It’s not ok to consume alcohol at school. =You are not allowed to consume alcohol at school.)

집행유예 기간 중에 다시 또 범죄를 저지르면 안 됩니다.

(=It is not ok to commit another crime during the probation period.

=You are not allowed to commit another crime during the probation period.)

이 제품을 그 가격에 팔면 안 됩니다.

(=It is not ok to sell this product at that price. =You are not allowed to sell this product at that price.)

When “~(으)면 안 되다” is used with a stative verb, it expresses that a person or a thing must not be in the state of the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “It’s not ok if \_/One must not be.”

농구 선수가 되려면 키가 작으면 안 됩니다.

(=It’s not ok to be short in height if you want to become a basketball player.

=You must not be short in height if you want to become a basketball player.)

물이 너무 뜨거우면 안 됩니다.

(=It’s not ok if the water is too hot. =The water must not be too hot.)

값이 너무 비싸면 안 됩니다.

(=It’s not ok if the price is too expensive. =The price must not be too expensive.)

## 12. Expressing “No other options available”: ~(으)ㄴ 수 밖에 없다

Function		Expressing “No other options available”	
Form		~(으)ㄴ 수 밖에 없다	
Meaning		Have no choice but to do so	Have no choice but to be _
Distribution		Future	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~을 수 밖에 없다*	
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 수 밖에 없다*	
	After “ㄹ”	수 밖에 없다*	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant		~을 수 밖에 없다*
	After a vowel		~ㄴ 수 밖에 없다*
	After “ㄹ”		수 밖에 없다*

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~(으)ㄴ 수 밖에 없다” can be used to express that there are no other options available other than the one in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “have no choice but to do so.”

이 가게는 문을 닫을 수 밖에 없다.

(=This store has no choice but to go out of business.)

우리는 존을 믿을 수 밖에 없다.

(=We have no choice but to trust John.)

메리는 존과 이혼할 수 밖에 없었다.

(=Mary had no choice but to divorce John.)

존은 시험에 떨어질 수 밖에 없었다.

(=John had no choice but to fail the test.)

메리는 그 일을 그만둘 수 밖에 없었다.

(=Mary had no choice but to quit the job.)

주민들의 격렬한 반대로 그 프로젝트를 포기할 수 밖에 없다.

(=We have no choice but to give up the project because of the residents' violent objection.)

지금 갑자기 돈이 필요해서 이걸 팔 수 밖에 없어요.

(=I have no choice but to sell this because I need money badly now.)

When “~(으)ㄴ 수 밖에 없다” are used with a stative verb, it expresses that one has no choice but to be in the certain state of the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “have no choice but to be \_.”

존은 부모님들이 작으셔서 키가 작을 수 밖에 없다.

(=John has no choice but to be short because his parents are short.)

메리는 게을러서 가난할 수 밖에 없다.

(=Mary has no choice but to be poor because she is lazy.)

### 13. Expressing the speaker's speculation: ~는/ (으)ㄴ/ (으)ㄹ 것 같다

Function		Expressing the speaker's speculation		
Form		~는/ (으)ㄴ/ (으)ㄹ 것 같다		
Meaning		It seems that _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 것 같다	~은 것 같다 ~았/었던 것 같다	~을 것 같다
	After a vowel	~는 것 같다	~ㄴ 것 같다 ~았/었던 것 같다	~ㄹ 것 같다
	After "ㄹ"	~는 것 같다*	~ㄴ 것 같다* ~았/었던 것 같다	것 같다
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 것 같다	~았/었던 것 같다	~을 것 같다
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 것 같다	~았/었던 것 같다	~ㄹ 것 같다
	After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 것 같다*	~았/었던 것 같다	것 같다

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는 것 같다, ~ㄴ 것 같다" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅁ, ㅂ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는 것 같다/판 것 같다

멀다 (far): 멀 → 먼 것 같다

"~는/ (으)ㄴ/ (으)ㄹ 것 같다" can be used to express the speaker's speculation based on his/her own judgment of the given situation, which can be rendered as "It seems that \_." Four different variant forms can be used depending on the verb types and the tense of the preceding verb.

#### 1) ~는 것 같다 (For action verbs in present tense)

"~는 것 같다" can be used to express the speaker's speculation on the subject's ongoing or habitual action.

존이 지금 자는 것 같아요.

(=It seems that John is sleeping now.)

메리가 매일 도서관에 가는 것 같아요.

(=It seems that Mary goes to the library every day.)

존이 지금 저녁을 먹는 것 같은데요.

(=It seems that John is eating dinner now.)

## 2) ~(으)ㄴ 것 같다(For action verbs in past tense and for stative verbs in present tense)

“~(으)ㄴ 것 같다” can be used to express the speaker’s speculation on the past event or on the current state described by a stative verb.

### (1) Action verbs in past tense

음식을 너무 많이 먹은 것 같다.

(=It seems that I ate too much food.)

잠을 너무 많이 잔 것 같다.

(=It seems that I slept too much.)

존이 숙제를 다 한 것 같은데요.

(=It seems that John finished his homework.)

밖에 누가 온 것 같은데요.

(=It seems that someone came outside.)

### (2) Stative verb in present tense

이 가방은 좀 작은 것 같다.

(=It seems that this bag is a little bit small.)

존이 요즘 바쁜 것 같다.

(=It seems that John is busy these days.)

그 사람 괜찮은 것 같은데요.

(=It seems that he/she is a good person.)

존이 피곤한 것 같은데요.

(=It seems that John is tired.)

## 3) ~(으)ㄹ 것 같다 (For action and stative verbs in future tense)

“~(으)ㄹ 것 같다” can be used to express the speaker’s speculation on a future action or a state.

이번에는 존이 상을 받을 것 같다.

(=It seems that John will receive an award this time.)

존이 저녁을 나중에 먹을 것 같은데요.

(=It seems that John will eat dinner later.)

메리가 내년에 결혼할 것 같은데요.

(=It seems that Mary will get married next year.)

결혼식이 곧 시작할 것 같다.

(=It seems that the wedding ceremony will start soon.)

내일은 날씨가 좋을 것 같다.

(=It seems that tomorrow's weather will be good.)

메리는 얼굴에 화장을 하면 예쁠 것 같다.

(=It seems that Mary will look pretty if she puts makeup on her face.)

존이 이 문제를 해결하기 힘들 것 같은데요.

(=It seems that it will be hard for John to solve this problem.)

#### 4) ~았/었던 것 같다 (For action and stative verbs in past tense)

“~았/었던 것 같다” can be used to express the speaker's less definitive speculation on the past event or on the particular state in the past described by a stative verb.

어제는 운동을 너무 많이 했던 것 같다.

(=It seems that probably I did too much exercise yesterday.)

내가 존에게 말을 좀 심하게 했던 것 같다.

(=It seems that probably I spoke to John too harshly.)

존은 어제 피곤했던 것 같다.

(=It seems that probably John was too tired yesterday.)

존은 어렸을 때 키가 작았던 것 같다.

(=It seems that probably John was short when he was a child.)

메리는 어렸을 때 더 예뻐던 것 같다.

(=It seems that probably Mary was prettier when she was a child.)

메리가 많이 아팠던 것 같은데요.

(=It seems that probably Mary had been very sick.)

## 14. Expressing the speaker's speculation: ~나 보다, ~는/(으)ㄴ가 보다

Function		Expressing the speaker's speculation					
Form		~나 보다			~는/(으)ㄴ가 보다		
Meaning		It appears that _					
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~나 보다	~았/었나 보다		~는가 보다	~았/었는가 보다	
	After a vowel	~나 보다	~았/었나 보다		~는가 보다	~았/었는가 보다	
	After "ㄹ"	~나 보다*	~았/었나 보다		~는가 보다*	~았/었는가 보다	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~나 보다	~았/었나 보다		~은가 보다	~았/었는가 보다	
	After a vowel	~나 보다	~았/었나 보다		~ㄴ가 보다	~았/었는가 보다	
	After "ㄹ"	~나 보다*	~았/었나 보다		~ㄴ가 보다*	~았/었는가 보다	

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~나 보다, ~는가 보다, ~ㄴ가 보다" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 사나 보다, 사는가 보다

멀다 (far): 멀 → 머나 보다, 먼가 보다

"~나 보다" can be used to express the speaker's speculation based on his/her personal observation on the given situation, which can be rendered as "It appears that \_." It is sometimes used with the optional expressions such as "~는/(으)ㄴ 걸 보니(까)" and "~는/(으)ㄴ 걸로 봐서," which can be rendered as "judging from the fact that \_."

부엌에서 소리가 나는 걸 보니(까)/나는 걸로 봐서 존이 밥을 먹나 봅니다.

(=It appears that John is eating food judging from the fact that there are some noises coming from the kitchen.)

집 안이 조용한 걸 보니(까) /조용한 걸로 봐서 존이 자나 보다.

(=It appears that John is sleeping judging from the fact that it is so quiet inside the house.)

명품백을 사는 걸 보니(까) / 사는 걸로 봐서 메리가 돈이 많나 봐요.

(=It appears that Mary is rich judging from the fact that she is buying a famous brand bag.)

꽃이 활짝 핀 걸 보니(까) / 핀 걸로 봐서 봄이 왔나 봅니다.

(=It appears that spring came judging from the fact that flowers are in full bloom.)

합격자가 적은 걸 보니(까) / 적은 걸로 봐서 시험이 아주 어려웠나 봅니다.

(=It appears that the test might be very difficult judging from the fact that a few people passed it.)

“~는/(으)ㄴ가 보다” can also be used to express the speaker’s speculation based on his/her personal observation of the given situation. But it is more likely to be used in a relatively more formal situation than “~나 보다.”

밖에 비가 오는가 봅니다.

(=It appears that it's raining outside.)

지금 안 해도 되는가 봅니다.

(=It appears that we don't have to do it now.)

옷이 좀 작은가 봐요.

(=It appears that your clothes are a little bit tight.)

존이 메리와 결혼해서 행복한가 봅니다.

(=It appears that John is happy to get married to Mary.)

피곤하신가 봐요.

(=It appears that you are tired.)

존이 학교에 갔는가 봐요.

(=It appears that John went to school.)

아주 마음에 드셨는가 봐요.

(=It appears that you liked it a lot.)

Unlike “~는/(으)ㄴ가 보다,” however, “~나 보다” cannot be used if the verb is the copula “~이다.”

존이 부자인가 봐요. (OK)  
 (=It appears that John is rich.)  
 존이 부자나 봐요. (NOT OK)

메리가 의사인가 봐요. (OK)  
 (=It appears that Mary is a doctor.)  
 메리가 의사나 봐요. (NOT OK)

**15. Expressing the speaker's conjecture: ~는지도 모르다, ~(으)르지도 모르다**

Function		Expressing the speaker's conjecture		
Form		~는지도 모르다	~(으)르지도 모르다	
Meaning		Might		May
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는지도 모르다	~았/었는지도 모르다 ~았/었을지도 모르다	~을지도 모르다
	After a vowel	~는지도 모르다	~았/었는지도 모르다 ~았/었을지도 모르다	~르지도 모르다
	After "ㄹ"	~는지도 모르다*	~았/었는지도 모르다 ~았/었을지도 모르다	~지도 모르다
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant		~았/었는지도 모르다 ~았/었을지도 모르다	~을지도 모르다
	After a vowel		~았/었는지도 모르다 ~았/었을지도 모르다	~르지도 모르다
	After "ㄹ"		~았/었는지도 모르다 ~았/었을지도 모르다	~지도 모르다

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는지도 모르다" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅅ, ㅈ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는지도 모르다

"~는지도 모르다" can be used to express the speaker's conjecture about the possibility of the ongoing situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as "might."

존이 날짜를 착각하고 있는지도 몰라요.

(=John might get the dates all mixed up.)

메리가 지금쯤 일하고 있는지도 몰라요.

(=Mary might be working about this time.)

존이 사과를 싫어하는지도 몰라요.

(=John might not like apples.)

메리가 집에 없는지도 몰라요.

(=Mary might not be at home.)

On the other hand, “~(으)르지도 모르다” can be used with an action verb and a stative verb to express the speaker’s conjecture on the possibility of the situation in the preceding clause that may occur in the future. Due to the inherent nature of a future event, however, the speaker is making a conjecture with less certainty. It can, therefore, be rendered as “may.”

존이 집에 없을지도 몰라요.

(=John may not be at home.)

이러다가는 여기서 다같이 죽을지도 몰라요.

(=If we continue to do it like this, we may all die here.)

메리가 곧 결혼할지도 몰라요.

(=Mary may get married soon.)

저 오늘 늦을지도 몰라요.

(=I may be late today.)

돈이 모자랄지도 몰라요.

(=It may not be enough money.)

There are two different past tense forms of this grammar feature: “~았/었는지도 모르다” and “~았을/었을지도 모르다.” “~았/었는지도 모르다” can be used to express the speaker’s conjecture on the possibility of the situation in the preceding clause that had happened in the past, which can be rendered as “might have +pp.” In the case that the speaker is making a conjecture with less certainty, “~았을/었을지도 모르다” can be used instead,

which can be rendered as “may have+pp.”

메리가 잘못했는지도 몰라요.

(=It might have been Mary's fault.)

존이 집을 벌써 팔았는지도 몰라요.

(=John might have sold his house already.)

범인이 이미 돈을 다 써 버렸는지도 몰라요.

(=The suspect might have spent all the money already.)

존이 지금쯤 거기에 도착했을지도 몰라요.

(=John may have arrived there by now.)

누가 그 가방을 훔쳐 갔을지도 몰라요.

(=Someone may have stolen the bag.)

## 16. Acknowledging the fact or knowing how to do things:

### ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 줄/지 않다

“~는/(으)ㄴ 줄 않다, ~는/(으)ㄴ 지 않다” can be used to respond to the listener by acknowledging the fact in a given situation, which can be rendered as “One knows that ...”

존이 컴퓨터를 잘하는 줄/잘하는 지 알아요.

(=I know that John is good at using a computer.)

그 사과가 썩은 줄/썩은 지 알아요.

(=I know that apple is rotten.)

메리가 존이 어디에다 돈을 감춘 줄/감춘 지 알아요.

(=Mary knows where John hid the money.)

존이 메리가 돈이 많은 줄/많은 지 알아요.

(=John knows that Mary has a lot of money.)

메리가 똑똑한 줄/똑똑한 지 알아요.

(=I know that Mary is smart.)

Function		Acknowledging the fact		Knowing how to do things	
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ 줄/지 않다		~는/(으)ㄹ 줄/지 않다	
Meaning		One knows that _		One knows how to do something	
Distribution		Present	Past	Present	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 줄 않다 ~는 지 않다	~은 줄 않다 ~은 지 않다	~는 줄 않다 ~는 지 않다	~을 줄 않다 ~을 지 않다
	After a vowel	~는 줄 않다 ~는 지 않다	~ㄴ 줄 않다 ~ㄴ 지 않다	~는 줄 않다 ~는 지 않다	~ㄹ 줄 않다 ~ㄹ 지 않다
	After “ㄹ”	~는 줄 <sup>*</sup> 알다 ~는 지 <sup>*</sup> 알다	~ㄴ 줄 <sup>*</sup> 알다 ~ㄴ 지 <sup>*</sup> 알다	~는 줄 <sup>*</sup> 알다 ~는 지 <sup>*</sup> 알다	줄 <sup>*</sup> 알다 지 <sup>*</sup> 알다
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 줄 <sup>*</sup> 알다 ~은 지 <sup>*</sup> 알다			
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 줄 <sup>*</sup> 알다 ~ㄴ 지 <sup>*</sup> 알다			
	After “ㄹ”	~ㄴ 줄 <sup>*</sup> 알다 ~ㄴ 지 <sup>*</sup> 알다			

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는 줄 알다, ~는 지 알다, ~ㄴ 줄 알다, ~ㄴ 지 알다” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 사는 줄 알다, 사는 지 알다

멀다 (far): 멀 → 먼 줄 알다, 먼 지 알다

“~았는/였는 줄 알다, ~았는/였는 지 알다” can be used optionally in place of the past tense forms “~(으)ㄴ 줄 알다, ~(으)ㄴ 지 알다” to emphasize the completion of the fact that occurred in the past.

존이 어디에다 그 돈을 감춘 줄/감춘 지 압니다.

존이 어디에다 그 돈을 감췌는 줄/감췌는 지 압니다.

(=I know where John had hidden the money.)

In contrast, the negative forms “~는/(으)ㄴ 줄 모르다, ~는/(으)ㄴ 지 모르다” can be used with the future tense suffix “~겠” to respond to the listener by indirectly defying the fact in the given situation, which can be rendered as “I am not sure \_.”

존이 피아노를 잘 치는 줄/치는 지 모르겠어요.

(=I am not sure whether John is good at playing the piano.)

존이 어디에다 돈을 감춘 줄/감춘 지 모르겠어요.

(=I am not sure where John hid the money.)

저는 벤츠가 좋은 줄/좋은 지 모르겠어요.

(=I am not sure whether Mercedes Benz is a good car.)

저는 메리가 예쁜 줄/예쁜 지 모르겠어요.

(=I am not sure whether Mary is pretty.)

On the other hand, “~는 줄/지 않다” and “~는 줄/지 모르다” can be used together with the question word “어떻게 (how)” to express one’s knowledge or lack of knowledge about how to do things.

존이 그 기계를 어떻게 사용하는 줄/사용하는 지 알아요.

(=John knows how to operate the machine.)

존이 그 기계를 어떻게 사용하는 줄/사용하는 지 몰라요.

(=John doesn’t know how to operate the machine.)

메리가 한국 비자를 어떻게 신청하는 줄/신청하는 지 알아요.

(=Mary knows how to apply for the Korean visa.)

메리가 한국 비자를 어떻게 신청하는 줄/신청하는 지 몰라요.

(=Mary doesn’t know how to apply for the Korean visa.)

“~(으)ㄴ 줄 알다” and “~(으)ㄴ 줄 모르다” can also be used to express one’s knowledge or lack of knowledge about how to do things, but without the question word “어떻게 (how)”. In addition, “~(으)ㄴ 지 알다, ~(으)ㄴ 지 모르다” cannot be used for this usage.

메리가 골프를 칠 줄 압니다.

(=Mary knows how to play golf.)

메리가 골프를 어떻게 칠 줄 압니다. (NOT OK)

메리가 골프를 칠 지 압니다. (NOT OK)

메리가 골프를 칠 줄 모릅니다.

(=Mary doesn’t know how to play golf.)

메리가 골프를 어떻게 칠 줄 모릅니다. (NOT OK)

메리가 골프를 칠 지 모릅니다. (NOT OK)

## 17. Expressing the speaker's false assumption:

~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 줄(로) 알았다

Function		Expressing the speaker's false assumption		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 줄(로) 알았다		
Meaning		I falsely assumed that		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 줄(로) 알았다	~은 줄(로) 알았다	~을 줄(로) 알았다
	After a vowel	~는 줄(로) 알았다	~ㄴ 줄(로) 알았다	~ㄹ 줄(로) 알았다
	After "ㄹ"	~는 줄(로) 알았다*	~ㄴ 줄(로) 알았다*	줄(로) 알았다
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 줄(로) 알았다		
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 줄(로) 알았다		
	After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 줄(로) 알았다*		

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는 줄(로) 알았다, ~ㄴ 줄(로) 알았다" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 사는 줄(로) 알았다, 산 줄(로) 알았다

멀다 (far): 멀 → 먼 줄(로) 알았다

"~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 줄(로) 알았다" can be used to express the speaker's false assumption about the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as "I falsely assumed that."

제가 그 일을 해야 하는 줄(로) 알았어요.

(=I falsely assumed that I am supposed to do the job.)

저는 메리와 같이 극장에 가는 줄(로) 알았어요.

(=I falsely assumed that we are going to the movie theater with Mary.)

너무 힘들어서 죽는 줄 알았어요.

(=I falsely assumed that I am going to die because it was too hard.)

그 사람이 죽은 줄(로) 알았어요.

(=I falsely assumed that the person was dead.)

존이 벌써 학교에 간 줄(로) 알았어요.

(=I falsely assumed that John already went to school.)

메리가 키가 작은 줄(로) 알았어요.

(=I falsely assumed that Mary is short.)

저는 존이 잘생긴 줄(로) 알았어요.

(=I falsely assumed that John is handsome.)

메리를 쉽게 찾을 줄(로) 알았어요.

(=I falsely assumed that it's easy to find Mary.)

저는 내일 일을 시작할 줄(로) 알았어요.

(=I falsely assumed that we are going to start working tomorrow.)

“로” in this grammar feature is generally optional, especially in conversation. Once it is deleted as in “~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 줄 알았다,” some of the resulting forms will be the same as the ones used for acknowledging the fact as we have discussed above. Therefore, the following sentences are actually ambiguous.

나는 존이 컴퓨터를 잘하는 줄 알았어요.

(=I knew that John is good at using a computer.) (**Acknowledging the fact**)

(=I falsely assumed that John is good at using a computer.) (**The speaker's false assumption**)

나는 존이 죽은 줄 알았어요.

(=I knew that John was dead.) (**Acknowledging the fact**)

(=I falsely assumed that John was dead.) (**The speaker's false assumption**)

나는 메리가 예쁜 줄 알았어요.

(=I knew that Mary is pretty.) (**Acknowledging the fact**)

(=I falsely assumed that Mary is pretty.) (**The speaker's false assumption**)

Then, the actual meaning of each sentence above can be determined only from the context.

On the other hand, “~(으)ㄴ 줄(로) 알다” can sometimes be used in idiomatic expressions in which the speaker wants to remind the listener that he/she is lucky to avoid a more disastrous situation. It can be rendered as “You should know that.”

오늘 운이 좋은 줄(로) 알아라.

(=You should know that you are lucky today.)

다행인 줄(로) 아세요.

(=You should know that you are lucky.)

액땀한 줄(로) 아세요.

(=You should know that this unfortunate incident may help you avoid the worst-case scenario.)

## 18. Expressing one's lack of prior knowledge:

**~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 줄(을) 몰랐다**

Function		Expressing one's lack of prior knowledge		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 줄(을) 몰랐다		
Meaning		Didn't know that		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 줄(을) 몰랐다	~은 줄(을) 몰랐다	~을 줄(을) 몰랐다
	After a vowel	~는 줄(을) 몰랐다	~ㄴ 줄(을) 몰랐다	~ㄹ 줄(을) 몰랐다
	After "ㄹ"	~는 줄(을) 몰랐다*	~ㄴ 줄(을) 몰랐다*	~ㄹ 줄(을) 몰랐다*
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 줄(을) 몰랐다		
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 줄(을) 몰랐다		
	After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 줄(을) 몰랐다*		

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는 줄(을) 몰랐다, ~ㄴ 줄(을) 몰랐다" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 사는 줄(을) 몰랐다, 산 줄(을) 몰랐다

멀다 (far): 멀 → 먼 줄(을) 몰랐다

"~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 줄(을) 몰랐다" can be used to express the speaker's lack of prior knowledge about the given situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as "didn't know that."

존은 메리가 다른 남자와 데이트하는 줄(을) 몰랐다.

(=John didn't know that Mary has been dating another man.)

메리는 존이 죽은 줄(을) 몰랐다.

(=Mary didn't know that John was dead.)

존은 메리가 이미 결혼한 줄(을) 몰랐다.

(=John didn't know that Mary was already married.)

메리의 집이 이렇게 넓은 줄(을) 몰랐다.

(=I didn't know that Mary's house is this spacious.)

이 가방이 그렇게 비싼 줄(을) 몰랐다.

(=I didn't know that this bag is that expensive.)

경찰이 이렇게 빨리 범인을 잡을 줄(을) 몰랐다.

(=I didn't know that the police quickly captured the suspect like this.)

나는 존이 그렇게 새빨간 거짓말을 할 줄(을) 몰랐다.

(=I didn't know that John could tell me such a barefaced lie.)

니가 정말 그럴 줄(을) 몰랐다.

(=I didn't know how you could do that to me.)

## 19. Expressing capability/inability or possibility/impossibility:

### ~(으)르 수 있다/없다

“~(으)르 수 있다” can be used to express one's capability of carrying out a task, which can be rendered as “can/be able to.”

며칠 내로 아이를 찾을 수 있습니다.

(=I can find the child within a few days.)

협조해 주시면 반드시 그 범인을 잡을 수 있습니다.

(=I can capture the criminal without fail if you cooperate.)

저는 이번 시험에 꼭 합격할 수 있어요.

(=I can pass this test without fail.)

내일까지는 그 프로젝트를 끝낼 수 있어요.

(=I can finish the project by tomorrow.)

Function		Expressing capability/inability	Expressing possibility/impossibility
Form		~(으)ㄴ 수 있다/없다	
Meaning		Can/Cannot	There is a possibility that _ /There is no possibility that _
Distribution		Future	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~을 수 있다* ~을 수 없다*	~을 수 있다* ~을 수 없다*
	After a vowel	~르 수 있다* ~르 수 없다*	~르 수 있다* ~르 수 없다*
	After “ㄹ”	수 있다* 수 없다*	수 있다* 수 없다*
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant		
	After a vowel		
	After “ㄹ”		

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

다음 주에는 시간을 낼 수 있어요.

(=I can make time next week.)

메리는 신용이 좋아서 은행에서 대출을 받을 수 있었다.

(=Mary could get a bank loan because her credit was good.)

In contrast, “~(으)ㄴ 수 없다” can be used to express one’s inability to carry out a task, which can be rendered as “cannot/be unable to.”

은행 문을 닫아서 돈을 찾을 수 없어요.

(=I cannot withdraw money because the bank is closed.)

이 음식은 상해서 먹을 수 없어요.

(=I cannot eat this food because it has gone bad.)

지금은 너무 바빠서 만날 수 없어요.

(=I cannot see you now because I am so busy.)

밖이 너무 시끄러워서 공부에 집중을 할 수 없었다.

(=I could not concentrate on my studies because it’s too noisy outside.)

On the other hand, “~(으)ㄴ 수 있다, ~(으)ㄴ 수 없다” can also be used to express the possibility or impossibility of a future event, which can be rendered as “There is a possibility that \_/There is no possibility that \_.”

자꾸 그러면 존이 화를 낼 수 있어요.

(=There is a possibility that John may take his anger out on you if you continue to do that.)

조심하지 않으면 다칠 수 있어요.

(=There is a possibility that you may get hurt if you are not careful.)

한국에서도 큰 지진이 발생할 수 있어요.

(=There is a possibility that a big earthquake may also occur in Korea.)

북한이 또 ICBM을 발사하면 한반도에서 전쟁이 일어날 수 있어요.

(=If North Korea launches another ICBM, there is a possibility that a war may break out on the Korean peninsula.)

지구온난화가 계속되면 전 세계가 멸망할 수 있어요.

(=If global warming continues, there is a possibility that the entire world may be destroyed.)

그런 일이 절대 일어날 수 없어요.

(=There is absolutely no possibility that such a thing may occur.)

안보가 불안하면 경제가 더 이상 성장할 수 없어요.

(=If our national security becomes unstable, there is no possibility that our economy may grow further.)

## 20. Denying the possibility of a situation: ~(으)ㄴ 리(가) 있다/없다

“~(으)ㄴ 리(가) 있다” together with the suffix “~겠” can be used in a rhetorical question to deny the possibility of an unfavorable situation. It can be rephrased as a strong positive statement using “~(으)ㄴ 리(가) 없다,” which can be rendered as “There is no chance.”

Function		Denying the possibility of a situation		
Form		~(으)ㄹ 리(가) 있다/없다		
Meaning		There is no chance		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant		~았/었을 리(가) 있다 ~았/었을 리(가) 없다	~을 리(가) 있다 ~을 리(가) 없다
	After a vowel		~았/었을 리(가) 있다 ~았/었을 리(가) 없다	~ㄹ 리(가) 있다 ~ㄹ 리(가) 없다
	After “ㄹ”		~았/었을 리(가) 있다 ~았/었을 리(가) 없다	리(가) 있다 리(가) 없다
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant		~았/었을 리(가) 있다 ~았/었을 리(가) 없다	~을 리(가) 있다 ~을 리(가) 없다
	After a vowel		~았/었을 리(가) 있다 ~았/었을 리(가) 없다	~ㄹ 리(가) 있다 ~ㄹ 리(가) 없다
	After “ㄹ”		~았/었을 리(가) 있다 ~았/었을 리(가) 없다	리(가) 있다 리(가) 없다

제가 한 약속을 잊을 리가 있겠습니까?

=제가 한 약속을 잊을 리가 없습니다.

(=There is no chance for me to forget the promise made to you.)

존이 메리를 놔두고 혼자 떠날 리가 있겠어요?

=존이 메리를 놔두고 혼자 떠날 리가 없어요.

(=There is no chance that John would leave Mary behind.)

제가 그럴 리가 있겠어요?

=제가 그럴 리가 없어요.

(=There is no chance for me to do such a thing.)

존이 그 가격에 집을 팔 리가 있겠어요?

=존이 그 가격에 집을 팔 리가 없어요.

(=There is no chance that John would sell his house at that price.)

메리가 기분이 좋을 리가 있겠어요?

=메리가 기분이 좋을 리가 없어요.

(=There is no chance that Mary would be happy about that.)

그 돈이 모자랄 리가 있겠어요?

=그 돈이 모자랄 리가 없어요.

(=There is no chance that the money is insufficient.)

메리의 집이 이렇게 멀리가 있겠어요?

메리의 집이 이렇게 멀리가 없어요.

(=There is no chance that Mary's house is this far.)

존이 그런 짓을 했을 리가 있겠어요?

=존이 그런 짓을 했을 리가 없어요.

(=There is no chance that John did such a thing.)

On the other hand, the negative verb “없다” in “~(으)ㄴ 리(가) 없다” can sometimes be replaced by another negative verb “만무하다 (zero possibility in ten thousand cases)” for stronger emphasis on the impossibility of an event.

존이 그런 음식을 먹을 리가 만무합니다.

(=There is absolutely no chance that John would eat such food.)

메리가 그런 짓을 할 리가 만무합니다.

(=There is absolutely no chance that Mary does such a thing.)

존이 그걸 몰랐을 리(가) 만무합니다.

(=There is absolutely no chance that John didn't know that.)

메리가 그 문제를 혼자 풀었을 리(가) 만무하다.

(=There is absolutely no chance that Mary solved the problem alone.)

## 21. Expressing “Offering a favor or asking a favor”: ~아/어 주다, ~아/어 드리다

“~아/어 주다” can be used in a statement or propositional sentence to express one’s offering a favor to someone. If the recipient is someone to whom you need to show respect, “~아/어 드리다” is used instead.

부모님이 존에게 집을 사 주었습니다.

(=John’s parents bought a house for him.)

Function		Expressing "Offering a favor or asking a favor"		
Form		~아/어 주다, ~아/어 드리다		
Meaning		Offering a favor to someone/Asking a favor of someone		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After "오" or "아"	~아 주다* ~아 드리다*		
	Otherwise	~어 주다* ~어 드리다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After "오" or "아"			
	Otherwise			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

존이 부모님께 집을 사 드렸습니다.

(=John bought a house for his parents.)

메리가 존에게 돈을 좀 빌려 주었습니다.

(=Mary lent John some money.)

메리가 존의 부모님께 돈을 좀 빌려 드렸습니다.

(=Mary lent John's parents some money.)

메리를 좀 같이 도와 주자.

(=Let's help Mary together.)

메리의 부모님을 도와 드리자.

(=Let's help Mary's parents.)

If “~아/어 주다” is used in a question or imperative sentence, it can be used to ask someone a favor. But its honorific form “~아/어 드리다” cannot be used in these sentence types if the recipient of a favor is the speaker because the speaker cannot honor himself/herself according to the Korean honorific system.

저 빨간 가방 좀 보여 주시겠습니까?

(=Could you please show me that red bag?)

저 빨간 가방 좀 보여 드리시겠습니까? (NOT OK)

저 좀 집에 데려다 주시겠습니까?  
 (Could you please give me a ride home?)  
 저 좀 집에 데려다 드리시겠습니까? (NOT OK)  
 저 좀 도와 주세요.  
 (=Please help me.)  
 저 좀 도와 드리세요. (NOT OK)  
 저 이번 한 번만 살려 주세요.  
 (=Let me go just this time, please.)  
 저 이번 한 번만 살려 드리세요. (NOT OK)  
 저 좀 한 번만 봐 주세요.  
 (=Let me off this hook just once please.)  
 저 좀 한 번만 봐 드리세요. (NOT OK)

However, if the recipient of a favor is not the speaker, then “~아/어 드리다” can be freely used in a question or imperative sentence.

저 분한테 저 빨간 가방 좀 보여 드리시겠습니까?  
 (=Could you please show that red bag to the person over there?)  
 저 빨간 가방 좀 보여 드릴까요?  
 (=Shall I show you the red bag?)  
 저 분 좀 집에다 모셔다 드리시겠습니까?  
 (=Could you please give a ride to the person over there?)  
 집에 모셔다 드릴까요?  
 (=Shall I give you a ride home?)  
 부모님 좀 도와 드리세요.  
 (=Please help your parents.)

## 22. Expressing one's desire to do something: ~고 싶다, ~고 싶어하다

“~고 싶다” can be used in a statement to express the speaker's desire to do something, which can be rendered as “want to \_.”

Function		Expressing one's desire to do something		
Form		~고 싶다, ~고 싶어하다		
Meaning		Want to _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~고 싶다* ~고 싶어하다*		
	After a vowel	~고 싶다* ~고 싶어하다*		
	After "ㄹ"	~고 싶다* ~고 싶어하다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After "ㄹ"			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

다리가 아파서 의자에 앉고 싶습니다.

(=I want to sit on a seat because my legs are hurting me.)

오늘 저녁에는 피자를 먹고 싶습니다.

(=I want to eat pizza for dinner tonight.)

나는 메리와 결혼하고 싶다.

(=I want to get married to Mary.)

너무 피곤해서 집에 가고 싶다.

(=I want to go back home because I am so tired.)

어디론가 여행을 떠나고 싶습니다.

(=I want to take a trip somewhere.)

저는 대학교를 졸업한 후에 한국에 가서 살고 싶습니다.

(=I want to live in Korea after graduating from college.)

In a question, it can be used to ask about the listener's desire to do something.

너 뭐 먹고 싶어?

(=What do you want to eat?)

너 죽고 싶어?

(=Do you want to die?)

부자가 되고 싶으세요?

(=Do you want to become a rich person?)

좋은 대학에 들어가 싶습니까?

(Do you want to enter a good college?)

행복한 삶을 누리고 싶으세요?

(=Do you want to enjoy a happy life?)

건강하게 살고 싶으세요?

(=Do you want to have a healthy life?)

However, if the speaker wants to describe a third person subject's desire, “~고 싶어하다” must be used instead.

존은 대학교에 가고 싶어합니다.

(=John wants to go to college.)

부모님이 저와 함께 살고 싶어하십니다.

(=My parents want to live with me.)

선생님이 한 번 만나보고 싶어하십니다.

(=My teacher wants to see you once.)

메리가 대학교에 가고 싶어합니까?

(=Does Mary want to go to college?)

부모님이 함께 살고 싶어하십니까?

(=Do your parents want to live with you?)

부모님이 저를 만나보고 싶어하십니까?

(=Do your parents want to see me?)

### 23. Expressing the speaker's wish for a certain condition:

~(으)면 좋겠다, ~(는/ㄴ)다면 좋겠다

Function		Expressing the speaker's wish for a certain condition					
Form		~(으)면 좋겠다			~(는/ㄴ)다면 좋겠다		
Meaning		I will be happy if _					
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~으면 좋겠다	~았/었으면 좋겠다		~는다면 좋겠다		
	After a vowel	~면 좋겠다	~았/었으면 좋겠다		~ㄴ 다면 좋겠다		
	After "ㄹ"	~면 좋겠다	~았/었으면 좋겠다		~ㄴ 다면 좋겠다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~으면 좋겠다	~았/었으면 좋겠다				
	After a vowel	~면 좋겠다	~았/었으면 좋겠다				
	After "ㄹ"	~면 좋겠다	~았/었으면 좋겠다				

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~ㄴ 다면 좋겠다" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 산다면 좋겠다

"~(으)면 좋겠다" can be used to express the speaker's wish for the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as "I will be happy if \_."

이번에는 성적을 잘 받으면 좋겠다.

(=I will be happy if I get a better grade this time.)

존이 나를 좀 도와주면 좋겠다.

(=I will be happy if John helps me a little.)

일이 잘 되면 좋겠다.

(=I will be happy if things are going well.)

집이 좀 넓으면 좋겠다.

(=I will be happy if my house is more spacious.)

얼굴이 예쁘면 좋겠다.

(=I will be happy if I have a pretty face)

The preceding verb can optionally take the past tense suffix “~았/었” to express the speaker’s wish for the situation in which the condition as in the preceding clause is already met.

이번에는 성적을 잘 받았으면 좋겠다.

(=I will be happy if I get a better grade this time.)

존이 나를 좀 도와줬으면 좋겠다.

(=I will be happy if John helps me a little.)

집이 좀 넓었으면 좋겠다.

(=I will be happy if my house is more spacious.)

일이 잘 됐으면 좋겠다.

(=I will be happy if things are going well.)

On the other hand, “~(는/ㄴ)다면 좋겠다” is generally interchangeable with “~(으)면 좋겠다.” But the preceding condition is stated more definitively. In addition, unlike “~(으)면 좋겠다,” the preceding verb cannot take the past tense suffixes “~았/었.”

이 약을 먹고 병이 다 낫는다면 좋겠다.

(=I will be happy if I can fully recover from my illness after taking this medicine.)

이 약을 먹고 병이 다 나았다면 좋겠다. (NOT OK)

이 약을 먹고 고통 없이 죽는다면 좋겠다.

(=I will be happy if I can die without pain after taking this medicine.)

이 약을 먹고 고통 없이 죽었다면 좋겠다. (NOT OK)

존이 내 대신 거기에 가 준다면 좋겠다.

(=I will be happy if John can go there instead of me.)

존이 내 대신 거기에 가 줬다면 좋겠다. (NOT OK)

메리가 다시 미소를 찾을 수 있다면 좋겠다.

(=I will be happy if Mary can regain her smile again.)

메리가 다시 미소를 찾을 수 있었다면 좋겠다. (NOT OK)

## 24. Expressing one's hope for a future event: ~기(를) 바라다

Function		Expressing one's hope for a future event		
Form		~기(를) 바라다		
Meaning		I hope		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~기(를) 바라다*		
	After a vowel	~기(를) 바라다*		
	After “ㄹ”	~기(를) 바라다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~기(를) 바라다” can be used to express one’s hope for a future event, which can be rendered as “I hope.” The object case marker “~를” can be optionally deleted, or it can be contracted into “~길” as in “~길 바라다,” which is more likely to be used in conversation.

더 열심히 공부하시기(를)/길 바랍니다.

(=I hope you study harder.)

감기 조심하시기(를)/길 바랍니다.

(=I hope you take care not to catch a cold.)

꼭 성공하시기(를)/길 바랍니다.

(=I hope you become successful without fail.)

새해에는 소원 성취하시기(를)/길 바랍니다.

(=I hope your wishes come true in the New Year.)

다시는 이런 일이 일어나지 않기(를)/길 바랍니다.

(=I hope something like this won’t happen again.)

빨리 남북통일이 되기(를)/길 바랍니다.

(=I hope South and North Korea will become unified soon.)

메리는 존과 헤어지기(를)/길 바랍니다.

(=As for Mary, she wants to break up with John.)

전 세계가 북한이 핵무기를 포기하기(를)/길 바랍니다.

(=The entire world wants North Korea to give up its nuclear weapons.)

## 25. Softening the tone of description: ~는/(으)ㄴ 편이다

Function		Softening the tone of description		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ 편이다		
Meaning		Kind of/To be on the side of		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 편이다	~은 편이다	
	After a vowel	~는 편이다	~ㄴ 편이다	
	After “ㄹ”	~는 편이다*	~ㄴ 편이다*	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 편이다		
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 편이다		
	After “ㄹ”	~ㄴ 편이다*		

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는 편이다, ~ㄴ 편이다” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 사는 편이다, 산 편이다

멀다 (far): 멀 → 먼 편이다

In Korean, it is generally discouraged to provide a definitive description of a person or a thing. Such an assertive statement may often offend the other party's feeling. It is, therefore, sometimes necessary to soften the tone of description by using “~는/(으)ㄴ 편이다,” which can be rendered as “kind of/to be on the side of.”

존은 밥을 많이 먹는 편이다.

(=John is kind of a big eater.)

메리는 쉽게 화를 내는 편이다.

(=Mary is kind of short tempered.)

이 정도면 잘 섞은 편이다.

(=If it is like this, I kind of mixed them well.)

존은 성공한 편이다.  
 (=John became kind of successful.)

존은 키가 작은 편이다.  
 (=John is kind of short.)

메리는 말이 많은 편이다.  
 (=Mary is kind of talkative.)

범인은 몸이 마른 편입니다.  
 (=The suspect is kind of skinny.)

## 26. Exaggerating the speaker's emotion: ~아/어(서) 죽겠다

Function		Exaggerating the speaker's emotion		
Form		~아/어(서) 죽겠다		
Meaning		I am dying to _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”			
	Otherwise			
Stative Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”	~아(서) 죽겠다		
	Otherwise	~어(서) 죽겠다		

“~아/어(서) 죽겠다” can be used as a hyperbolic expression to exaggerate the speaker's emotional tone. It is typically used when the speaker wants to make an emotional appeal to the listener by claiming that a given situation is killing him/her, which can be rendered as “I am dying to \_.

아들이 보고 싶어 죽겠어요.  
 (=I am dying to see my son.)

배고파 죽겠어요.  
 (=I am starving to death.)

무서워 죽겠다.  
 (=I am scared to death.)

창피해 죽겠다.

(=I am mortified to death.)

피곤해 죽겠습니다.

(=I am dead tired.)

가슴이 조마조마해서 죽겠어요.

(=The suspense is killing me.)

## 27. Expressing a close call: ~(으)ㄴ **뻔하다**

Function		Expressing a close call		
Form		~(으)ㄴ 뻔하다		
Meaning		Almost		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을 뻔하다*
	After a vowel			~ㄴ 뻔하다*
	After “ㄹ”			뻔하다*
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~(으)ㄴ 뻔하다” can be used to describe an event in which one almost ran into the situation in the preceding clause, but just barely escaped from it, which can be rendered as “almost.” It is frequently used with the optional phrase “하마터면 (if something goes wrong).”

(하마터면) 배 고파 죽을 뻔했어요.

(=I almost died of hunger.)

(하마터면) 큰 일 날 뻔했어요.

(=I almost ran into big trouble.)

(하마터면) 큰 실수 할 뻔했어요.

(=I almost made a big mistake.)

(하마터면) 오늘 교통사고가 날 뻔했어요.

(=I almost got into an accident today.)

(하마터면) 비행기를 놓칠 뻔했어요.

(=I almost missed the flight.)

(하마터면) 전 재산을 날릴 뻔했어요.

(=I almost got taken to the cleaners.)

(하마터면) 오늘 아침 수업에 늦을 뻔했어요.

(=I was almost late for the morning class today.)

(하마터면) 돈이 모자랄 뻔했어요.

(=I was almost short of money.)

## 28. Expressing “Be worth doing something” or “Be within one's ability”:

~(으)ㄴ 만하다

Function		Expressing “Be worth doing something”	Expressing “Be within one's ability”	
Form		~(으)ㄴ 만하다		
Meaning		Be worth -ing		Can manage to _
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant			~을 만하다*
Verb	After a vowel			~ㄴ 만하다*
Stem	After “ㄴ”			만하다*
Stative	After a consonant			
Verb	After a vowel			
Stem	After “ㄴ”			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~(으)ㄴ 만하다” can be used to express that the subject is a person or a thing for which the action in the preceding clause is worth being taken, which can be rendered as “be worth -ing.”

그 사람은 믿을 만합니다.  
(=That person is worth trusting.)

제주도는 가 볼 만합니다.  
(=Jeju-do is worth visiting.)

그 영화는 볼 만합니다.  
(=The movie is worth watching.)

제 컴퓨터는 아직 쓸 만합니다.  
(=My computer is still worth using.)

On the other hand, it can also be used to express that a person can manage to carry out the action in the preceding clause within his/her ability, which can be rendered as “can manage to ...”

조금 아프지만 참을 만합니다.  
(=Although it's a little bit painful, I can manage to put up with it.)

이 일은 조금 힘들지만 할 만합니다.  
(=Although this job is a bit hard for me, I can manage to do it.)

요즘은 좀 먹고 살 만합니다.  
(=These days I can manage to make ends meet.)

아직은 견딜 만 합니다.  
(=I can still manage to handle it.)

## 29. Safeguarding an item or information: ~아/어 두다, ~아/어 놓다

“~아/어 두다, ~아/어 놓다” can be used to express that one is safeguarding an item or information and keeping it that way, which can be rendered as “have kept -ing.”

존은 골드바를 옷장에 숨겨 두었다/놓았다.  
(=John has kept hiding the gold bar in the closet.)

메리는 어머니께 돈을 맡겨 두었다/놓았다.  
(=Mary has kept entrusting her money to her mother.)

Function		Safeguarding an item or information		
Form		~아/어 두다, ~아/어 놓다		
Meaning		Have kept -ing		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”	~아 두다* ~아 놓다*		
	Otherwise	~어 두다* ~어 놓다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”			
	Otherwise			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

선생님 말씀을 노트에 적어 두었다/놓았다.

(=I have kept writing what the teacher said on my notebook.)

모든 자료를 컴퓨터에 저장해 두었다/놓았다.

(=I have kept saving all the data on my computer.)

내년에 한국여행을 가려고 돈은 저축해 두었다/놓았다.

(=I have kept saving the money for my trip to Korea next year.)

호텔을 예약해 두었다/놓았다.

(=I have kept making a reservation for a hotel.)

창문을 열어 두었다/놓았다.

(=I have kept opening the windows because the weather is hot.)

### 30. Expressing the unavailability after the completion of an action:

~아/어 버리다, ~아/어 먹다

“~아/어 버리다” can be used to express that a person or an item will be no longer available after the completion of an action, which can be rendered as “completely.” It can be freely used in written text and conversation.

Function		Expressing the unavailability after the completion of an action	
Form		~아/어 버리다	~아/어 먹다
Meaning		Completely	
Distribution		Present	Present
Action Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”	~아 버리다*	~아 먹다*
	Otherwise	~어 버리다*	~어 먹다*
Stative Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”		
	Otherwise		

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

존이 피자를 다 먹어 버렸어요.

(=John completely ate the pizza. =John ate up the pizza.)

돈을 다 써 버렸어요.

(=I completely used all the money. =I used up all the money.)

컴퓨터에 있는 데이터가 다 날라가 버렸어요.

(=All the data on my computer is completely gone.)

오늘이 메리의 생일인 걸 잊어버렸어요.

(=I completely forgot that today is Mary's birthday.)

도와주세요. 이 놀이공원에서 제 아이를 잃어버렸어요.

(=Please help me. I completely lost my child at this amusement park.)

“~아/어 먹다” carries a more or less similar function, but it puts more emphasis on the negative outcome of the action. It is more likely to be used in casual speech.

존이 부모님 재산을 다 까먹었다.

(=John squandered his parents' entire fortune.)

존이 그 접시를 깨 먹었다.

(=John completely broke the dish.)

이젠 이 일도 못 해 먹겠다.

(=From now on, I cannot do this job anymore.)

On the other hand, “~아/어 떡다” can also be used to express that one is abusing his/her ability or position.

존은 나를 노예처럼 부러떡었다.

(=John shoved me around like slave.)

메리가 나를 놀려 떡었다.

(=Mary made fun of me.)

존이 메리를 이용해 떡었다.

(=John took advantage of Mary.)

존은 공부하는 자세가 완전히 틀려 떡었다./글러 떡었다.

(=John's learning attitude is downright wrong.)

### CAUTION

As you may have already noticed above, the combination of the verbs “잊다 (to forget), 잃다 (to lose), 까다 (to peel), 부리다 (to manage)” and the modal auxiliaries “아/어 버리다, 아/어 떡다” are now treated as a single compound verb.

### 31. Expressing the inability to take further action: ~(으)ㄴ 뿐이다

Function		Expressing the inability to take further action		
Form		~(으)ㄴ 뿐이다		
Meaning		Just/Merely		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant		~았/었을 뿐이다	~을 뿐이다
	After a vowel		~았/었을 뿐이다	~ㄴ 뿐이다
	After “ㄹ”		~았/었을 뿐이다	뿐이다
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

“~(으)ㄴ뿐이다” can be used to express one’s inability to take further action, which can be rendered as “just/merely.”

저는 그냥 한글을 읽을 수만 있을 뿐이에요.

(=I can just read the Korean alphabet.)

결과만 기다릴 뿐이에요.

(=I am just waiting for the result.)

존을 설득하는 것은 시간 낭비일 뿐이에요.

(=It's just a waste of time to persuade John.)

그저 한숨만 나올 뿐이네요.

(=I can just let out a sigh.)

저는 그냥 시키는 대로 했을 뿐이에요.

(=I just did what I was ordered to do.)

그냥 생각만 했을 뿐이에요.

(=I just thought about it.)

### 32. Describing a continuing state: ~아/어 있다

Function		Describing a continuing state		
Form		~아/어 있다		
Meaning		Have been _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”	~아 있다*		
	Otherwise	~어 있다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”			
	Otherwise			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~아/어 있다” can be used with an action verb to describe the current state of affairs that started in the past and has continued up until now, which can be rendered as “have been \_.”

이 환자는 아직 살아 있다.

(=This patient has been still alive. =This patient is still alive.)

많은 사람들이 아직 뒤에 서 있어요.

(=Many people have been still standing in the back. =Many people are still standing in the back.)

할 일이 아직 많이 남아 있다.

(=A lot of things have been still left to be done. =I still have a lot of things to do.)

앞에 부모님이 앉아 계세요.

(=My parents have been sitting in front of me.)

집 밖에 눈이 쌓여 있다.

(=Snow has been piled up outside the house.)

### 33. Expressing indirect description: ~아/어 보인다, ~게 보인다

Function		Expressing indirect description	
Form		~아/어 보인다	~게 보인다
Meaning		Look + Adjective	Look as if
Distribution		Present	Present
Action Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”		
	Otherwise		
Stative Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”	~아 보인다*	~게 보인다*
	Otherwise	~어 보인다*	~게 보인다*

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

In Korean, it is generally discouraged to provide a definitive description of a person or a thing. Such an assertive statement may often offend the other party's feeling. It is, therefore, sometimes necessary to soften the tone of description. For that purpose, “~아/어 보인다” can be used with a stative verb to describe a person or a thing less definitely, which can be rendered as “look+adjective.”

어머님이 아주 젊어 보이시네요.

(=Your mother looks very young.)

존은 늘 좀 피곤해 보입니다.

(=John always looks tired.)

메리는 요즘 아주 행복해 보입니다.

(=Mary looks very happy these days.)

집이 아주 깨끗해 보이네요.

(=Your house looks very clean.)

이 가방은 아주 비싸 보이네요.

(=This bag looks very expensive.)

“~게 보이다” can also be used with a stative verb to describe a person or a thing more indirectly, which can be rendered as “look as if.”

이거 아주 맛있게 보이네요.

(=This food looks as if it's delicious.)

이 옷을 입으면 뚱뚱하게 보입니다.

(=If I wear these clothes, I look as if I am a fat guy.)

이 가방을 들고 다니면 촌스럽게 보입니다.

(=If I carry this bag, I look as if I am a bumpkin.)

그 부부는 아주 다정하게 보입니다.

(=They look as if they are an affectionate couple.)

### 34. Pretending to do something: ~는/(으)ㄴ 체하다/척하다

“~는/(으)ㄴ 체하다, ~는/(으)ㄴ 척하다” can be used to describe a person or an animate noun that pretends to be in a certain state which is the opposite of reality. It can be rendered as “pretend to ..”

존은 아무 것도 모르는 체했습니다/모르는 척했습니다.

(=John pretended that he didn't know anything.)

메리는 방에서 자는 체했습니다/자는 척했습니다.

(=Mary pretended that she was sleeping in the room.)

Function		Pretending to do something		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ 체하다, ~는/(으)ㄴ 척하다		
Meaning		Pretend to _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 체하다 ~는 척하다	~은 체하다 ~은 척하다	
	After a vowel	~는 체하다 ~는 척하다	~ㄴ 체하다 ~ㄴ 척하다	
	After “ㄹ”	~는 체하다 ~는 척하다*	~ㄴ 체하다 ~ㄴ 척하다*	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 체하다 ~은 척하다		
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 체하다 ~ㄴ 척하다		
	After “ㄹ”	~ㄴ 체하다 ~ㄴ 척하다*		

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는 체하다, ~는 척하다, ~ㄴ 체하다, ~ㄴ 척하다” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 사는 체하다/사는 척하다, 만들다 (to make): 만들 → 만든 체하다/만든 척하다  
멀다(far): 멀 → 먼 체하다/먼 척하다

산에서 곰을 만나면 죽은 체하세요/죽은 척하세요.

(=Just pretend to be dead when you encounter a bear in the mountain.)

존은 아무 말도 못 들은 체했습니다/들은 척했습니다.

(=John pretended that he didn't hear anything.)

메리는 존을 못 본 체했습니다/본 척했습니다.

(=Mary pretended that she didn't see John.)

존은 마음이 항상 넓은 체 합니다/넓은 척합니다.

(=John always pretends to be broad minded.)

메리는 항상 똑똑한 체합니다/똑똑한 척합니다.

(=Mary always pretends to be smart.)

### 35. Expressing “To be on one's way to”: ~는 길이다

Function		Expressing “To be on one's way to”		
Form		~는 길이다		
Meaning		Be on the way to		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 길이다*		
	After a vowel	~는 길이다*		
	After “ㄹ”	~는 길이다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~는 길이다” can be used to express that one is on the way to take action, which can be rendered as “be on the way to.”

나 지금 집에 가는 길이다.

(=I am on my way home.)

영화 보러 가는 길이에요.

(=I am on my way to watch a movie.)

회사에 출근하는 길이에요.

(=I am on my way to work.)

### 36. Expressing the elapse of time: ~(으)ㄴ 지 ~ 되다

“~(으)ㄴ 지 ~ 되다” can be used to express the elapse of time since an action was carried out in the past, which can be rendered as “It has been+time expression+since.”

한국에 온 지 벌써 2년이 되었어요.

(=It's already been two years since I came to Korea.)

저녁을 먹은 지 한 시간도 안 됐어요.

(=It's been less than an hour since you ate dinner.)

Function		Expressing the elapse of time		
Form		~(으)ㄴ 지 ~ 되다		
Meaning		It has been + time expression + since		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant		~은 지 ~ 되다	
	After a vowel		~ㄴ 지 ~ 되다	
	After “ㄹ”		~ㄴ 지 ~ 되다*	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~ㄴ 지 ~되다” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅅ, ㅈ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 산 지

이 집에 이사 온 지 6년이나 됐어요.

(=Wow, it's been six years since I moved into this house.)

### 37. Attempting to do something/Asking someone to do something:

#### ~아/어 보다

Function		Attempting to do something	Asking someone to do something	
Form		~아/어 보다		
Meaning		Try to _	You should try _/Let's try to _	
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”	~아 보다*		
	Otherwise	~어 보다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”			
	Otherwise			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~아/어 보다” can be used in a statement to express that one is attempting to do something, which can be rendered as “try to \_.”

존이 한복을 입어 봅니다.

(=John is trying to wear a traditional Korean costume.)

메리가 한국말로 이메일을 써 봅니다.

(=Mary is trying to write an email in Korean.)

메리가 한국 책을 읽어 봅니다.

(=Mary is trying to read a Korean book.)

In an imperative sentence, “~아/어 보다” can be used to ask the listener to do something, which can be rendered as “You should try \_.”

이거 사용해 보세요.

(=You should try this one.)

한국에 한 번 가 보세요.

(=You should try to go and visit Korea once.)

한국말을 배워 보세요.

(=You should try to learn Korean.)

의사를 만나 보세요.

(=You should try to see a doctor.)

It can also be used in a propositional sentence that proposes the listener to do something, which can be rendered as “Let’s try to \_.”

이거 사용해 봅시다.

(=Let’s try to use this one.)

한국에 한 번 가 봅시다.

(=Let’s try to go and visit Korea once.)

한국말을 배워 봅시다.

(=Let’s try to learn Korean.)

의사를 만나 봅시다.

(=Let’s try to see a doctor.)

이 옷을 한 번 입어 봅시다.

(=Let’s try to put on these clothes.)

### 38. Expressing one's past experience: ~아/어 봤다

Function		Expressing one's past experience		
Form		~아/어 봤다		
Meaning		Have tried to _	Have been to + place	
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”		~아/ 봤다*	
	Otherwise		~아/어 봤다*	
Stative Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”			
	Otherwise			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~아/어 봤다” can be used to express one’s past experience of carrying out the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “have tried to \_.”

저는 한 번도 이 향수를 안 써 봤어요.

(=I have never tried to use this perfume.)

전에 한국말을 공부해 보셨어요?

(=Have you tried to study Korean before?)

그 책을 읽어 보셨어요?

(=Have you tried to read the book?)

소주를 마셔 봤어요?

(=Have you tried to drink soju?)

“~아/어 봤다” is also frequently used with the verb “가다” to express one’s past experience of visiting a place, which can be rendered as “have been to+place.”

한국에 여러 번 가 봤습니다.

(=I have been to Korea several times.)

유럽에 가 봤어요.

(=I have been to Europe.)

서울에 가 보셨어요?

(=Have you been to Seoul?)

### 39. Expressing one's past experience indirectly:

~(으)ㄴ 적이 있다, ~(으)ㄴ 적이 없다

Function		Expressing one's past experience indirectly		
Form		~(으)ㄴ 적이 있다	~(으)ㄴ 적이 없다	
Meaning		Happen to have + pp		Happen to have not + pp
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant		~은 적이 있다 ~은 적이 없다 ~았던/었던 적이 있다 ~았던/었던 적이 없다	
	After a vowel		~ㄴ 적이 있다 ~ㄴ 적이 없다 ~았던/었던 적이 있다 ~았던/었던 적이 없다	
	After "ㄹ"		~ㄴ 적이 있다* ~ㄴ 적이 없다* ~았던/었던 적이 있다 ~았던/었던 적이 없다	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After "ㄹ"			

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~ㄴ 적이 있다/없다" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ."

(See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 산 적이 있다/없다

"~(으)ㄴ 적이 있다, ~(으)ㄴ 적이 없다" can be used to express one's past experience indirectly, which can be rendered as "happen to have +pp, happen to have not +pp," respectively. In casual speech, "적 (occasion)" can sometimes be replaced by "일 (happening)."

전에 그 사람을 만난 적이 있습니다.

전에 그 사람을 만난 일이 있습니다.

(=I happen to have met the person before.)

그 사람을 한번도 만난 적이 없습니다.

그 사람을 한번도 만난 일이 없습니다.

(=I happen to have never met the person.)

그런 일을 경험해 본 적이 있습니까?

그런 일을 경험해 본 일이 있습니까?

(=Do you happen to have experienced such a thing?)

그런 일을 경험해 본 적이 없습니까?

그런 일을 경험해 본 일이 없습니까?

(=Didn't you happen to have ever experienced such a thing?)

On the other hand, “~왔던/있던 적이 있다, ~왔던/있던 적이 없다” can be optionally used to emphasize the completion of the action in the preceding clause.

전에 그 사람을 만난 적이 있습니다.

전에 그 사람을 만났던 적이 있습니다.

(=I happen to have met the person before.)

그 사람을 만난 적이 없습니다.

그 사람을 만났던 적이 없습니다.

(=I happen to have never met the person.)

나는 한국에 몇 번 가 본 적이 있습니다.

나는 한국에 몇 번 가 봤던 적이 있습니다.

(=I happen to have been to Korea several times.)

메리는 한국에 가 본 적이 없습니다.

메리는 한국에 가 봤던 적이 없습니다.

(=Mary happens to have never been to Korea.)

#### 40. Specifying a list of one's habitual actions:

**~거나/든지/든가 ~거나/든지/든가 하다**

“~거나/든지/든가 ~거나/든지/든가 하다” can be used to specify the list of one's habitual actions, which can be rendered as “do \_ or do \_.”

점심은 보통 도시락을 먹거나 햄버거를 먹거나 합니다.

(=As for lunch, I usually eat a bag lunch or a hamburger.)

Function		Specifying a list of one's habitual actions		
Form		~거나 ~거나 하다	~든지 ~든지 하다	~든가 ~든가 하다
Meaning		Do _ or do _		
Distribution		Present	Present	Present
Action	After a consonant	~거나 ~거나 하다*	~든지 ~든지 하다*	~든가 ~든가 하다*
Verb	After a vowel	~거나 ~거나 하다*	~든지 ~든지 하다*	~든가 ~든가 하다*
Stem	After "ㄹ"	~거나 ~거나 하다*	~든지 ~든지 하다*	~든가 ~든가 하다*
Stative	After a consonant			
Verb	After a vowel			
Stem	After "ㄹ"			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

시간이 있으면 테니스를 치든지 골프를 치든지 합니다.

(=When I have time, I play tennis or golf.)

존은 주말에 여자친구와 영화를 보든가 음악회에 가든가 합니다.

(=As for John, he watches a movie or goes to a concert with his girlfriend on the weekend.)

“~거나,” “~든지,” and “~든가” are generally interchangeable with one another. But they differ slightly in terms of formality.

~거나                      ~든지                      ~든가  
 More formal      ←—————→      Less formal

메리는 보통 집에서 음악을 듣거나 드라마를 보든지 합니다.

(=As for Mary, she usually listens to music or watches a drama at home.)

존은 휴가 때 고향에 가든지 해외여행을 가든가 합니다.

(=As for John, he visits his hometown or travels overseas during his vacation.)

메리는 일이 끝나면 친구를 만나든가 쇼핑을 하거나 합니다.

(=As for Mary, she meets her friends or goes shopping after work.)



## 23 Modal Auxiliaries II (보조동사 II)

### 1. Expressing the speaker's wish for a currently unavailable situation:

#### ~았/었으면 싶다

Function		Expressing the speaker's wish for a currently unavailable situation		
Form		~았/었으면 싶다		
Meaning		I wish		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant		~았/었으면 싶다	
	After a vowel		~았/었으면 싶다	
	After “ㄹ”		~았/었으면 싶다	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant		~았/었으면 싶다	
	After a vowel		~았/었으면 싶다	
	After “ㄹ”		~았/었으면 싶다	

“~았/었으면 싶다” can be used to express the speaker's wish for a currently unavailable situation, which can be rendered as “I wish.”

몸이 너무 아파서 빨리 집에 갔으면 싶다.

(=I wish I could go home early because I am so sick.)

전쟁이 빨리 끝났으면 싶다.

(=I wish the war could be over soon.)

내가 존의 선생님을 만나봤으면 싶다.

(=I wish I could meet John's teacher.)

이제 이 일을 그만 했으면 싶다.

(=I wish I could stop working on this.)

얼굴이 조금 작았으면 싶다.

(=I wish I could have a smaller face.)

키가 조금 더 켰으면 싶다.

(=I wish I could be a little taller.)

## 2. Expressing “Having no regrets”: ~아/어도 여한이 없다

Function		Expressing “Having no regrets”		
Form		~아/어도 여한이 없다		
Meaning		I have no regrets even if _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”	~아도 여한이 없다*		
	Otherwise	~어도 여한이 없다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”			
	Otherwise			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~아도/어도 여한이 없다” can be used to express that the speaker has no regrets about his/her life in the past because there is nothing else left on the wish list, which can be rendered as “I have no regrets even if \_.” It is typically used in the idiomatic expression such as “죽어도 여한이 없다,” which can be rendered as “I have no regrets about my life even if I die now.”

살만큼 살아서 지금 죽어도 여한이 없다.

(=I have no regrets about my life even if I die now because I have lived long enough.)

모든 걸 다 이루어서 이제 죽어도 여한이 없어요.

(=I have no regrets about my life even if I die now because I have accomplished everything.)

### 3. Expressing extremity: ~기 그지없다/짜이 없다/한이 없다/이를 데 없다

Function		Expressing extremity			
Form		~기 그지없다	~기 짜이 없다	~기 한이 없다	~기 이를 데 없다
Meaning		Extremely			
Distribution		Present	Present	Present	Present
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant				
	After a vowel				
	After “ㄹ”				
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~기 그지없다*	~기 짜이 없다*	~기 한이 없다*	~기 이를 데 없다*
	After a vowel	~기 그지없다*	~기 짜이 없다*	~기 한이 없다*	~기 이를 데 없다*
	After “ㄹ”	~기 그지없다*	~기 짜이 없다*	~기 한이 없다*	~기 이를 데 없다*

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~기 그지없다/짜이 없다/한이 없다/이를 데 없다” can be used with some stative verbs in idiomatic expressions to express the extreme degree of the given situation, which can be rendered as “extremely+stative verb.” “그지” in “~기 그지없다” originated from “끝이 (the end),” and therefore, “~기 그지없다” literally means that the degree of the preceding stative verb is limitless. By the same token, “짜이” in “~기 짜이 없다” means “mate.” Therefore, “~기 짜이 없다” literally means that the degree of the preceding stative verb cannot find its mate or cannot be matched. On the other hand, “한” means “limit,” and therefore “~기 한이 없다” literally means that the degree of the preceding stative verb is limitless. Lastly, “이를 데” means “the place to reach or the destination to reach,” and therefore “~기 이를 데 없다” literally means that the degree of the preceding stative verb cannot reach its place.

안타깝기 그지없다.

(=It is extremely pitiful.)

그 생각은 유치하기 짜이 없다.

(=It is an extremely childish thought.)

그사람은 한심하기 짜이 없다.

(=He is extremely pathetic.)

부끄럽기 한이 없네요.

(=I am extremely ashamed of myself.)

백두산은 웅장하기 이를 데 없네요.

(=Mt. Baekdu is extremely spectacular.)

#### 4. Making a speculation from the speaker's observation:

**~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 모양이다**

Function		Making a speculation from the speaker's observation		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 모양이다		
Meaning		It appears that _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 모양이다	~은 모양이다 ~았던/었던 모양이다	~을 모양이다
	After a vowel	~는 모양이다	~ㄴ 모양이다 ~았던/었던 모양이다	~ㄹ 모양이다
	After "ㄹ"	~는 모양이다*	~ㄴ 모양이다* ~았던/었던 모양이다	~ㄹ 모양이다
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 모양이다	~았던/었던 모양이다	
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 모양이다	~았던/었던 모양이다	
	After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 모양이다*	~았던/었던 모양이다	

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는 모양이다, ~ㄴ 모양이다" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는 모양이다/판 모양이다

멀다 (far): 멀 → 먼 모양이다

"~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 모양이다" can be used to express the speaker's speculation on the given situation based on his/her personal observation, which can be rendered as "It appears that \_."

존이 요즘 장사가 잘 되는 모양입니다.

(=It appears that John's business is going well.)

메리가 지금 자는 모양이다.

(=It appears that Mary is sleeping now.)

존이 등록금을 면제 받은 모양이다.

(=It appears that John received a tuition waiver.)

메리가 아마 시험에 떨어진 모양이다.

(=It appears that Mary probably failed the test.)

메리가 기분이 좋은 모양이다.

(=It appears that Mary is in a good mood.)

존이 요즘 아주 바쁜 모양입니다.

(=It appears that John has been very busy these days.)

메리가 성적이 아주 좋아서 장학금을 받을 모양이다.

(=It appears that Mary will receive a scholarship because her GPA is so good.)

북한이 곧 핵실험을 할 모양이다.

(=It appears that North Korea will carry out a nuclear test soon.)

On the other hand, “~있던/있던 모양이다” can be optionally used to emphasize the completion of the action or state in the preceding clause.

저녁을 너무 많이 먹었던 모양이다.

(=It appears that I ate too much for dinner.)

존이 무척 피곤했던 모양이다.

(=It appears that John was very tired.)

“~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ/있던/있던 모양이다” can sometimes be used with the optional expressions “~는/(으)ㄴ 걸로 봐서” or “~는/(으)ㄴ 걸 보니까,” which can be rendered as “judging from the fact that.”

밥을 허겁지겁 먹는 걸 보니까/먹는 걸로 봐서 며칠 굶은 모양이다.

(=Judging from the fact that that he is devouring the food, it appears that he has been starving for several days.)

구름이 많이 낀 걸 보니까/낀 걸로 봐서 곧 비가 올 모양이다.

(=Judging from the fact that it's very cloudy, it appears that it will rain soon.)

존이 코 고는 걸 보니까/고는 걸로 봐서 무척 피곤했던 모양이다.

(=Judging from the fact that John is snoring, it appears that he was very tired.)

## 5. Expressing the speaker's conjecture on a likely situation:

~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 듯하다/듯싶다

Function		Expressing the speaker's conjecture on a likely situation		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 듯하다/듯싶다		
Meaning		It seems likely that _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 듯하다/듯싶다	~은 듯하다/듯싶다 ~았던/었던 듯하다/듯싶다	~을 듯하다/듯싶다
	After a vowel	~는 듯하다/듯싶다	~ㄴ 듯하다/듯싶다 ~았던/었던 듯하다/듯싶다	~ㄹ 듯하다/듯싶다
	After "ㄹ"	~는 듯하다/듯싶다*	~ㄴ 듯하다/듯싶다* ~았던/었던 듯하다/듯싶다	듯하다/듯싶다*
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 듯하다/듯싶다	~았던/었던 듯하다/듯싶다	
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 듯하다/듯싶다	~았던/었던 듯하다/듯싶다	
	After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 듯하다/듯싶다*	~았던/었던 듯하다/듯싶다	

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는 듯하다/듯싶다, ~ㄴ 듯하다/듯싶다" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는 듯하다/듯싶다, 판 듯하다/듯싶다

멀다 (far): 멀 → 먼 듯하다/듯싶다

"~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 듯하다/듯싶다" can be used to express the speaker's conjecture on a likely situation based on his/her prior experience, which can be rendered as "It seems likely \_."

메리가 좀 지루해 하는 듯하다/듯싶다.

(=It seems likely that Mary is getting bored.)

다른 방법이 없는 듯합니다/듯싶습니다.

(=It seems likely that there is no other way.)

존이 가방에 무언가를 숨겨놓은 듯합니다/듯싶습니다.

(=It seems likely that John hid something in his bag.)

메리한테 무슨 일이 생긴 듯합니다/듯싶습니다.

(=It seems likely that something happened to Mary.)

이 불고기는 저 혼자 먹기에는 좀 많은 듯합니다/듯싶습니다.

(=It seems likely that this bulgogi is too much for me to eat.)

저녁을 먹기에는 좀 이른 듯합니다/듯싶습니다.

(=It seems likely that it's too early to eat dinner.)

여기는 피로연을 하기에는 좀 작을 듯하다/듯싶다.

(=It seems likely that this place is too small for our wedding reception party.)

곧 천둥 번개가 칠 듯하군요/듯싶군요.

(=It seems likely that thunder and lightning will strike soon.)

On the other hand, “~있던/있던 듯하다/듯싶다” can be used to emphasize the completion of the action or state in the preceding clause.

환경오염이 심각했던 듯합니다/듯싶습니다.

(=It seems likely that the environmental pollution was so serious.)

무슨 오해가 있었던 듯하다/듯싶다.

(=It seems likely that there was some kind of misunderstanding.)

## 6. Expressing the speaker's thought on the likeliness of an event:

### ~(으)리라(고) 생각하다

Function		Expressing the speaker's thought on the likeliness of an event		
Form		~(으)리라(고) 생각하다		
Meaning		I think it is likely that _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~으리라(고) 생각하다	~았/었으리라(고) 생각하다	
	After a vowel	~리라(고) 생각하다	~았/었으리라(고) 생각하다	
	After “ㄹ”	~리라(고) 생각하다	~았/었으리라(고) 생각하다	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~으리라(고) 생각하다	~았/었으리라(고) 생각하다	
	After a vowel	~리라(고) 생각하다	~았/었으리라(고) 생각하다	
	After “ㄹ”	~리라(고) 생각하다	~았/었으리라(고) 생각하다	

“~(으)리라(고) 생각하다” can be used to express the speaker's thought that the situation

in the preceding clause is very likely to happen, which can be rendered as “I think it is likely that \_.” The verb “생각하다 (to think)” can be often replaced by other thinking verbs such as “믿는다 (to believe),” “보다 (to see/notice),” etc.

경찰이 이번에는 범인을 꼭 잡으리라(고) 생각한다.

(=I think it is likely that the police will capture the criminal this time without fail.)

메리가 이번 시험에 꼭 합격하리리라(고) 믿는다.

(=I believe it is likely that Mary will pass this exam without fail.)

내일은 날씨가 좋으리라(고) 본다.

(=It is likely that tomorrow’s weather might be good.)

메리가 이 일을 하기에는 좀 벅차리리라(고) 생각한다.

(=I think it is likely that Mary will get overburdened by doing this work.)

언젠가는 우리나라가 통일이 되리리라(고) 믿는다.

(=I believe it is likely that our country will get unified someday in the future.)

존이 아마 늦잠을 잤으리라(고) 본다.

(=It is likely that John probably overslept.)

범인이 원하는 것은 돈만이 아니었으리라(고) 생각한다.

(=I think it is likely that the criminal wanted more than just money.)

부모님을 설득하기가 좀 힘들었으리라(고) 본다.

(=It is likely that it was not easy to persuade his/her parents.)

## 7. Emphasizing the possibility of a likely situation:

~는 수가/도 있다, ~(으)ㄴ 수가/도 있다

“~는 수가 있다, ~는 수도 있다” can be used to emphasize the possibility of a likely situation, which can be rendered as “be likely to.”

콜라를 너무 많이 마시면 당뇨병에 걸리는 수가 있어요.

콜라를 너무 많이 마시면 당뇨병에 걸리는 수도 있어요.

(=If you drink too much Coke, you are likely to get diabetes.)

Function		Emphasizing the possibility of a likely situation		
Form		~는 수가/도 있다	~(으)ㄹ 수가/도 있다	
Meaning		Be likely to		May
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 수가 있다 ~는 수도 있다		~을 수가 있다 ~을 수도 있다
	After a vowel	~는 수가 있다 ~는 수도 있다		~ㄹ 수가 있다 ~ㄹ 수도 있다
	After “ㄹ”	~는 수가 있다* ~는 수도 있다*		수가 있다 수도 있다
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을 수가 있다 ~을 수도 있다
	After a vowel			~ㄹ 수가 있다 ~ㄹ 수도 있다
	After “ㄹ”			수가 있다 수도 있다

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는 수가 있다, ~는 수도 있다” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는 수가 있다/파는 수도 있다

그렇게 까불다가는 한 대 맞는 수가 있다.

그렇게 까불다가는 한 대 맞는 수도 있다.

(=If you continue to act up like that, you are likely to get slapped.)

“~(으)ㄹ 수가 있다, ~(으)ㄹ 수도 있다” can be used instead if the speaker is making a less definitive statement, which can be rendered as “may.”

인터뷰를 통과하면 자격증을 받을 수가 있어요.

인터뷰를 통과하면 자격증을 받을 수도 있어요.

(=If you pass the interview, you may get the license.)

계속 그렇게 하다가는 다칠 수가 있어요.

계속 그렇게 하다가는 다칠 수도 있어요.

(=If you continue to do it like that, you may get hurt.)

이렇게 꾸물거리다가는 비행기를 놓칠 수가 있어요.

이렇게 꾸물거리다가는 비행기를 놓칠 수도 있어요.

(=If you drag your feet like this, you may miss the flight.)

열심히 공부하면 좋은 대학에 갈 수가 있어요.

열심히 공부하면 좋은 대학에 갈 수도 있어요.

(=If you study hard, you may get admitted to a good college.)

이 신발이 존한테 좀 작을 수가 있어요.

이 신발이 존한테 좀 작을 수도 있어요.

(=These shoes may be too tight for John.)

돈이 좀 모자랄 수가 있어요.

돈이 좀 모자랄 수도 있어요.

(=The money may not be sufficient.)

## 8. Emphasizing the impossibility or Expressing extremity: ~(으)ㄴ 수가 없다

Function		Emphasizing impossibility			Expressing extremity		
Form		~(으)ㄴ 수가 없다					
Meaning		It is impossible			Extremely		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을 수가 없다*			
	After a vowel			~ㄴ 수가 없다*			
	After “ㄹ”			수가 없다*			
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant						~을 수가 없다*
	After a vowel						~ㄴ 수가 없다*
	After “ㄹ”						수가 없다*

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~(으)ㄴ 수가 없다” can be used with an action verb to emphasize the impossibility of the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “It is impossible.”

존은 도무지 믿을 수가 없어요.

(=It is impossible to trust John.)

이 사과는 썩어서 먹을 수가 없어요.

(=It is impossible to eat this apple because it's rotten.)

이건 더 이상 참을 수가 없어요.

(=It is impossible to tolerate this anymore.)

이 통증은 더 이상 견딜 수가 없어요.

(=It is impossible to put up with this pain anymore.)

이 수학 문제는 풀 수가 없어요.

(=It is impossible to solve this math problem.)

On the other hand, “~(으)ㄴ 수가 없다” can be used with a stative verb to express the extreme degree of the situation described by the preceding stative verb, which can be rendered as “extremely+stative verb.” It is typically used with the demonstrative adverbs “이렇게 (like this)/그렇게(like that)/저렇게(like the one over there).”

TV 화질이 이렇게 좋을 수가 없어요.

(=The picture quality of this TV is extremely good.)

이렇게 비참할 수가 없어요.

(=I feel extremely miserable.)

이렇게 답답할 수가 없어요.

(=It is extremely frustrating.)

존이 그렇게 착할 수가 없어요.

(=John is extremely nice.)

메리가 그렇게 예쁠 수가 없어요.

(=Mary is extremely pretty.)

이번 시험은 그렇게 어려울 수가 없어요.

(=As for this test, it was extremely difficult.)

존은 그렇게 부지런할 수가 없어요.

(=John is extremely diligent.)

하늘이 저렇게 맑을 수가 없어요.

(=The sky is extremely clear.)

물이 저렇게 깨끗할 수가 없어요.

(The water is extremely clean.)

## 9. Asserting no possibility of the given situation in the future:

~(으)ㄹ 수는 없다

Function		Asserting no possibility of the given situation in the future		
Form		~(으)ㄹ 수는 없다		
Meaning		Absolutely cannot		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을 수는 없다*
	After a vowel			~ㄹ 수는 없다*
	After "ㄹ"			수는 없다*
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After "ㄹ"			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~(으)ㄹ 수는 없다” can be used to assert the impossibility of the given situation in the future, which can be rendered as “~(으)ㄹ 수는 없다 395”

더 이상 참을 수는 없죠.

(=I absolutely cannot tolerate)

이렇게 마냥 기다릴 수는 없죠.

(=I absolutely cannot wait like this without end.)

이 맛 있는 걸 저 혼자 먹을 수는 없죠.

(=I absolutely cannot eat this delicious food alone.)

저는 조국을 배신할 수는 없어요.

(=I absolutely cannot betray my country.)

평생 혼자 살 수는 없죠.

(=I absolutely cannot live all by myself my entire life.)

이 많은 일을 혼자 다 할 수는 없습니다.

(=I absolutely cannot do this much work all by myself.)

TV 화질이 이보다 더 좋을 수는 없어요.

(=The picture quality of a TV absolutely cannot be better than this.)

자동차가 저보다 더 빠를 수는 없어요.  
 (=A car absolutely cannot go faster than this.)

## 10. Expressing the speaker's frustration with the given situation:

### ~(으)ㄹ 수가 있어야죠

Function		Expressing the speaker's frustration with the given situation		
Form		~(으)ㄹ 수가 있어야죠		
Meaning		I could not keep -ing		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant			~을 수가 있어야죠*
Verb	After a vowel			~ㄹ 수가 있어야죠*
Stem	After "ㄹ"			수가 있어야죠*
Stative	After a consonant			
Verb	After a vowel			
Stem	After "ㄹ"			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

"~(으)ㄹ 수가 있어야죠" can be used to express the speaker's frustration with the given situation, which can be rendered as "I could not keep -ing."

존이 제 멋대로 하니까 그걸 참을 수가 있어야죠.

(=I could not keep tolerating it because John only behaves the way that pleases himself.)

밖이 너무 시끄러워서 잠을 잘 수가 있어야죠.

(=I could not keep sleeping because it's too noisy outside.)

윗층에서 나는 쿵쿵 소리를 견딜 수가 있어야죠.

(=I could not keep putting up with the thumping sound coming from upstairs.)

걱정이 돼서 더 이상 기다릴 수가 있어야죠.

(=I could not keep waiting any longer because I was worried about it.)

## 11. Making a natural assumption about a possible situation:

~겠거니 하다, ~(으)려니 하다

Function		Making a natural assumption about a possible situation					
Form		~겠거니 하다			~(으)려니 하다		
Meaning		Just assume that					
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~겠거니 하다	~으려니 하다*		
	After a vowel			~겠거니 하다	~려니 하다*		
	After “ㄹ”			~겠거니 하다	~려니 하다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant						
	After a vowel						
	After “ㄹ”						

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~겠거니 하다, ~(으)려니 하다” can be used to express that one is making a natural assumption about a possible situation, which can be rendered as “just assume that.” They are freely interchangeable without changing the meaning.

존은 메리가 결혼해서 잘 살겠거니 했다.

(=John just assumed that Mary was living a happy life after getting married.)

한 번 실수는 봐 주겠거니 했다.

(=I just assumed that one mistake could be forgiven.)

시간이 지나면 철이 들겠거니 하세요.

(=Just assume that he/she will mature as time goes by.)

그냥 그러겠거니 하세요.

(=Just assume that things are like that.)

배가 고프면 존이 알아서 차려 먹으려니 하세요.

(=Just assume that John would prepare and eat food by himself when he gets hungry.)

이제는 혼자 알아서 잘 하려니 했다.

(=I just assumed that you could take care of your own matters now.)

존은 항상 그러려니 하세요.

(=Just assume that John is always like that.)

## 12. Expressing one's habitual action in the past: ~곤 하다

Function		Expressing one's habitual action in the past		
Form		~곤 하다		
Meaning		Used to _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant		~곤 하다*	
Verb	After a vowel		~곤 하다*	
Stem	After "ㄹ"		~곤 하다*	
Stative	After a consonant			
Verb	After a vowel			
Stem	After "ㄹ"			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

"~곤 하다" can be used to express one's habitual action in the past, which can be rendered as "used to \_."

나는 학교 다닐 때 이 도서관에서 공부하곤 했다.

(=I used to study at this library when I attended this school.)

존은 메리와 말다툼을 하곤 했다.

(=John used to engage in verbal fights with Mary.)

나는 메리와 이 공원에서 데이트를 하곤 했어요.

(=I used to date Mary at this park.)

## 13. Ordering someone to carry out an alternative action: ~지 말고 ~(으)세요

"~지 말고 ~(으)세요" can be used in an imperative sentence to order the listener to carry out an alternative action rather than the less desirable one, which can be rendered as

“Don’t do that, but do this.”

Function		Ordering someone to carry out an alternative action		
Form		~지 말고 ~(으)세요		
Meaning		Don't do that, but do this		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~지 말고 ~으세요		
	After a vowel	~지 말고 ~세요		
	After “ㄹ”	~지 말고 ~*세요		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~지 말고 ~세요” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅅ, ㅈ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 그러지 말고 파세요

떠들지 말고 조용히 책을 읽으세요.

(=Don't make any noise. Please read your book quietly.)

떠들지 말고 조용히 하세세요.

(=Don't make any noise. Please be quiet.)

졸지 말고 열심히 공부하세세요.

(=Don't doze off. Please study hard.)

서두르지 말고 천천히 하세세요.

(=Don't rush. Please take your time.)

실망하지 말고 조금만 더 기다려 보세세요.

(=Don't be disappointed. Please wait just a little longer.)

#### 14. Expressing the speaker's presumption: ~는가/(으)나가 하다, ~나 하다

“~는가/(으)나가 하다, ~나 하다” can be used to express that the speaker is making a presumption about a possible situation, which can be rendered as “I was wondering if.” “~는가/(으)나가 하다” can be freely used in both written text and conversation,

whereas “~나 하다” is more likely to be used in casual speech.

Function		Expressing the speaker's presumption					
Form		~는가(으)ㄴ가 하다			~나 하다		
Meaning		I was wondering if					
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는가 하다	~있/었는가 하다		~나 하다	~있/었나 하다	
	After a vowel	~는가 하다	~있/었는가 하다		~나 하다	~있/었나 하다	
	After “ㄹ”	~는가 하다*	~있/었는가 하다		~나 하다*	~있/었나 하다	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은가 하다	~있/었는가 하다		~나 하다	~있/었나 하다	
	After a vowel	~ㄴ가 하다	~있/었는가 하다		~나 하다	~있/었나 하다	
	After “ㄹ”	~ㄴ가 하다*	~있/었는가 하다		~나 하다*	~있/었나 하다	

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는가 하다, ~ㄴ가 하다, ~나 하다” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는가 하다/파나 하다

멀다 (far): 멀 → 먼가 하다/머나 하다

하도 조용해서 주무시는가/주무시나 했어요.

(=I was wondering if you were sleeping because it was so quiet.)

아무 연락이 없길래 무슨 일이 있는가/있나 했어요.

(=I was wondering if something happened to you because you didn't contact me.)

존이 왜 그렇게 기분이 좋은가/좋나 했어요.

(=I was wondering why John was in such a good mood.)

얼굴이 창백해서 어디 아픈신가/아프시나 했어요.

(=I was wondering if you were sick because your face was so pale.)

집에 아무도 없길래 어디 가셨는가/가셨나 했어요.

(=I was wondering if you went somewhere because no one was at home.)

If the verb is the copula “이다” in present tense, then “~나 하다” cannot be used.

얼굴이 예뻐서 영화배우인가 했어요.

(=I was wondering if she is an actress because she is so pretty.)

얼굴이 예뻐서 영화배우이나/나 했어요. (NOT OK)

얼굴이 예뻐서 전에 영화배우였는가 했어요.

(=I was wondering if she was an actress before because she is so pretty.)

얼굴이 예뻐서 전에 영화배우였나 했어요. (OK)

(=I was wondering if she was an actress before because she is so pretty.)

## 15. Expressing only one course of action/the speaker's rebuttal to others' opinions: ~기만 하다

Function		Expressing only one course of action			Expressing the speaker's rebuttal to others' opinions		
Form		~기만 하다					
Meaning		Only			To me, _ just		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~기만 하다*					
	After a vowel	~기만 하다*					
	After "ㄹ"	~기만 하다*					
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant				~기만 하다*		
	After a vowel				~기만 하다*		
	After "ㄹ"				~기만 하다*		

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~기만 하다” can be used with an action verb to express one’s taking only one course of action, which can be rendered as “only.”

아무 말 안 하고 조용히 듣기만 했어요.

(=I didn't say anything, but only listened to him/her.)

존은 공부는 전혀 안 하고 밖에서 놀기만 한다.

(=John does not study at all, but only plays outside.)

메리는 스트레스가 쌓이면 뭔가 먹기만 한다.

(=When Mary gets stressed out, she only eats something.)

선생님이 옆에 계시면 부담이 되기만 한다.

(=If the teacher is next to me, I only feel burdened.)

On the other hand, if “~기만 하다” is used with a stative verb, it expresses the speaker’s rebuttal to others’ opinions, which can be rendered as “To me, \_ just.”

A: 메리는 못생겼다. (=Mary looks ugly.)

B: 저는 예쁘기만 한데요. (=To me, Mary is just pretty.)

A: 나는 존이 싫어. (=I don’t like John.)

B: 나는 존이 좋기만 한데. (=To me, John is just a good person.)

A: 이건 맛이 없다. (=This doesn’t taste good.)

B: 맛있기만 한데요. (=To me, it just tastes good.)

## 16. Expressing the speaker's acknowledgment of the fact with some reservation: ~기는 하다

Function		Expressing the speaker's acknowledgment of the fact with some reservation		
Form		~기는 하다, ~긴 하다		
Meaning		It is true that __, but		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~기는 하다* ~긴 하다*		
	After a vowel	~기는 하다* ~긴 하다*		
	After “ㄹ”	~기는 하다* ~긴 하다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~기는 하다* ~긴 하다*		
	After a vowel	~기는 하다* ~긴 하다*		
	After “ㄹ”	~기는 하다* ~긴 하다*		

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~기는 하다” and its contraction form “~긴 하다” can be used to express the speaker’s

acknowledgment of factual information in the preceding clause with some reservation. They imply that the preceding clause is somehow true, but it is not a major issue. They are often followed by the contrasting sentential connectors “그렇지만/하지만(But/ Nevertheless)” in the following sentence. Therefore, they can be rendered as “It’s true that \_, but.”

메리를 만나보기는/긴 했다. 그렇지만 데이트는 안 했다.

(=It is true that I met Mary. But I didn’t go on a date with her.)

그 책을 읽어보기는/긴 했다. 하지만 내용이 잘 생각이 안 난다.

(=It is true that I read the book. But I cannot remember the contents.)

집이 좀 작기는/긴 하다. 그렇지만 둘이 사는 데는 괜찮을 것 같다.

(=It is true that the house is a bit small. But it might be ok for two people.)

이 TV는 비싸기는/긴 하다. 그렇지만 화질이 아주 좋다.

(=It is true that this TV is expensive. But the picture quality is so good.)

메리는 얼굴이 예쁘기는/긴 하다. 그렇지만 성격은 좀 문제가 있다.

(=It is true that Mary is pretty. But she has some personality issues.)

## 17. Expressing “Taking action occasionally” or “On top of”: ~기도 하다

Function		Expressing “Taking action occasionally”			Expressing “On top of”		
Form		~기도 하다					
Meaning		Sometimes do things like			Also		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~기도 하다*					
	After a vowel	~기도 하다*					
	After “ㄹ”	~기도 하다*					
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant				~기도 하다*		
	After a vowel				~기도 하다*		
	After “ㄹ”				~기도 하다*		

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~기도 하다” can be used with an action verb to express one's taking action occasionally, which can be rendered as “sometimes do things like.” It is frequently used with the optional frequency adverbs such as “가끔(sometimes),” “종종(occasionally),” etc.

메리는 (가끔) 친구와 저녁을 먹기도 한다.

(=Mary sometimes eats dinner with her friends.)

나는 시간이 있으면 (가끔) 등산을 가기도 한다.

(=I sometimes go hiking when I have time.)

존은 주말에 (종종) 극장에 가기도 한다.

(=John occasionally goes to a movie theater on weekends.)

On the other hand, if “~기도 하다” is used with a stative verb, it describes a person or a thing that has one characteristic in addition to another one, which can be rendered as “also.”

메리는 얼굴도 예쁘고 마음씨가 착하기도 하다.

(=Mary is pretty, and she is also kindhearted.)

배도 고프고 피곤하기도 하다.

(=I am hungry, and I am also tired.)

이 핸드폰은 화면이 크고 화질이 좋기도 하다.

(=This cell phone has a big screen, and the picture quality is also good.)

## 18. Expressing the speaker's praise for one's having certain characteristics:

### ~기도 해라

“~기도 해라” can be used with a stative verb to express the speaker's praise for one's having certain characteristics, which can be rendered as “How +stative verb+ you are/she is/he is/they are!”

예쁘기도 해라.

(=Wow, how pretty you are!)

똑똑하기도 해라.

(=Wow, how smart you are!)

Function		Expressing the speaker's praise for one's having certain characteristics		
Form		~기도 해라		
Meaning		How + stative verb + you are/she is/he is/they are!		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After "ㄹ"			
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~기도 해라*		
	After a vowel	~기도 해라*		
	After "ㄹ"	~기도 해라*		

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

When you need to show respect to the subject of the sentence, the subject honorific suffixes “~(으)시” can be attached either to the preceding verb or to the verb “하다,” which results in two different forms, “~(으)시기도 해라” or “~기도 하셔라,” respectively.

친절하시기도 해라.

친절하기도 하셔라.

(=Wow, how kind you are!)

부지런하시기도 해라.

부지런하기도 하셔라.

(=Wow, how diligent you are!)

## 19. Expressing one's determination to achieve a goal or a negative outcome:

### ~고(야) 말다

“~고(야) 말다” can be used in present tense to express one's determination to achieve a goal against all odds, which can be rendered as “end up -ing.”

존은 하고 싶은 일은 꼭 하고(야) 맙니다.

(=John always ends up doing the things that he wants to do.)

(=John always does the things that he wants to do.)

Function		Expressing one's determination to achieve a goal			Expressing a negative outcome		
Form		~고(야) 말다, ~고(야) 말겠다			~고(야) 말았다		
Meaning		End up -ing/Must			Ended up -ing		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~고(야) 말다		~고(야) 말겠다		~고(야) 말았다	
	After a vowel	~고(야) 말다		~고(야) 말겠다		~고(야) 말았다	
	After "ㄹ"	~고(야) 말다		~고(야) 말겠다		~고(야) 말았다	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant						
	After a vowel						
	After "ㄹ"						

메리는 한번 일을 시작하면 끝내고(야) 맏니다.

(=Mary ends up getting the work done once she starts working on it.)

(=Mary always finishes the work once she starts working on it.)

"~고(야) 말겠다" can be used with the first person subject to express the subject's strong intention, which can be rendered as "must."

이번에는 무슨 일이 있더라도 꼭 이기고(야) 말겠다.

(=I must win this time no matter what happens.)

돈이 있으면 꼭 그 집을 사고(야) 말겠다.

(=I must buy the house without fail if I have money.)

On the other hand, "~고(야) 말았다," which is the past tense form of "~고(야) 말다," can be used to express the negative outcome of the given situation, which can be rendered as "ended up -ing."

존이 결국 시험에 떨어지고(야) 말았다.

(=John ended up failing the test.)

메리가 일생일대의 기회를 놓치고(야) 말았다.

(=Mary ended up losing the once-in-a-lifetime opportunity.)

존이 할아버지의 도자기를 깨고(야) 말았다.

(=John ended up breaking his grandfather's pottery.)

남북간의 평화협상이 결렬되고(야) 말았다.

(=The peace talk between South and North Korea ended up breaking down.)

## 20. Getting things done successfully: ~아/어 내다

Function		Getting things done successfully		
Form		~아/어 내다		
Meaning		Successfully		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”	~아/어 내다*		
	Otherwise	~아/어 내다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”			
	Otherwise			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~아/어 내다” can be used to express that one successfully carries out the mission in a given situation, which can be rendered as “successfully.”

인터넷에서 존의 주소를 알아냈다.

(=I successfully found John’s address on the Internet.)

메리는 그 문제의 해결책을 찾아냈다.

(=Mary successfully found the solution for the problem.)

경찰이 마침내 범인이 누군지 찾아냈다.

(=In the end, the police successfully found out who the suspect is.)

마침내 그 일을 해냈다.

(=In the end, I successfully completed the work.)

한국이 마침내 올림픽 피겨스케이팅에서 금메달을 따냈다.

(=In the end, Korea successfully won the gold medal in Olympic figure skating.)

According to the National Institute of Korean Language (국립국어원), the verbs above “알아내다, 찾아내다, 해냈다, 따냈다” are actually compound verbs, and therefore they

must be written without space between their component parts. But the rest of the verbs below are going to be treated as the verb+the modal auxiliary “~아/어 내다,” and there should be a space between them.

존이 그 사건의 진실을 밝혀 냈다.

(=John successfully revealed the truth of the case.)

드디어 그를 이길 방법을 생각해 냈다.

(=In the end, I successfully came up with the idea of how to defeat him/her.)

결국 존한테서 돈을 받아 냈다.

(=In the end, I successfully got the money from John.)

메리가 멋진 작품을 만들어 냈다.

(=Mary successfully created a fantastic work.)

On the other hand, “~아/어 내다” can also be used to express one’s accomplishment through overcoming the hardships, as in the following sentences, which can also be rendered as “successfully.”

존은 모든 어려움을 참아 냈다/견뎌 냈다.

(=John successfully endured all the hardships.)

메리는 온갖 고통을 이겨 냈다.

(=Mary successfully overcame all kind of pains.)

이순신 장군이 왜적의 공격을 막아 냈다.

(=Admiral Lee successfully fought off the Japanese attack.)

## 21. Expressing “No other options available”: ~(으)ㄴ 따름이다

“~(으)ㄴ 따름이다” can be used to express that no other options are available other than the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “nothing but/just.” It is typically used in formal conversation, whereas its more or less equivalent grammar feature “~(으)ㄴ 뿐이다” can be freely used in both formal and informal conversation. In addition, it is frequently used with the optional adverbs “그저/그냥 (just).”

Function		Expressing "No other options available"		
Form		~(으)ㄹ 따름이다		
Meaning		Nothing but/Just		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant		~았/었을 따름이다	~을 따름이다
	After a vowel		~았/었을 따름이다	~르 따름이다
	After "ㄹ"		~았/었을 따름이다	따름이다
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant		~았/었을 따름이다	~을 따름이다
	After a vowel		~았/었을 따름이다	~르 따름이다
	After "ㄹ"		~았/었을 따름이다	따름이다

어떻게 해야 할지 그저/그냥 생각만 하고 있을 따름입니다.

(=I am just thinking about what I am supposed to do.)

그저/그냥 제 일만 할 따름입니다.

(=I am just doing my job.)

그저/그냥 감사할 따름이죠.

(=I can say nothing but thank you.)

그저/그냥 죄송할 따름이죠.

(=I just feel bad about that.)

존은 그저/그냥 한심할 따름입니다.

(=John is nothing but pathetic.)

그저/그냥 안타까울 따름이죠.

(=I just feel sympathy for him/her.)

하루하루가 그저/그냥 행복할 따름입니다.

(=I just feel happy every day.)

저는 그저/그냥 시키는대로만 했을 따름입니다.

(=I just did what I was ordered to do.)

그저/그냥 잠시 좋았을 따름입니다.

(=I was happy just for a moment.)

## 22. Expressing the speaker's readiness to take retaliatory action:

### ~기만 해 봐라

Function		Expressing the speaker's readiness to take retaliatory action		
Form		~기만 해 봐라		
Meaning		If that happens,		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~기만 해 봐라*		
	After a vowel	~기만 해 봐라*		
	After "ㄹ"	~기만 해 봐라*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~기만 해 봐라*		
	After a vowel	~기만 해 봐라*		
	After "ㄹ"	~기만 해 봐라*		

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~기만 해 봐라” can be used to express the speaker's readiness to take retaliatory action against the person who might initiate the unpleasant situation in the preceding clause. It can be rendered as “If that happens.” It is typically followed by the colloquial expressions “가만히 있지 않겠다, 가만두지 않겠다,” which can be rendered as “You will see what happens” or “I won't sit back.”

내 허락 없이 하기만 해 봐라. 가만두지 않겠다.

(=If you do it without my permission, I won't sit back.)

내 돈 안 갚기만 해 봐라. 가만두지 않겠다.

(=If you don't pay my money back, I won't sit back.)

내 말이 맞기만 해 봐라. 가만두지 않겠다.

(=If what I am saying is right, I won't sit back.)

어디 아니기만 해봐라. 가만히 있지 않겠다.

(=If it turns out not to be case, you will see what happens.)

날씨가 춥기만 해 봐라. 가만두지 않겠다.

(=If the weather is cold, I won't sit back.) (**Context:** Because someone said the weather is warm, I didn't bring any warm clothes.)

### 23. Expressing “That’s the way it is”: ~는/(으)ㄴ 법이다, ~기/게 마련이다

Function		Expressing “That’s the way it is”					
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ 법이다			~기/게 마련이다		
Meaning		It is natural that_/Be bound to					
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 법이다			~기 마련이다 ~게 마련이다		
	After a vowel	~는 법이다			~기 마련이다 ~게 마련이다		
	After “ㄹ”	~는 법이다*			~기 마련이다 ~게 마련이다		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 법이다			~기 마련이다 ~게 마련이다		
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 법이다			~기 마련이다 ~게 마련이다		
	After “ㄹ”	~ㄴ 법이다*			~기 마련이다 ~게 마련이다		

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는 법이다, ~ㄴ 법이다” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅁ, 스.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 사는 법이다, 길다 (long): 길 → 긴 법이다

“~는/(으)ㄴ 법이다, ~기/게 마련이다” can be used to express that the situation in the preceding clause follows a natural law, which can be rendered as “It is natural that/be bound to.” “~는/(으)ㄴ 법이다” is more likely to be used with proverbs, whereas “~기/게 마련이다” can be used with all other expressions.

원숭이도 나무에서 떨어질 때가 있는 법이다.

(=Even monkeys are bound to fall from trees. =Even Homer sometimes nods.)

모든 사람은 다 죽는 법이다.

(=Everyone is bound to die.)

사람은 높은 자리에 올라가면 변하는 법입니다.

(=If someone gets promoted to a higher position, his/her mindset is bound to be changed.)

윗물이 맑아야 아랫물이 맑은 법이다.

(=It is natural that the lower stream is clean only when the upper stream is clean.  
 (=Like master, like man.)

빈 수레가 요란한 법이다.

(=Empty vessels make the most sound.)

사람은 언젠가 다 죽기/게 마련입니다.

(=Everyone is bound to die someday.)

사람은 누구나 다 실수하기/게 마련입니다.

(=Everyone is bound to make mistakes.)

돈이 있으면 쓰기/게 마련입니다.

(=We are bound to spend money if we have money.)

## 24. Expressing the natural/reasonable outcome of a given situation:

~(으)ㄴ 법(도)/만(도) 하다

Function		Expressing the natural/reasonable outcome of a given situation					
Form		~(으)ㄴ 법(도) 하다			~(으)ㄴ 만(도) 하다		
Meaning		It is natural/reasonable that_					
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을 법(도) 하다*			~을 만(도) 하다*
	After a vowel			~르 법(도) 하다*			~르 만(도) 하다*
	After “ㄹ”			법(도) 하다*			만(도) 하다*
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant						
	After a vowel						
	After “ㄹ”						

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~ (으)ㄴ 법(도) 하다, ~ (으)ㄴ 만(도) 하다” can be used to express that the situation in the preceding clause can be the natural outcome of a given situation, which can be rendered as “It is natural/reasonable that \_.”

존이 성격이 아주 단순하니까 쉽게 속을 법(도)/만(도) 하지요.

(=Because John is very simple-minded, it is natural that he gets tricked easily.)

메리가 아주 열심히 공부했으니까 상을 받을 법(도)/만(도) 하지요.

(=Because Mary has studied really hard, it is reasonable that she deserves an award.)

그렇게 말하면 화를 낼 법(도)/만(도) 하지요.

(=If you said so, it is natural that he/she lost his/her temper.)

한달 동안 고기만 먹었으니 질릴 법(도)/만(도) 하지요.

(=Because you have been eating only meat for a month, it is natural that you got sick and tired of it.)

그렇게 무리하게 일을 하니 병이 날 법(도)/만(도) 하지요.

(=Because you have been working way too much, it is natural that you got sick.)

## 25. Expressing “Never happens regardless of the given situation”:

### ~는 법이 없다

Function		Expressing “Never happens regardless of the given situation”		
Form		~는 법이 없다		
Meaning		Never/Not _ ever		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant	~는 법이 없다 <sup>*1</sup>		
	After a vowel	~는 법이 없다 <sup>**1</sup>		
	After “ㄹ”	~는 법이 없다 <sup>*12</sup>		
Stative	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

<sup>\*1</sup> The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

<sup>\*2</sup> If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는 법이 없다” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는 법이 없다

“~는 법이 없다” can be used to express that the situation in the preceding clause never happens regardless of the given situation, which can be rendered as “never/not \_ ever.”

존은 자기가 잘못해도 사과하는 법이 없어요.

(=John never makes an apology even when it is his fault.)

메리는 화가 나도 화를 내는 법이 없어요.

(=Mary never loses her temper even though she gets angry.)

존은 조그만 실수라도 한 번도 그냥 넘어가는 법이 없어요.

(=John doesn't let it slide even for a minor mistake.)

아무리 힘들어도 사람이 죽으라는 법이 없어요.

(=No matter how difficult the situation is, there is always a way out.)

## 26. Expressing the speaker's challenge of another's authority: ~는 법이 있다

Function		Expressing the speaker's challenge of another's authority		
Form		~는 법이 있다		
Meaning		Is there such a rule that says _?		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 법이 있다*1		
	After a vowel	~는 법이 있다*1		
	After “ㄹ”	~는 법이 있다*12		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\*1 The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

\*2 If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는 법이 있다” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅅ, ㅈ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는 법이 있다

“~는 법이 있다” can be used in a question to express the speaker's challenge of another person's authority, which can be rendered as “Is there such a rule that says \_?”

그걸 제가 하라는 법이 있나요?

(=Is there such a rule that says I should do it?)

저는 가지 말라는 법이 있어요?

(=Is there such a rule that says I should not go?)

## 27. Expressing the main cause for an unpleasant situation: ~는/(으)ㄴ 탓이다

Function		Expressing the main cause for an unpleasant situation		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ 탓이다		
Meaning		It is/was because		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 탓이다	~은 탓이다 ~았던/었던 탓이다	
	After a vowel	~는 탓이다	~ㄴ 탓이다 ~았던/었던 탓이다	
	After "ㄹ"	~는 탓이다*	~ㄴ 탓이다* ~았던/었던 탓이다	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 탓이다	~았던/었던 탓이다	
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 탓이다	~았던/었던 탓이다	
	After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 탓이다*	~았던/었던 탓이다	

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는 모양이다, ~ㄴ 모양이다" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 사는 탓이다/산 탓이다

멀다 (far): 멀 → 먼 탓이다

"~는/(으)ㄴ 탓이다" can be used to express that the situation in the preceding clause is the main cause for an unpleasant situation, which can be rendered as "It is/was because."

우리가 아직 그 프로젝트를 못 끝낸 건 존이 일을 질질끄는 탓이죠.

(=The reason why we could not finish the project is because John has been dragging his work.)

모든 게 다 내가 주식투자로 돈을 잃은 탓이다.

(=Everything was because I lost all the money in stock investments.)

제가 자식교육을 잘 못 시킨 탓이죠.

(=It was because I did not properly discipline my child.)

이 물건이 잘 안 팔리는 건 가격이 너무 높은 탓이다.

(=The reason why this item is not selling well is because its price is too stiff.)

제가 너무 서투른 탓입니다.

(=It is because I am too clumsy.)

On the other hand, “~았던/었던 탓이다” can be used to emphasize the completion of the action or state in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “It was because.”

제가 자식교육을 잘 못 시켰던 탓이죠.

(=It was because I did not properly discipline my child.)

다 내가 무능했던 탓이다.

(=It was all because I was not that capable.)

## 28. Underestimating one's capability/merit/effort: ~는/(으)ㄴ 게 고작이다

Function		Underestimating one's capability/merit/effort		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ 게 고작이다		
Meaning		Just/Merely/At best/At most		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 게 고작이다	~은 게 고작이다	
	After a vowel	~는 게 고작이다	~ㄴ 게 고작이다	
	After “ㄹ”	~는 게 고작이다*	~ㄴ 게 고작이다*	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는 모양이다, ~ㄴ 모양이다” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 사는 게 고작이다/산 게 고작이다

“~는/(으)ㄴ 게 고작이다” can be used to express that the speaker is underestimating one's

capability, merit, or effort, which can be rendered as “just/merely/at best/at most” depending on the context.

공부라고는 숙제만 하는 게 고작이다.

(=As for study, he/she merely does his/her homework.)

존이 할 줄 아는 건 자기 방 청소하는 게 고작이다.

(=The thing that John can do is just to clean his room.)

오늘 하루 종일 피자 한 조각 먹은 게 고작이다.

(=I ate just one slice of pizza for the whole day today.)

어제는 통틀어서 3시간 잔 게 고작이다.

(=I slept just for three hours in total yesterday.)

## 29. Expressing the speaker's dissatisfaction with the given situation:

### ~느니만 못하다

Function		Expressing the speaker's dissatisfaction with the given situation		
Form		~느니만 못하다		
Meaning		Hardly any better than		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~느니만 못하다 <sup>*1</sup>		
	After a vowel	~느니만 못하다 <sup>*1</sup>		
	After “ㄹ”	~느니만 못하다 <sup>*12</sup>		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

<sup>\*1</sup> The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

<sup>\*2</sup> If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~느니만 못하다” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파느니만 못하다

“~느니만 못하다” can be used to express the speaker's dissatisfaction with the given sit-

uation, which can be rendered as “hardly any better than.” It is frequently used with the optional adverb “차라리(but rather).”

이렇게 사는 건 차라리 지금 당장 죽느니만 못하다.

(=Living a life like this is hardly any better than dying now.)

일을 그렇게 할 바에야 차라리 안 하느니만 못하다.

(=Doing things like that is hardly any better than not doing things at all.)

### 30. Exaggerating the speaker's negative feelings: ~(으)ㄴ 정도다/지경이다

Function		Exaggerating the speaker's negative feelings		
Form		~(으)ㄴ 정도다	~(으)ㄴ 지경이다	
Meaning		Be about to		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을 정도다* ~을 지경이다*
	After a vowel			~ㄴ 정도다* ~ㄴ 지경이다*
	After “ㄹ”			정도다* 지경이다*
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~(으)ㄴ 정도다, ~(으)ㄴ 지경이다” can be used to exaggerate the speaker's negative feelings about the unpleasant situation, which can be rendered as “be about to (fall into an extreme situation).”

요즘 장사가 안 돼서 죽을 정도입니다/죽을 지경입니다.

(=Because my business is not going well, I am about to die.)

(=Because my business is not going well, it is killing me.)

날씨가 너무 더워서 아스팔트가 녹을 정도입니다/녹을 지경입니다.

(=Because the weather is sizzling hot, even the asphalt is about to be melted.)

너무 피곤해서 쓰러질 정도예요/쓰러질 지경이에요.

(=Because I am extremely tired, I am about to collapse.)

존 때문에 화가 나서 미칠 정도다/미칠 지경이다.

(=Because I got so mad at John, I am about to go crazy.)

(=Because I got so mad at John, it drives me nuts.)

존 때문에 화가 나서 돌아버릴 정도다/돌아버릴 지경이다. (돌아버리다(slang): to go crazy)

(=Because I got so mad at John, I am about to go crazy.)

(=Because I got so mad at John, it drives me nuts.)

### 31. Exaggerating the magnitude of things with a negative connotation:

#### ~아/어 빠지다/터지다

Function		Exaggerating the magnitude of things with a negative connotation		
Form		~아/어 빠지다	~아/어 터지다	
Meaning		Extremely		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”			
	Otherwise			
Stative Verb Stem	After “오” or “아”	~아 빠지다* ~아 터지다*		
	Otherwise	~어 빠지다* ~어 터지다*		

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~아/어 빠지다/터지다” can be used with a stative verb to exaggerate the magnitude of things with a negative connotation, which can be rendered as “extremely + Stative Verb.”

이런 물건은 아주 흔해 빠졌어요.

(=This kind of thing is extremely easy to find.)

(=This kind of thing is a dime a dozen.)

메리는 아주 착해 빠졌어요.

(=Mary is extremely naive.)

존은 정신상태가 썩어 빠졌어요.

(=John is extremely rotten to the core.)

그 사람은 너무 물러 터졌어요.

(=That person is extremely soft-minded.)

존은 아주 게을러 터졌어요.

(=John is extremely lazy.)

### 32. Expressing “Needless to say”: ~ㄹ 나위가 없다

Function		Expressing “Needless to say”		
Form		~ㄹ 나위가 없다		
Meaning		Needless to say that_		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			~ㄹ 나위가 없다*
	After “ㄹ”			
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~ㄹ 나위가 없다” can be used in idiomatic expressions to express that it is not necessary to repeat the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “Needless to say that \_.” It can only be used with a handful of verbs which happen to end with a vowel. Therefore, “~을 나위가 없다” is logically possible, but there are no Korean verbs

available to be used with it. In addition, since the noun “나위” means “need,” “~ㄴ 나위가 없다” is frequently replaced by “~(으)ㄴ 필요가 없다,” which can be used with a wide range of verbs.

그렇게 해 주신다면 저야 뭐 더 바랄 나위가 없죠.

(=If you do so for me, needless to say that I want something more.)

(=If you do so for me, it leaves nothing more to be desired.)

서울이 이렇게 더우면 대구야 뭐 더 말할 나위가 없죠.

(=If the weather is this hot in Seoul, needless to say how high the temperature is in Taegu.)

대통령도 못 하는데 장관들이야 더 말할 나위가 없죠.

(=Given the situation that even the president could not do it, needless to say that government ministers cannot do it either.)

존이 메리를 사랑하는 것은 두 말할 나위가 없습니다.

(=Needless to say John loves Mary.)

In the last sentence above, “두 말할 나위가 없습니다 (Needless to say that twice)” is fully interchangeable with another idiomatic expression “두 말하면 잔소리입니다 (If someone says that twice, it is nagging).”

존이 메리를 사랑하는 것은 두 말하면 잔소리입니다.

(=Needless to say John loves Mary.)

### 33. Expressing the speaker's complaint about one's repetitive action:

#### ~아/어 대다

“~아/어 대다” can be used to express the speaker's complaint about one's repetitive action. It has the implication that the speaker is getting tired of the annoying action. It can be rendered as “keep -ing.”

존은 하루 종일 소리만 질러 댔다.

(=John kept shouting all day long.)

Function		Expressing the speaker's complaint about one's repetitive action		
Form		~아/어 대다		
Meaning		Keep -ing		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After "오" or "아"	~아 대다*		
	Otherwise	~어 대다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After "오" or "아"			
	Otherwise			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

메리는 K-pop 노래만 불러 댄다.

(=Mary keeps singing only K-pop songs.)

옆집 개가 하루 종일 짖어 댄다.

(=My neighbor's dog keeps barking all day long.)

존은 모든 일에 항상 불평만 해 댄다.

(=John always keeps complaining about everything.)

메리는 아무 말도 하지 않고 피자만 먹어 뒀다.

(=Mary did not say anything and just kept eating the pizza.)

### 34. Expressing the completion of an action: ~아/어 치우다

Function		Expressing the completion of an action		
Form		~아/어 치우다		
Meaning		Completely		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After "오" or "아"	~아/어 치우다*		
	Otherwise	~아/어 치우다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After "오" or "아"			
	Otherwise			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~아/어 치우다” can be used to express that the action in the preceding clause is completely carried out, which can be rendered as “completely.” It is more likely to be used in colloquial expressions.

필요 없는 물건을 다 팔아 치웠어요.

(=I completely sold off all unnecessary items.)

존은 갈비 삼인분을 먹어 치웠어요.

(=John completely ate up the three servings of kalbi.)

쓸데없는 생각은 다 집어 치우세요.

(=Get completely rid of all useless thoughts.)

마누라만 빼고 다 갈아 치우세요. (From Samsung's old company slogan)

(=Make a complete change of everything except your wife.)

### 35. Expressing “It depends”: ~기 나름이다

Function		Expressing “It depends”		
Form		~기 나름이다		
Meaning		It depends on how		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant	~기 나름이다*		
	After a vowel	~기 나름이다*		
	After “ㄹ”	~기 나름이다*		
Stative	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~기 나름이다” can be used with an action verb to express that the given situation depends on how to take action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “It depends on how.”

모든 것은 다 자기 하기 나름입니다.

(=As for everything, it all depends on how you do it.)

모든 것은 다 생각하기 나름입니다.

(=As for everything, it all depends on how you think about it.)

모든 것은 다 받아들이기 나름입니다.

(=As for everything, it all depends on how you take it.)

그건 해석하기 나름이죠.

(=As for that matter, it depends on how you interpret it.)

### 36. Expressing a calculated result or plan: ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 셴이다

Function		Expressing a calculated result			Expressing a calculated plan		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ 셴이다			~(으)ㄹ 셴이다		
Meaning		It seems as if			Be planning to		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 셴이다*1	~은 셴이다				~을 셴이다*1
	After a vowel	~는 셴이다*1	~ㄴ 셴이다				~ㄹ 셴이다*1
	After “ㄹ”	~는 셴이다*1,2	~ㄴ 셴이다*2				셴이다*1
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 셴이다*1					
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 셴이다*1					
	After “ㄹ”	~ㄴ 셴이다*1,2					

\*1 The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

\*2 If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는 셴이다, ~ㄴ 셴이다” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅁ, ㅂ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는 셴이다/판 셴이다

멀다 (far): 멀 → 먼 셴이다

“~는/(으)ㄴ 셴이다” can be used to express that the situation in the preceding clause is the result that comes from one’s calculation, which can be rendered as “It seems as if.”

100불만 더 받으면 돈을 다 받는 셈이다.

(=If I get just another \$100, it seems as if I received all the money.)

이제 빚을 거의 다 갚은 셈이다.

(=It seems as if I almost repaid my debt at this moment.)

다음 주부터 여름방학이니 이번 학기도 다 끝난 셈이다.

(=Because our summer break starts from next week, it seems as if this semester is almost over.)

농구선수 치고는 키가 아주 작은 셈이다.

(=It seems as if John is too short considering that he is a basketball.)

그 컴퓨터는 500불이면 비싼 셈이다.

(=As for that computer, if it is \$500, it seems as if it is a little bit expensive.)

On the other hand, “~(으)ㄴ 셈이다” can also be used to express that one is planning to take action as in the preceding clause according to one’s own calculation, which can be rendered as “be planning to.”

국물이 너무 싱거워서 간장을 좀 넣을 셈이었다.

(=Because the broth is too bland, I was planning to put some soy sauce in it.)

나는 죽기 전에 모든 재산을 다 사회에 환원할 셈이다.

(=I am planning to return all my assets to the society before I die.)

메리는 휴대폰을 쓰고 난 다음에 존에게 돌려줄 셈이었다.

(=Mary was planning to return the cell phone to John after using it.)

너 누굴 바보로 만들 셈이냐?

(=Are you planning to make fun of me?)

너 앞으로 어떻게 할 셈이냐?

(=What are you planning to do from now on?)

### 37. Taking something for granted: ~는/(으)ㄴ 셈치다

“~는/(으)ㄴ 셈치다” can be used to express that the situation in the preceding clause needs to be taken for granted, which can be rendered as “just take it for granted that —”

Function		Taking something for granted		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ 셈치다		
Meaning		Just take it for granted that _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant	~는 셈치다	~은 셈치다	
Verb	After a vowel	~는 셈치다	~ㄴ 셈치다	
Stem	After “ㄹ”	~는 셈치다*	~ㄴ 셈치다*	
Stative	After a consonant			
Verb	After a vowel			
Stem	After “ㄹ”			

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는 셈치다, ~ㄴ 셈치다” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅁ, ㅂ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 사는 셈치다/산 셈치다

그냥 한 번 속아 주는 셈치세요.

(=Just take it for granted that you can be cheated.)

(=Just give him/her the benefit of the doubt.)

그저 자식 하나 없는 셈치세요.

(=Just take it for granted that you are not associated with that kid.)

제가 그냥 받은 셈치죠.

(=I will just take it for granted that I received it.)

불쌍한 사람 하나 도와준 셈치세요.

(=Just take it for granted that you helped a person who is in need.)

그냥 액땀한 셈치죠.

(=I will just take it for granted that I paid the price to avoid the worst thing.)

### 38. Expressing the likeliness of an unpleasant situation:

~기(가) 일쑤이다, ~기(가) 십상이다

“~기(가) 일쑤이다” can be used to express that one is frequently and repeatedly to initiate an unpleasant situation or to undergo an unpleasant experience, which can be rendered as “be prone to \_/frequently.”

Function		Expressing the likeliness of an unpleasant situation					
Form		~기(가) 일쑤이다			~기(가) 십상이다		
Meaning		Be prone to _/Frequently			Be very likely to _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~기(가) 일쑤이다*			~기(가) 십상이다*		
	After a vowel	~기(가) 일쑤이다*			~기(가) 십상이다*		
	After “ㄹ”	~기(가) 일쑤이다*			~기(가) 십상이다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant						
	After a vowel						
	After “ㄹ”						

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

존은 하는 일마다 실패하기 일쑤이다.

(=John is prone to failure in whatever business he runs.)

존은 수업시간마다 졸기 일쑤이다.

(=John is prone to doze off in every class.)

요즘은 너무 바빠서 매일 밤을 새우기 일쑤야.

(=I have frequently pulled an all-nighter these days because I have been so busy.)

One the other hand, “~기(가) 십상이다” can be used to express that the unpleasant situation in the preceding clause is very likely to occur, which can be rendered as “be very likely to \_.”

일을 너무 급하게 서두르면 실패하기 십상이다.

(=If you are in a rush to do your work, you are very likely to fail.)

공무원 시험은 너무 어려워서 누구나 떨어지기 십상이다.

(=Anyone is very likely to fail the civil service exam because it is too difficult.)

날씨가 너무 추워서 감기에 걸리기 십상이다.

(=Because the weather is so cold, we are very likely to catch a cold.)

### 39. Expressing the speaker's feeling: ~는/(으)ㄴ 감이 있다/없지 않아 있다

Function		Expressing the speaker's feeling			
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ 감이 있다		~는/(으)ㄴ 감이 없지 않아 있다	
Meaning		I have a feeling that _		I have kind of a feeling that _	
Distribution		Present	Past	Present	Past
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 감이 있다	~은 감이 있다	~는 감이 없지 않아 있다	~은 감이 없지 않아 있다
	After a vowel	~는 감이 있다	~ㄴ 감이 있다	~는 감이 없지 않아 있다	~ㄴ 감이 없지 않아 있다
	After "ㄹ"	~는 감이 있다*	~ㄴ 감이 있다*	~는 감이 없지 않아 있다*	~ㄴ 감이 없지 않아 있다*
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 감이 있다		~은 감이 없지 않아 있다	
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 감이 있다		~ㄴ 감이 없지 않아 있다	
	After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 감이 있다*		~ㄴ 감이 없지 않아 있다*	

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는 감이 있다, ~ㄴ 감이 있다, ~는 감이 없지 않아 있다, ~ㄴ 감이 없지 않아 있다" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는 감이 있다/판 감이 있다/파는 감이 없지 않아 있다/판 감이 없지 않아 있다  
멀다 (far): 멀 → 먼 감이 있다/먼 감이 없지 않아 있다

"~는/(으)ㄴ 감이 있다" can be used to express the speaker's feeling about the given situation, which can be rendered as "I have a feeling that \_."

존은 무슨 일을 할 때마다 항상 서두르는 감이 있다.

(=I have a feeling that John is always in a rush whenever he does something.)

이건 좀 심하다 싶은 감이 있다.

(=I have a feeling that this is a little bit too harsh.)

메리한테 미안하다 싶은 감이 있다.

(=I have a feeling that I feel guilty about Mary.)

(=I have a guilty feeling about Mary.)

이젠 나이가 너무 들어서 그 일을 하기에는 늦은 감이 있다.

(=Because I am too old now, I have a feeling that it's too late for me to do the job.)

지금 시작하기에는 좀 이른 감이 있다.

(=I have a feeling that it's a little bit too early to start it now.)

On the other hand, “~는/(으)ㄴ 감이 없지 않아 있다” can also be used for the same function, but the speaker in this case is not so sure about how he feels regarding the given situation. It can be rendered as “I have kind of a feeling that \_.”

존은 무슨 일을 할 때마다 항상 서두르는 감이 없지 않아 있다.

(=I have kind of a feeling that John is always in a rush whenever he does something.)

이건 좀 심하다 싶은 감이 없지 않아 있다.

(=I have kind of a feeling that this is a little bit too harsh.)

메리한테 미안하다 싶은 감이 없지 않아 있다.

(=I have kind of a feeling that I feel guilty about Mary.)

(=I have kind of a guilty feeling about Mary.)

이젠 나이가 들어서 그 일을 하기에는 늦은 감이 없지 않아 있다.

(=Because I am too old now, I have kind of a feeling that it's too late for me to do the job.)

지금 시작하기에는 좀 이른 감이 없지 않아 있다.

(=I have kind of a feeling that it's a little bit too early to start it now.)

#### 40. Expressing possibility/no possibility:

~(으)ㄴ 여지가 있다, ~(으)ㄴ 여지가 없다

“~(으)ㄴ 여지가 있다” can be used to express that there is room for the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “There is room/possibility for.” It is commonly used for legal expressions.

그렇게 행동하면 의심 받을 여지가 있다.

(=If you act like that, there is room for putting you under suspicion.)

이 재판의 판결은 다룰 여지가 있다.

(=As for the verdict of this trial, there is room for further debate.)

이 용의자는 증거를 인멸할 여지가 있다.

(=There is a possibility that this suspect will destroy evidence.)

Function		Expressing possibility			Expressing no possibility		
Form		~(으)ㄹ 여지가 있다			~(으)ㄹ 여지가 없다		
Meaning		There is room/possibility for			It leaves no room for/ I have no doubt that _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을 여지가 있다*			~을 여지가 없다*
	After a vowel			~ㄹ 여지가 있다*			~ㄹ 여지가 없다*
	After “ㄹ”			여지가 있다*			여지가 없다*
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant						
	After a vowel						
	After “ㄹ”						

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

On the other hand, “~(으)ㄹ 여지가 없다” can be used in idiomatic expressions to express that there is no possibility of the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “It leaves no room for/I have no doubt that \_.” It can only be used with a handful of verbs.

그 계획은 다시 생각해 볼 여지가 없습니다.

(=As for that plan, it leaves no room for reconsideration.)

존의 그릇된 행동은 변명할 여지가 없습니다.

(=As for John’s wrong behavior, it leaves no room for making an excuse.)

존이 이 사건의 강력한 용의자라는 것은 의심할 여지가 없습니다.

(=I have no doubt that John is the prime suspect in this case.)

#### 41. Expressing “Practically like”: ~다시피 하다

“~다시피 하다” can be used to exaggerate the given situation and compare it to the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “practically like \_.”

존은 마치 감옥을 제 집 드나들다시피 합니다.

(=John goes to jail practically like he goes to his house.)

Function		Expressing “Practically like”		
Form		~다시피 하다		
Meaning		Practically like _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~다시피 하다*		
	After a vowel	~다시피 하다*		
	After “ㄹ”	~다시피 하다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

메리는 공부하면서 도서관에서 살다시피 해요.

(=Mary has been studying in the library practically like she lives there.)

존이 거의 혼자 일을 다 하다시피 했습니다.

(=John did most of the work practically like he did it all by himself.)

메리는 태어났을 때부터 제가 거의 키우다시피 했어요.

(=I practically raised Mary since her birth.)

존은 거의 죽다 살아나다시피 했다.

(=John practically died and came back to life.)

(=John had a narrow escape from death.)

## 42. Making No Difference: ~(으)나 마나(이)다

“(으)나 마나(이)다” can be used to express that one’s taking action in the preceding clause is not a game-changer because it will not make any difference to the given situation. It can be rendered as “It is no use to \_.”

갈비 1인분은 먹으나 마나(이)다.

(=It is no use to eat one serving of galbi. Implication: It will not reduce my hunger.)

이 냉장고는 너무 오래 되어서 고치나 마나(이)다.

(=Because this refrigerator is too old, it is no use to fix it.)

Function		Making no difference		
Form		~(으)나 마나(이)다		
Meaning		It is no use to _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~으나 마나(이)다 <sup>*1</sup>		
	After a vowel	~나 마나(이)다 <sup>*1</sup>		
	After "ㄹ"	~나 마나(이)다 <sup>*12</sup>		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After "ㄹ"			

<sup>\*1</sup> The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

<sup>\*2</sup> If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~나 마나(이)다" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅅ, ㅈ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파나 마나(이)다

이번 시험은 너무 어려워서 공부를 하나 마나(이)다.

(=Because this test was too difficult, it was no use to study for it.)

### 43. Expressing "Depending on": ~느냐에 달려 있다, ~기에 달려 있다

Function		Expressing "Depending on"					
Form		~느냐에 달려 있다			~기에 달려 있다		
Meaning		Critically depends on			Solely depends on		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~느냐에 달려 있다 <sup>*</sup>			~기에 달려 있다 <sup>*</sup>		
	After a vowel	~느냐에 달려 있다 <sup>*</sup>			~기에 달려 있다 <sup>*</sup>		
	After "ㄹ"	~느냐에 달려 있다 <sup>*</sup>			~기에 달려 있다 <sup>*</sup>		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant						
	After a vowel						
	After "ㄹ"						

<sup>\*</sup> The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~느냐에 달려 있다” can be used with a question word to express that the given situation critically depends on the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “critically depends on.”

이번 사업 계획은 존이 어떤 결정을 내리느냐에 달려 있다.

(=As for this business plan, it critically depends on what kind of decision John would come up with.)

투자의 성공은 얼마나 빨리 시장정보를 분석하느냐에 달려 있다.

(=As for one’s success in investment, it critically depends on how quickly he/she can analyze market information.)

모든 것은 다 현재의 상황을 어떻게 받아들이느냐에 달려 있다.

(=As for every matter, it critically depends on how we take the current situation.)

이번 선거의 성공 여부는 어떻게 준비하느냐에 달려 있다.

(=As for the success in this upcoming election, it critically depends on how we prepare for it.)

On the other hand, “~기에 달려 있다” can be used to express that the given situation exclusively depends on the the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “solely depends on.”

그 것은 마음 먹기에 달려 있습니다.

(=As for that matter, it solely depends on your mind-set.)

모든 것은 다 생각하기에 달려 있다.

(=As for every matter, it solely depends on how you think about it.)

Unlike “~느냐에 달려 있다,” however, “~기에 달려 있다” cannot be used with a question word.

이번 사업 계획은 존이 어떤 결정을 내리기에 달려 있다. (NOT OK)

이번 선거의 성공 여부는 어떻게 준비하기에 달려 있다. (NOT OK)

#### 44. Wavering between options: ~(으)르까 말까 하다

Function		Wavering between options		
Form		~(으)르까 말까 하다		
Meaning		Thinking about whether to do it or not		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant			~을까 말까 하다*
Verb	After a vowel			~르까 말까 하다*
Stem	After “ㄹ”			~까 말까 하다*
Stative	After a consonant			
Verb	After a vowel			
Stem	After “ㄹ”			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~(으)르까 말까 하다” can be used to express one's wavering between the two options of “doing it” or “not doing it,” which can be rendered as “thinking about whether to do it or not.”

저녁을 먹을까 말까 한다.

(=I am thinking about whether to eat dinner or not.)

존한테 그 이야기를 할까 말까 한다.

(=I am thinking about whether to tell John about it or not.)

메리는 한국에 유학을 갈까 말까 한다.

(=Mary is thinking about whether to study in Korea or not.)

존은 집을 팔까 말까 한다.

(=John is thinking about whether to sell his house or not.)

It is more frequently used in the form of “~(으)르까 말까 하는 중이다” to express an ongoing state of one's decision making process.

존한테 그 이야기를 할까 말까 하는 중이다.

(=I am in the middle of thinking about whether to tell John about it or not.)

메리는 한국에 유학을 갈까 말까 하는 중이다.

(=Mary is in the middle of thinking about whether to study in Korea or not.)

In addition, the generic verb “하다” can sometimes be replaced by more specific thinking verbs such as “생각하다(think), 고민하다(frustrate), 망설이다(hesitate), etc.”

존한테 그 이야기를 할까 말까 생각한다

(=I am thinking about whether to tell John about it or not.)

메리는 한국에 유학을 갈까 말까 고민한다.

(=Mary is frustrated about whether to study in Korea or not.)

존은 그 일을 할까 말까 망설인다.

(=John is hesitating about whether to take the job or not.)

#### 45. Expressing “Almost, but not quite yet”: ~(으)ㄹ락 말락하다

Function		Expressing “Almost, but not quite yet”		
Form		~(으)ㄹ락 말락 하다		
Meaning		Be almost about to __, but not quite yet		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을락 말락 하다*
	After a vowel			~ㄹ락 말락 하다*
	After “ㄹ”			~락 말락 하다*
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“~(으)ㄹ락 말락하다” can be used in idiomatic expressions to express that the situation in the preceding clause is almost about to happen, but not quite yet. It can be rendered as “be almost about to \_\_, but not quite yet.”

손에 닿을락 말락하네요.

(=I am almost about to touch it, but not quite yet.)

잠이 들락 말락하네요.

(=I am almost about to fall asleep, but not quite yet.)

생각이 날락 말락하네요.

(=I am almost about to recall it, but not quite yet.)

(=It's on the tip of my tongue.)

기침이 날락 말락하네요.

(=I am almost about to cough, but not quite yet.)

사무실에서 바다가 보일락 말락하네요.

(=I am almost about to see the ocean from your office, but not quite yet.)

#### 46. Trying to do something aggressively: ~(으)려고 들다

Function		Trying to do something aggressively		
Form		~(으)려고 들다		
Meaning		Dare to do something (aggressively)		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~으려고 들다* ~으려 들다*		
	After a vowel	~려고 들다* ~려 들다*		
	After “ㄹ”	~려고 들다* ~려 들다*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

“(으)려고 들다” can be used to express that one is trying to carry out the action in the preceding clause in an aggressive manner, which can be rendered as “dare to do something.”

그 손님은 항상 물건 값을 깎으려고 들니다.

(=That customer always dares to haggle over the price.)

존은 말 끝마다 문제를 삼으려(고) 듭니다.

(=John dares to make an issue out of every single word.)

메리는 특 하면 이웃사람들과 싸우려(고) 듭니다.

(=Mary dares to fight with her neighbor at any moment.)

대통령이 되면 항상 권력을 장악하려(고) 든다.

(=If a person becomes president, he/she always dares to seize political power.)

김정은은 북한의 핵무기로 미국과 협상하려(고) 든다.

(=Kim Jong-Un dares to negotiate with the United States using North Korea's nuclear weapons.)

#### 47. Relaying one's message to others:

~(는/ㄴ)다고/냐고/(으)라고/자고 그래요

Function		Relaying one's message to others			
Form		~(는/ㄴ)다고/냐고/(으)라고/자고 그래요			
Meaning		What one said/asked/ told/suggested is that _		Please tell/ask/suggest	
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	
Action Verb Stem	Statement	After a consonant	~는다고 그래요	~았/었다고 그래요	~겠다고 그래요
		After a vowel	~ㄴ 다고 그래요	~았/었다고 그래요	~겠다고 그래요
		After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 다고 그래요*	~았/었다고 그래요	~겠다고 그래요
	Imperative	Regardless of the ending	~냐고 그래요*	~았/었냐고 그래요	~겠냐고 그래요
		After a consonant	~으라고 그래요		
	Proposition	After a vowel or "ㄹ"	~라고 그래요		
Regardless of the ending		~자고 그래요			
Stative Verb Stem	Statement	Regardless of the ending	~다고 그래요	~았/었다고 그래요	~겠다고 그래요
	Question	Regardless of the ending	~냐고 그래요*	~았/었냐고 그래요	~겠냐고 그래요

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~ㄴ 다고 그래요, ~냐고 그래요" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅅ, ㅈ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 산다고 그래요, 사냐고 그래요

멀다 (far): 멀 → 머냐고 그래요

“~(는/ㄴ)다고/냐고/(으)라고/자고 그래요” can be used to express that the speaker is relaying another person’s message to the listener, which can be rendered as “What one said/asked/tole/suggested is that \_.”

1) Statement: ~(는/ㄴ)다고 그래요

존이 내일 돈을 갚는다고 그래요.

(=What John said is that he will pay the money back tomorrow.)

메리가 오늘 학교에 안 간다고 그래요.

(=What Mary said is that she doesn’t go to school today.)

존이 지금 아프다고 그래요.

(=What John said is that he is sick now.)

존이 어제 바빴다고 그래요.

(=What John said is that he was busy yesterday.)

메리가 알바를 그만 두겠다고 그래요.

(=What Mary said is that she will quit her part-time job.)

2) Question: ~냐고 그래요

존이 메리가 언제 한국에 가냐고 그래요.

(=What John asked is when Mary is leaving for Korea.)

메리가 존이 언제 왔냐고 그래요.

(=What Mary asked is when John came.)

존이 저한테 언제 그 일을 시작하겠냐고 그래요.

(=What John asked me is when I can start working on it.)

3) Imperative: ~(으)라고 그래요

존이 저한테 메리 말을 들으라고 그래요.

(=What John told me is to listen to what Mary says.)

존이 메리한테 앞으로 늦지 말라고 그래요.

(=What John told Mary is not to be late from now on.)

부모님이 메리한테 빨리 결혼하라고 그래요.

(=What Mary's parents told her is that she should get married soon.)

#### 4) Proposition: ~자고 그래요

존이 메리한테 내일 거기 같이 가자고 그래요.

(=What John suggested to Mary is to go there together tomorrow.)

메리가 존한테 영화보자고 그래요.

(=What Mary suggested to John is to watch a movie.)

On the other hand, “~(는/ㄴ)다고/냐고/(으)라고/자고 그래요” can also be used to ask the listener to relay the speaker's message to another person, which can be rendered as “Please tell/ask/suggest.”

#### 1) Statement: ~(는/ㄴ)다고 그래요

메리한테 내일 돈을 갚는다고 그래요.

(=Please tell Mary that I will pay the money back tomorrow.)

엄마, 아빠한테 오늘 학교에 안 가는다고 그래요.

(=Mom, please tell Dad that I don't go to school today.)

선생님한테 지금 아프는다고 그래요.

(=Please tell my teacher that I am sick now.)

메리한테 어제 바빻다고 그래요.

(=Please tell Mary that I was busy yesterday.)

엄마, 아빠한테 알바일을 그만 두겠다고 그래요.

(=Mom, please tell Dad that I will quit my part-time job.)

#### 2) Question: ~냐고 그래요

존한테 메리가 언제 한국에 가냐고 그래요.

(=Please ask John when Mary is leaving for Korea.)

메리한테 언제 서울에 도착했냐고 그래요.

(=Please ask Mary when she arrived in Seoul.)

존한테 언제 그 일을 끝내겠냐고 그래요.

(=Please ask John when he is going to finish the work.)

### 3) Imperative: ~(으)라고 그래요

존한테 부모님 말씀을 잘 따르라고 그래요.

(=Please tell John to listen to what his parents say.)

메리한테 앞으로 늦지 말라고 그래요.

(=Please tell Mary not to be late from now on.)

메리한테 빨리 결혼하라고 그래요.

(=Please tell Mary that she should get married soon.)

### 4) Proposition: ~자고 그래요

메리한테 내일 거기 같이 가자고 그래요.

(=Please suggest to Mary to go there together tomorrow.)

존한테 영화보자고 그래요.

(=Please suggest to John to watch a movie.)

## 48. Rephrasing the speaker's previous statement:

~(는/ㄴ)다는/냐는/라는/자는 말이다

“~(는/ㄴ)다는 말이다” can be used to express that the speaker is rephrasing his/her previous statement to clarify his/her point, as in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “What I am saying is that \_.” “~다는” can be often contracted into “~단” in conversation.

남에게 거짓말을 자주하면 아무도 안 믿는다는 말이다/믿는단 말이다.

(=What I am saying is that no one will believe you if you frequently lie to others.)

저출산율을 해결하기 위해서는 정부가 나서야 한다는 말입니다/한단 말입니다.

(=What I am saying is that the government must come forward to solve the low birth rate.)

Function		Rephrasing the speaker's previous statement			
Form		~(는/ㄴ)다는/냐는/(으)라는/자는 말이다			
Meaning		What I am saying/asking/telling you/suggesting is that _			
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	
Action Verb Stem	Statement	After a consonant	~는다는 말이다 ~는단 말이다	~았/었다는 말이다 ~았/었던 말이다	~겠다는 말이다 ~겠단 말이다
		After a vowel	~ㄴ 다는 말이다 ~ㄴ 단 말이다	~았/었다는 말이다 ~았/었던 말이다	~겠다는 말이다 ~겠단 말이다
		After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 다는 말이다* ~ㄴ 단 말이다*	~았/었다는 말이다 ~았/었던 말이다	~겠다는 말이다 ~겠단 말이다
	Question	Regardless of the ending	~냐는 말이다* ~냐 단 말이다*	~았/었냐는 말이다 ~았/었냐 단 말이다	~겠냐는 말이다 ~겠냐 단 말이다
	Imperative	After a consonant	~으라는 말이다 ~으란 말이다		
		After a vowel or "ㄹ"	~라는 말이다 ~란 말이다		
	Proposition	Regardless of the ending	~자는 말이다 ~잔 말이다		
Stative Verb Stem	Statement	Regardless of the ending	~다는 말이다 ~단 말이다	~았/었다는 말이다 ~았/었던 말이다	~겠다는 말이다 ~겠단 말이다
	Question	Regardless of the ending	~냐는 말이다* ~냐 단 말이다*	~았/었냐는 말이다 ~았/었냐 단 말이다	~겠냐는 말이다 ~겠냐 단 말이다

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는다는 말이다, ~ㄴ 다는 말이다, ~냐는 말이다" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 산다는 말이다/산단 말이다, 사냐는 말이다/사냐 단 말이다

멀다 (far): 멀 → 머냐는 말이다/머냐 단 말이다

존이 하는 짓을 보면 멍청하다는 말이다/멍청하단 말이다.

(=What I am saying is that John is stupid by looking at his behaviors.)

당신 친구가 벌써 다 자백했다는 말이에요/했단 말이에요.

(=What I am saying is that your friend already confessed everything.)

메리가 수술하기 전에는 건강했다는 말이에요/했단 말이에요.

(=What I am saying is that Mary was healthy before the surgery.)

Likewise, "~냐는 말이다" and its contraction form "~냐 단 말이다" can be used to rephrase the speaker's question to clarify his/her point as in the preceding clause, which can

be rendered as “What I am asking is that \_.”

그 위험한 일을 누가 하냐는 말이에요/하난 말이에요.

(=What I am asking is who is going to do that dangerous job.)

돈이 왜 부족하냐는 말이에요/부족하난 말이에요.

(=What I am asking is why the money is not good enough.)

도대체 이런 걸 누가 샀냐는 말이에요/샀난 말이에요.

(=What I asking is who on earth bought this piece of junk.)

메리가 왜 그렇게 화가 났냐는 말이에요/났난 말이에요.

(=What I am asking is why Mary was angry like that.)

앞으로 뭘 하겠냐는 말이에요/하겠난 말이에요.

(=What I am asking is what you are planning to do from now on.)

On the other hand, “~라는 말이다” and its contraction form “~란 말이다” can be used to rephrase the speaker’s previous request or order to clarify his/her point as in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “What I am telling you is that \_.”

이제는 서로 용서하라는 말이다/용서하란 말이다.

(=What I am telling you is that you guys must forgive each other now.)

Lastly, “~지는 말이다” and its contraction form “~잔 말이다” can be used to rephrase the speaker’s previous suggestion to clarify his/her point, as in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “What I am suggesting is that \_.”

나랑 같이 가자는 말이다/가잔 말이다.

(=What I am suggesting is that you need to go with me.)

#### 49. Expressing unavailability in a given situation:

~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 것이/거(가)/게 없다

“~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 것이/거(가)/게 없다” can be used to express unavailability in a given situation as in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “There is nothing that \_.”

Function		Expressing unavailability in a given situation		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 것이/거(가)/게 없다		
Meaning		There is nothing that _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 것이 없다 ~는 거(가) 없다 ~는 게 없다	~은 것이 없다 ~은 거(가) 없다 ~은 게 없다	~을 것이 없다 ~을 거(가) 없다 ~을 게 없다
	After a vowel	~는 것이 없다 ~는 거(가) 없다 ~는 게 없다	~ㄴ 것이 없다 ~ㄴ 거(가) 없다 ~ㄴ 게 없다	~ㄹ 것이 없다 ~ㄹ 거(가) 없다 ~ㄹ 게 없다
	After “ㄹ”	~는 것이 없다* ~는 거(가) 없다* ~는 게 없다*	~ㄴ 것이 없다* ~ㄴ 거(가) 없다* ~ㄴ 게 없다*	것이 없다 거(가) 없다 게 없다
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 것이 없다 ~은 거(가) 없다 ~은 게 없다		~을 것이 없다 ~을 거(가) 없다 ~을 게 없다
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 것이 없다 ~ㄴ 거(가) 없다 ~ㄴ 게 없다		~ㄹ 것이 없다 ~ㄹ 거(가) 없다 ~ㄹ 게 없다
	After “ㄹ”	~ㄴ 것이 없다* ~ㄴ 거(가) 없다* ~ㄴ 게 없다*		것이 없다* 거(가) 없다* 게 없다*

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는 것이 없다, ~는 거(가) 없다, ~는 게 없다, ~ㄴ 것이 없다, ~ㄴ 거(가) 없다, ~ㄴ 게 없다,” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

알다 (to know): 알 → 아는 것이 없다/아는 거(가) 없다/아는 게 없다

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 판 것이 없다/판 거(가) 없다/판 게 없다

길다 (long): 길 → 긴 것이 없다/긴 거(가) 없다/긴 게 없다

내가 할 수 있는 것이/거(가)/게 없다.

(=There is nothing that I can do.)

존은 잘 할 수 있는 것이/거(가)/게 없어요.

(=There is nothing that John can do well.)

나는 그것에 대해서 아는 것이/거(가)/게 없다.

(=There is nothing that I know about it.)

오늘은 먹은 것이/거(가)/게 없어요.

(=There was nothing that I ate today.)

(=I ate nothing today.)

존은 우리를 위해 아무것도 한 것이/거(가)/게 없어요.

(=There is nothing that John did for us.)

이 식당은 별로 먹을 것이/거(가)/게 없어요.

(=There is nothing that I particularly like to eat at this restaurant.)

너무 걱정할 것이/거(가)/게 없어요.

(=There's nothing to worry about.)

존을 화나게 해서 좋은 것이/거(가)/게 없어요.

(=There is nothing that will be good once you make John angry.)

(=Nothing will be good once you make John angry.)

저는 별로 기분 나쁠 것이/거(가)/게 없어요.

(=There is nothing that will particularly offend me.)

“~는 것이/거(가)/게 없다” can sometimes be used with another negative expression in the preceding clause to make a strong positive statement.

메리는 못 하는 것이/거(가)/게 없어요.

(=There is nothing that Mary is not good at.)

(=Mary is good at everything.)

이 가게는 없는 것이/거(가)/게 없어요.

(=There is nothing that this store doesn't carry.)

(=This store carries everything.)

## 50. Being unable to sustain a given situation:

**~(으)크래야/(으)려고 해도 ~(으)크 수가 없다**

“~(으)크래야 ~(으)크 수가 없다, ~(으)려고 해도 ~(으)크 수가 없다” can be used to express that one is unable to keep sustaining the situation in the preceding clause even while making a great effort to do so, which can be rendered as “cannot do something any more.”

더 이상 참을래야/참으려고 해도 참을 수가 없다.

(=I cannot tolerate it any more.)

Function		Being unable to sustain a given situation	
Form		~(으)래야 ~(으)ㄹ 수가 없다	~(으)려고 해도 ~(으)ㄹ 수가 없다
Meaning		Cannot do something any more	
Distribution		Present	Present
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~을래야 ~을 수가 없다	~으려고 해도 ~을 수가 없다
	After a vowel	~르래야 ~을 수가 없다	~려고 해도 ~ㄹ 수가 없다
	After “ㄹ”	~래야 ~ 수가 없다	~려고 해도 ~ 수가 없다
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant		
	After a vowel		
	After “ㄹ”		

\* The preceding verb cannot take its own tense suffix, and therefore the tense must be specified on the modal auxiliary.

더 이상 기다릴래야/기다리려고 해도 기다릴 수 가 없다.

(=I cannot wait any longer.)

더 이상 봐 줄래야/봐 주려고 해도 봐 줄 수가 없다.

(=I cannot let it slide any more.)

그 일을 맡길래야/맡기려고 해도 맡길 수가 없다.

(=I cannot let him/her be in charge of the work any more.)

돈을 아낄래야/아끼려고 해도 아낄 수가 없다.

(=I cannot use money more sparingly.)



## CHAPTER 24 Sentence Endings I (문장 종결어미 I)

One of the most distinctive grammatical features of Korean is its large corpus of sentence endings which are attached to the last verb of a given sentence. These sentence endings basically carry three different functions. First, they are used to indicate the sentence type (문장유형) of a given sentence: whether it is a statement (평서문), a question (의문문), an imperative (명령문), or a proposition (청유문).

Formality	Showing respect	Sentence Endings To Be Used	
Formal	To the listener	Honorific Forms	For statement: ~습니다/습니 <b>다</b> For question: ~습니까?/습니 <b>까</b> ? For imperative: ~십시오/으 <b>십</b> 시오 For proposition: ~십시오/으 <b>십</b> 시다 ~ <b>ㅂ</b> 시다/으 <b>ㅂ</b> 시다
	To the listener and the subject		For statement: (으)시 + ㅂ니다 → ~ <b>ㅂ</b> 니다/으 <b>ㅂ</b> 니다 For question: (으)시 + ㅂ니까? → ~ <b>ㅂ</b> 니까?/으 <b>ㅂ</b> 니까? For imperative: (으)시 + ㅂ시오 → ~ <b>ㅂ</b> 시오/으 <b>ㅂ</b> 시오 ~ <b>ㅂ</b> 시오/으 <b>ㅂ</b> 시오 ~ <b>ㅂ</b> 소 ~ <b>ㅂ</b> 오/으 <b>ㅂ</b> 오 For Proposition: (으)시 + ㅂ시다 → ~ <b>ㅂ</b> 시다/으 <b>ㅂ</b> 시다 ~ <b>ㅂ</b> ㅂ시다/으 <b>ㅂ</b> ㅂ시다
	To none of them		Blunt Forms
Informal	To the listener	Honorific Forms	For statement: ~ <b>아요</b> /어 <b>요</b> , ~ <b>이에요</b> /예 <b>요</b> for “이다” For question: ~ <b>아요</b> ?/어 <b>요</b> ?, ~ <b>냐</b> 요?, ~(으) <b>ㄴ</b> /느 <b>ㄴ</b> 가 <b>요</b> ? ~ <b>이에요</b> ?/예 <b>요</b> ? for “이다” For imperative: ~ <b>세요</b> /으 <b>세요</b> , <b>아</b> 요/어 <b>요</b> For proposition: ~ <b>세요</b> /으 <b>세요</b> , <b>아</b> 요/어 <b>요</b>
	To the listener and the subject		~ <b>세요</b> /으 <b>세요</b> for all sentence types For imperative and proposition, ~ <b>아요</b> /어 <b>요</b> can also be used.
	To none of them	Blunt Forms	For all sentence types: ~ <b>아</b> /어 For statement and question: ~ <b>이야</b> /어 <b>야</b> for “이다”

존이 그 책을 읽습니다. (Statement) (=John is reading the book.)

존이 그 책을 읽습니까? (Question) (=Is John reading the book?)

그 책을 읽으십시오. (Imperative) (=Please read the book.)

그 책을 읽으십시오. (Proposition) (=Let's read the book.)

Second, they reflect the various styles of sentences with respect to the honorific/blunt systems. The table on the previous page shows the list of such sentence endings repeated here for your reference from Chapter 13 Honorific and Blunt systems.

Third, sentence endings can also be used to express a variety of modal meanings, such as intention, possibility, speculation, surprise, regret, worry, etc. The following two chapters of this book will focus on the various kinds of core sentence endings that are commonly used in Korean.

## 1. Expressing the speaker's surprise about an unexpected situation:

~(는)군(요), ~(는)구나, ~네(요)

“~(는)군(요), ~네(요)” can be used to express the speaker's surprise about an unexpected situation, as in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “Wow/Oh.” They are more or less interchangeable. But “~(는)군(요)” is more likely to be used by a male speaker, whereas “~네(요)” tends to be used more by a female speaker. Their corresponding blunt forms can be generated simply by dropping the last syllable “~요.” On the other hand, “~(는)구나,” which is the blunt form variant of “~(는)군,” is typically used when an older speaker addresses a younger listener in informal conversation, whereas “~(는)군” is more likely to be used in formal conversation.

존이 야채를 잘 먹는군(요)/먹네(요).

(=Wow, John eats vegetables well.)

너 야채를 잘 먹는구나.

(=Wow, you eat vegetables well.)

메리가 운동을 아주 잘하는군(요)/잘하네(요).

(=Wow, Mary is really good at sports.)

Function		Expressing the speaker's surprise about an unexpected situation					
Form		~(는)군(요), ~(는)구나			~네(요)		
Meaning		Wow/Oh					
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는군(요) ~는구나	~았/었군(요) ~았/었구나 ~았/었겠군(요) ~았/었겠구나	~겠군(요) ~겠구나	~네(요)	~았/었네(요) ~았/었겠네(요)	~겠네(요)
	After a vowel	~는군(요) ~는구나	~았/었군(요) ~았/었구나 ~았/었겠군(요) ~았/었겠구나	~겠군(요) ~겠구나	~네(요)	~았/었네(요) ~았/었겠네(요)	~겠네(요)
	After "ㄹ"	~는군(요)* ~는구나*	~았/었군(요) ~았/었구나 ~았/었겠군(요) ~았/었겠구나	~겠군(요) ~겠구나	~네(요)*	~았/었네(요) ~았/었겠네(요)	~겠네(요)
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~군(요) ~구나	~았/었군(요) ~았/었구나 ~았/었겠군(요) ~았/었겠구나	~겠군(요) ~겠구나	~네(요)	~았/었네(요) ~았/었겠네(요)	~겠네(요)
	After a vowel	~군(요) ~구나	~았/었군(요) ~았/었구나 ~았/었겠군(요) ~았/었겠구나	~겠군(요) ~겠구나	~네(요)	~았/었네(요) ~았/었겠네(요)	~겠네(요)
	After "ㄹ"	~군(요) ~구나	~았/었군(요) ~았/었구나 ~았/었겠군(요) ~았/었겠구나	~겠군(요) ~겠구나	~네(요)*	~았/었네(요) ~았/었겠네(요)	~겠네(요)

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ", "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는군(요), ~는구나, ~네(요)" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅅ, ㅈ". (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는군요/파는구나/파네(요), 멀다 (to sell): 멀 → 머네(요)

너 운동을 아주 잘하는구나.

(=Oh, you are so good at sports.)

사무실이 아주 넓군(요)/넓네(요).

(=Wow, your office is so spacious.)

사무실이 아주 넓구나.

(=Oh, your office is so spacious.)

여동생이 아주 예쁘군(요)/예쁘네(요).

(=Wow, your younger sister is very pretty.)

너 아주 예쁘구나.

(=Oh, you are so cute.)

존이 피자를 다 먹었군(요)/먹었네(요).

(=Wow, John ate up the pizza.)

너 피자를 다 먹었구나.

(=Oh, you ate up the pizza.)

메리가 어렸을 때 아주 키가  컸군(요)/컸네(요).

(=Wow, Mary was very tall when she was a child.)

너 키가 많이  컸구나.

(=Oh, you became taller.)

존이 벌써 대학에  갔겠군(요)/갔겠네(요).

(=Wow, John must have already entered college.)

너 벌써 대학에  갔겠구나.

(=Oh, you must have already entered college.)

오늘까지 그 일을 끝내기가  힘들겠군(요)/힘들겠네(요).

(Wow, it must be difficult to get it done by today.)

너 오늘까지 그 일을 끝내기가  힘들겠구나.

(=Oh, it must be difficult for you to get it done by today.)

## 2. Expressing the speaker's strong intention to take action:

### ~지(요), ~(으)래(요)

“~지(요)” can be used in a statement to express the speaker's strong intention to carry out the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “I will.” Its corresponding blunt form can be generated simply by dropping the last syllable “~요.” “~죠” is the contraction form of the informal honorific variant “~지요,” which is typically used in conversation. “~지(요), ~죠” are more likely to be used by a male speaker in a serious talk,

Function		Expressing the speaker's strong intention to take action					
Form		~지(요)/~죠			~(으)래(요)		
Meaning		I will			I want to		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~지(요) ~죠			~을래(요)
	After a vowel			~지(요) ~죠			~래(요)
	After "ㄹ"			~지(요) ~죠			~래(요)
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant						
	After a vowel						
	After "ㄹ"						

제가 책상을 닦지요/닦죠.

(=I will clean the desk)

제가 그 일을 하지요/하죠.

(=I will do the job.)

내가 한번 해 보지.

(=I will give it a try.)

On the other hand, “~(으)래(요)” can be used in a statement to express the speaker's strong intention to carry out the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “I want to \_.” For this usage, the subject must be in the first person (“I or We”) in a statement. It is typically used by a female speaker or a child in casual speech.

그건 제가 먹을래요.

(=I want to eat that.)

그건 내가 먹을래.

(=I want to eat that.)

오늘은 내가 돈을 낼래.

(=I want to pay this time.)

### 3. Asking about the listener's intention: ~(으)래(요)?

Function		Asking about the listener's intention		
Form		~(으)래요?		
Meaning		Do you want to _?		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을래(요)?
	After a vowel			~래(요)?
	After "ㄹ"			~래(요)?
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After "ㄹ"			

“~(으)래(요)?” can be used in a question to ask about the listener’s intention, which can be rendered as “Do you want to \_?” Unlike its counterpart in a statement, however, it can be freely used by both male and female speakers.

이 프로젝트는 니가 맡을래?

(=Do you want to take charge of this project?)

지금 갈래(요)?

(=Do you want to leave now?)

좀 도와줄래(요)?

(=Do you want to help me?)

이거 한번 써 볼래(요)?

(=Do you want to try this one?)

존을 한번 만나서 이야기해 볼래(요)?

(=Do you want to see John and talk to him about it?)

### 4. Soliciting information: ~지(요)?

“~지(요)?” and its contraction form “~죠?” can be used in a question with a question word to solicit information from the listener, which can be rendered as “Please tell me \_.”

Function		Soliciting information					
Form		~지요?/~죠?			~지?		
Meaning		Please tell me _			Let me see/Let's see		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~지요? ~죠?	~았/었지요? ~았/었죠?		~지?	~았/었지?	
	After a vowel	~지요? ~죠?	~았/었지요? ~았/었죠?		~지?	~았/었지?	
	After “ㄹ”	~지요? ~죠?	~았/었지요? ~았/었죠?		~지?	~았/었지?	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant						
	After a vowel						
	After “ㄹ”						

존이 지금 어디 있지요?/있죠?

(=Please tell me where John is now.)

이거 어떻게 하지요?/하죠?

(=Please tell me how to do this.)

거기에 누가 가지요?/가죠?

(=Please tell me who is going there.)

우리 언제 떠나지요?/떠나죠?

(=Please tell me when we are leaving.)

메리가 뭐 했지요?/했죠?

(=Please tell me what Mary did.)

이걸로 뭐 할 거지요?/할 거죠?

(=Please tell me what are we going to do with this.)

저녁 언제 먹을 거지요?/먹을 거죠?

(=Please tell me when we are going to eat dinner.)

On the other hand, “~지?” which is the blunt form of “~지요?,” can be used in self-talk to express that the speaker is talking to himself/herself to tap into some missing information, which can be rendered as “Let me see/Let’s see.”

존이 지금 어디 있지?

(=Let me see, where is John now?)

이거 어떻게 하지?

(=Let me see, what should I do?)

거기에 누가 가지?

(=Let me see, who is going there?)

우리 언제 떠나지?

(=Let me see, when are we leaving?)

고양이 목에 방울을 누가 달지?

(=Let me see, who will tie the bell on the cat's neck?)

메리가 뭐 했지?

(=Let me see, what did Mary do?)

이걸로 뭐 할 거지?

(=Let me see, what are we going to do with this?)

저녁 언제 먹을 거지?

(=Let me see, when are we going to eat dinner?)

## 5. Seeking agreement/disagreement from the listener (Tag Question):

~지(요)?

“~지(요)?” can be used to create a tag question to express that the speaker is seeking the listener's agreement or disagreement on the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “right?”

오늘 집에 일찍 오시지요?

(=You will come home early today, right?)

잘 지내시지요?

(=You have been doing well, right?)

Function		Seeking agreement/disagreement from the listener (Tag Question)		
Form		~지(요)?/~죠?		
Meaning		Right?		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~지(요)? ~죠?	~았/었지(요)? ~았/었죠? ~았/었겠지(요)?	~겠지(요)? ~겠죠?
	After a vowel	~지(요)? ~죠?	~았/었지(요)? ~았/었죠? ~았/었겠지(요)?	~겠지(요)? ~겠죠?
	After “ㄹ”	~지(요)? ~죠?	~았/었지(요)? ~았/었죠? ~았/었겠지(요)?	~겠지(요)? ~겠죠?
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~지(요)? ~죠?	~았/었지(요)? ~았/었죠? ~았/었겠지(요)?	~겠지(요)? ~겠죠?
	After a vowel	~지(요)? ~죠?	~았/었지(요)? ~았/었죠? ~았/었겠지(요)?	~겠지(요)? ~겠죠?
	After “ㄹ”	~지(요)? ~죠?	~았/었지(요)? ~았/었죠? ~았/었겠지(요)?	~겠지(요)? ~겠죠?

In English, a tag question can be created by taking the following steps:

- (1) If there is an auxiliary verb in the main clause including a be-verb or a have-verb in perfect tense, just copy the auxiliary verb at the beginning of a tag. Otherwise, an appropriate form of the auxiliary verb “do” matching with the main verb in person and tense would be used.
- (2) If the main clause is positive, the tag must be negative, and if the main clause is negative, the tag must be positive. In addition, the negative tag must be contracted, for example, “isn’t” instead of “is not,” “can’t” instead of “cannot” and so on.
- (3) Next, an appropriate pronoun form of the subject follows the auxiliary verb in the tag.

John is an American, **isn't he?**

We are not late, **are we?**

Mary has been to Korea, hasn't she?  
 John will go to the movie theater, won't he?  
 Mary couldn't be here tonight, could she?  
 John lives in Seoul, doesn't he?  
 John studied hard, didn't he?  
 Mary did not write the book, did she?

Unlike the English tag formation rules above, however, the Korean tag formation rule is very simple and straightforward. All we need to do is to attach the suffix “~지(요)?” or its contraction form “~죠?” to a verb stem.

그 미팅에 참석하시지요?/참석하시죠?  
 그 미팅에 참석하지?  
 (=You will attend the meeting, right?)

존이 지금 대학생이지요?/대학생이죠?  
 존이 지금 대학생이지?  
 (=John is a college student, right?)

메리가 예쁘지요?/예쁘죠?  
 메리가 예쁘지?  
 (=Mary is pretty, right?)

이렇게 하면 되겠지요?/되겠죠?  
 이렇게 하면 되겠?  
 (=It must be alright to do it this way, right?)

In the case that the speaker is seeking the listener's agreement or disagreement on the situation in the preceding clause that might have occurred in the past, “~았/었(겠)지(요)?” can be used.

한국에 갔다 오셨지요?/갔다 왔죠?  
 한국에 갔다 왔지?  
 (=You have been to Korean, right?)

아직 저녁 안 드셨지요?/드셨죠?  
 아직 저녁 안 먹었지?  
 (=You didn't eat dinner yet, right?)

메리가 결혼했지요?/결혼했죠?

메리가 결혼했지?

(=Mary is married, right?)

존이 시험 준비를 철저히 했겠지요?/ 했겠죠?

존이 시험 준비를 철저히 했겠지?

(=John must have thoroughly prepared for the test, right?)

메리가 저녁을 먹었겠지요?/먹었겠죠?

메리가 저녁을 먹었겠지?

(=Mary must have eaten dinner, right?)

## 6. Expressing the speaker's determination to take action/to achieve a goal:

~(으)르테야, ~고 말테야

Function		The speaker's determination to take action			The speaker's determination to achieve a goal		
Form		~(으)르테야			~고 말테야		
Meaning		I will			I swear to God that _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을테야			~고 말테야
	After a vowel			~르테야			~고 말테야
	After "ㄹ"			~르테야			~고 말테야
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant						
	After a vowel						
	After "ㄹ"						

“~(으)르테야” can be used to express the speaker's determination to carry out the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “I will.” Somehow its usage has been out of fashion, and it is mainly used in kids' talk, probably because someone may be considered as selfish if he/she uses this grammar feature.

그 피자 내가 먹을테야.

(=I will eat that pizza.)

그건 내가 가질테야.  
 (=I will take that thing.)

내가 한 번 해 볼테야.  
 (=I will give it a try.)

죽여 버릴테야.  
 (=I will kill him/her.)

“~고 말테야” which is the combination of “~고 말다 (to end up -ing)” and “~(으)르테야” can be used to express the speaker’s determination to take a goal-oriented action, which can be rendered as “I swear to God that \_.” It can also be used in self-talk when a person is trying to build up his/her determination to achieve a goal.

이번에는 꼭 이기고 말테야.  
 (=I swear to God that I will win this time without fail.)

누가 했는지 범인을 꼭 잡고 말테야.  
 (=I swear to God that I will find out who did it and catch the culprit.)

죽여 버리고 말테야.  
 (=I swear to God that I will kill him/her.)

## 7. Expressing the speaker's weak intention: ~(으)르게(요)

Function		Expressing the speaker's weak intention		
Form		~(으)르게(요)		
Meaning		I intend to _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을게(요)
	After a vowel			~르게(요)
	After “ㄹ”			~게(요)
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After “ㄹ”			

“~(으)르게(요)” can be used in a statement to express the speaker's weak intention to carry out the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “I intend to ...”

그저 제가 먹을게요.

(=I intend to eat that.)

내가 그 일을 할게.

(=I intend to do the work.)

오늘은 제가 돈을 낼게요.

(=I intend to treat you this time.)

오늘은 내가 돈을 낼게.

(=I intend to treat you this time.)

피곤해서 일찍 갈게요.

(=I intend to go to bed early because I am tired.)

나 먼저 갈게.

(=I intend to go first.)

## 8. Expressing the weak possibility of a situation: ~(으)르걸(요)

Function		Expressing the weak possibility of a situation		
Form		~(으)르걸(요)		
Meaning		Probably		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant		~았/었을걸(요)	~을걸(요)
	Verb		~았/었을걸(요)	~르걸(요)
	Stem	After “ㄹ”	~았/었을걸(요)	~걸(요)
Stative	After a consonant		~았/었을걸(요)	~을걸(요)
	Verb		~았/었을걸(요)	~르걸(요)
	Stem	After “ㄹ”	~았/었을걸(요)	~걸(요)

“~(으)르 걸(요)” can be used in a statement to express the weak possibility of the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “probably.” The subject must be in the third person.

존이 지금 저녁을 먹고 있을걸(요).  
 (=Probably John may be eating dinner now.)

메리가 그 미팅에 갈걸(요).  
 (=Probably Mary will go to the meeting.)

선생님이 사무실에 계실걸(요).  
 (=Probably the teacher may be in his office.)

내일 비가 올걸(요).  
 (=Probably it will rain tomorrow.)

존이 기분이 좋을걸(요).  
 (=Probably John may be in a good mood.)

메리가 아플걸(요).  
 (=Probably Mary may be sick.)

존이 시험에 합격했을걸(요).  
 (=Probably John may have passed the test.)

## 9. Asking for information politely: ~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 건가요?

Function		Asking for information politely		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 건가요?		
Meaning		Could you please tell me _?		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는 건가요?	~은 건가요?	~을 건가요?
	After a vowel	~는 건가요?	~ㄴ 건가요?	~ㄹ 건가요?
	After "ㄹ"	~는 건가요? <sup>*</sup>	~ㄴ 건가요? <sup>*</sup>	건가요?
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은 건가요?		
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 건가요?		
	After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 건가요? <sup>*</sup>		

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는 건가요?, ~ㄴ 건가요?" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅁ, ㅂ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는 건가요?/판 건가요?

길다 (long): 길 → 긴 건가요?

“~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 건가요?” can be used to express that the speaker is politely seeking information about the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “Could you please tell me \_?”

보통 몇 시에 저녁을 먹는 건가요?

(=Could you please tell me what time we usually eat dinner?)

이거 어떻게 하는 건가요?

(=Could you please tell me how to do this?)

경찰이 범인을 잡은 건가요?

(=Could you please tell me whether the police captured the suspect?)

누가 잘못된 건가요?

(=Could you please tell me whose fault it is?)

언제 돌려주실 건가요?

(=Could you please tell me when you are going to give it back to me?)

존이 한국말을 공부할 건가요?

(=Could you please tell me whether John is going to study Korean?)

메리가 언제 결혼할 건가요?

(=Could you please tell me when Mary is going to get married?)

존이 왜 이렇게 기분이 좋은 건가요?

(=Could you please tell me why John is in such a good mood?)

이건 왜 이렇게 비싼 건가요?

(=Could you please tell me why this thing is so expensive?)

On the other hand, “~는/(으)ㄴ/(으)ㄹ 건가?” which is the blunt form of this grammar feature, can be typically used by the older speaker when he/she asks a question to an adult listener in order to seek information about the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “Tell me about \_.”

보통 몇 시에 저녁을 먹는 건가?

(=Tell me what time we usually eat dinner.)

경찰이 범인을 잡은 건가?

(=Tell me whether the police captured the suspect.)

자네, 언제 결혼할 건가?

(=Hey, tell me when you are going to get married.)

존이 왜 저렇게 기분이 좋은 건가?

(=Tell me why John is in such a good mood like that.)

In addition, it can also be used in self-talk to tap into some missing information, which can be rendered as “Let’s see.”

이거 어떻게 하는 건가?

(=Let’s see, how can I do this?)

누가 잘못된 건가요?

(=Let’s see, whose fault is it?)

언제 줄 건가?

(=Let’s see, when is he/she going to give it to me?)

이건 왜 이렇게 비싼 건가?

(=Let’s see, why is this thing so expensive?)

## 10. Making an indirect question to seek information: ~는/(으)ㄴ가요?, ~나요?

Function		Making an indirect question to seek information					
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ가요?			~나요?		
Meaning		I wonder _			Do you happen to know _?		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는가요?	~았/었는가요?	~겠는가요?	~나요?	~았/었나요?	~겠나요?
	After a vowel	~는가요?	~았/었는가요?	~겠는가요?	~나요?	~았/었나요?	~겠나요?
	After “ㄹ”	~는가요? <sup>*</sup>	~았/었는가요?	~겠는가요?	~나요? <sup>*</sup>	~았/었나요?	~겠나요?
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은가요?	~았/었는가요?	~겠는가요?	~나요?	~았/었나요?	~겠나요?
	After a vowel	~ㄴ가요?	~았/었는가요?	~겠는가요?	~나요?	~았/었나요?	~겠나요?
	After “ㄹ”	~ㄴ가요? <sup>*</sup>	~았/었는가요?	~겠는가요?	~나요? <sup>*</sup>	~았/었나요?	~겠나요?

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는가요?, ~ㄴ가요?” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는가요?/파나요?

길다 (long): 길 → 긴 가요?/기나요?

“~는/(으)니까요?” can be used to make an indirect question to seek information from the listener in a polite way, which can be rendered as “I wonder \_.” “~나요?” can also be used for the same function, which can be rendered as “Do you happen to know \_?” Their corresponding direct question ending is “~아/어요?” In most cases, they are interchangeable, but differ in terms of the degree of directness. In Korean, “less direct” means “more polite.”

~아/어요?	>	~나요?	>	~(으)니까요?
More direct				Less direct
Less polite				More polite

존이 언제 한국에 가는가요?

(=I wonder when John is going to Korea.)

존이 언제 한국에 가나요?

(=Do you happen to know when John is going to Korea?)

존이 언제 한국에 가요?

(=When is John going to Korea?)

존의 아버님이 돈이 많은가요?

(=I wonder whether John's father is rich.)

존의 아버님이 돈이 만나요?

(=Do you happen to know whether John's father is rich?)

존의 아버님이 돈이 만아요?

(=Is John's father rich?)

메리 집이 큰가요?

(=I wonder whether Mary's house is big.)

메리 집이 크나요?

(=Do you happen to know whether Mary's house is big?)

메리 집이 크어요?

(=Is Mary's house big?)

여기가 어디인가요?

(=I wonder where I am.)

여기가 어디나요?

(=Do you happen to know where I am?)

여기가 어디예요?

(=Where am I?)

존이 숙제를 다 했는가요?

(=I wonder whether John finished all of his homework.)

존이 숙제를 다 했나요?

(=Do you happen to know whether John finished all of his homework?)

존이 숙제를 다 했어요?

(=Did John finish his homework?)

이 정도면 되겠는가요?

(=I wonder whether this much must be good enough.)

이 정도면 되겠나요?

(=Do you happen to know whether this much must be good enough?)

이 정도면 되겠어요?

(=Is this much good enough?)

이 옷이 존한테 너무 작겠는가요?

(=I wonder whether these clothes must be too small for John.)

이 옷이 존한테 너무 작겠나요?

(=Do you happen to know whether these clothes must be too small for John?)

이 옷이 존한테 너무 작아요?

(=Are these clothes too small for John?)

On the other hand, “~는/(으)ㄴ가?, ~나?” which are the blunt forms of these grammar features, can be typically used by the older speaker when he/she asks a question to an adult listener in order to seek information about the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “Tell me \_.”

존이 언제 한국에 가는가?

존이 언제 한국에 가나?

(=Tell me when John is going to Korea.)

존의 아버님이 돈이 많은가?

존의 아버님이 돈이 많나?

(=Tell me whether John's father is rich.)

존이 숙제를 다 했는가?

존이 숙제를 다 했나?

(=Tell me whether John finished all of his homework.)

이 정도면 되겠는가?

이 정도면 되겠나?

(=Tell me whether this much must be good enough.)

In addition, they can also be used in self-talk to tap into some missing information, which can be rendered as "Let's see."

존이 언제 한국에 가는가?

존이 언제 한국에 가나?

(=Let's see, when is John going to Korea?)

존의 아버님이 돈이 많은가?

존의 아버님이 돈이 많나?

(=Let's see, is John's father rich?)

존이 숙제를 다 했는가?

존이 숙제를 다 했나?

(=Let's see, did John finish all of his homework?)

이 정도면 되겠는가?

이 정도면 되겠나?

(=Let's see, will this much be good enough?)

## 11. Seeking the listener's response to the speaker's suggestion or speculation:

~(으)르까(요)?

"~(으)르까(요)?" can be used in a question to express that the speaker is seeking the listener's response to his/her suggestion in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as "Shall I/we \_?" or "Can I/we \_?" The subject must be in the first person.

Function		Seeking the listener's response to the speaker's suggestion			Seeking the listener's response to the speaker's speculation		
Form		~(으)ㄴ까(요)?					
Meaning		Shall I/we _?, Can I/we _?			Do you think _?		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을까(요)?		~았/었을까(요)?	~을까(요)?
	After a vowel			~르까(요)?		~았/었을까(요)?	~르까(요)?
	After "ㄹ"			~까(요)?		~았/었을까(요)?	~까(요)?
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant					~았/었을까(요)?	~을까(요)?
	After a vowel					~았/었을까(요)?	~르까(요)?
	After "ㄹ"					~았/었을까(요)?	~까(요)?

우리 같이 저녁이나 먹을까(요)?

(=Shall/Can we have dinner together?)

다음 달에 한국에 같이 갈까(요)?

(=Shall/Can we go to Korea together next month?)

제가 먼저 갈까요?

(=Shall/Can I go first?)

내가 할까?

(=Shall/Can I do it?)

내가 도와 줄까?

(=Can I help you?)

On the other hand, “~(으)ㄴ까(요)?” can also be used in a question to express that the speaker is seeking the listener's response to his/her speculation on the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “Do you think \_?” For this usage, the subject must be in the first person or the third person.

우리가 이번에 우승할 수 있을까(요)?

(=Do you think we will win the championship this time?)

제가 명문대학에 입학할 수 있을까(요)?

(=Do you think I can get admitted to a prestigious college?)

존이 이번에 좋은 성적을 받을까(요)?

(=Do you think John will get a good grade this time?)

내일 눈이 올까(요)?

(=Do you think it will snow tomorrow?)

이 정도면 괜찮을까(요)?

(=Do you think this will be good enough?)

돈이 충분할까(요)?

(=Do you think this will be enough money?)

“~았/었을까(요)?” can be used to emphasize the completion of the action that occurred in the past.

존이 그 프로젝트를 끝냈을까(요)?

(=Do you think John has finished the project?)

메리가 지금쯤 집에 도착했을까(요)?

(=Do you think Mary has arrived at home by now?)

## 12. Expressing the speaker's speculation: ~(으)ㄴ 텐데(요)

Function		Expressing the speaker's speculation		
Form		~(으)ㄴ 텐데(요)		
Meaning		Might/Might have + pp		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant		~았/었을 텐데(요)	~을 텐데(요)
	After a vowel		~았/었을 텐데(요)	~ㄴ 텐데(요)
	After “ㄹ”		~았/었을 텐데(요)	텐데(요)
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant		~았/었을 텐데(요)	~을 텐데(요)
	After a vowel		~았/었을 텐데(요)	~ㄴ 텐데(요)
	After “ㄹ”		~았/었을 텐데(요)	텐데(요)

“~(으)ㄴ 텐데(요)” can be used to express that the speaker is speculating on the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “might.”

존이 도서관에서 공부하고 있을 텐데(요).

(=John might be studying at the library.)

집에 아무도 없을 텐데(요).

(=There might be no one at home.)

집에 가는 길이 막힐 텐데(요).

(=There might be a traffic jam on your way back home.)

이건 존한테 좀 클 텐데(요).

(=This one might be a little big for John.)

밤 늦게까지 일하면 힘들 텐데요.

(=You might get tired if you work until late at night.)

날씨가 추울 텐데(요).

(=The weather might be cold.)

“~았/었을 텐데(요)” can be used to emphasize the completion of the action that occurred in the past, which can be rendered as “might have + pp.”

약국이 지금 닫았을 텐데(요).

(=The pharmacy might have been closed now.)

존이 일찍 출발했을 텐데(요).

(=John might have left early.)

메리가 벌써 떠났을 텐데(요).

(=Mary might have left already.)

“~았/었을 텐데(요)” can also be used with the past-tense conditional clauses such as “~았/었으면, ~았/었다면” to express that the speaker’s speculation on the situation in the preceding clause did not actually occur because the condition in the preceding conditional clause was not met. It can be rendered as “If \_ had + pp, \_ could have + pp.”

돈이 좀 더 있었으면 스포츠카를 살 수 있었을 텐데(요).

돈이 좀 더 있었다면 스포츠카를 살 수 있었을 텐데(요).

(=If I had had more money, I could have bought a sports car.)

일찍 도착했으면 메리를 만날 수 있었을 텐데(요).

일찍 도착했다면 메리를 만날 수 있었을 텐데(요).

(=If you had arrived earlier, you could have met Mary.)

손님이 많이 왔으면 더 좋았을 텐데(요).

손님이 많이 왔다면 더 좋았을 텐데(요).

(=If more guests had come, it could have been better.)

존이 대학에 합격했으면 축하파티를 했을 텐데(요).

존이 대학에 합격했다면 축하파티를 했을 텐데(요).

(=If John had been admitted to college, we could have had a celebration.)

어머니가 살아 계셨으면 좋아하셨을 텐데(요).

어머니가 살아 계셨다면 좋아하셨을 텐데(요).

(=If my mother had been alive, she couldn't have been happier.)

### 13. Making a strong confirmation of a given situation: ~**잡아(요)**

Function		Making a strong confirmation of a given situation		
Form		~잡아(요)		
Meaning		As you see/As you know		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~잡아(요)	~았/엇잡아(요)	
	After a vowel	~잡아(요)	~았/엇잡아(요)	
	After "ㄹ"	~잡아(요)	~았/엇잡아(요)	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~잡아(요)	~았/엇잡아(요)	
	After a vowel	~잡아(요)	~았/엇잡아(요)	
	After "ㄹ"	~잡아(요)	~았/엇잡아(요)	

“~잡아(요)” can be used to express that the speaker is making a strong confirmation of the situation in the preceding clause that the listener is currently witnessing or trying to remind the listener of the fact that he/she might have forgotten. It can be rendered as “As you see, As you know,” respectively.

존은 돈이 없잖아(요).

(=As you know, John does not have any money at all.)

메리가 한 말이 맞잖아(요).

(=As you see, what Mary said is right.)

존이 지금 바쁘잖아(요).

(=As you see, John is busy now.)

메리가 아주 귀엽잖아(요).

(=As you see, Mary is so cute.)

벌써 표가 매진됐잖아(요).

(=As you see, the tickets are already sold out.)

제가 원하는 건 이게 아니잖아요.

(=As you know, this is not what I want.)

존이 다른 곳으로 이사했잖아(요).

(=As you know, John moved to a different place.)

이미 말씀드렸잖아요.

(=As you know, I already told you.)

아까 얘기했잖아.

(=As you know, I told you a while ago.)

어제는 일요일이었잖아(요).

(=As you know, yesterday was Sunday.)

On the other hand, “있잖아(요),” which is the combination of the existential verb “있다” and “~잖아(요),” can be frequently used as a filler when a person is trying to initiate a talk by attracting the listener’s attention. It can be rendered as “You know what?” It is often used with the optional demonstrative “저기.”

(저기) 있잖아요, 존이 한국에 유학 간대요.

(=You know what? John is going to study in Korea.)

(저기) 있잖아, 메리가 다음 달에 결혼한대.

(=You know what? Mary is getting married next month.)

## 14. Making a suggestion/a soft complaint to the listener:

~지 그래(요)?, ~지 그랬어(요)?

Function		Making a suggestion to the listener	Making a soft complaint to the listener	
Form		~지 그래(요)?	~지 그랬어(요)?	
Meaning		Why don't you _?	Why didn't you _?	
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~지 그래(요)?	~지 그랬어(요)?	
	After a vowel	~지 그래(요)?	~지 그랬어(요)?	
	After "ㄹ"	~지 그래(요)?	~지 그랬어(요)?	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After "ㄹ"			

“~지 그래(요)?” can be used in a question to express that the speaker is indirectly making a suggestion to the listener, which can be rendered as “Why don't you \_?” It is typically used in conversation.

지금 시작하지 그래(요)?

(=Why don't you start now?)

한국에 한 번 가보지 그래(요)?

(=Why don't you go to Korea?)

한 번 드셔 보지 그래(요)?

(=Why don't you try to eat it?)

On the other hand, its past-tense form “~지 그랬어(요)?” can be used to express that the speaker is softly complaining about the listener's not carrying out the action in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “Why didn't you \_?”

공부를 좀 더 열심히 하지 그랬어(요)?

(=Why didn't you study harder?)

경찰한테 신고하지 그랬어(요)?

(=Why didn't you report to the police?)

병원에 한 번 가보지 그랬어(요)?  
 (=Why didn't you go to a hospital?)

### 15. Making a request to the listener: ~(으)려무나, ~(으)렴

Function		Making a request to the listener					
Form		~(으)려무나			~(으)렴		
Meaning		Why don't you _?					
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant	~으려무나			~으렴		
	After a vowel	~려무나			~렴		
	After "ㄹ"	~려무나			~렴		
Stative	After a consonant						
	After a vowel						
	After "ㄹ"						

“~(으)려무나, ~(으)렴” can be used in an imperative sentence to express that the older speaker is indirectly making a request to the younger listener, which can be rendered as “Why don't you \_?” But these expressions are now on the verge of becoming archaic expressions.

존하고 같이 먹으려무나/먹으렴.

(=Why don't you eat it with John?)

이거 한번 먹어 보려무나/보렴.

(=Why don't you try to eat this one?)

친구한테 부탁해 보려무나/보렴.

(=Why don't you ask your friend for help?)

이제 그만 집에 가 보려무나/보렴.

(=Why don't you go home now?)

These grammar features can also be used in a conversational idiom.

나가 죽으려무나/죽으렴.

(=Why don't you get out and kill yourself?)

(=You are impossible.)

## 16. Providing the reason for a given situation or denying/rejecting what the listener said/suggested: ~거든(요)

Function		Providing the reason for the given situation	Denying/Rejecting what the listener said or suggested	
Form		~거든(요)		
Meaning		The reason is that _	Nope	
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant	~거든(요)	~았/었거든(요)	
	Verb	~거든(요)	~았/었거든(요)	
	Stem	~거든(요)	~았/었거든(요)	
Stative	After a consonant	~거든(요)	~았/었거든(요)	
	Verb	~거든(요)	~았/었거든(요)	
	Stem	~거든(요)	~았/었거든(요)	

“~거든(요)” can be used to provide the reason for a given situation that the listener doesn’t know yet, which can be rendered as “The reason is that \_.”

저는 오늘 거기에 못 가요. 밤 늦게까지 일하거든요.

(=I cannot go there today. The reason is that I have to work until late at night.)

나중에 도와줄게. 지금은 바쁘거든.

(=I will help you later. The reason is that I am busy now.)

저는 배가 안 고파요. 저녁을 벌써 먹었거든요.

(=I am not hungry. The reason is that I already ate dinner.)

늦어서 미안해. 회사 일이 아주 바쁘거든.

(=I am sorry for the late. The reason is that I was so busy doing my company work.)

“~거든(요)” can also be used to express that the speaker is completely denying what the listener said or rejecting what the listener suggested, which can be rendered as “Nope.”

- A: 이거 니가 했지? (=You did this, right?)  
 B: 내가 안 했거든. (=Nope, I didn't.)
- A: 우리 서울에 같이 가자. (=Let's go to Seoul together.)  
 B: 싫거든. (=Nope, I won't.)

On the other hand, the conversational idiom “됐거든(요)” has been frequently used among younger generations when they bluntly reject what the other party just suggested, which can be rendered as “Stop talking about it.” Its related expression “됐네(요)” can also be used when the speaker softly rejects what the listener suggested without offending his/her feelings, which can be rendered as “I am fine.”

- A: 내가 좀 도와 줄까? (=Do you want me to help you?)  
 B: 됐거든(요). (=Stop talking about it. (I don't need your help.))  
됐네(요). (=I am fine. (I can handle it.))
- A: 우리 같이 저녁 먹으러 갈까? (=Shall we go to eat dinner together?)  
 B: 됐거든(요). (=Stop talking about it. (I don't want to eat out.))  
됐네(요). (=I am fine. (I don't want to eat out.))

## 17. Waiting for the listener's response: ~는/(으)ㄴ 데(요)

Function		Waiting for the listener's response		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ 데(요)		
Meaning		So, what would you do?		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant	~는데(요)	~았/었는데(요)	~겠는데(요)
Verb	After a vowel	~는데(요)	~았/었는데(요)	~겠는데(요)
Stem	After “ㄹ”	~는데(요)*	~았/었는데(요)	~겠는데(요)
Stative	After a consonant	~은데(요)	~았/었는데(요)	~겠는데(요)
Verb	After a vowel	~ㄴ 데(요)	~았/었는데(요)	~겠는데(요)
Stem	After “ㄹ”	~ㄴ 데(요)*	~았/었는데(요)	~겠는데(요)

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~는데(요), ~ㄴ 데(요)” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는데요  
 길다 (long): 길 → 긴데요

“~는/(으)ㄴ데(요)” can be used to send a signal to the listener that the speaker is waiting for his/her response to the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “So, what would you do?”

밖에 비가 오는데요.

(=It's raining outside. (So, what would you do?))

존이 지금 자는데요.

(=John is sleeping now. (So, what would you do?))

사이즈가 너무 작은데요.

(This is too small in size for me. (So, what would you do?))

젓가락을 사용하기가 조금 불편한데요.

(=I am having a hard time using chopsticks. (So, what would you do?))

3시에 의사선생님과 약속을 했는데요.

(=I have a 3'o'clock appointment with the doctor. (So, what would you do?))

숙제 다 했는데요.

(=I finished the homework. (So, what would you do?))

이번 콘서트는 관객들의 반응이 아주 좋았는데요.

(=The audience reaction to this concert was so good. (So, what would you do?))

이 스타일의 옷이 잘 어울리겠는데요.

(=The style of these clothes must go very well with you. (So, what would you do?))

음식이 모자라겠는데요.

(=We must not have enough food. (So, what would you do?))

## 18. Trying to correct the listener's false information:

**~는/(으)ㄴ데(요), ~는/(으)ㄴ걸(요)**

As we just discussed above, “~는/(으)ㄴ데(요)” can be used to send a signal to the listener that the speaker is waiting for his/her response. It can also be used to express that the speaker is trying to provide the correct information from the preceding clause to the listener, which can be rendered as “I am telling you \_.”

Function		Trying to correct the listener's false information					
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ 데(요)			~는/(으) 겠(요)		
Meaning		I am telling you _					
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는데(요)	~았/었는데(요)		~는 겠(요)	~은 겠(요) ~았/었는 겠(요)	
	After a vowel	~는데(요)	~았/었는데(요)		~는 겠(요)	~ㄴ 겠(요) ~았/었는 겠(요)	
	After "ㄹ"	~는데(요)*	~았/었는데(요)		~는 겠(요)*	~ㄴ 겠(요)* ~았/었는 겠(요)	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은데(요)	~았/었는데(요)		~은 겠(요)	~았/었는 겠(요)	
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 데(요)	~았/었는데(요)		~ㄴ 겠(요)	~았/었는 겠(요)	
	After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 데(요)*	~았/었는데(요)		~ㄴ 겠(요)*	~았/었는 겠(요)	

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는데(요), ~ㄴ 데(요), ~는 겠(요), ~ㄴ 겠(요)" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 파는데(요), 파는 겠(요)

길다 (long): 길 → 긴데(요), 긴 겠(요)

매일 1시간 씩 운동하는데요.

(=I am telling you I exercise for an hour every day.)

존이 한국에 있는데요.

(=I am telling you John is in Korea.)

메리가 공부를 열심히 하고 있는데요.

(=I am telling you Mary is studying diligently.)

이 도서관은 1년 365일 여는데요.

(=I am telling you this library opens all year round.)

존이 아까 저녁을 먹었는데요.

(=I am telling you John ate dinner a while ago.)

그 영화를 이미 봤는데요.

(=I am telling you I already watched the movie.)

존이 아주 기분이 좋은데요.

(=I am telling you John is really in a good mood.)

메리가 아주 예쁜데(요).

(=I am telling you Mary is so pretty.)

제가 어제 많이 아팠는데(요).

(=I am telling you I was very sick yesterday.)

“~는/ (으)ㄴ 걸(요)” can be used for the same function, but it is more likely to be used in casual speech.

매일 1시간 씩 운동하는 걸요.

(=I am telling you I exercise for an hour every day.)

존이 한국에 있는 걸요.

(=I am telling you John is in Korea.)

이 도서관은 1년 365일 여는 걸요.

(=I am telling you that as for this library, it opens all year round.)

존이 아까 저녁을 먹은 걸요.

(=I am telling you John ate dinner a while ago.)

그 영화를 이미 보은 걸요.

(=I am telling you I already watched the movie.)

존이 아주 기분이 좋은 걸(요).

(=I am telling you John is really in a good mood.)

메리가 아주 예쁜 걸(요).

(=I am telling you Mary is so pretty.)

Another past tense form of this ending “~았/었는 걸(요)” can be used to emphasize the completion of the action in the preceding clause.

그 영화를 이미 봤는 걸(요).

(=I am telling you I already watched the movie.)

존이 아까 저녁을 먹었는 걸(요).

(=I am telling you John ate dinner a while ago.)

조금 전까지 메리가 기분이 아주 좋았는 걸(요).

(=I am telling you Mary was in a good mood until a moment ago.)

## 19. Questioning the likeliness of a situation: ~(는/ㄴ)다/라/자니(요)?

Function			Questioning the validity of one's claim		
Form			~(는/ㄴ)다/라/자니(요)?		
Meaning			Are you sure that _?		
Distribution			Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	Statement	After a consonant	~는다니(요)?	~있/었다니(요)?	~겠다니(요)?
		After a vowel	~는다니(요)?	~있/었다니(요)?	~겠다니(요)?
		After “ㄹ”	~ㄴ 다니(요)?*	~있/었다니(요)?	~겠다니(요)?
	Imperative	After a consonant	~으라니(요)?		
		After a vowel or “ㄹ”	~라니(요)?		
	Proposition	Regardless of the ending	~자니(요)?		
Stative Verb Stem	Statement	Regardless of the ending	~다니(요)?	~있/었다니(요)?	~겠다니(요)?

\* If the verb stem ends with “ㄹ,” “ㄹ” will be dropped before we attach “~ㄴ 다니(요)?” according to the rule of “ㄹ” deletion that says “the consonant “ㄹ” at the end of a verb stem is dropped before “ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ.” (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 판다니(요)?

“~(는/ㄴ)다/라/자니(요)?” can be used to express that the speaker is strongly questioning the validity of one’s claim in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “Are you sure that \_?” They are typically followed by one of the following optional expressions “그게 말이냐 됩니까?/말도 안 됩니다 (It doesn’t make any sense.),” “얼토당토 않는 소리죠 (It’s ridiculous.),” “어처구니가 없네요/할 말이 없네요 (I’m speechless.),” “정신 나갔습니까? (Are you out of your mind.),” etc.

이 약만 먹으면 모든 병이 낫는다니(요)? (얼토당토 않는 소리죠.)

(=Are you sure that all kinds of disease can be cured if I take this medicine? It is ridiculous.)

다섯 살짜리 애가 미적분을 푼다니(요)? (그게 말이냐 됩니까?)

(=Are you sure that a five-year-old kid can solve calculus problems? It doesn’t make any sense.)

이걸 나보고 먹으라니(요)? (정신 나갔습니까?)

(=Are you sure that you are asking me to eat this? Are you out of your mind?)

저한테 그 일을 하라니(요)? (어처구니가 없네요.)

(=Are you sure that you are asking me to do that? I am speechless.)

이제 와서 계약을 취소하자니(요)? (그게 말이 됩니까?)

(=Are you sure that you want to cancel the contract after all this? Do you think it makes sense?)

메리를 보고 예쁘다니(요)? (말도 안 되죠.)

(=Are you sure that you think Mary is pretty. It doesn't make any sense.)

존이 사람을 죽였다니(요)? (말도 안 되죠.)

(=Are you sure that John murdered a person? It doesn't make any sense.)

메리가 그 위험한 곳에 가겠다니(요)? (말도 안 되죠.)

(=Are you sure that Mary is going to that dangerous place? It doesn't make any sense.)

## 20. Making sure that the speaker's understanding the situation is correct:

~(는/ㄴ)다/라/자고(요)?

“~(는/ㄴ)다/라/자고(요)?” and their colloquial variants “~(는/ㄴ)다/라/자구(요)?” can be used to express that the speaker is trying to make sure that his/her understanding of the situation in the preceding clause is true and correct, which can be rendered as “Are you telling/asking/suggesting to me that \_?”

이 약만 먹으면 모든 병이 낫는다고(요)?

(=Are you telling me that all kinds of disease can be cured if I take this medicine?)

신용카드를 안 받는다고요?

(=Are you telling me that you don't take credit cards?)

다섯 살짜리 애가 미적분을 푼다고(요)?

(=Are you telling that a five-year-old kid can solve calculus problems?)

아이가 열이 난다고(요)?

(=Are you telling me that my child has a fever?)

Function	Making sure that the speaker's understanding the situation is correct				
Form	~(는/ㄴ)다/라/자고(요)?				
Meaning	Are you telling/asking/suggesting to me that _ ?				
		Distribution	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	Statement	After a consonant	~는다고(요)?	~았/었다고(요)?	~겠다고(요)? ~을 거라고(요)?
		After a vowel	~ㄴ 다고(요)?	~았/었다고(요)?	~겠다고(요)? ~ㄴ 거라고(요)?
		After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 다고(요)?*	~았/었다고(요)?	~겠다고(요)? 거라고(요)?
	Imperative	After a consonant	~으라고(요)?		
		After a vowel or "ㄹ"	~라고(요)?		
	Proposition	Regardless of the ending	~자고(요)?		
Stative Verb Stem	Statement	After a consonant	~다고(요)?	~았/었다고(요)?	~겠다고(요)? ~을 거라고(요)?
		After a vowel	~다고(요)?	~았/었다고(요)?	~겠다고(요)? ~ㄴ 거라고(요)?
		After "ㄹ"	~다고(요)?	~았/었다고(요)?	~겠다고(요)? 거라고(요)?

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~ㄴ 다고(요)?" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 판다고(요)?

이걸 나보고 먹으라고(요)?

(=Are you asking me to eat this?)

저한테 그 일을 하라고(요)?

(=Are you asking me to do that?)

이제 와서 계약을 취소하자고(요)?

(=Are you suggesting to me to cancel the contract after all this?)

한국말이 배우기가 쉽다고(요)?

(=Are you telling me that Korean is easy to learn?)

메리를 보고 예쁘다고(요)?

(=Are you telling that you think Mary is pretty?)

그걸 제가 했다고요?

(=Are you telling me that I did it?)

제가 뇌물을 받았다고요?

(=Are you telling me that I took a bribe?)

메리가 그렇게 많이 아팠다고(요)?

(=Are you telling me that Mary was that sick?)

그 돈이 모자랐다고(요)?

(=Are you telling me that the money was not enough?)

그 돈이 모자라겠다고(요)?

(=Are you telling me that the money must not be enough?)

그 돈이 모자랄 거라고(요)?

(=Are you telling me that the money may not be enough?)

이걸 자기가 하겠다고(요)?

(=Are you telling me that he/she wants to do this?)

이걸 자기가 할 거라고(요)?

(=Are you telling me that he/she is going to do this?)

On the other hand, “~고(요)?” and its colloquial variant “~구(요)?” can also be used with a question word to ask the listener to repeat the previously introduced information because the speaker somehow didn’t catch it, which can be rendered as “Who/what/when/where/how did you say \_?”

누구라고요?

(=Who did you say the person is?)

뭐라고요?

(=What did you say?)

메리가 언제 온다고요?

(=When did you say Mary is coming?)

지금 어디 계시다고요?

(=Where did you say you are now?)

그 사고가 어떻게 일어났다고요?

(=How did you say the accident happened?)

## 21. Expressing the speaker's complete agreement: ~고말고(요)

Function		Expressing the speaker's complete agreement		
Form		~고말고(요)		
Meaning		Of course		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant	~고말고(요)		
Verb	After a vowel	~고말고(요)		
Stem	After "ㄹ"	~고말고(요)		
Stative	After a consonant	~고말고(요)		
Verb	After a vowel	~고말고(요)		
Stem	After "ㄹ"	~고말고(요)		

"~고말고(요)" can be used to express that the speaker is in complete agreement with what one said, which can be rendered as "Of course."

A: 제 결혼식에 오실거죠? (=You are coming to my wedding ceremony, aren't you?)

B: 가고말고(요). (=Of course, I will go there.)

A: 존이 누군지 아시죠? (=You know who John is, don't you?)

B: 알고말고(요). (=Of course, I know him.)

A: 이거 참 편리하네요. (=This is very convenient.)

B: 편리하고말고요. (=Of course, it is convenient.)

A: 메리가 참 예쁘지? (=Mary is so pretty, isn't she?)

B: 예쁘고말고. (=Of course, she is pretty.)



## 25 Sentence Endings II (문장 종결어미II)

### 1. Making an indirect question about one's past experience: ~던가(요)?

Function		Making an indirect question about one's past experience		
Form		~던가(요)		
Meaning		Could you tell me what/whether _?		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant		~던가(요) ~았/었던가(요)	
	After a vowel		~던가(요) ~았/었던가(요)	
	After “ㄹ”		~던가(요) ~았/었던가(요)	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant		~던가(요) ~았/었던가(요)	
	After a vowel		~던가(요) ~았/었던가(요)	
	After “ㄹ”		~던가(요) ~았/었던가(요)	

“~던가(요)?” can be used to make an indirect question to seek information about one’s past experience, observation, or prior knowledge, which can be rendered as “Could you tell me what/ whether \_?” Its corresponding direct question ending is “~았/었어(요)?” In most cases, they are interchangeable, but only differ in terms of the degree of directness. “Less direct” means “more polite” because it is less imposing.

~았/었어(요)?	}	~던가(요)?
More direct		Less Direct
Less polite		More polite

존이 뭐하고 있던가(요)?

(=Could you tell me what John was doing?)

메리가 뭐라고 하던가(요)?

(=Could you tell me what Mary said to you?)

그 영화 재미있던가(요)?

(=Could you tell me whether you enjoyed the movie?)

메리가 예쁘던가(요)?

(=Could you tell me whether Mary is pretty?)

However, in the case that the speaker wants to emphasize the completion of the action or state in the preceding clause, the past tense suffix “~았/었” can be attached to the preceding verb. Then it can be rendered as “Could you tell me what/whether \_ had +pp?”

존이 뭐하고 있었던가(요)?

(=Could you tell me what John had been doing?)

메리가 뭐라고 했던가(요)?

(=Could you tell me what Mary had said to you?)

그 영화 재미있었던가(요)?

(=Could you tell me whether you had enjoyed the movie?)

문이 열려 있었던가(요)?

(=Could you tell me whether the door had been unlocked?)

북한이 또 미사일을 발사했던가(요)?

(=Could you tell me whether North Korea had launched another missile?)

제가 미리 말씀드리지 않았던가요?

(=Could you tell me whether I had said it to you beforehand?)

(=Didn't I say it to you beforehand?)

On the other hand, “~았/었던가(요)?” can also be used in a question with a question word to ask the listener to repeat some previous information that slipped from the speaker's attention, which can be rendered as “What did you say \_?”

자네, 이름이 **뭐**라고 **했**던가?

(=Hey you, what did you say your name is?)

선생님, 성함이 **어떻게** 되신다고 **하**셨던가요?

(=Sir, what did you say your name is?)

자네, 고향이 **어디**라고 **했**던가?

(=Hey you, what did you say your hometown is?)

선생님, 고향이 **어디**시라고 **하**셨던가요?

(=Sir, what did you say your hometown is?)

자네, 가족이 **몇**이라고 **했**던가?

(=Hey you, what did you say about how many are in your family?)

선생님, 가족이 **몇 분**이라고 **하**셨던가요?

(=Sir, what did you say about how many are in your family?)

## 2. Showing regret for not having carried out an action:

~(으)르걸 (그랬다), ~았/었어야 했는데

Function		Showing regret for not having carried out an action					
Form		~을걸 (그랬다)			~았/었어야 했는데		
Meaning		Should have + pp					
Distribution		Present	Past	Future	Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~을걸 ~을 걸 그랬다*		~았/었어야 했는데	
	After a vowel			~을걸 ~을 걸 그랬다*		~았/었어야 했는데	
	After “ㄹ”			~을걸 ~을 걸 그랬다*		~았/었어야 했는데	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant						
	After a vowel						
	After “ㄹ”						

\* If the optional expression “그랬다” is used with this grammar feature, we need to follow the spacing rule recommended by the National Institute of Korean Language (국립국어원) that says there should be a space between “~을” and “걸.”

“~(으)르걸, ~(으)르 걸 그랬다” can be used to express that the speaker is showing regret for not having carried out the necessary action in the preceding clause, which resulted in the current unfavorable situation. It can be rendered as “should have+pp.”

A: 존이 파산신청을 했어요. (=John filed for bankruptcy.)

B: 존한테 빌려준 돈을 미리 받을걸/받을 걸 그랬다.

(=I should have collected the money that I lent him beforehand.)

A: 밖에 비가 오네. (=It's raining outside.)

B: 우산을 가져올걸/가져올 걸 그랬다.

(=I should have brought an umbrella.)

A: 차가 막히네. (=The traffic is blocked.)

B: 좀 더 일찍 떠날걸/떠날 걸 그랬다.

(=We should have left a little earlier.)

A: 얼굴이 많이 부었네. (=Your face is swollen a lot.)

B: 병원에서 치료를 받을걸/받을 걸 그랬다.

(=I should have received medical treatment at a hospital.)

A: 존이 많이 아파. (=John is very sick.)

B: 존한테 좀 더 잘 해 줄걸/줄 걸 그랬다.

(=I should have treated him better.)

A: 메리가 아직 집안 청소를 하고 있어. (=Mary is still cleaning the house.)

B: 내가 도와줄걸/도와줄 걸 그랬다.

(=I should have helped her.)

A: 선생님이 많이 화나셨어. (=The teacher got very angry.)

B: 선생님께 미리 말씀드릴걸/말씀드릴 걸 그랬다.

(=I should have told the teacher about it beforehand.)

“~았/었어야 했는데” is freely interchangeable with “~(으)르걸, ~(으)르 걸 그랬다.”

A: 존이 파산신청을 했어요. (=John filed for bankruptcy.)

B: 존한테 빌려준 돈을 미리 받았어야 했는데.

(=I should have collected the money that I lent him beforehand.)

A: 밖에 비가 오네. (=It's raining outside.)

B: 우산을 가져왔어야 했는데.

(=I should have brought an umbrella.)

A: 차가 막히네. (=The traffic is blocked.)

B: 좀 더 일찍 떠났어야 했는데.

(=We should have left a little earlier.)

It can be used with the optional verb “아쉽다 (That's a shame.)” at the end of a sentence.

병원에서 치료를 받았어야 했는데 (아쉽다).

(=I should have received medical treatment at a hospital. (That's a shame.))

어머니한테 좀 더 잘 해 드렸어야 했는데 (아쉽다).

(=I should have treated my mother better. (That's a shame.))

내가 메리하고 같이 떠났어야 했는데 (아쉽다).

(=I should have left with Mary. (That's a shame.))

선생님한테 미리 말씀드렸어야 했는데 (아쉽다).

(=I should have told the teacher about it beforehand. (That's a shame.))

### 3. Reaffirming one's claim: ~(는/ㄴ)다/냐/(으)라/자고(요)

“~(는/ㄴ)다/냐/(으)라/자고(요)” and its colloquial variant “~(는/ㄴ)다/냐/(으)라/자구(요)” can be used in a statement to express that the speaker is strongly reaffirming his/her claim to the listener, which can be rendered as “What I am saying is that \_.”

고기는 전혀 안 먹는다고(요).

(=What I am saying is that I don't eat meat at all.)

나중에 한다고(요).

(=What I am saying is that I will do it later.)

제 인생은 제가 전적으로 책임진다고요.

(=What I am saying is that I am the right person who would take full responsibility for my life.)

Function			Reaffirming one's claim		
Form			~(는/ㄴ)다/냐/(으)라/자고(요)		
Meaning			What I am saying is that _		
Distribution			Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	Statement	After a consonant	~는다고(요)	~았/었다고(요)	~겠다고(요)
		After a vowel	~ㄴ 다고(요)	~았/었다고(요)	~겠다고(요)
		After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 다고(요)*	~았/었다고(요)	~겠다고(요)
	Question	Regardless of the ending	~냐고(요)*	~았/었냐고(요)	~겠냐고(요)
		Imperative	After a consonant	~으라고(요)	
	After a vowel or "ㄹ"		~라고(요)		
Proposition	Regardless of the ending	~자고(요)			
Stative Verb Stem	Statement	Regardless of the ending	~다고(요)	~았/었다고(요)	~겠다고(요)
	Question	Regardless of the ending	~냐고(요)*	~았/었냐고(요)	~겠냐고(요)

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~ㄴ 다고(요), ~냐고(요)" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 산다고(요), 사냐고(요)

멀다 (far): 멀 → 머냐고(요)

존이 한국에 갔다고(요).

(=What I am saying is that John went to Korea.)

어제 북한이 태평양으로 대륙간탄도미사일을 발사했다고(요).

(=What I am saying is that North Korea launched an ICBM to the Pacific Ocean.)

그건 내일 하겠다고(요).

(=What I am saying is that I will do that tomorrow.)

이걸 누가 하냐고(요).

(=What I am saying is who is going to do this.)

이걸 누가 이렇게 했냐고(요).

(=What I am saying is who did it like this.)

이걸 누가 먹겠냐고(요).

(=What I am saying is who must be going to eat this.)

균소리하지 말고 지금 하라고(요).

(=What I am saying is that you must do it now without making any complaint.)

오늘은 너무 늦었으니 내일 떠나자고(요).

(=What I am saying is that we should leave tomorrow because it is too late to leave today.)

우리 아들이 얼마나 똑똑하다고(요).

(=What I am saying is that my son is very smart.)

메리가 어렸을 때 얼마나 예뻐다고(요).

(=What I am saying is that Mary was so pretty when she was a kid.)

존이 많이 피곤하겠다고(요).

(=What I am saying is that John must be very tired.)

이 상황에서 뭐가 기분이  좋겠냐고(요).

(=What I am saying is how come I must be happy in this situation.)

#### 4. Reporting the speaker's observation of a past event:

~던데(요), ~더군(요), ~더라고(요)

“~던데(요), ~더군(요), ~더라고(요)” can be used to report the speaker's direct observation of the situation in the preceding clause to the listener, which can be rendered as “I found out that \_.” They are more or less interchangeable, but they are slightly different in their specific usage. “~던데(요)” can be used when the speaker is trying to initiate a conversation by providing information about his/her observation and waiting for the listener's response.

존이 일을 아주 열심히 하던데(요).

(=I found out that John worked really hard.)

어제 결혼식에 사람이 많이 왔던데(요).

(=I found out that many people came to the wedding ceremony yesterday.)

메리가 오늘 중으로 그 일을 끝내겠던데(요).

(=I found out that Mary must be getting the work done before the end of the day.)

Function		Reporting the speaker's observation of a past event							
Form		~던데(요)		~더군(요)		~더라고(요)			
Meaning		I found out that _				You know what?			
Distribution		Past		Future		Past		Future	
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~던데(요) ~았/었던데(요)	~겠던데(요)	~더군(요) ~았/었더군(요) ~더구나 ~았/었더구나	~겠더군(요) ~겠더구나	~더라고(요) ~았/었더라고(요) ~더라 ~았/었더라	~겠더라고(요) ~겠더라		
	After a vowel	~던데(요) ~았/었던데(요)	~겠던데(요)	~더군(요) ~았/었더군(요) ~더구나 ~았/었더구나	~겠더군(요) ~겠더구나	~더라고(요) ~았/었더라고(요) ~더라 ~았/었더라	~겠더라고(요) ~겠더라		
	After “ㄹ”	~던데(요) ~았/었던데(요)	~겠던데(요)	~더군(요) ~았/었더군(요) ~더구나 ~았/었더구나	~겠더군(요) ~겠더구나	~더라고(요) ~았/었더라고(요) ~더라 ~았/었더라	~겠더라고(요) ~겠더라		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~던데(요) ~았/었던데(요)	~겠던데(요)	~더군(요) ~았/었더군(요) ~더구나 ~았/었더구나	~겠더군(요) ~겠더구나	~더라고(요) ~았/었더라고(요) ~더라 ~았/었더라	~겠더라고(요) ~겠더라		
	After a vowel	~던데(요) ~았/었던데(요)	~겠던데(요)	~더군(요) ~았/었더군(요) ~더구나 ~았/었더구나	~겠더군(요) ~겠더구나	~더라고(요) ~았/었더라고(요) ~더라 ~았/었더라	~겠더라고(요) ~겠더라		
	After “ㄹ”	~던데(요) ~았/었던데(요)	~겠던데(요)	~더군(요) ~았/었더군(요) ~더구나 ~았/었더구나	~겠더군(요) ~겠더구나	~더라고(요) ~았/었더라고(요) ~더라 ~았/었더라	~겠더라고(요) ~겠더라		

어머님이 아주 좋아하시던데(요).

(=I found out that my mother liked it a lot.)

메리가 아주 착하던데(요).

(=I found out that Mary was so kind-hearted.)

“~더군(요)” can be used for the same function, but the speaker is showing a little surprise at his/her observation. “~더구나” is the blunt form variant of “~더군.”

존이 일을 아주 열심히 하더군(요).

존이 일을 아주 열심히 하더구나.

(=I found out that John worked really hard.)

남부지방에 홍수가 났더군(요).

남부지방에 홍수가 났더구나.

(=I found out that there was a flood in the southern region.)

이 제품은 잘 팔리겠더군(요).

이 제품은 잘 팔리겠더구나.

(=I found out that this product must be going to sell well.)

이거 아주 좋더군(요).

이거 아주 좋더구나.

(=I found out that this was very good.)

한국은 겨울에 날씨가 아주 춥더군(요).

한국은 겨울에 날씨가 아주 춥더구나.

(=I found out that the winter in Korea was very cold.)

In the case of “~더라고(요),” the speaker is reporting the new fact that he/she just discovered through his/her observation. “~더라” is the contraction form of its blunt form “~더라고.”

메리가 부모님께 용돈을 주더라고(요).

메리가 부모님께 용돈을 주더라.

(=You know what? Mary gave an allowance to her parents.)

존이 벌써 거기 도착했더라고(요).

존이 벌써 거기 도착했더라.

(=You know what? John has already arrived there.)

메리가 존과 결혼하겠더라고(요).

메리가 존과 결혼하겠더라.

(=You know what? Mary must be going to get married to John.)

존이 기분이 좋더라고(요).

존이 기분이 좋더라.

(=You know what? John was in a good mood.)

메리가 어렸을 때 얼굴이 아주 예뻐더라고(요).

메리가 어렸을 때 얼굴이 아주 예뻐더라.

(=You know what? Mary was so pretty when she was a kid.)

In addition, “~더라” can also be used with a question word in self-talk to tap into the speaker's memory to recollect some missing information, which can be rendered as “Let me see.”

그 사람이 누구더라.

(=Let me see, Who was that person?)

다음 시험이 언제더라.

(=Let me see, When is the next test?)

내가 그 사람을 어디서 만났더라.

(=Let me see, Where did I meet the person?)

우리가 결혼한지 얼마나 됐더라.

(=Let me see, How many years have passed since we got married?)

존이 언제 미국에 왔더라.

(=Let me see, When did John come to America?)

## 5. Expressing “Knock it off”: ~(는/ㄴ)다지 않아(요), ~(는/ㄴ)대지 않아(요)

“~(는/ㄴ)다지 않아(요)” can be used to express that the speaker is asking the listener to stop nitpicking because he/she has already informed the listener of the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “Didn't I/he/she tell you already \_?” Its contraction form “~(는/ㄴ)다잖아(요)” is more commonly used in conversation.

내가 나중에 먹는다지 않아(요)/먹는다잖아(요).

(=Didn't I tell you already I would eat it later?)

Function		Expressing "Knock it off"		
Form		~(는/ㄴ)다지 않아요	~(는/ㄴ)대지 않아요	
Meaning		Didn't I/he/she tell you already?	Didn't he/she tell you already?	
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는다지 않아요 ~는다잖아요 ~는대지 않아요 ~는다잖아요	~았/었다지 않아요 ~았/었다잖아요 ~았/엇대지 않아요 ~았/엇대잖아요	~겠다지 않아요 ~겠다잖아요 ~겠대지 않아요 ~겠대잖아요
	After a vowel	~ㄴ다지 않아요 ~ㄴ다잖아요 ~ㄴ대지 않아요 ~ㄴ대잖아요	~았/었다지 않아요 ~았/었다잖아요 ~았/엇대지 않아요 ~았/엇대잖아요	~겠다지 않아요 ~겠다잖아요 ~겠대지 않아요 ~겠대잖아요
	After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ다지 않아요* ~ㄴ다잖아요* ~ㄴ대지 않아요* ~ㄴ대잖아요*	~았/었다지 않아요 ~았/었다잖아요 ~았/엇대지 않아요 ~았/엇대잖아요	~겠다지 않아요 ~겠다잖아요 ~겠대지 않아요 ~겠대잖아요
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~다지 않아요 ~다잖아요 ~대지 않아요 ~대잖아요	~았/었다지 않아요 ~았/었다잖아요 ~았/엇대지 않아요 ~았/엇대잖아요	~겠다지 않아요 ~겠다잖아요 ~겠대지 않아요 ~겠대잖아요
	After a vowel	~다지 않아요 ~다잖아요 ~대지 않아요 ~대잖아요	~았/었다지 않아요 ~았/었다잖아요 ~았/엇대지 않아요 ~았/엇대잖아요	~겠다지 않아요 ~겠다잖아요 ~겠대지 않아요 ~겠대잖아요
	After "ㄹ"	~다지 않아요 ~다잖아요 ~대지 않아요 ~대잖아요	~았/었다지 않아요 ~았/었다잖아요 ~았/엇대지 않아요 ~았/엇대잖아요	~겠다지 않아요 ~겠다잖아요 ~겠대지 않아요 ~겠대잖아요

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~ㄴ다지 않아요/~ㄴ다잖아요, ~ㄴ대지 않아요/~ㄴ대잖아요" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅅ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)  
팔다 (to sell): 팔 → 판다지 않아요/판다잖아요, 판대지 않아요/판대잖아요

제가 나중에 한다지 않아요/한다잖아요.

(=Didn't I tell you already I would do it later?)

존이 안 했다지 않아요/했다잖아요.

(=Didn't John tell you already he didn't do it?)

메리가 존과 결혼하겠는지 않아요/결혼하겠잖아요.

(=Didn't Mary tell you already she will marry John?)

옷이 좀 작다지 않아요/작다잖아요.

(=Didn't he/she tell you already these clothes are too tight for him/her?)

존이 어제는 너무 피곤했다지 않아요/피곤했다잖아요.

(=Didn't John tell you already he was so tired yesterday?)

“~(는/ㄴ)대지 않아(요)” and its contraction form “~(는/ㄴ)대잖아(요)” carry the same function. But unlike “~(는/ㄴ)다지 않아(요),” they are limited to use with the third-person subject.

존이 그 아이스크림을 먹는대지 않아요/먹는대잖아요.

(=Didn't John tell you already he wants to eat the ice cream?)

메리가 그 일을 한대지 않아요/한대잖아요.

(=Didn't Mary tell you already she is going to do the work?)

존이 그 프로젝트를 끝냈대지 않아요/끝냈대잖아요.

(=Didn't John tell you already he finished the project?)

메리가 다시는 안 하겠대지 않아요/하겠대잖아요.

(=Didn't Mary tell you already she won't do it again?)

존이 배 고프대지 않아요/배 고프대잖아요.

(=Didn't John tell you already he is hungry?)

메리가 많이 아팠대지 않아요/아팠대잖아요.

(=Didn't Mary tell you already she was very sick?)

내가 나중에 먹는대지 않아요/먹는대잖아요. (NOT OK with the first-person subject)

(=Didn't I tell you already I would eat it later?)

제가 나중에 한대지 않아요/한대잖아요. (NOT OK with the first person subject)

(=Didn't I tell you already I would do it later?)

## 6. Expressing the speaker's conviction: ~(으)ㄴ 테지(요)

Function		Expressing the speaker's conviction		
Form		~(으)ㄴ 테지(요)		
Meaning		I believe that _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant		~았/었을 테지(요)	~을 테지(요)
	After a vowel		~았/었을 테지(요)	~ㄴ 테지(요)
	After “ㄷ”		~았/었을 테지(요)	테지(요)
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant		~았/었을 테지(요)	~을 테지(요)
	After a vowel		~았/었을 테지(요)	~ㄴ 테지(요)
	After “ㄷ”		~았/었을 테지(요)	테지(요)

“~(으)ㄴ 테지(요)” can be used to express that the speaker believes that the situation in the preceding clause may happen/may have happened, which can be rendered as “I believe that \_.”

배 고프면 알아서 먹을 테지(요).

(=I believe that he/she may eat by himself/herself if he/she gets hungry.)

내일쯤이면 결과를 알 수 있을 테지(요).

(=I believe that I may get the result by tomorrow.)

필요하면 자기가 먼저 연락할 테지(요).

(=I believe that he/she may contact me if he/she needs some help.)

존한테 갈비 1인분은 양이 좀 적을 테지(요).

(=I believe that one serving of galbi may not be enough for John.)

돈이 좀 모자랄 테지(요).

(=I believe that it may not be enough money.)

그 정도 말했으면 알아들<sup>었</sup>을 테지(요).

(=I believe that he/she may have understood it after talking enough about it.)

지금쯤 한국에 도착<sup>했</sup>을 테지(요).

(=I believe that he/she may have arrived in Korea about this time.)

수술한 다음에 많이 아<sup>팠</sup>을 테지(요).

(=I believe that he/she may have had severe pain after the surgery.)

## 7. Expressing the speaker's disagreement or humbling his/her own merit:

### ~기는(요) (뭣)

Function		Expressing the speaker's disagreement	Humbling his/her own merit	
Form		~기는(요) (뭣)		
Meaning		No, it is not the case	No, not that much _	
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~기는(요) ~기는(요) 뭣	~았/었기는(요) ~았/었기는(요) 뭣	
	After a vowel	~기는(요) ~기는(요) 뭣	~았/었기는(요) ~았/었기는(요) 뭣	
	After "ㄹ"	~기는(요) ~기는(요) 뭣	~았/었기는(요) ~았/었기는(요) 뭣	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~기는(요) ~기는(요) 뭣	~았/었기는(요) ~았/었기는(요) 뭣	
	After a vowel	~기는(요) ~기는(요) 뭣	~았/었기는(요) ~았/었기는(요) 뭣	
	After "ㄹ"	~기는(요) ~기는(요) 뭣	~았/었기는(요) ~았/었기는(요) 뭣	

“~기는(요) (뭣)” can be used to express that the speaker disagrees with what the listener just said, which can be rendered as “No, it is not the case.” It can be attached to the verb stem which is repeated from the listener’s expression.

A: 밖에 비가 오는 것 같네요. (=It seems to be raining outside.)

B: 비가 오기는(요) (뭣). (=No, it's not the case. =No, it's not raining.)

A: 존이 공부를 잘하니? (=Does John study well?)

B: 잘하기는(요) (뭣). (=No, it's not the case. =No, he doesn't.)

A: 한국말이 배우기 쉬워요? (=Is Korean easy to learn?)

B: 쉽기는(요) (뭣). (=No, it's not the case. =No, it isn't.)

A: 존이 시험에 합격했어요? (=Did John pass the exam?)

B: 합격했기는(요) (뭣). (=No, it's not the case. =No, he didn't.)

A: 한국여행이 재미있었어요? (=Did you have a lot of fun on your trip to Korea?)

B: 재미있었기는(요) (뭣). (=No, it's not the case. =No, I didn't.)

“~기<sup>는</sup>(요) (뭘)” can also be used to express that the speaker is responding to the listener’s compliment in a modest way by humbling his/her own merit, which can be rendered as “No, not that much \_.”

A: 한국말 아주 잘하시네요. (=Wow, you speak Korean very well.)

B: 잘하기는(요) (뭘). (=No, not that well.)

A: 기분 좋으시겠네요? (=Wow, you must be happy about that).

B: 좋기는(요) (뭘). (=No, not that much.)

A: 아주 부자시네요. (=Wow, you are so rich.)

B: 부자기는(요) (뭘). (=No, not that rich.)

A: 건강하시네요. (=Wow, you are healthy.)

B: 건강하기는(요) (뭘). (=No, not that healthy.)

A: 따님이 아주 예쁘네요. (=Wow, your daughter is so pretty.)

B: 예쁘기는(요) (뭘). (=No, not that pretty.)

On the other hand, “~기<sup>는</sup>(요) (뭘)” can be frequently used in conversational idioms to express that the speaker is trying to relieve the listener’s uneasy feeling that may have resulted from the previous unpleasant situation, which can be rendered as “You don’t have to \_.”

A: 아, 미안해요. (=Oh, I am sorry.)

B: 미안하기는(요) (뭘). (=You don't have to say sorry.)

A: 정말 죄송해요. (=I am truly sorry.)

B: 죄송하기는(요) (뭘). (=You don't have to say sorry.)

A: 고맙습니다. (=Thank you.)

B: 고맙기는(요) (뭘). (=You don't have to thank me.)

## 8. Trying to relieve the listener's uneasy feeling: ~는/(으)ㄴ데(요) 뭘

“~는/(으)ㄴ데(요) 뭘” can be used to express that the speaker is trying to relieve the listener’s uneasy feeling by making the listener reassured about the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “So, don’t worry about it.”

Function		Trying to relieve the listener's uneasy feeling		
Form		~는/(으)ㄴ 데(요) 뭘		
Meaning		So, don't worry about it		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는데(요) 뭘	~았/었는데(요) 뭘	
	After a vowel	~는데(요) 뭘	~았/었는데(요) 뭘	
	After "ㄹ"	~는데(요) 뭘*	~았/었는데(요) 뭘	
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant	~은데(요) 뭘	~았/었는데(요) 뭘	
	After a vowel	~ㄴ 데(요) 뭘	~았/었는데(요) 뭘	
	After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ 데(요) 뭘*	~았/었는데(요) 뭘	

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는데(요) 뭘/~ㄴ 데(요) 뭘" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅁ, ㅂ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 사는데(요) 뭘, 길다 (long): 길 → 긴데(요) 뭘

A: 그거 맞을 지 모르겠는데요. (=I wonder whether that one fits you or not.)

B: 이거 저한테 딱 맞는데요 뭘.

(=This one perfectly fits me. (So, don't worry about it.))

A: 도와 주셔서 감사합니다. (=I appreciate your help.)

B: 제가 할 일을 했을 뿐인데요 뭘.

(=I just did what I had to do. (So, don't worry about it.))

A: 늦어서 죄송합니다. (=I am sorry for being late.)

B: 별로 늦지 않았는데요 뭘. (=You are not that late. (So, don't worry about it.))

A: 돈이 적어서 죄송합니다. (=I am sorry that the money is not sufficient.)

B: 이 정도면 충분하겠는데요 뭘.

(=This much must be good enough. (So, don't worry about it.))

A: 불편하게 해 드려 죄송합니다. (=I am sorry to inconvenience you.)

B: 저는 여기가 좋은데요 뭘.

(=I am satisfied with this place. (So, don't worry about it.))

A: 컴퓨터가 오래 돼서 좀 느립니다.

(=The computer is a little bit slow because it's too old.)

B: 이 컴퓨터 아직 멀쩡한데요 뭘.

(=This computer still works fine. (So, don't worry about it.))

A: 어제 많이 피곤하셨죠? (=Yesterday you were tired, right?)

B: 아니오, 전혀 안 피곤했는데요 될.

(=No, I was not tired at all. (So, don't worry about it.))

## 9. Expressing the speaker's worry about a possible adverse situation:

### ~(으)리라

Function		Expressing the speaker's worry about a possible adverse situation		
Form		~(으)리라		
Meaning		I am worried that _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~을라		
	After a vowel	~리라		
	After "ㄹ"	~라		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After "ㄹ"			

“~(으)리라” can be used to express that the speaker is worried about the possible adverse situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “I am worried that \_.”

가까이 오지마. 깨진 유리 밟을라.

(=Don't get close to me. I am worried that you may step on broken glass.)

이제 그만 해. 돈 다 잃을라.

(=Stop it now. I am worried that you may lose all the money.)

잘 잡아. 커피 쏟을라.

(=Get a nice grip. I am worried that you may spill the coffee.)

그만 골라. 너무 고르면 좋은 신랑감 놓칠라.

(=Don't be choosy. If you are too choosy, I am worried that you may miss a good bridegroom.)

어서 서둘러라. 버스 놓칠라.

(=Hurry up! I am worried that you may miss the bus.)

천천히 걸어라. 넘어질라.

(=Walk slowly. I am worried that you may fall down.)

조심해. 다칠라.

(=Watch out! I am worried that you may hurt yourself.)

빨리 해. 누가 볼라.

(=Do it quickly. I am worried that somebody may see this.)

옷 따뜻하게 입어. 감기 걸릴라.

(=Wear warm clothes. I am worried that you may catch a cold.)

## 10. Expressing the speaker's unwavering determination: ~(으)리라

Function		Expressing the speaker's unwavering determination		
Form		~(으)리라		
Meaning		I am ready to _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant			~으리라
Verb	After a vowel			~리라
Stem	After "ㄹ"			~리라
Stative	After a consonant			
Verb	After a vowel			
Stem	After "ㄹ"			

“~(으)리라” can be used to express the speaker's unwavering determination to carry out his/her important mission, which can be rendered as “I am ready to \_.” Due to its formality, however, it can only be used in some written texts.

죽으면 죽으리라.

(=If I have to die, I would be ready to die.)

이 한 목숨 바쳐 반드시 이 나라를 구하리라.

(=I am ready to save my country without fail by sacrificing my life.)

## 11. Seeking the listener's opinion: ~(으)랴?

Function		Seeking the listener's opinion		
Form		~(으)랴?		
Meaning		Do you want me to _?		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant			~으랴?
	After a vowel			~랴?
	After "ㄹ"			~랴?
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After "ㄹ"			

“~(으)랴?” can be used in a question with an action verb to express that the speaker is seeking the listener’s opinion on the situation in the preceding clause, which can be rendered as “Do you want me to \_?” Because “~(으)랴?” is a blunt form, it is typically used by an older speaker or a superior who is talking to a younger listener or an inferior, respectively.

여기에 참기름을 좀 넣으랴?

(=Do you want me to put some sesame oil here?)

내가 좀 도와주랴?

(=Do you want me to help you? =Do you need some help?)

뭐 먹을 것 좀 주랴?

(=Do you want me to give you something to eat? =Do you need some food?)

내가 용돈 좀 주랴?

(=Do you want me to give you some allowances?)

On the other hand, it can also be used in an exclamative sentence with a stative verb to express the speaker’s wishful thinking.

존이 대학에 합격하면 얼마나 좋으랴!

(=If John gets admitted to college, how happy I will be!)

아이들을 무사히 구조할 수 있으면 얼마나 좋으랴!

(=If we can rescue the children safely, how happy I will be!)

In addition, it can sometimes be used in an idiomatic expression to express that the speaker feels helpless about an unpleasant situation.

이 일을 어찌면/어찌하면 좋으랴!

(=What am I supposed to do with this?)

## 12. Expressing the speaker's complaint in self-talk: ~는/ㄴ답

Function		Expressing the speaker's complaint in self-talk		
Form		~는/ㄴ답		
Meaning		How could it be possible to _?		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action Verb Stem	After a consonant	~는답		
	After a vowel	~ㄴ답		
	After "ㄹ"	~ㄴ답*		
Stative Verb Stem	After a consonant			
	After a vowel			
	After "ㄹ"			

\* If the verb stem ends with "ㄹ," "ㄹ" will be dropped before we attach "~는답, ~ㄴ답" according to the rule of "ㄹ" deletion that says "the consonant "ㄹ" at the end of a verb stem is dropped before "ㄴ, ㅅ, ㅈ." (See Chapter 12 Verbs)

살다 (to live): 살 → 산답

"~는/ㄴ답" can be used in self talk to express that the speaker is making a complaint about the situation in the preceding clause that is not under his/her control, which can be rendered as "How could it be possible to \_?" But it is now on the verge of becoming an archaic expression. In most conversational situations, the equivalent sentence ending "~나" is more frequently used instead.

어디 가서 범인을 잡는답/잡나.

(=How could it be possible to go somewhere and capture the criminal?)

어디 가서 돈을 빌린답/빌리나.

(=How could it be possible to borrow some money from others?)

뭘 저렇게 꾸물거린답/꾸물거리나.

(=How could it be possible to drag his/her feet like that?)

어떻게 저렇게 새빨간 거짓말을 한답/하나.

(=How could it be possible to tell such a downright lie?)

이 일을 오늘까지 어떻게 끝낸답/끝내나.

(=How could it be possible to get this work done by today?)

### 13. Expressing the speaker's strong desire: ~게(요)

Function		Expressing the speaker's strong desire		
Form		~게(요)		
Meaning		I want to _		
Distribution		Present	Past	Future
Action	After a consonant			~게(요)
Verb	After a vowel			~게(요)
Stem	After "ㄹ"			~게(요)
Stative	After a consonant			
Verb	After a vowel			
Stem	After "ㄹ"			

"~게(요)" can be used to express the speaker's strong desire to make sure that the situation in the preceding clause will happen, which can be rendered as "I want to \_."

It can only be used in casual conversation.

A: 그거 버리지 마. (=Don't throw it away.)

B: 왜요? (=Why?)

A: 나중에 쓰게. (=I want to use it later.)

A: 음악소리 좀 낮춰 주세요. (=Could you turn down the music?)

B: 왜? (=Why?)

A: 잠 좀 자게요. (=I want to get some sleep.)

“~게(요)?” can also be used in a question to ask the listener whether he/she wants to carry out the action in the preceding clause.

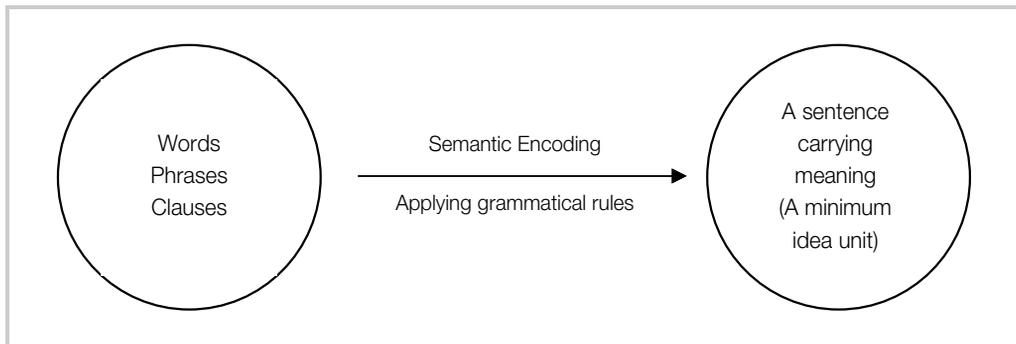
A: 이거 냉동고에 넣어 뒀. (=Put this in the fridge.)

B: 왜요? (=Why?)

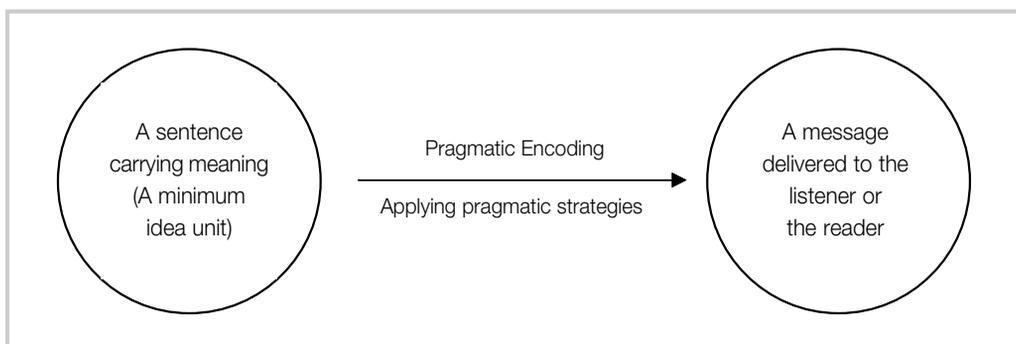
A: 나중에 드시게요? (=Do want to eat it later?)

## CHAPTER 26 Pragmatic Strategies

In a typical communication setting, the speaker or the writer combines words, phrases, or clauses to generate a sentence by applying appropriate grammatical rules. The newly-created sentence carries its own meaning which is a minimum idea unit. This process can be called “semantic encoding.”



Once this process is completed, the speaker or the writer must consider how to transmit the idea of each sentence to the listener or the reader. To maximize such information transfer, the speaker or the writer applies some possible pragmatic strategies to deliver the message to the listener or the reader in a more effective and efficient way. This



process can be called “pragmatic encoding.”

Among others, there are four major pragmatic strategies in Korean that have been widely used to deliver the speaker’s or the writer’s message to the listener or the reader more effectively and efficiently: the topic setting, the focus setting, the contrastive focus setting, and the suppression of nonessential information. Unlike other grammatical rules applied during the process of semantic encoding, however, the applications of these pragmatic strategies are generally optional. Therefore, even though we do not apply them, it still does not undermine the grammaticality of the sentences that we are going to express, but it will eventually sacrifice the effectiveness and the efficiency of communication. We will discuss below how these pragmatic strategies are superimposed on the given sentence structure in Korean.

## I . Topic Setting

Korean is a so-called topic-oriented language. It means that the speaker or the writer is most likely to apply the topic-setting pragmatic strategy to a given sentence whenever the condition is met. This pragmatic strategy designates one of the elements of a given sentence as the topic of the sentence. The topic is the old or given information which is either previously mentioned or clear from the context according to the speaker’s or the writer’s point of view. The comment, on the other hand, refers to the new information about the topic which might be new to the listener according to the speaker’s or the writer’s assumption. The application of this topic setting is a very effective and efficient communication strategy in that it helps the speaker or the writer clearly organize his/her ideas in terms of what he/she is going to talk about and what he/she is going to say about it. At the same time, it helps the listener or the reader easily identify what the speaker or the writer wants to talk about and what he/she wants to say about it.

The topic-setting strategy in Korean is grammatically encoded in a given sentence. The topic always occurs at the beginning of a sentence. In addition, it must be marked by the topic markers “~은/는,” which can be rendered as “As for/I am talking about \_.”

If the subject or the object is selected as the topic of a given sentence, the topic markers “~은/는” will replace the subject and object case markers. Otherwise, the topic markers “~은/는” are simply added to the existing expressions.

Semantic Encoding	Topic Setting	Pragmatic Encoding
존이 학생이다. (=John is a student.)	Applying the topic-setting strategy →	존은 학생이다. (=As for John, he is a student.)
존이 메리를 사랑한다. (=John loves her.)		메리는 존이 사랑한다. (=As for Mary, John loves her.)
존이 집에서 공부한다. (=John is studying at home.)		집에서는 존이 공부한다. (=I am talking about at home. John studies.)
존이 오늘 집에 없다. (=John is not at home today.)		오늘은 존이 집에 없다. (=As for today, John is not at home.)
존이 열시에 잔다. (=John goes to bed at ten o'clock.)		열시에는 존이 잔다. (=I am talking about at ten o'clock. John goes to bed.)

The following table summarizes the core features of the topic and the comment that we have discussed so far.

Information Structure	Core Features of the Topic and the Comment in Korean
Topic	1. What the speaker or the writer is going to talk about 2. The old or given information to the listener or the reader assumed by the speaker or the writer 3. It occurs in the sentence initial position. 4. It is marked by the topic markers “~은/는.” 5. If the topic is the subject or the object, the topic markers “~은/는” will replace the subject or the object case markers. Otherwise, they will be simply added to the existing expressions.
Comment	1. What the speaker or writer is going to say/write about the topic 2. The new information to the listener or reader assumed by the speaker or writer 3. It occurs in the non-sentence initial position. 4. It follows the regular case marking rules.

In Korean, any element of a given sentence can serve as the topic of the sentence. Especially, the subject is the most likely candidate for the topic of a sentence. It is partly because the subject is already in the sentence initial position according to the default word order. It is, therefore, not even necessary to relocate it to the beginning of a sentence for the sake of being selected as the topic. The subject’s unparalleled readiness

for serving as the topic clearly explains why there are predominantly so many sentences being used in communication with the subject carrying the topic markers “~은/는” rather than the original subject case markers “~이/가.” I hope the discussion of the topic-setting pragmatic strategy above can successfully relegate such a long-standing mystery that has puzzled many Korean grammarians and researchers for many decades.

## II . Focus Setting

The focus-setting strategy designates one of the elements of a given sentence as the focus of the sentence. It can be applied whenever the speaker or the writer wants to bring the significant element of a given sentence to the foreground so that it can stand out from the rest of the sentence. The speaker or the writer commonly uses this pragmatic strategy to draw the listener’s or the reader’s special attention to the focused element. There are two different types of focus-setting strategies that are frequently used in Korean: the prosodic focus-setting strategy and the pragmatic focus-setting strategy.

### 1. Prosodic Focus Setting

The simplest way to put the element of a given sentence into focus is to assign a heavy phonological stress to the element which the speaker wants to emphasize. This prosodic focus-setting strategy is by its nature only available for the speaker, not the writer. Literally any element of a given sentence can receive this type of focus. Once the element is heavily stressed, the listener will be likely to pay more attention to the focused element and consider it as the most important part of the sentence. It has the same grammatical effect as the English focus construction, which can be rendered as “It is \_ that/who \_.” The underlined expressions below indicate that they receive a heavy phonological stress.

메리가 오늘까지 숙제를 끝내야 한다.

(=It is Mary who must finish her homework by today.)

메리가 오늘까지 숙제를 끝내야 한다.

(=It is by today that Mary must finish her homework.)

메리가 오늘까지 숙제를 끝내야 한다.

(=It is her homework that Mary must finish by today.)

메리가 오늘까지 숙제를 끝내야 한다.

(=It is the act of completion that Mary must do with her homework by today.)

## 2. Pragmatic Focus Setting

The pragmatic focus-setting strategy can be applied when the speaker or the writer wants to put the element of a given sentence into special focus. This pragmatic strategy applies only to the limited number of grammatical constructions in Korean. Believe it or not, we have already discussed all of them in the previous chapters, but we will repeat them here for your convenience.

### (1) Pragmatic Focus Setting for the Possessive Construction with Verbs of Existence

As we discussed in Chapter 21 Double Subjects and Objects, possession in Korean is indirectly expressed with verbs of existence, such as “있다, 없다, 많다, 적다, etc.” The possessor takes the dative case markers “~에게/한테” if it is an animate noun; otherwise, it takes the location marker “~에” if it is an inanimate noun.

존에게/한테 휴대폰이 있습니다.

(=John has a cell phone.)

메리에게/한테 휴대폰이 없습니다.

(=Mary does not have a cell phone.)

이 음료수에 설탕이 많습니다.

(=This drink has a lot of sugar.)

요즘 우리 가게에 손님이 적습니다.

(=Our store has few customers these days.)

The characteristics of this possessive construction is that the possessor here is grammatically deemphasized and hidden behind the scene due to the nature of the dative case markers. Therefore, if we want to put more emphasis on the grammatical role of the possessor, we can apply the pragmatic focus-setting strategy by optionally assigning the subject case markers instead of the default dative case markers. Then it will result in the two different subjects in each of the given sentences above. This double-subject construction is equivalent to the English focus construction, which can be rendered as “It is \_ that/who \_.”

Semantic Encoding	Focus Setting	Pragmatic Encoding
존에게/한테 휴대폰이 있습니다. (=John has a cell phone.)	<p style="text-align: center;">→</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Applying the focus-setting strategy</p>	존이 휴대폰이 있습니다. (=It is John who has a cell phone.)
메리에게/한테 휴대폰이 없습니다. (=Mary does not have a cell phone.)		메리가 휴대폰이 없습니다. (=It is Mary who does not have a cell phone.)
이 음료수에 설탕이 많습니다. (=This drink has a lot of sugar.)		이 음료수가 설탕이 많습니다. (=It is this drink that contains a lot of sugar.)
요즘 우리 가게에 손님이 적습니다. (=Our store has few customers these days.)		요즘 우리 가게가 손님이 적습니다. (=It is our store that has few customers these days.)

## (2) Pragmatic Focus Setting for the Possessive Construction with the Possessive Case Marker “~의”

The possessive marker “~의” which is equivalent to the English “s” indicates that the preceding noun is the possessor, and the following noun is the possessed. As in the possessive construction with verbs of existence above, the possessor here is again

Semantic Encoding	Focus Setting	Pragmatic Encoding
존의 얼굴이 큼니다. (=John's face is big.)	<p style="text-align: center;">→</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Applying the focus setting strategy</p>	존이 얼굴이 큼니다. (=It is John whose face is big.)
메리의 아버님이 변호사이십니다. (=Mary's father is a lawyer.)		메리가 아버님이 변호사이십니다. (=It is Mary whose father is a lawyer.)
이 식당의 음식이 맛있습니다. (=This restaurant's food is delicious.)		이 식당이 음식이 맛있습니다. (=It is this restaurant that serves delicious food.)
존의 차가 빨간색이다. (=John's car is red.)		존이 차가 빨간색이다. (=It is John whose car is red.)
이 TV의 화질이 훌륭합니다. (=This TV's picture quality is excellent.)		이 TV가 화질이 훌륭합니다. (=It is this TV whose picture quality is excellent.)

grammatically deemphasized and hidden behind the scene due to the nature of the possessive case marker. Therefore, if we want to put more emphasis on the grammatical role of the possessor, we can apply the pragmatic focus-setting strategy by optionally assigning the subject case markers instead of the possessive marker. The resulting double-subject construction is again equivalent to the English focus construction, which can be rendered as “It is \_ that/who \_.” (See also Chapter 21 Double Subjects and Objects for more detailed discussion).

### (3) Pragmatic Focus Setting for the Noun as in Noun + Number + Counter/ Noun + Number

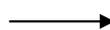
As we discussed before in Chapter 6 Numbers and Counters, we count a number of people or items using the pattern of “Noun+Number+Counter” or “Noun+Number.” In these constructions, case markers are only attached to the end of these patterns. Nouns become caseless, and therefore they are grammatically deemphasized and hidden behind the scene. But if we apply the pragmatic focus-setting strategy to these patterns, we can put more emphasis on the grammatical role of the nouns that are being counted. It can be achieved by optionally separating the nouns from the rest of the patterns and assigning the same case markers as the entire expressions carry.

Semantic Encoding	Focus Setting	Pragmatic Encoding
우리 집에 손님 다섯 명이 왔다. (=Five guests came to my house.)	→ Applying the focus setting strategy	우리 집에 손님 <b>이</b> 다섯 명이 왔다. (=It is the the guests that came to my house.)
존이 올해 스포츠카 두 대를 샀다. (=John bought two sports cars this year.)		존이 올해 스포츠카 <b>를</b> 두 대를 샀다. (=It is the sports cars that John bought two of them this year.)
학생 <b>들이</b> 서로 싸우고 있다. (=Two students are fighting with each other.)		학생 <b>이</b> <b>들이</b> 서로 싸우고 있다. (=It is the two students that are fighting with each other.)
존이 공원에서 친구 셋을 만났다. (=John met three friends at the park.)		존이 공원에서 친구 <b>를</b> 셋을 만났다. (=It is the three friends that John met at the park.)

### (4) Pragmatic Focus Setting for “Noun + 하다” Verbs

Many Korean verbs were originally derived by combining a noun with the verb “하다 (to do),” which can be rendered as “doing the action of the noun.” In this construction, the grammatical role of the noun is largely deemphasized and hidden behind the

scene because it is simply part of the verb. But if we apply the pragmatic focus-setting strategy to this construction, we can put more emphasis on the grammatical role of the noun. It can be achieved by optionally separating the noun from the verb “하다” and assigning the object case markers “을/를” to the noun. The resulting sentence creates the double-object construction if the original verb is a transitive verb.

Semantic Encoding	Focus Setting	Pragmatic Encoding
존이 한국말을 공부합니다. (=John studies Korean.)	 Applying the focus-setting strategy	존이 한국말을 공부합니다. (=It is the act of studying that John is doing with Korean.) (Literal translation)
메리가 존을 사랑합니다. (=Mary loves John)		메리가 존을 사랑합니다. (=It is the act of loving that Mary does to John.) (Literal translation)
선생님이 메리를 칭찬했다. (=The teacher praised Mary.)		선생님이 메리를 칭찬했다. (=It is the act of praising that the teacher did for Mary.) (Literal translation)
의사가 환자를 치료했다. (=The doctor treated his patient.)		의사가 환자를 치료했다. (=It is the medical treatment that the doctor did for the patient.) (Literal translation)

### (5) Pragmatic Focus Setting for the Causative Construction

Semantic Encoding	Focus Setting	Pragmatic Encoding
존이 그 아이에게 음식을 먹였다. (=John fed the child some food.)	 Applying the focus setting strategy	존이 그 아이를 음식을 먹였다. (=It is the child whom John fed some food.)
메리가 아이에게 옷을 입혔다. (=Mary dressed up the child with the clothes.)		메리가 아이를 옷을 입혔다. (=It is the child that Mary dressed up with the clothes.)
법원이 존에게 벌금을 물렸다. (=The court charged John a fine.)		법원이 존을 벌금을 물렸다. (=It is John who was charged a fine by the court.)
존이 메리한테 돈을 맡겼다. (=John entrusted his money to Mary.)		존이 메리를 돈을 맡겼다. (=It is Mary to whom John entrusted his money.)

Some transitive verbs in Korean can be changed into their causative counterparts by attaching the causative suffixes “~이/~히/~리/~기/~우/~구/~추” to their verb stems, as we discussed in Chapter 20 Causative Verbs. The newly-created causative verbs can occur with an object and the dative phrase “Noun+에게/한테.” The grammatical role of the noun in this dative phrase is likely to be deemphasized and hidden behind

the scene due to the nature of the dative case markers. Therefore, if we want to put more emphasis on the grammatical role of the noun in the dative phrase, we can apply the pragmatic focus-setting strategy by optionally assigning the object case markers instead of the default dative case markers. Then it will result in two different objects in a given sentence. This double-object construction is equivalent to the English focus construction, which can be rendered as “It is \_ that/who \_.”

#### (6) Pragmatic Focus Setting for the Periphrastic Causative Construction (~게 하다)

The periphrastic causative construction actually consists of two different clauses. The main clause consists of the subject which is a “causer/cause” and the verb “하다,” whereas the subordinate clause is the one that describes a caused event. These two clauses can be grammatically merged together into a single sentence. In the case that the subordinate clause is transitive, its subject can optionally take three different types of case markers in the merged sentence: the dative case markers “~에게/한테” which are the default case markers, the subject case markers “~이/가,” or the object case markers “~을/를.”

존이 [메리가 그 책을 사]게 했다. → 존이 메리에게 그 책을 사게 했다. (Default)  
 존이 메리가 그 책을 사게 했다.  
 존이 메리를 그 책을 사게 했다.  
 (=John forced Mary to buy the book.)

At first, this grammatical phenomenon seems to be very unusual and has baffled many Korean grammarians and researchers who have been searching for at least some reasonable explanations.

Luckily, this mysterious grammatical behavior can be nicely handled within the framework of pragmatic focus setting. In the default sentence above, the grammatical role of the noun in the dative phrase is likely to be deemphasized and hidden behind the scene due to the nature of the dative case marker. Therefore, if we want to put more emphasis on the grammatical role of the noun in the dative phrase, we can apply the pragmatic focus-setting strategy. “메리” in the dative phrase above carries two different semantic roles: one is the intermediary agent in the sense that she is indeed the person who carried out the action of buying the book under the influence

of John's action, and another is the patient role from the point that she is the person who is directly affected by John's action. If we apply the pragmatic focus-setting strategy to this dative phrase to bring the intermediary agent role of "메리" to the foreground, we can optionally assign the subject case marker "~가" to "메리" instead of the dative case marker because the subject case markers are the default case markers for the agent role in Korean. On the other hand, to bring the patient role of "메리" into focus, we can optionally assign the object case marker "~를" which is the default case marker for the patient role.

Semantic Encoding	Focus Setting	Pragmatic Encoding
존이 메리에게 그 책을 사게 했다. (=John forced Mary to buy the book.)	→ Applying the focus- setting strategy	Intermediary Agent 존이 메리가 그 책을 사게 했다. (=It was Mary who John forced to buy the book.)
		Patient 존이 메리를 그 책을 사게 했다. (=It was Mary who was forced to buy the book by John.)
메리가 존에게 그 일을 하게 했다. (=Mary made John do the work.)		Intermediary Agent 메리가 존이 그 일을 하게 했다. (=It was John who Mary made do the work.)
		Patient 메리가 존을 그 일을 하게 했다. (=It was John who was made to do the work by Mary.)

### III . Contrastive Focus Setting

The contrastive focus-setting strategy can be used when the speaker or the writer wants to put the element of a given sentence into special focus and at the same time to contrast the focused element with other possible members of the group that the focused element belongs to. It is a very effective pragmatic strategy to put utmost emphasis on the significance of the focused element. This pragmatic strategy applies only with the contrastive focus markers "~은/는" which can also be used as the topic markers, as we discussed at the beginning of this chapter. Because of this dual function of the suffixes "~은/는," much confusion arises regarding how to identify whether they are being used as topic markers or contrastive focus markers in a given sentence. The rule of thumb is that if they appear in the sentence initial position, they are topic markers. Otherwise,

they serve as contrastive focus markers.

The contrastive focus construction in Korean is more or less equivalent to the English focus construction “It \_ that/who \_” together with the implication that only the preceding expression, but not others, is relevant to the situation.

존이 메리는 좋아합니다.

(=It is Mary whom John likes, but he doesn't like others.)

존이 사과를 먹습니다.

(=It is apples that John eats, but he doesn't eat other fruit.)

Semantic Encoding	Focus Setting	Pragmatic Encoding
존이 사과를 좋아한다. (=John likes apples.)	→ Applying the contrastive focus setting strategy	존이 사과 <sup>는</sup> 좋아한다. (=It is apples that John likes, but he doesn't like other fruit.)
메리가 숙제를 빨리 한다. (=Mary does her homework quickly.)		메리가 숙제를 빨리 <sup>는</sup> 한다. (=It is just quickly how she does her homework, but the quality is not so good .)
존이 학교에서 공부한다. (=John studies at school.)		존이 학교에서 <sup>는</sup> 공부한다. (=It is at school that John studies, but he doesn't study at someplace else.)
메리가 어제 존을 만났다. (=Mary met John yeaterday.)		메리가 어제 <sup>는</sup> 존을 만났다. (=It is yesterday that Mary met John, but she didn't meet John at other times.)

In the case that we want to put the contrastive focus on the element that appears at the beginning of a sentence, we need to move the element out of the sentence initial position. If not, it can only serve as the topic of the sentence.

존은 치즈를 좋아합니다.

(=As for John, he likes cheese.)

치즈를 존은 좋아합니다.

(=It is John who likes cheese, but others dislike it.)

When “~은/는” appear more than once in a given sentence, the one in the sentence initial position must always be treated as the topic marker, whereas all other occurrences should be treated as contrastive focus markers.

존은 메리는 좋아한다.

(=As for John, it is Mary whom he likes, but he doesn't like others.)

존은 메리에게는 아주 잘 해준다.

(=As for John, it is Mary whom he treats very nicely, but he treats others badly.)

존은 숙제를 빨리 하는 한다.

(=As for John, it is just quickly how he does his homework, but the quality is not so good.)

존은 돈을 많이 벌기는 한다.

(=As for John, it is just making lots of money that he does, but he does not manage his money wisely.)

As you can see in the sentences above, the contrastive focus markers “~은/는” can be attached to virtually any parts of speech in a given sentence. When they are attached to the subject or the object, they replace the subject or object case markers. Otherwise, they are simply added to the existing expressions.

존이 메리는 좋아합니다.

(=It is Mary whom he likes, but he doesn't like others.)

존이 메리를는 좋아합니다. (NOT OK)

존은 학교에서는 열심히 공부한다.

(=As for John, it is at school that John studies, but he doesn't study at someplace else.)

존은 학교는 열심히 공부한다. (NOT OK)

## IV. Suppression of Nonessential Information

Suppression of the nonessential element(s) in a given sentence is a widely-used pragmatic strategy by native speakers who are engaged in an informal conversation. It is a very efficient strategy to bring only the stated elements into maximum focus by putting nonessential information behind the scene. Whenever the speaker assumes that (1) a

certain amount of information has been already mentioned, (2) it is clear from the context, (3) it is irrelevant to the situation, or (4) it is insignificant for delivering his/her message, he/she can optionally suppress (not state) such nonessential expressions. If that happens, it may result in unfinished sentences or ungrammatical sentences according to the grammatical rules in Korean. In other words, the application of this pragmatic strategy is empowered to override any grammatical rules, which may seem very odd to nonnative speakers.

The following is a possible and natural conversational exchange between John's parents about John's coming back home after his long trip. The expressions in parentheses below are the ones suppressed by each speaker.

John's father: (존이 집에) 도착했어? (=Arrived? =Did John arrive at home?)

John's mother: 응, (존이 집에) 도착했어. (=Yes, arrived. =Yes, John arrived at home.)

John's father: (존이 지금) 뭐 해? (=Doing what? =What is he doing now?)

John's mother: (존이) 자. (=Sleeping. =He is sleeping.)

John's father: (존을) 깨워. 저녁 먹어야지.

(=Wake (him) up. Must eat dinner. =Wake him up. He must eat dinner.)

However, there is also a negative aspect of applying this pragmatic strategy more than is necessary. If the speaker abuses using the application of this pragmatic strategy, it may bring unnecessary pending emotions to the listener, who had no prior access to information about what the speaker suppressed. It is, therefore, highly recommended for nonnative speakers to apply this strategy sparingly with extra caution.

## APPENDIX A. Verbal Suffix Ordering (동사 접미사 순서)

Verbs can take various types of suffixes in Korean: causative suffixes, passive suffixes, modal auxiliary suffixes, subject honorific suffixes, tense suffixes, and a wide range of different sentence-ending suffixes. When these suffixes are attached to verbs, there are some restrictions on their relative ordering depending on the nature of the suffixes. For example, if applicable, the causative suffixes “~이, ~히, ~리, ~기, ~우, ~구, ~추” and the passive suffixes “~이, ~히, ~리, ~기” which are categorized into derivational suffixes (파생 접미사) must be attached first to the verb root (어근). This derivational process creates verb stems (어간) to which inflectional suffixes (활용 접미사/어미) can be subsequently added. There is also a strict order for the attachment of inflectional suffixes to verb stems according to their nature: modal auxiliary suffixes, subject honorific suffixes, tense suffixes, sentence-ending suffixes, in that order. Unlike other optional verbal suffixes which are put in parentheses in the verbal suffix ordering formula below, appropriate forms of tense suffixes and sentence-ending suffixes must always be attached to verb stems when they are used in actual sentences.

Verbal Suffix Ordering Formula				
Verb Root + (Suffix 1) → Verb Stem				
Verb Stem + (Suffix 2) + (Suffix 3) + Suffix 4 + Suffix 5				
Suffix 1	Suffix 2	Suffix 3	Suffix 4	Suffix 5
Causative Suffixes ~이, ~히, ~리, ~기, ~우, ~구, ~추  Passive Suffixes ~이, ~히, ~리, ~기	Modal Auxiliary Suffixes  ~(으)려고 하다 ~기로 하다 ~도록 하다 ~(으)르까 하다 ~아/어도 좋다 ~(으)면 안 되다 ~(으)르 수 있다 etc.	Subject Honorific Suffixes ~(으)시	Tense Suffixes ϕ, ~았/었, ~겠	Honorific/Blunt Sentence endings ~ㅂ/습니다 ~아/어요 ~ㄴ 다/는다/다 ~아/어/니/냐/자 etc.  Other Sentence Endings ~(는)군(요) ~지(요), ~(으)르래(요) ~(으)르까(요)? etc.

Verbal Suffix Ordering Formula	Examples (예문)
Verb Root + Suffix 4 + Suffix 5	존은 매일 운동을 한다. (하 + $\phi$ + <u>니다</u> ) (=John exercises every day.) 경찰이 도둑을 잡았습니다. (잡 + <u>았</u> + <u>습니다</u> ) (=The police captured the thief.)
Verb Root + Suffix 1 + Suffix 4 + Suffix 5	메리가 물을 끓여요. (끓 + <u>이</u> + $\phi$ + <u>어요</u> ) (=Mary is boiling the water.) 도둑이 잡혔습니다. (잡 + <u>히</u> + <u>었</u> + <u>습니다</u> ) (=The thief was captured.)
Verb Root + Suffix 2 + Suffix 4 + Suffix 5	존이 밥을 먹으려고 합니다. (먹 + 으려고 하 + $\phi$ + <u>습니다</u> ) (=John is about to eat food.) 메리가 내일 출발하기로 했어요. (출발하 + 기로 하 + <u>았</u> + <u>어요</u> ) (=Mary decided to leave tomorrow.)
Verb Root + Suffix 3 + Suffix 4 + Suffix 5	아버지가 차를 사셨습니다. (사 + <u>시</u> + <u>었</u> + <u>습니다</u> ) (=My father bought a car.) 어머니가 책을 읽으세요. (읽 + 으시 + $\phi$ + <u>어요</u> ) (=My mother is reading a book.)
Verb Root + Suffix 1 + Suffix 2 + Suffix 4 + Suffix 5	침대를 방에 옮기려고 합니다. (옮 + <u>기</u> + <u>려고</u> 하 + $\phi$ + <u>습니다</u> ) (=I am planning to move the bed to my room.) 뒤에서도 잘 보이도록 했어요. (보 + <u>이</u> + <u>도록</u> 하 + <u>았</u> + <u>어요</u> ) (=I made sure that it can be seen well even in the back.)
Verb Root + Suffix 1 + Suffix 3 + Suffix 4 + Suffix 5	어머니가 약속을 늦추셨습니다. (늦 + <u>추</u> + <u>시</u> + <u>었</u> + <u>습니다</u> ) (=My mother postponed the appointment.) 아버지가 경찰에게 잡히셨어요. (잡 + <u>히</u> + <u>시</u> + <u>었</u> + <u>어요</u> ) (=My father was captured by the police.)
Verb Root + Suffix 2 + Suffix 3 + Suffix 4 + Suffix 5	어머님이 메리를 만나기로 하셨습니다. (만나 + 기로 하 + <u>시</u> + <u>었</u> + <u>습니다</u> ) (=My mother decided to meet Mary.)
Verb Root + Suffix 1 + Suffix 2 + Suffix 3 + Suffix 4 + Suffix 5	어머님이 존을 의자에 앉히려려고 하셨습니다. (앉 + <u>히</u> + <u>려고</u> 하 + <u>시</u> + <u>었</u> + <u>습니다</u> ) <sup>1</sup> (=My mother was trying to seat John on the chair.)

**Note:**

- The subject honorific suffixes “~(으)시” can be added right before or after a modal auxiliary suffix or it can be added to both places.

어머님이 존을 의자에 앉히려려고 하셨습니다. (앉 + 히 + 려고 하 + 시 + 었 + 습니다)

어머님이 존을 의자에 앉히시려고 했습니다. (앉 + 히 + 시 + 려고 하 + 었 + 습니다)

어머님이 존을 의자에 앉히시려고 하셨습니다. (앉 + 히 + 시 + 려고 하 + 시 + 었 + 습니다)

(=My mother was trying to seat John on the chair.)

## APPENDIX B. Adverbial Suffixes (부사화 접미사)

Some stative verbs and a limited number of nouns can be changed into their corresponding adverbs so that they can be used to modify other verbs or adverbs.

Adverbial Suffixes (부사화 접미사)		
Stative Verb + <b>게</b>	“~게” can be attached to most stative verbs to create their corresponding adverbs. It is the most productive Korean adverbial suffix, which is equivalent to English “-ly.”	크다 (Big) → 크게 작다 (Small) → 작게 예쁘다 (Pretty) → 예쁘게 바쁘다 (Busy) → 바쁘게 아름답다 (Beautiful) → 아름답게 재미있다/흥미롭다 (Interesting) → 재미있게/흥미롭게 안전하다 (Safe) → 안전하게 즐겁다 (Joyful) → 즐겁게
Stative Verb + <b>이</b>	“~이” can be attached to a handful of stative verbs to create their corresponding adverbs. Since it is not possible to predict what kind of stative verb takes this suffix, we need to treat these adverbs as separate vocabulary items.	깨끗하다 (Clean) → 깨끗이 많다 (A lot) → 많이 가볍다 (Light) → 가볍이
Stative Verb + <b>히</b>	“~히” can be attached to a handful of stative verbs to create their corresponding adverbs. Since it is not possible to predict what kind of stative verb takes this suffix, we need to treat these adverbs as separate vocabulary items.	조용하다 (Quiet) → 조용히 부지런하다 (Diligent) → 부지런히 말끔하다 (Tidy) → 말끔히 급하다 (Urgent) → 급히 솔직하다 (Frank) → 솔직히
Stative Verb + <b>리</b>	“~리” can be attached to a handful of stative verbs to create their corresponding adverbs. Since it is not possible to predict what kind of stative verb takes this suffix, we need to treat these adverbs as separate vocabulary items.	빠르다/재빠르다 (Quick) → 빨리/재빨리
Noun + <b>(으)로</b>	“~(으)로” can be attached to a handful of nouns to create their corresponding adverbs. Since it is not possible to predict what kind of noun takes these suffixes, we need to treat these adverbs as separate vocabulary items.	실제 (Fact) → 실제로 (In fact) 진실 (Truth) → 진실로 (Truthfully) 참 (Truth) → 참으로 (Really) 정말 (Reality) → 정말로 (Really)

## APPENDIX C. Mathematical Operations and Geometry

### (수학 연산과 기하)

Since the beginning of the history of mankind, numbers and geometric shapes have played a significant role in shaping virtually all aspects of human culture, and it would be hard to imagine our life separated from these two great human inventions. For example, we use numbers to indicate time and date, age, size, weather, financial transactions, transportation schedules, all kinds of statistical data, and so on. We use geometric shapes when we build all kinds of human artifacts, including household products, buildings, cars, airplanes, space shuttles, etc.

In addition, from a linguistic point of view, it is difficult, if not impossible, to communicate with others without using these two important concepts. The simple English sentences like “I have a book” and “I want to buy a car” apparently have nothing to do with numbers. The indefinite article even in these sentences, however, presupposes your knowledge of the number concept in the way in which the expressions “a book” and “a car” imply that “not more than one book or car” is involved in each situation. On the other hand, without your knowledge of geometric shapes, it may be quite challenging to describe a missing person’s physical appearances to the police or to report your great scientific inventions to your science teacher. We can, therefore, safely reach the conclusion that these two concepts are essential parts of our culture.

In this sense, understanding numbers and geometric shapes in the target language is a prerequisite for learning the target-language culture. It is the reason why these two subjects are typically taught at the early stage of any foreign language instruction.

In what follows, we will first discuss the basic classification of numbers, focusing on how to read them in Korean. The discussion of numbers here is limited in scope and only covers integers (정수), fractions (분수), and decimals (소수). Second, we will discuss how to read basic arithmetic operations in Korean, including addition (덧셈/더하기), subtraction (뺀셈/빼기), multiplication (곱셈/곱하기), and division (나눗셈/나누기). Third, we will start discussing some basic geometric notions and how to identify two-dimen-

sional geometric shapes (평면기하) and three-dimensional geometric shapes (입체기하). Finally, we will talk about how to describe some selected geometric shapes in terms of overall form and dimensions.

## I . Reading Numbers and Signs in Mathematical Operations

### (수와 연산 기호 읽기)

#### 1. Reading Numbers (수 읽기)

Numbers (수)	Reading Numbers (수 읽기)	
정수 (Integers)	양수 <sup>1</sup> Positive integers	1 (일), 2 (이), 3 (삼), 4 (사), 5 (오), 6 (육), 7 (칠), 8 (팔), 9 (구), 10 (십)
	영 Zero	0 (영)
	음수 <sup>2</sup> Negative integers	-1 (마이너스 일), -2 (마이너스 이), -3 (마이너스 삼) -4 (마이너스 사), -5 (마이너스 오), -6 (마이너스 육) -7 (마이너스 칠), -8 (마이너스 팔), -9 (마이너스 구) -10 (마이너스 십)
분수 <sup>3</sup> (Fractions)	1/2 (이분의 일), 1/3 (삼분의 일), 1/4 (사분의 일), 1/5 (오분의 일), 2/3 (삼분의 이), 2/4 (사분의 이), 2/5 (오분의 이), 2/6 (육분의 이), 3/4 (사분의 삼), 3/5 (오분의 삼), 3/6 (육분의 삼), 3/7 (칠분의 삼)	
소수 <sup>4</sup> (Decimals)	0.1 (영점 일), 0.2 (영점 이), 0.3 (영점 삼), 0.4 (영점 사), 0.12 (영점 일이) 0.23 (영점 이삼), 0.34 (영점 삼사), 1.1 (일점 일), 2.3 (이점 삼) = 3.141592 (삼점 일사일오구이)	

**Note:**

1. 양수(Positive Numbers): Numbers in mathematics, including positive integers, are typically pronounced using the Sino-Korean numbering system.
2. 음수(Negative Numbers): Negative numbers are the signed numbers that carry the sign ‘-’, pronounced as 마이너스.
3. 분수(Fractions): Fractions consist of two different parts: numerator (분자) and denominator (분모). When Koreans read these numbers, they read denominator first and then numerator, which is exactly the opposite in English.
4. 소수(Decimals): Decimal numbers are indicated by the decimal point ‘.’, pronounced as 점.

## 2. Reading Arithmetic Operations (연산 기호 읽기)

Signs (기호)	Reading Signs	Reading Arithmetic Operations (연산 기호 읽기)	
+	더하기 or 플러스	$1 + 1 = 2$	일 더하기 일은 이
		$1 + 2 = 3$	일 더하기 이는 삼
		$3 + 6 = 9$	삼 더하기 육은 구
		$7 + 6 = 13$	칠 더하기 육은 십삼
		$1/2 + 1/2 = 1$	이분의 일 더하기 이분의 일은 일
		$1/5 + 2/5 = 3/5$	오분의 일 더하기 오분의 이는 오분의 삼
		$0.3 + 1.4 = 1.7$	영점삼 더하기 일점사는 일점칠
-	빼기 or 마이너스	$2 - 1 = 1$	이 빼기 일은 일
		$5 - 2 = 3$	오 빼기 이는 삼
		$9 - 7 = 2$	구 빼기 칠은 이
		$10 - 4 = 6$	십 빼기 사는 육
		$2 - 3 = -1$	이 빼기 삼은 마이너스 일
		$3 - 5 = -2$	삼 빼기 오는 마이너스 이
		$3/4 - 2/4 = 1/4$	사분의 삼 빼기 사분의 이는 사분의 일
$1.5 - 0.8 = 0.7$	일점오 빼기 영점팔은 영점칠		
x	곱하기	$2 \times 1 = 2$	이 곱하기 일은 이
		$3 \times 2 = 6$	삼 곱하기 이는육
		$4 \times 3 = 12$	사 곱하기 삼은 십이
		$5 \times 4 = 20$	오 곱하기 사는 이십
		$1/2 \times 1/3 = 1/6$	이분의 일 곱하기 삼분의 일은 육분의 일
		$0.2 \times 1.4 = 0.8$	영점이 곱하기 일점사는 영점팔
÷	나누기	$4 \div 1 = 4$	사 나누기 일은 사
		$6 \div 2 = 3$	육 나누기 이는 삼
		$9 \div 3 = 3$	구 나누기 삼은 삼
		$10 \div 5 = 2$	십 나누기 오는 이
		$2 \div 3 = 2/3$	이 나누기 삼은 삼분의 이
		$5 \div 4 = 5/4$	오 나누기 사는 사분의 오
		$2 \div 5 = 0.4$	이 나누기 오는 영점사
=		은 after a consonant 는 after a vowel	

### 3. Reading Mathematical Signs and Operations (수학 기호와 연산 읽기)

#### (1) Inequalities (부등호)

The symbols ' $>$ ' and ' $<$ ' are pronounced as “~보다 크다” and “~보다 작다,” respectively. For example, the inequality ' $x > y$ ' can be read as “x는 y보다 크다,” and ' $x < y$ ' as “x는 y 보다 작다.” On the other hand, the symbols ' $\geq$ ' and ' $\leq$ ' are pronounced as “~보다 크거나 같다” and “~보다 작거나 같다,” respectively. ' $x \geq y$ ' and ' $x \leq y$ ', therefore, can be rendered as “x는 y보다 크거나 같다” and “x는 y보다 작거나 같다,” respectively.

$3 > 2$  (삼은 이보다 크다)

$1/3 < 1/2$  (삼분의 일은 이분의 일보다 작다)

$x \geq 1$  (x는 일보다 크거나 같다)

$y \leq 3$  (y는 삼보다 작거나 같다)

**Note:** Inequalities (부등호)

$>$ : -보다 크다

$<$ : -보다 작다

$\geq$ : -보다 크거나 같다

$\leq$ : -보다 작거나 같다

#### (2) Exponents (지수)

It is convenient to write repeated multiplication of the same number in terms of exponents(지수). For example,  $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2$  can be greatly simplified by using the equivalent expression  $2^4$ . In this expression, 2 is called the base (밑변), and 4 is called the exponent (지수). If the exponent is 2, it is pronounced as 자승 or 제곱. If it is 3, 4, 5, etc., it can be read as 삼승/세제곱, 사승/네제곱, 오승/다섯제곱, etc.

$2^2 = 2 \times 2$  (이의 자승/제곱은 이 곱하기 이)

$2^3 = 2 \times 2 \times 2$  (이의 삼승/세제곱은 이 곱하기 이 곱하기 이)

$2^{100}$  (이의 백승)

$3^2 = 9$  (삼의 자승은 구)

$x^2 = 25$  (x의 자승은 이십오),  $x=5$  (x는 오)

### (3) Square Root (루트/근)

The algebraic expression  $x^2=4$  can be solved by using the notion of square root(루트). For example,  $x^2=4$  can be transformed into the equation  $x=\sqrt{4}$ . The value (값) of the square root 4 is 2 or -2. Therefore, the value of x is 2 and -2. The reading of the square root in Korean is very simple.

$\sqrt{2}$  (루트 이 or 이의 제곱근)  $\sqrt{3}$  (루트 삼 or 삼의 제곱근)  $\sqrt{4}$  (루트 사 or 사의 제곱근)

$\sqrt{2}=1.414213562 \dots$  (루트 이는 일점일사일오구이 ...)

### (4) Absolute Value (절대값)

The absolute value of a signed number is the number itself without the sign that it carries.

$| 2 | = 2$  (이의 절대값은 이)

$| - 2 | = 2$  (마이너스 이의 절대값은 이)

### (5) Ratios (비율)

Ratio is a very useful notion for comparing two different quantities. For example, if there are four boys and five girls in a certain group, the ratio of boys to girls in that group can be simply represented as  $4/5$  or, more frequently, as  $4 : 5$ . The symbol ':' can be read as 대. It is also widely used in referring to the scores of sports games.

$1 : 2$  (일 대 이)

$2 : 2$  (이 대 이)

$10 : 1$  (십 대 일)

$x : y = 1 : 2$  (x대 y는 일 대 이).

### (6) Percent (퍼센트 or 프로)

Percentage is a notion that is typically used to talk about what a certain quantity consists of. For example, if there are two white cars, three yellow cars, and five red cars parked in a parking lot, the percent (퍼센트) of the white cars out of the ten cars in total is 20 % (퍼센트).

- 0% (영 퍼센트 or 영 프로)
- 10% (십 퍼센트 or 십 프로)
- 0.3% (영점삼 퍼센트 or 영점 삼 프로)
- 100% (백 퍼센트 or 백 프로)

(7) Averages (평균값 or 평균, in short)

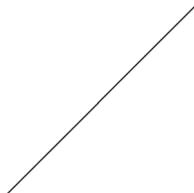
The average of n numbers is calculated by adding the numbers divided by n. For example, the average of the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 is  $(1+2+3+4+5) / 5 = 3$ . The reading of this expression is the following: 일, 이, 삼, 사, 오의 평균/평균값은 삼이다.

## II . Identifying and Describing Geometric Shapes (도형)

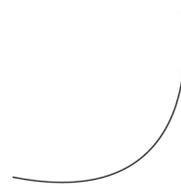
### 1. Basic Geometric Notions

(1) 점(Point) •

(2) 선 (Line)



직선 (Straight Line)



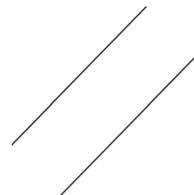
곡선 (Curve)



수평선 (Horizontal Line)

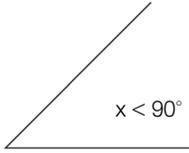


수직선 (Vertical Line)



평행선 (Parallel Lines)

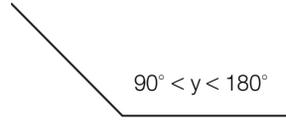
### (3) 각(Angle)



예각 (Acute Angle)



직각(Right Angle)



둔각 (Obtuse Angle)

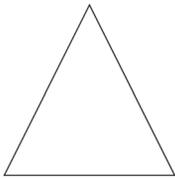
**Note:**

1. Terminology for Describing Lines (선)  
평행(Parallel), 평행선(Parallel lines), 수직(Perpendicular), 수직선(Perpendicular line)  
수평 (Horizontal), 수평선 (Horizontal line)
2. ° : 도 (ex)  $90^\circ$ (구십도)

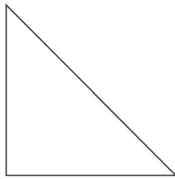
## 2. Basic Geometric Shapes

### (1) Two-Dimensional Geometric Shapes (평면 기하)

#### (a) 삼각형 (Triangles)



정삼각형 (Equilateral)



직각삼각형 (Right Triangle)



이등변삼각형 (Isosceles)

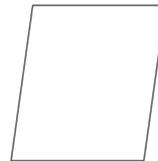
#### (b) 사각형 (Quadrilaterals)



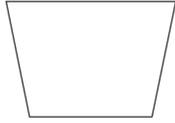
정사각형 (Square)



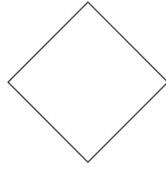
직사각형(Rectangle)



평행사변형 (Parallelogram)



사다리꼴(Trapezoid)

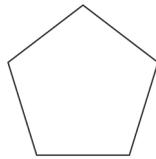


마름모(Diamond)

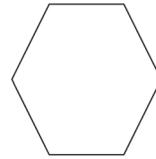
**Note:** Terminology for Describing Triangles (삼각형)

꼭지점(Vertex), 변(Side), 오른쪽 (Right Leg), 왼변 (Left Leg), 긴변 (Longer Leg), 짧은변(Short Leg), 밑변 (Base), 높이 (Height), 빗변 (Hypotenuse), 길이 (Length)  
각(Angle), 각도 (Degree of Angle), 왼쪽각 (Left Angle), 오른쪽각 (Right Angle), 윗각 (Upper Angle), 아랫각 (Lower Angle), 직각 (Right Angle), 넓이 or 면적 (Area)

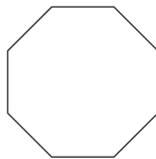
(c) 다각형(Polygons)



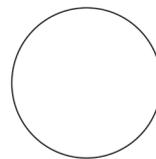
오각형 (Pentagon)



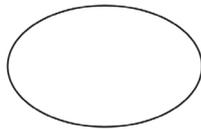
육각형 (Hexagon)



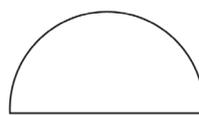
팔각형 (Octagon)



원 (Circle)



타원(Oval)



반원(Semicircle)

**Note:** Terminology for Describing Quadrilaterals (사각형)

가로 (Length), 세로(Width), 대각선(Diagonal line), 둘레(Perimeter), 면적(Area)

Terminology for Describing Circles (원)

반지름 (Radius), 지름 (Diameter), 원주 or 원둘레 (Circumference), 면적(Area)

## (2) Three-Dimensional Geometric Shapes (입체 기하)



정육면체 (Cube)



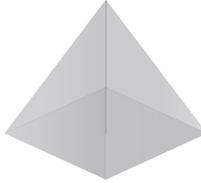
직육면체 (Rectangular Solid)



원기둥 (Cylinder)



삼각기둥 or 프리즘 (Prism)



사각뿔 or 피라미트 (Pyramid)



구 (Sphere)

**Note:** Terminology for Three Dimensional Units

모서리 (Edge), 면 (Face), 밑면 (Base), 밑면적 (Base Area), 높이 (Height), 표면적 (Surface Area), 부피 (Volume)

## 3. Describing Two-Dimensional Geometric Shapes

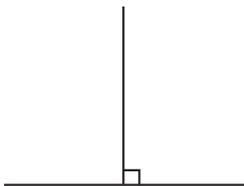
### (1) Describing Lines (선)

#### (a) Parallel Lines (평행선)



Description: 이 선들은 서로 평행합니다.  
(=These lines are parallel to each other.)

#### (b) Perpendicular Lines (수직선)



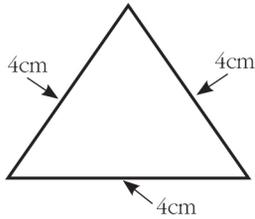
Description: 이 선들은 서로 수직입니다.  
(=These lines are perpendicular to each other.)

**Note:** Terminology for Describing Lines (선)

Parallel Lines: 평행선, Parallel: 평행하다, Perpendicular Lines: 수직선, Perpendicular: 수직이다.

## (2) Describing Triangles (삼각형)

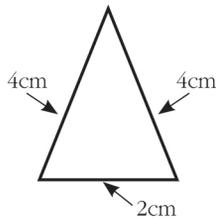
### (a) Equilateral (정삼각형)



Description: 이것은 정삼각형이고 각 변의 길이가 4cm이다.

(=This is an equilateral (정삼각형), and each side (각 변) is 4cm long.)

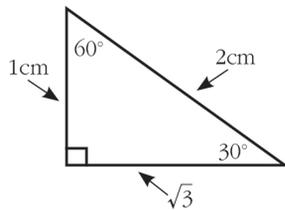
### (b) Isosceles (이등변삼각형)



Description: 이것은 이등변삼각형이다. 두 변의 길이가 4cm이고 밑변의 길이는 2cm이다

(=This is an isosceles. The length of each side is 4cm, and the length of the base is 2cm.)

### (c) Right Triangle (직각 삼각형)



Description: 이것은 직각삼각형이다. 윗각이  $60^\circ$ 이고 아랫각이  $30^\circ$ 이다.

밑변의 길이는  $\sqrt{3}$  cm이고 높이는 1cm이고 빗변은 2cm이다.

그리고 면적은  $\sqrt{3}/2\text{cm}^2$ 이다.

(=This is a right triangle. The upper angle is  $60^\circ$ , and the lower angle is  $30^\circ$ . The length of the bottom leg is  $\sqrt{3}$  cm, and the height is 1cm, and the hypotenuse is 2cm. The area of this right triangle is  $\sqrt{3}/2\text{cm}^2$ .)

**Note:**

1. Terminology for Describing Triangles (삼각형)

Vertex: 꼭지점, Side: 변, Right Leg: 오른변, Left Leg: 왼변, Longer Leg: 긴변, Short Leg: 짧은변  
Base: 밑변, Height: 높이, Hypotenuse: 빗변, Length: 길이

2. Measurement Units in Metric System

km: 킬로미터, m: 미터, cm: 센티미터, mm: 밀리미터

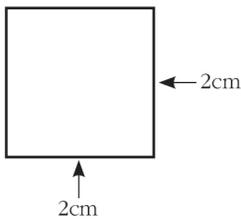
km<sup>2</sup>: 제곱 킬로미터, m<sup>2</sup>: 제곱 미터, cm<sup>2</sup>: 제곱 센티미터, mm<sup>2</sup>: 제곱 밀리미터

3. Calculating the Area of a Triangle

Area(면적) =  $1/2 \times \text{base(밑변)} \times \text{height(높이)}$

(3) Describing Quadrilaterals (사각형)

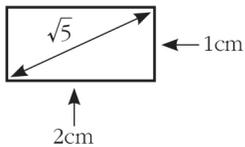
(a) Squares (정사각형)



Description: 이것은 정사각형이고 한 변의 길이가 2cm이다. 둘레는 8cm이고 면적은 4cm<sup>2</sup>이다.

(=This is a square. The length of each side is 2cm. The perimeter is 8cm, and the area is 4cm<sup>2</sup>.)

(b) Rectangle (직사각형)



Description: 이것은 직사각형이고 가로 길이가 2cm, 세로가 1cm, 대각선의 길이가  $\sqrt{5}$  cm이다. 그리고 둘레는 6cm이고 면적은 2cm<sup>2</sup>이다.

(=This is a rectangle. The length is 2cm, and the width is 1cm, and the length of the diagonal line is  $\sqrt{5}$  cm. The perimeter is 6cm, and the area is 2cm<sup>2</sup>.)

**Note:**

1. Terminology for Describing Quadrilaterals (사각형)

Side: 변, Length: 가로, Width: 세로, Diagonal line: 대각선, Perimeter: 둘레, Area: 면적

2. Calculating the Perimeter and the Area of a Square (정사각형)

Perimeter(둘레) =  $4 \times \text{Length of Side(변의 길이)}$

Area(면적) =  $\{\text{Length of Side(변의 길이)}\}^2$

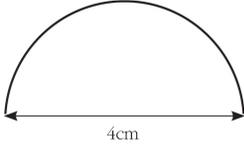
3. Calculating the Perimeter and the Area of a Rectangle (직사각형)

Perimeter(둘레) =  $2 \times \{\text{Length(가로)} + \text{Width(세로)}\}$

Area(면적) =  $\text{Length(가로)} \times \text{Width(세로)}$

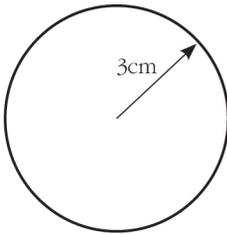
#### (4) Describing Circles (원)

##### (a) Semicircles (반원)



Description: 이것은 반원이고 지름이 4cm이다.  
(=This is a semicircle, and its diameter is 4cm.)

##### (b) Circle (원)



Description: 이것은 원이고 반지름은 3cm, 원주는  $6\pi$  cm, 그리고 면적은  $9\pi\text{cm}^2$ 이다.  
(=This is a circle, and its radius is 3cm. The circumference is  $6\pi$ cm, and the area is  $9\pi\text{cm}^2$ .)

#### Note:

1. Terminology for Describing Circles (원)

Radius: 반지름, Diameter: 지름, Circumference: 원주 or 원둘레, Area: 면적

2. Calculating the Circumference and the Area of a Circle (원)

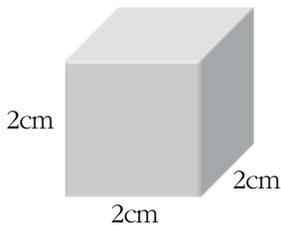
Circumference(원주) =  $2\pi(\text{파이})r(\text{반지름}) = 2\pi r$

Area(면적) =  $\pi r(\text{반지름})^2 = \pi r^2$

3.  $\pi$  is pronounced as "파이", and its value is approximately 3.14.

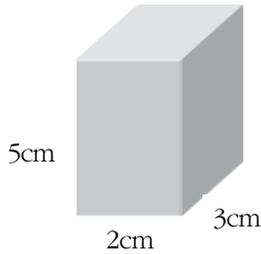
## 4. Describing Three-Dimensional Geometric Shapes

### (1) Describing Cubes (정육면체)



Description: 이것은 정육면체이다. 모서리의 길이는 2cm 이다. 표면적은  $24\text{cm}^2$ 이고 부피는  $16\text{cm}^3$ 이다.  
(=This is a cube. All the edges are 2cm long. Therefore, its surface area (표면적) is  $24\text{cm}^2$ , and its volume is  $16\text{cm}^3$ .)

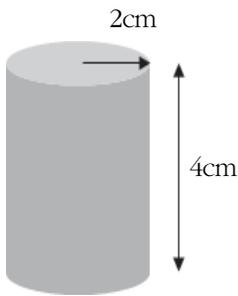
## (2) Describing Rectangular Solids (직육면체)



Description: 이것은 직육면체이다. 밑면의 가로와 세로는 각각 2cm와 3cm이다. 그리고 높이는 5cm이다. 그러므로 표면적은  $62\text{cm}^2$ 이고 부피는  $30\text{cm}^3$ 이다.

(=This is a rectangular solid. The length and the width of the base are 2cm and 3cm, respectively. The height is 5cm. Therefore, its surface area(표면적) is  $62\text{cm}^2$ , and its volume is  $30\text{cm}^3$ .)

## (3) Describing Cylinders (원기둥)



Description: 이것은 원기둥이다. 밑면의 반지름은 2cm이고 높이는 4cm이다.

그러므로 이 원기둥의 부피는  $16\pi\text{cm}^3$ 이다.

(=This is a cylinder. The radius of the base is 2cm, and the height is 4cm. Therefore, its volume is  $16\pi\text{cm}^3$ .)

### Note:

#### 1. Terminology for Describing Three-Dimensional Shapes

Edge: 모서리, Face: 면, Base: 밑면, Base Area: 밑면적, Height: 높이, Surface Area: 표면적, Volume: 부피

#### 2. Calculating the Surface Area and the Volume of a Cube (정육면체)

Surface Area(표면적) =  $6 \times \{\text{edge(모서리)}\}^2$

Volume(부피) =  $\{\text{edge(모서리)}\}^3$

#### 3. Calculating the Surface Area and the Volume of a Rectangular Solid (정육면체)

Surface Area(표면적) =  $2 \times \{(l \times w) + (l \times h) + (w \times h)\}$

Volume(부피) =  $l \times w \times h$

l: length(가로), w: width(세로), h: height(높이)

#### 4. Calculating the Volume of a Cylinder (원기둥)

Volume(부피) =  $\pi \times \{r(\text{반지름})\}^2 \times h(\text{높이}) = \pi \times r^2 h$

#### 5. Measurement Units in Metric System

$\text{km}^3$ : 세제곱 킬로미터,  $\text{m}^3$ : 세제곱 미터,  $\text{cm}^3$ : 세제곱 센티미터,  $\text{mm}^3$ : 세제곱 밀리미터

## REFERENCES (참고문헌)

- 국립국어원. (2005). 외국인을 위한 한국어문법 1: *체제편*. 커뮤니케이션북스.
- 국립국어원. (2005). 외국인을 위한 한국어문법 2: *용법편*. 커뮤니케이션북스.
- 서정수. (1996). *국어문법*. 한양대학교출판원.
- 최현배. (1937). *우리말본*. 정음사.
- 허 응. (1995). *20세기 우리말의 형태론*. 샘문화사.
- Ahn, Jean-Myung. et al. (2010). *Korean Grammar in Use: Beginning to Early Intermediate*. Darakwon.
- Ahn, Jean-Myung. et al. (2011). *Korean Grammar in Use: Intermediate*. Darakwon.
- Ahn, Jean-Myung. et al. (2014). *Korean Grammar in Use: Advanced*. Darakwon.
- Aissen Judith, L. (1992). Topic and focus in Mayan. *Language* 68:43-80.
- Byon, Andrew. Sangpil. (2008). *Basic Korean: A Grammar and Workbook*. Routledge.
- Byon, Andrew. Sangpil. (2009). *Intermediate Korean: A Grammar and Workbook*. Routledge.
- Defense Language Institute. Korean Basic Course. Unit 1-14. DLIFLC.
- Gundel, Jeanette. (1985). Shared Knowledge and Topicality. *Journal of Pragmatics* 9:1, 83-107.
- Halliday, Michael. A. K. (1967). Notes on transitivity and theme in English (part II). *Journal of Linguistics* 3:199-244.
- Han, Chung-hye. (1998). Asymmetry in the Interpretation of -(n)un in Korean. *Japanese/Korean Linguistics*. vol 7.
- Im, Ho Bin. et al. (1988). *Korean Grammar for International Learners*. Yonsei University Press.
- Im, Ho Bin. et al. (2001). *Korean Grammar for International Learners*. Yonsei University Press.
- Kuno, Susumu. (1973). *The Structure of the Japanese Language*. The MIT Press.
- Lambrecht, Knud. (1994). *Information structure and sentence form*. Cambridge University Press.
- McCawley, James. D. (1988). *The Syntactic Phenomena of English Volume 1 & 2*. The University of Chicago Press.
- Perlmutter, David. M. (Ed.). (1983). *Studies in Relational Grammar 1*. The University of Chicago Press.
- Perlmutter, David. M. & Rosen, Carol. (Eds.). (1984). *Studies in Relational Grammar 2*. The University of Chicago Press.
- Postal, Paul. M. & Joseph, Brian. D. (Eds.). (1990). *Studies in Relational Grammar 3*. The University of Chicago Press.
- Reinhart, Tanya. (1981). Pragmatics and linguistics: An analysis of sentence topics. *Philosophica* 27:53-94.
- Yeon, Jaehoon. & Brown, Lucien. (2011). *Korean: A Comprehensive Grammar*. Routledge

## INDEX (색인)

ㄱ

<p>~가 ..... 63, 81</p> <p>~가 (도대체) 뭐길래/뭐기에/뭐라고 ... 224</p> <p>~가 (도대체) 뭐예요? ..... 224</p> <p>가운데(서) ..... 290</p> <p>간에 ..... 204</p> <p>간접화법 ..... 269</p> <p>~감/깜 ..... 116</p> <p>감탄사 ..... 49</p> <p>같이서는 ..... 215</p> <p>같(았)으면 ..... 215</p> <p>~같이 ..... 101</p> <p>개월 ..... 137</p> <p>객체 존대 ..... 237, 247</p> <p>~거나 (간에/할 것 없이) ..... 205</p> <p>~거나 ~거나 하다 ..... 382</p> <p>~거든(요) ..... 472</p> <p>~거라 ..... 241</p> <p>거센소리화 ..... 38</p> <p>것 ..... 148</p> <p>~게 되다 ..... 299</p> <p>~게 마련이다 ..... 411</p> <p>~게 보인다 ..... 374</p> <p>~게 하다 ..... 217, 305</p> <p>~계(나) ..... 241</p> <p>~계(요) ..... 502</p> <p>~겠 ..... 258</p> <p>~겠거니 하다 ..... 397</p> <p>격조사 ..... 62, 81</p>	<p>경음화 ..... 41</p> <p>계시다 ..... 249</p> <p>고 ..... 172</p> <p>~고말고(요) ..... 481</p> <p>~고 말테야 ..... 456</p> <p>고모음 ..... 30</p> <p>~고 뭐고 (간에) ..... 207</p> <p>~고 싶다 ..... 359</p> <p>~고 싶어하다 ..... 359</p> <p>~고(야) 말겠다 ..... 406</p> <p>~고(야) 말다 ..... 405</p> <p>~고(야) 말았다 ..... 406</p> <p>고유명사 ..... 49</p> <p>~고 있다 ..... 264</p> <p>~고자 하다 ..... 323</p> <p>~곤 하다 ..... 398</p> <p>~과 ..... 174</p> <p>과거 시제 ..... 256</p> <p>과거 완료 ..... 266</p> <p>~과 달리 ..... 177</p> <p>관계로 ..... 182</p> <p>관계상 ..... 182</p> <p>관형격 ..... 65, 81</p> <p>관형격 조사 ..... 50, 65, 81</p> <p>관형사 ..... 49</p> <p>구개음화 ..... 39</p> <p>~구나 ..... 447, 448</p> <p>~군(요) ..... 447, 448</p> <p>귀빈 ..... 250</p>
--	--

귀하	250
~기	146
~기(가) 십상이다	426
~기(가) 일쑤이다	426
~기 그지없다	386
~기 나름이다	423
~기는(요)	495
~기는(요) (뭘)	495
~기는 하다	402
기능 범주	50
기능어	50
~기도 하다	403
~기도 해라	404
~기로 하다	327
~기(를) 바라다	364
~기 마련이다	411
~기만 하다	401
~기만 해 봐라	410
기수	119
~기에 달려 있다	432
~기 이를 데 없다	386
~기 짝이 없다	386
~기 한이 없다	386
~긴 하다	402
~까지	71
~까지는	113
~까지(도)	93
~까지밖에	114
~까지야	113
~께	72, 248
~께나	107
~께서	248
끝에	194
~끼리	98

L

~ㄴ	272, 274
~ㄴ가 보다	343
~ㄴ가요?	461
~ㄴ가 하다	399
~ㄴ 감이 없지 않아 있다	428
~ㄴ 감이 있다	428
~ㄴ 거(가) 없다	443
~ㄴ 건가요?	459
~ㄴ 걸(요)	474
~ㄴ 것	149
~ㄴ 것 같다	340
~ㄴ 것이 없다	443
~ㄴ게 고작이다	416
~ㄴ 게 없다	443
~ㄴ다	238
~ㄴ다고 그래요	437
~ㄴ다고(요)	487
~ㄴ다고(요)?	479
~ㄴ다/는다/다	238
~ㄴ다는 말이다	440
~ㄴ다니(요)	477
~ㄴ다면 좋겠다	362
~ㄴ다잖아(요)	492
~ㄴ다지 않아(요)	492
~ㄴ단 말이다	440
~ㄴ담	501
~ㄴ대잖아(요)	492
~ㄴ대지 않아(요)	491, 492
~ㄴ데(요)	473
~ㄴ데(요) 뭘	496
~ㄴ들	105
~ㄴ 듯하다/듯싶다	389

~ㄴ 모양이다 .....	387	~나는 것 .....	148, 150
~ㄴ 바 .....	152	~나는 말이다 .....	440
~ㄴ 법이다 .....	411	~난 말이다 .....	441
~ㄴ 셈이다 .....	424	~납니다 .....	269
~ㄴ 셈치다 .....	426	~내요 .....	270
~ㄴ 적이 없다 .....	381	~네(요) .....	447, 448
~ㄴ 적이 있다 .....	381	년 .....	134, 138
~ㄴ 줄 .....	152	~느냐에 달려 있다 .....	432
~ㄴ 줄(로) 알았다 .....	350	~느니만 못하다 .....	417
~ㄴ 줄 알다 .....	347	~는 .....	82, 83, 86, 117, 148
~ㄴ 줄(을) 몰랐다 .....	352	~는가 보다 .....	343
~ㄴ 지 .....	151	~는가요? .....	461
~ㄴ 지 ~ 되다 .....	377	~는가 하다 .....	400
~ㄴ 지 알다 .....	347	~는 감이 없지 않아 있다 .....	428
~ㄴ 척하다 .....	375	~는 감이 있다 .....	428
~ㄴ 체하다 .....	375	~는 거(가) 없다 .....	443
~ㄴ 탓이다 .....	415	~는 건가요? .....	459
~ㄴ 편이다 .....	365	~는 걸(요) .....	474
~나 .....	108, 176, 197	~는 것 .....	149
~나? .....	239	~는 것 같다 .....	340
나름대로는 .....	219	~는 것이 없다 .....	443
~나마 .....	102	~는 게 고작이다 .....	416
~나 마나(이)다 .....	431	~는 게 없다 .....	443
~나 보다 .....	343	~는 고사하고 .....	206
~나요? .....	461	~는구나 .....	448
~나 하다 .....	399	~는군(요) .....	448
날짜 .....	132	~는 길이다 .....	377
내내 .....	115	~는/ㄴ담 .....	501
~냐 .....	238	~는다 .....	238
~냐고 그래요 .....	437	~는다고 그래요 .....	437
~냐고(요) .....	487	~는다고(요) .....	487
~냐고 하다 .....	269	~는다고(요)? .....	479
~냐고 해요 .....	270	~는다는 말이다 .....	441

~는다니(요)?	477
~는다면 좋겠다	362
~는다잖아(요)	492
~는다지 않아(요)	492
~는단 말이다	441
~는답	501
~는대잖아(요)	492
~는대지 않아(요)	492
~는데(요)	473
~는데(요) 뭘	496
~는 듯하다/듯싶다	389
~는 말할 것도 없고	206
~는 모양이다	387
~는 물론(이고/이려니와)	187
~는 바	152
~는 법이다	411
~는 법이 없다	413
~는 법이 있다	414
~는 셈이다	424
~는 셈치다	426
~는 수가 있다	391
~는 수도 있다	391
~는/(으) 걸(요)	474
~는/(으)ㄴ가?	239
~는/(으)ㄴ가 보다	343
~는/(으)ㄴ가요?	461
~는/(으)ㄴ 줄 모르다	348
~는/(으)ㄴ 줄/지 모르다	349
~는/(으)ㄴ데(요)	473
~는/(으)ㄴ데(요) (뭘)	496
~는 줄	152
~는 줄 알다	347
~는 줄(로) 알았다	350

~는 줄(을) 몰랐다	352
~는 중이다	264
~는 지	151
~는지도 모르다	345
~는 지 알다	347
~는 척하다	375
~는 체하다	375
~는 탓이다	415
~는커녕	106
~는 편이다	365
능동태	293
~니?	238
~님	247

ㄷ

~다	238
~다고 그래요	437
~다고(요)	487
~다고(요)?	479
~다고 하다	269
~다고 해요	270
~다는 것	150
~다는 말이다	440
~다니(요)?	477
~다시피 하다	430
~단 말이다	440
단모음 발음	31
단어 구조	47
단어 형성	47
단어 형태론	47
달	137
~답니다	269
~대로	199

대명사	154
대신	180
대신(에)	180
~대요	270
대조 보조사	86
덱	250
~더구나	489
~더군(요)	488
~더라고(요)	488
~더러	72
덕분에	183
덕택에	183
~던	266, 274
~던가(요)?	482
~던데(요)	488
~도	91
도구격 조사	77
~도 ~ 나름이다	201
~도록 하다	328
~도 ~(이)려니와	201
도중에	193
도형	525
독립어	50
돌아가시다	249
동사	226
동사 접미사 순서	517
동작동사	49
되다	300
드시다	249, 252
~든가	109
~든가 ~든가 하다	382
~든지	109
~든지 ~든지 하다	382

들	60
판에는	219
때문에	181

ㄹ

~ㄹ	276
~ㄹ 거(가) 없다	443
~ㄹ 거다	325
~ㄹ 건가요?	459
~ㄹ걸(요)	458
~ㄹ 것	149
~ㄹ 것 같다	340
~ㄹ 것이 없다	443
~ㄹ 게 없다	443
~ㄹ게(요)	457
~ㄹ 계획/예정이다	329
~ㄹ까 말까 하다	434
~ㄹ까 보다	331
~ㄹ까 싶다	331
~ㄹ까(요)?	464
~ㄹ까 하다	331
~ㄹ 나위가 없다	420
~ㄹ 듯싶다	389
~ㄹ 듯하다	389
~ㄹ 따름이다	409
~ㄹ라	498
~ㄹ락 말락하다	435
~ㄹ래야 ~(으)ㄹ 수(가) 없다	445
~ㄹ래(요)	450
~ㄹ래(요)?	451
~ㄹ 리(가) 없다	355
~ㄹ 리(가) 있다	355
~ㄹ 만(도) 하다	412

~리 만하다 .....	368	~라고(요)? .....	479
~리 모양이다 .....	387	~라고 하다 .....	268
~리 바 .....	153	~라고 해(봐)야 .....	212
~리 법(도) 하다 .....	412	~라고 해서 .....	209
~리 뻘하다 .....	367	~라고 해요 .....	270
~리 뿐이다 .....	372	~라는 것 .....	150
~리 생각이다 .....	329	~라는 말이다 .....	441
~리 셈이다 .....	424	~라니(요)? .....	477
~리 수 없다 .....	353	~라도 .....	102
~리 수 있다 .....	353	~라든가 .....	109
~리 수가 있어야죠 .....	396	~라든지 .....	109
~리 수는 없다 .....	395	~라서 그런지 .....	213
~리 수는 있다 .....	391	~라야 .....	211
~리 수 밖에 없다 .....	338	~란 말이다 .....	441
~리 수가 없다 .....	393	~랍니다 .....	269
~리 수가 있다 .....	391	~랍시고 .....	210
~리 여지가 없다 .....	430	~랑 .....	174
~리 여지가 있다 .....	430	~랑 달리 .....	177
~리 작정이다 .....	329	~래봐야 .....	212
~리 정도다 .....	418	~래야 .....	212
~리 줄 .....	152	~래요 .....	270
~리 줄(로) 알았다 .....	350	~랴? .....	500
~리 줄 알다 .....	347	~려고 들다 .....	436
~리 줄(을) 몰랐다 .....	352	~려고 하다 .....	321
~리 지 .....	151	~려고 해도 ~리 수(가) 없다 .....	445
~리 지경이다 .....	418	~려니 하다 .....	397
~리지도 모르다 .....	345	~려던 중이다 .....	332
~리 지 알다 .....	347	~려던 참이다 .....	332
~리테야 .....	456	~려 들다 .....	436
~리 테지(요) .....	494	~려무나 .....	471
~리 텐데(요) .....	466	~럼 .....	471
~라고 그래요 .....	437	~로 .....	74, 77
~라고(요) .....	487	~로되 .....	214

~로 말미암아	181
~로 보나	203
~로(서)	78
~로(써)	77
~로 인하여	181
~로 인해(서)	181
~로 하여금	217
~를	63, 81
~를 거쳐(서)	218
~를 걸고	191
~를 기해	195
~를 막론하고	207
~를 불문하고	207
~를 비롯해(서)	179
~를 위하여	178
~를 위한	178
~를 위해(서)	178
~를 통해(서)	187
~를 포함하면	179
~를 포함해(서)	179
~를 향해(서)	218
~리라	499

□

~ㅁ/음	143
~마다	96
~마저(도)	94
마찰음	32, 34
~만	90
~만 못하다	202
만에	195
~만큼	100, 290
~만큼도	112

~만큼은	111
~만하다	202
~만 하더라도	216
~만 해도	216
말고	190
말고는	190
말씀하시다	249
말이다	223
말이야	223
말이야?	224
말이에요	223
말이에요?	224
말이지	223
말이지?	224
말입니다	223
~며 (간에/할 것 없이)	205
~면 몰라도	211
~면 안 되다	337
~면 좋겠다	362
명	249
명령문	55, 446
명사	49
명사 수식 접미사	271
명사 접속사	174, 198
명사와 격조사	62
명사화 접미사	143
모르다	284
모음	29, 46
모음조화	44
목적격 조사	50, 63, 81
목적어	50, 309
못	277
무렵	114

문장 어순	56
문장 유형	52
문장 종결어미	446, 482
문장 종류	55
문장 형태론	52
미래 시제	258
미래 완료	267
및	174

ㅂ

~ㅂ니까?	237
~ㅂ니다	237
바	148
~밖에	95
발화시	253
방향격 조사	66, 74
~보고	72
~보다 (더)	290
~보다 덜	290
보조동사	321, 384
보조사	50, 82
보통명사	49
복합동사	48, 233
복합명사	48
뵈다	250
뵈다	250
부사	49
부사격 조사	50, 81
부사화 접미사	519
부인	250
부정문	277
~부터 ~까지	71
분	249

불규칙 동사	233
비교구문	290
비유	32
빈도	140
빼고	190
빼고는	190
빼놓고는	190
~뿐만	99
~뿐만(만) 아니라	187

ㅅ

사건시	253
사계절	133
사역동사	302
사이에	204
사전 찾기	46
상	264
상대 존대	237
상태동사	49
상호 비유화	41
생략	57
생신	250
서수	122
서술어	50
세기	138
~세요	244, 246
~셔요	243
~소	252
소유격 조사	50, 65, 81
수동접미사	294
수동태	293
수사	49
수식어	50

수와 연산 기호 읽기 .....	521	~아/어 가다 .....	265, 267
수와 조수사 .....	119	~아/어 내다 .....	407
수 읽기 .....	521	~아/어 놓다 .....	369
수학 기호와 연산 읽기 .....	523	~아/어 대다 .....	421
수학 연산과 기하 .....	520	~아/어도 괜찮다 .....	335
순행 비음화 .....	40	~아/어도 되다 .....	335
~습니까? .....	237	~아/어도 여한이 없다 .....	385
~습니다 .....	237	~아/어도 좋다 .....	335
~시 .....	237	~아/어 두다 .....	369
시간 .....	128	~아/어 드리다 .....	357
시간/거리격 조사 .....	71	~아/어 먹다 .....	370
시간과 관계된 문법 표현 .....	142	~아/어 버리다 .....	370
시간과 날짜 .....	128	~아/어 보다 .....	378
시간과 날짜 계산 .....	135	~아/어 보이다 .....	374
시간과 식사 .....	138	~아/어 봤다 .....	380
시간 관계 부사 .....	140	~아/어 빠지다 .....	419
~시오/으시오 .....	252	~아/어야 겠다 .....	333
시제 .....	253	~아/어야 되다 .....	333
시제와 상 .....	253	~아/어야 하다 .....	333
~십니까? .....	238	~아/어 왔다 .....	265
~습니다 .....	238	~아/어 있다 .....	373
~십시오 .....	240	~아/어 주다 .....	357
~십시오 .....	240	~아/어지다 .....	296, 297, 298
~씨 .....	248	~아/어 치우다 .....	422
~씩 .....	97	~아/어 터지다 .....	419

○

~아 .....	79, 245, 246	안 .....	277
아니다 .....	282	알다 .....	282
~아라 .....	241	~았는 지 .....	151
아무+Noun+도 .....	285	~았던 .....	274
아무+Noun+(이)나 .....	287	~았/었 .....	256
~아(서) 죽겠다 .....	366	~았/었어야 했는데 .....	484
		~았었/였었 .....	266

~았/었으면 싶다	384	~에서 제일/가장	290
~야	79, 245	~에 의하면	186
~야말로	103	~에 의한	185
약주	251	~에 의해(서)	185
양력	134	~여	79
~어	245, 246	여격 조사	72
어간	517	~여서 그런지	213
어근	517	여지가 없다	222
~어라	241	여쭙다	250
어미	517	여쭙다	250
~어(서) 죽겠다	366	역행 비음화	40
~어요	242	연세	250
~어치	100	연음법칙	37
없다	277	영식	250
~었는 지	151	영애	250
~었던	274	~예요	243
~에	66, 81	~오/으오	252
~에게	72, 81	옥체	251
~에게 달려 있다	221	~와	174
~에게서	74, 81	~와 달리	177
~에 관한	178	완료시제	265
~에 관해(서)	178	외에	189
~에다	188	외에는	190
~에다가	188	요	172
~에 달려 있다	221	요일	133
~에 대한	178	원순모음	30
~에 대해(서)	178	원천격 조사	73
~에도 불구하고	204	월	132
~에 따라(서)	184	위치명사	231
~에 따르면	186	유성음화	36
~에 비해(서)	183	유음	32, 35
~에서	66, 73	유음화	41
~에서 ~까지	71	~으나 마나(이)다	432

~으라고 그래요	437	~으십시다	240
~으라고(요)	487	~으십시오	240
~으라고(요)?	479	~으오/오	251
~으라는 말이다	441	~은	82, 86, 117, 272
~으라니(요)?	477	~은가 보다	343
~으란 말이다	441	~은가요?	461
~으랴?	500	~은가 하다	400
~으려고 들다	436	~은 감이 없지 않아 있다	428
~으려고 하다	321	~은 감이 있다	428
~으려고 해도 ~을 수(가) 없다	445	~은 거(가) 없다	443
~으려니 하다	397	~은 건가요?	459
~으려던 중이다	332	~은 걸(요)	475
~으려던 참이다	332	~은 것	149
~으려 들다	436	~은 것 같다	340
~으려무나	471	~은 것이 없다	443
~으렴	471	~은 게 고작이다	416
~으로	74, 77	~은 게 없다	443
~으로 말미암아	181	~은 고사하고	206
~으로 보나	203	~은/는 ~대로	200
~으로(서)	78	~은/는 ~ 별로	200
~으로(써)	77	~은데(요)	473
~으로 인하여	181	~은데(요) 뭘	496
~으로 인해(서)	181	~은 듯싶다	389
~으로 하여금	217	~은 듯하다	389
~으리라	499	~은 말할 것도 없고	206
~으면 안 되다	337	~은 모양이다	387
~으면 좋겠다	362	~은 물론(이고/이러니와)	187
~으세요	243, 244, 246	~은 바	152
~으셔요	243	~은 법이다	411
~으시	237	~은 셈이다	424
~으시옵소서/시옵소서	240	~은 셈치다	426
~으십니까?	238	~은 적이 없다	381
~으십니다	238	~은 적이 있다	381

~은 줄 .....	152	~을 따름이다 .....	409
~은 줄(로) 알았다 .....	350	~을/르거다 .....	258
~은 줄 알다 .....	347	~을라 .....	498
~은 줄(을) 몰랐다 .....	352	~을락 말락 하다 .....	435
~은 지 .....	151	~을래야 ~을 수(가) 없다 .....	445
~은 지 ~ 되다 .....	377	~을래(요) .....	450
~은 지 알다 .....	347	~을래(요)? .....	451
~은 척하다 .....	375	~을 리(가) 없다 .....	355
~은 체하다 .....	375	~을 리(가) 있다 .....	355
~은 커녕 .....	106	~을 막론하고 .....	207
~은 탓이다 .....	415	~을 만(도) 하다 .....	412
~은 편이다 .....	365	~을 만하다 .....	368
~을 .....	63	~을 모양이다 .....	387
~을 거(가) 없다 .....	443	~을 바 .....	152
~을 거다 .....	325	~을 법(도) 하다 .....	412
~을 거쳐(서) .....	218	~을 불문하고 .....	207
~을 건가요? .....	459	~을 비롯해(서) .....	179
~을 걸고 .....	191	~을 뻔하다 .....	367
~을걸 (그랬다) .....	484	~을 뻔이다 .....	372
~을걸(요) .....	458	~을 생각이다 .....	329
~을 것 .....	149	~을 셈이다 .....	424
~을 것 같다 .....	340	~을 수가 없다 .....	393
~을 것이 없다 .....	443	~을 수가 있다 .....	391
~을 게 없다 .....	443	~을 수가 있어야죠 .....	396
~을게(요) .....	457	~을 수는 없다 .....	395
~을 계획/예정이다 .....	329	~을 수도 있다 .....	391
~을 기해 .....	195	~을 수 밖에 없다 .....	338
~을까 말까 하다 .....	434	~을 수 없다 .....	353
~을까 보다 .....	331	~을 수 있다 .....	353
~을까 싶다 .....	331	~을 여지가 없다 .....	430
~을까(요)? .....	465	~을 여지가 있다 .....	430
~을까 하다 .....	331	~을 위하여 .....	178
~을 듯하다/듯싶다 .....	389	~을 위한 .....	178

~을 위해(서) .....	178	~이 (도대체) 뭐길래/뭐기에/뭐라고 ....	224
~을 작정이다 .....	329	~이 (도대체) 뭐예요? .....	224
~을 정도다 .....	418	~이든가 .....	109
~을 줄 .....	152	~이든지 .....	109
~을 줄(로) 알았다 .....	350	~이라고 해(봐)야 .....	212
~을 줄 알다 .....	347	~이라고 해서 .....	209
~을 줄(을) 몰랐다 .....	352	~이라도 .....	102
~을 지 .....	151	~이라든가 .....	109
~을 지경이다 .....	418	~이라든지 .....	109
~을지도 모른다 .....	345	~이라서 그런지 .....	213
~을테야 .....	456	~이라야 .....	211
~을 테지(요) .....	494	~이랍시고 .....	210
~을 텐데(요) .....	466	~이랑 .....	174
~을 통해(서) .....	187	~이랑 달리 .....	177
~을 포함하면 .....	179	이래로 .....	196
~을 포함해(서) .....	179	~이래봐야 .....	212
~을 향해(서) .....	218	~이래야 .....	212
음력 .....	134	~이로되 .....	214
~음/口 .....	143	~이며 (간에/할 것 없이) .....	205
음운론 .....	29	~이면 몰라도 .....	211
음운법칙 .....	35	~이세요 .....	243
음절 구조 .....	45	~이야 .....	245
~의 .....	81	~이야말로 .....	103
~의 덕(분)이다 .....	221	~이어서 그런지 .....	213
의문문 .....	55, 446	~이에요 .....	243
~의 여지가 없다 .....	222	~이여 .....	79
~의 탓이다 .....	220	~이자 .....	196
~이 .....	81	이중모음 .....	30
~이거나 (간에/할 것 없이) .....	205	이중모음 발음 .....	31
~이고 뭐고 (간에) .....	207	이중주어/목적어 .....	309
~이나 .....	108, 176	~이/히/리/기 .....	294
~이나마 .....	102	~이/히/리/기/우/구/추 .....	303
이다 .....	230	~인들 .....	105

~인즉(슨) .....	215
인칭대명사 .....	154
일 .....	132
~일랑 ~지(도) 말다 .....	198
~입네 하면서 .....	210
입술의 모양 .....	30
입체 기하 .....	528
있다 .....	231

ㅈ

~자 .....	241
자격격 조사 .....	78
~자고 그래요 .....	437
~자고(요) .....	487
~자고(요)? .....	479
~자고 하다 .....	269
~자고 해요 .....	270
~자는 것 .....	150
~자는 말이다 .....	441
~자니(요)? .....	477
자음 .....	32, 46
자음도표 .....	32
자음동화 .....	39
자음 삽입 .....	42
~잔 말이다 .....	441
~잖아(요) .....	468
~잡니다 .....	269
잡수시다 .....	249
재귀대명사 .....	167
~재요 .....	270
저모음 .....	30
전에 .....	192
전 후 시간 표시 .....	139

접두사 .....	48
접미사 .....	48, 143
조 .....	172
조사 .....	49
조수사 .....	119, 124
~조차 .....	92
~조차(도) .....	92
존대법 .....	236
존댓말과 반말 .....	236
종성 .....	36, 46
종성 복자음 .....	42
종성 자음 법칙 .....	36
~쥬 .....	450
~쥬? .....	452
주격 조사 .....	63, 81
주무시다 .....	249
주어 .....	50
주어 동사 일치 .....	59
주어 존대 .....	237
주제 보조사 .....	82
주체 존대 .....	237
줄 .....	148
중간에 .....	193
중모음 .....	30
중성 .....	46
중에 .....	193
중(에)(서) 제일/가장 .....	291
~지 .....	148
~지? .....	452
~지 그래(요)? .....	470
~지 그랬어(요)? .....	470
~지 말고 ~(으)세요 .....	398
~지 말다 .....	277, 281

~지 못하다	280
지소사	172
지시사	154, 169
~지 않다	280
~지(요)	450
~지(요)?	451, 453
직접화법	268
진지	251
진행형	264
~짜리	100

ㄱ

~처럼	101
처소격 조사	66
청유문	55, 446
청자 존대	237
초성	46
춘부장	250
춘추	250
~치고	108
~치고(는)	108

ㅋ

~커녕	106
-----	-----

ㅌ

통에	193
----	-----

ㅍ

파생 접미사	517
파열음	32, 33

파찰음	32, 34
평면 기하	526
평서문	55, 446
평순모음	30
품사	48

ㅎ

~하고	174
~하고 달리	177
~한테	72
~한테 달려 있다	221
~한테서	73
혀의 높이	30
혀의 위치	30
현재 시제	253
현재 완료	265
형용사	226
호격 조사	79, 81
화법	268
활용 접미사	517
후에	192
후에야	192

A-Z

Adverbial Suffixes	519
Affricates	34
Aspect	264
Aspiration	38
Case Markers	62
Causative Verbs	302
Comparative Form	290
Conjunctions	174

Consonant Assimilation .....	39	Pragmatic Focus Setting .....	508
Consonant Insertion .....	42	Pragmatic Strategies .....	504
Consonants .....	32	Pronouns .....	154
Contrastive Focus Setting .....	513	Pronunciation Guide .....	31
Counters .....	119	Prosodic Focus Setting .....	507
Demonstratives .....	154	Quotation .....	268
Dictionary Entry .....	46	Semantic Encoding .....	504
Diminutives .....	172	Sentence Endings .....	446, 482
Diphthongs .....	30	Sentence Patterns .....	52
Double Subjects .....	309	Sentence Types .....	55
Ellipsis .....	57	Simple Vowels .....	29
Focus Setting .....	507	Sino-Korean Numbers .....	120, 123
Fricatives .....	34	Stative Verbs .....	226
Honorific System .....	236	Stops .....	33
Lateral .....	35	Subject-Verb Agreement .....	59
Linking Connector .....	321	Syllable Final Consonant Rule .....	36
Linking Rule .....	37	Syllable Final Consonant Clusters .....	42
Modal Auxiliaries .....	321, 384	Syllable Structure .....	45
Morphology .....	47	Syntax .....	52
Nasal Stops .....	34	Tag Question .....	453
Native Korean Numbers .....	119, 122	Tense .....	253
Negation .....	277	Tensification .....	41
Noun Conjunctions .....	174, 198	Time and Dates .....	128
Noun-Making Suffixes .....	143	Topic Setting .....	505
Noun-Modifying Suffixes .....	271	Verbs of Emotion .....	228
Numbers .....	39, 119	Verbs of Existence .....	66
Palatalization .....	39	Verbs of Locomotion .....	67
Particles .....	82	Verbs of Posture .....	68
Parts of Speech .....	48	Verbal Suffix Ordering .....	517
Passive Voice .....	293	Voicing .....	36
Phonology .....	29	Vowel Harmony .....	44
Phonological Rules .....	35	Vowels .....	29
Plural Suffix .....	60	Word Order .....	56
Pragmatic Encoding .....	505	Word Structure .....	47

